BOOK 2

CHESS VISUALIZATION COURSE

KINGSIDE SACRIFICES AND COMBINATIONS (WITH PREPARATORY POSITIONS)

Ian Anderson
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

Ply Table ............................................................................................................................................................. 4
Introduction ........................................................................................................................................................ 7
Section 1. Sacrifices on f7 ....................................................................................................................................... 11
   Chapter 1. Even Number of Attackers and Defenders on f7 ........................................................................ 13
   Chapter 2. Extra Attacker on f7 ................................................................................................................... 29
   Chapter 3. The Sequence 1 Nxf7 and 2 Qxe6 ............................................................................................. 47
   Chapter 4. The Squares f7 and e6 ................................................................................................................. 69
   Chapter 5. The Squares f7 and g6 ............................................................................................................... 85
   Chapter 6. The Squares f7 and h7 ............................................................................................................... 97
Section 2. Sacrifices on g6 .................................................................................................................................... 121
   Chapter 7. White Sacrifices a Piece on g6 ............................................................................................... 123
   Chapter 8. White Plays 1 Rfxg6 ................................................................................................................ 137
   Chapter 9. White Sacrifices Two Pieces on g6 ......................................................................................... 157
Section 3. Sacrifices on h7 .................................................................................................................................. 173
   Chapter 10. White Plays 1 Nhx7 (Black Pawn on g6) ............................................................................. 175
   Chapter 11. White Plays 1 Nhx7 (No Black Pawn on g6) ......................................................................... 197
   Chapter 12. The Sequence 1 Bxh7+ and 2 Nxf7 ..................................................................................... 207
   Chapter 13. The Sequence 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Qh5+ Kg8 3 Qxf7+ ............................................................ 221
   Chapter 14. The Sequence 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Qxf7 ................................................................................... 241
   Chapter 15. The Sequence 1 Rxh7 Kxh7 2 Qxf7 .................................................................................... 251
Section 4. The Classic Bishop Sacrifice on h7 .................................................................................................. 265
   Chapter 16. The Sequence 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+ Kg8 3 Qh5 ................................................................. 267
   Chapter 17. The Sequence 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+ Kg6 .......................................................................... 283
   Chapter 18. The Sequence 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+ Kg8 3 Qh5 (Black Ne7) ............................................ 305
   Chapter 19. The Sequence 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+ Kg6 (Black Ne7) ...................................................... 321
   Chapter 20. The Sequence 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+ (Black Be7) ............................................................. 341
Section 5. Sacrifices on the Dark Squares (f6, g7, and h6) ................................................................................... 351
   Chapter 21. The Sequence 1 Rxg7+ Kxg7 2 Qg5+ .................................................................................. 353
   Chapter 22. The Sequence 1 Rxg7+ Kxg7 2 Rg1+ .................................................................................. 371
   Chapter 23. The Sequence 1 Rxg7+ Kxg7 2 Miscellaneous .................................................................. 391
   Chapter 24. The Sequence 1 Bxh6 gxh6 2 Qxh6 .................................................................................. 401
   Chapter 25. The Sequence 1 Bxh6 gxh6 2 Qg6+ Kh8 3 Qxh6+ ............................................................ 421
   Chapter 26. White Plays 1 Nh6+ ............................................................................................................. 435
   Chapter 27. White Plays 1 Nf6+ ................................................................................................................ 457
   Chapter 28. White Plays 1 RxN(f6) .......................................................................................................... 479
Answer Key .................................................................................................................................................... 501
Appendix 1. Index of ECO Codes .................................................................................................................... 563
The following table can be used in conjunction with the ply depth barriers discussed in the introduction to the book. The first column shows the chapter titles; the last column shows the total number of visualization exercises contained within each chapter (as well as the number of preparatory positions in parentheses). The top row indicates the length of the visualization exercises that range from five to seventeen and more half-moves (ply). A half-move is one move made by either White or Black; thus a variation that is eight half-moves long (or “eight ply”) contains four moves by White and four moves by Black. The line across each chapter shows how many exercises are contained in that chapter for each ply. For example, of the forty visualization exercises in Chapter 1, two of them are five half-moves (ply) long, two are six half-moves (ply) long, five are seven half-moves (ply) long, three are 8 half-moves long, six are 9 half-moves long, and so on.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Length (Half-Moves or Ply):</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17+</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>SECTION 1. SACRIFICES ON F7</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. EVEN NUMBER OF ATTACKERS ON F7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>40(43)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. EXTRA ATTACKER ON F7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>40(60)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. THE SEQUENCE 1 NxN and 2 Qxe6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>44(78)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. THE SQUARES F7 AND e6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>32(54)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. THE SQUARES F7 AND g6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>20(39)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. THE SQUARES F7 AND h7</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>40(103)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SECTION 2. SACRIFICES ON G6</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. WHITE SACRIFICES A PIECE ON G6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>24(52)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. WHITE PLAYS RxG6</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>40(68)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. WHITE SACRIFICES TWO PIECES ON G6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>24(65)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SECTION 3. SACRIFICES ON H7</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. WHITE PLAYS 1 NXH7 (BLACK Pg6)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>40(93)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. WHITE PLAYS 1 NxH7 (NO Black Pg6)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>16(44)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. THE SEQUENCE 1 BH7+ AND 2 NF7</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>28(42)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Qh5+ Kg8 3 Qxf7+</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>32(88)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Qxf7</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>16(43)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. 1 Rxh7+ Kxh7 2 Qxf7</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>28(45)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SECTION 4. CLASSIC BISHOP SACRIFICE ON H7</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+ Kg8 3 Qh5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>32(40)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+ Kg6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>32(110)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+ Kg6 (Ne7)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>28(59)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+ Kg6 (Ne7)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>28(90)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+ (Be7)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>16(40)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>SECTION 5. SACRIFICES ON THE DARK SQUARES</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. 1 Rxg7+ Kxg7 2 Qg5+</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>36(67)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. 1 Rxg7+ Kxg7 2 Rg1+</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>32(91)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. 1 Rxg7+ Kxg7 2 MISCELLANEOUS</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>20(36)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. 1 Bxh6 gxh6 2 Qxh6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>36(75)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. 1 Bxh6 gxh6 2 Qxh6+ Kh8 3 Qxh6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>28(46)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. WHITE PLAYS 1 Nxh6+</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>40(80)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. WHITE PLAYS 1 Ne6+</td>
<td>14*</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>44(76)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. WHITE PLAYS 1 RxN(f6)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>44(76)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Totals for each ply in the book</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17+</th>
<th>Total</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>64*</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>145</td>
<td>18</td>
<td>132</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>87</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>152</td>
<td>1802</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Six of these fourteen exercises are 3-ply.
DEDICATION

This book is dedicated to all of the chess players in the world who want to improve their visualization skills.

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

This book would not have seen possible without the constant support and invaluable assistance of Nevid Ruchkov. I am forever grateful his munificent presence.

Special Thanks To:

Denis Goewert for compilation and layout,
Randy Lewis for his assistance with equipment,
Eric Bentzen for permission to use his chess fonts, and
Georgia Pearson for her inspired cover design, logo, and editorial comments.

Thank you one and all.
INTRODUCTION

This second book of the *Chess Visualization Course* continues the systematic and practical approach to chess visualization begun in Book 1, this time using 880 visualization exercises that feature kingside sacrifices and combinations that occur on the six squares in front of Black's kingside castled King -- f7, g7, and h7 on the 7th rank and f6, g6, and h6 on the 6th rank. Thus this book provides a dual purpose. It gives you the opportunity to practice your chess visualization skills while exploring almost 900 exercises involving kingside sacrifices and combinations. This book also contains more than 1800 preparatory positions derived from the visualization exercises which highlight the various mating patterns and other key ideas associated with each type of sacrifice or combination.

DESCRIPTION OF THE SECTIONS AND CHAPTERS

This book contains five sections, each of which focuses on a particular square or set of squares in front of Black's castled King, as follows:

- Section 1 covers kingside sacrifices and combinations that occur on f7;
- Section 2 covers kingside sacrifices and combinations that occur on g6;
- Section 3 covers kingside sacrifices and combinations that occur on h7;
- Section 4 covers the classic Bishop sacrifice on h7;
- Section 5 covers kingside sacrifices and combinations that occur on the three dark squares in front of Black's King (f6, g7, and h6).

The chapters within each section provide in-depth coverage of the general themes that characterize each section. For example, Section 2, which covers sacrifices on g6, contains three chapters, each of which features a different type of sacrifice on g6: Chapter 7 covers one-piece sacrifices on g6, Chapter 8 covers Rook sacrifices on g6, and Chapter 9 covers two-piece sacrifices on g6.

Each chapter in this book contains between 16 and 44 visualization exercises arranged by the length of the variation that you are asked to visualize. Most of the exercises (643 of them, to be exact) range from 7 to 15 ply and another 160 exercises are 16 ply or longer. The longest exercises are 27 ply (see numbers 360 in Chapter 11 and 436 in Chapter 15), while six of the exercises are 3 ply (see Chapter 27). The visualization exercises are arranged in a quad structure with four exercises per page.

PREPARATORY POSITIONS

Each chapter also includes a set of preparatory positions that focuses on the final moves of the visualization exercises from which they are derived. They are included primarily to help the average tournament player visualize the longer variations in this book (44% of the exercises are 12 ply or longer). They appear before the visualization exercises and are grouped by theme to show more clearly the various ideas and patterns that arise from each type of sacrifice or combination presented. Each preparatory position is numbered from 1 to 1802, followed by a code in square brackets that indicates the number of the visualization exercise ("VX") that it was taken from. For example, the code [VX-9] in the first preparatory position indicates that it was derived from visualization exercise number 9.

PATTERN RECOGNITION

Most chess players know the importance of pattern recognition, yet there are so few books that illustrate exactly what these patterns are. Certainly there are books that deal with the basic types of mate, such as back rank mates and smothered mates, but once you get past the basics it's difficult to find suitable materials. An important feature of this book is that by creating more than 1800 preparatory positions and grouping them into themes we are able to show clearly the various patterns and key ideas relevant for each type of sacrifice or combination featured in each chapter. For example, the preparatory positions in Chapter 16, which covers the classic Bishop sacrifice with the moves 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+ Kg8 3 Qh5, show the mating patterns and key ideas that occur in positions that arise after these moves have been played. Similarly the preparatory positions in Chapter 27, which covers the move 1 Nf6+ by White, show the mating patterns and key ideas that occur in positions that arise after White has put his Knight *en prise* on f6.
Patterns, Sub-Patterns, and Variations on a Theme

Many of the patterns in chess are not simply "cookie-cutter" type patterns with moves that can be played thoughtlessly without considering the specific position of the pieces on the board at the time. Most patterns have sub-patterns that feature a slight but important difference in the generic position that typifies the main pattern. Even a subtle difference in the position can either nullify or alter the main pattern and thus create a related sub-pattern. We call such sub-patterns "variations on a theme" (VT), borrowing an expression found in music theory.

Take, for example, the pattern of the smothered mate. Diagram VT-1 below shows a typical three-move smothered mate where White wins with 1 Nh6+ Kh8 2 Qg8+ Nxg8 3 Nf7, mate. Diagram VT-2 shows two variations on this theme, where Black's h-pawn is on h6 instead of h7, which normally would nullify the smothered mate, since Black's King would be able to escape to h7, but here White's Bc2 covers that square and thus the smothered mate is still on. Another important variation on this theme involves positions in which Black controls f7 with a piece other than his Rf8. This is seen in Diagram VT-3 where Black can answer 1 Nh6+ Kh8 2 Qg8+ with 2…Rxg8, when 3 Nf7+ fails because Black's Qc7 is defending f7. When studying a given pattern it is important to know the variations on a theme.

VT-1. White wins with 1 Nh6+ (1...Kf8 loses to 2 Qf7, mate) Kh8 2 Qg8+ Nxg8 3 Nf7, mate.

VT-2. White's Queen is under attack, but wins with 1 Nxh6+ Kh8 (1...Kf8 loses to 2 Qf7, mate) 2 Qg8+ Rxg8 3 Nf7, mate.

VT-3. Here 1 Nxh6+ Kh8 2 Qg8+ loses to 2…Rxg8, since 3 Nf7 can be met by 3…Qxf7.

The next set of diagrams (from Chapter 2) illustrates another pattern and variation on a theme. In each diagram White has a Knight on f7 supported by a Bishop on the a2-g8 diagonal and a Queen on h5, with Black's King on g8. The first two diagrams (VT-4 and VT-5) show the basic two-move mating pattern with 1 Nxh6+ Kh8 (1…Kh7 doesn't change anything) followed by either 2 Ng4, 2 Nf5, or 2 Ng8, mate. In diagram VT-6, however, the situation is different because Black's Qe8 will be attacking White's Qh5 after White's Knight moves off of f7. Therefore White needs to come up with a way to address this important difference in the position. After 1 Nxh6+ Kh8/Kh7, White can block the e8-h5 diagonal with 2 Nf7+, safeguarding the Qh5, when 2…Kg8 loses to 3 Qh8, mate. These three diagrams illustrate a basic two-move mating pattern and a variation on this theme.

VT-4. White wins with 1 Nxh6+ Kh7 (or 1…Kh8) 2 Nf5/Ng4/Ng8, mate.

VT-5. White wins with 1 Nxh6+ Kh7/Kh8 12 Ng4/Nf5/Ng8, mate.

VT-6. White win with 1 Nxh6+ Kh7/Kh8 12 Nf7+ (other moves drops the Qh5) Kg8 13 Qh8, mate.
The next set of examples (also from Chapter 2) illustrates once more the idea of variations on a theme. Each diagram features a White Queen on f7, a Black King on h8, and the move 1 Bg5 by White. Yet even though these positions share these same general characteristics, the dynamics within each position are slightly different. In VT-7, for example, Black's Qd8 seems to control the g5 square, but in reality it's tied to the defense of f8, allowing White to play 1 Bg5, threatening both 2 Bxd8 and 2 Bf6, mate, when 1...Qxg5 loses to 2 Qf8, mate. In VT-8 the g5 square seems to be controlled by two of Black's pieces, but again White is able to play the winning move 1 Bg5. In VT-9 White is down a piece, but can win it back with 1 Bg5, even though the g5 square seems to be defended by Black's pawn on h6.

VT-7. White mates in three with 1 Bg5 Qg8 (1...Qxg5 loses to 2 Qf8, mate) 2 Bf6+ Qg7 3 Qxg7/Bxg7, mate.

VT-8. 1 Bg5 wins Black's Queen with, since 1...hxg5 loses to 2 Qh5, mate, and 1...Qxg5 loses to 2 Qg8, mate.

VT-9. White is down a piece, but can win Black's Knight with 1 Bg5, since 1...hxg5 loses to 2 Qh5, mate.

The preparatory positions not only highlight the winning patterns and key ideas relevant for each chapter, they show them near the beginning of each line of play (here at ply 1), whereas in the visualization exercises these ideas and patterns typically show up near the end of the line given (here at ply 5 of a 9-ply exercise, ply 9 of an 11-ply exercise, and ply 10 of a 15-ply exercise).

HOW TO USE THIS BOOK

This book may seem daunting at first because of its length (564 pages), yet each chapter averages fewer than 20 pages. You may work on the chapters in any sequence, although it is probably best to work on one section at a time, since the chapters in each section explore similar themes and thus the patterns will reinforce each other.

Each chapter in this book contains an introduction, a set of preparatory positions, and a set of visualization exercises. The introduction presents an overview of the sacrifice or combination featured in the chapter and illustrates that idea using at least two diagrams. The preparatory positions in each chapter illustrate the key moves and ideas seen in the visualization exercises of each chapter and are included to help you visualize the final moves of the visualization exercises better. The visualization exercises provide you with an opportunity to practice your visualization skills relating to kingside sacrifices and combinations that occur on the six squares in front of Black's King.

Each visualization exercise consists of a diagrammed position followed by a series of moves that you are asked to visualize. Using the diagrammed position as a starting point, mentally play through the moves given, keeping track of which pieces are on the board, the positions they occupy, the threats they create, and the material balance. Visualize all of the moves given through to the final position if you can, then answer the question(s) provided. The answers can be found in the answer key at the end of the book. It is White to move in every exercise.

Please keep in mind that it's not necessary to work on every exercise of every chapter. If you find it difficult to visualize variations that run 11 ply, then it doesn't make a lot of sense to work on exercises that are 15 ply or longer. Please keep your ply depth barrier in mind as you work through the exercises in this book.

PLY DEPTH BARRIERS

Once you have gone through a number of exercises in this book, you will probably notice that there is some depth at which you are unable to clearly visualize certain variations all the way through to the final position. Perhaps you can
clearly visualize variations that are 11 ply deep, but have difficulty clearly visualizing variations that are 12 or 13 ply. We call this ceiling your *ply depth barrier*. It is the depth at which your vision breaks down and you can no longer clearly visualize the final position.

There are three techniques for dealing with the ply depth barrier – *brute force*, *consolidation*, and *stretching*.

The *brute force* method consists in attempting to visualize variations that are the same length as your depth barrier. If your depth barrier is 11 ply, then go through all of the 11-ply exercises in the book and attempt to visualize the final position clearly.

*Consolidation* consists in visualizing variations that are slightly shorter than your depth barrier. The principle here is that if you cannot fully visualize 11-ply exercises, then it’s possible that the 9- and 10-ply exercises are not quite crystal clear either. Therefore, if your barrier is at 11 ply, make sure that you can visualize all of the 9- and 10-ply exercises clearly and confidently.

*Stretching* consists in attempting to visualize variations that are slightly longer than your depth barrier. If your depth barrier is 11 ply, try to visualize the 12- and 13-ply exercises. After working on these exercises for a while, you may find that the 11-ply exercises seem easier by comparison.

See the ply table provided after the table of contents to find the exercises you need. It shows how many exercises at each ply are in the book and the chapters where they can be found.

It was my desire to create a book that builds on the visualization work begun in Book 1, this time focusing on kingside sacrifices and combinations. Writing this book the past three years has been a very gratifying experience for me, one that has helped me stretch beyond my previous limitations in visualizing variations and improve my ability to conduct and defend against kingside attacks. It is my hope that you will see similar improvement in your own play and gain the same sense of gratification that I have felt when breaking through past barriers.

Statesboro, GA
December 22, 2010
SECTION 1. SACRIFICES ON F7

This section contains exercises in which White captures a Black pawn on f7 with one of his pieces. It includes the following chapters:

CHAPTER 1. EVEN NUMBER OF ATTACKERS AND DEFENDERS ON F7
CHAPTER 2. EXTRA ATTACKER ON F7
CHAPTER 3. THE SEQUENCE 1 NxF7 AND 2 Qxe6
CHAPTER 4. THE SQUARES F7 AND E6
CHAPTER 5. THE SQUARES F7 AND G6
CHAPTER 6. THE SQUARES F7 AND H7

CHAPTER 1, EVEN NUMBER OF ATTACKERS AND DEFENDERS ON F7, contains exercises in which the number of White pieces attacking f7 is equal to the number of Black pieces defending f7, when one of Black’s defenders is the King. One of the main ideas for White in this chapter is to exchange all of the pieces on f7, leaving Black’s Kf7 exposed to a variety of tactics.

CHAPTER 2, EXTRA ATTACKER ON F7, contains exercises in which White has or can get an extra attacker on f7, which allows White to sink a piece on f7, often with advantage.

CHAPTER 3, THE SEQUENCE 1 NxF7 AND 2 Qxe6, contains exercises in which White plays 1 Nxf7 and 2 Qxe6, when White has sacrificed a piece for a pawn on f7, but has obtained a powerful Queen on e6.

CHAPTER 4, THE SQUARES F7 AND E6, contains exercises in which White sacrifices a piece on f7, then occupies the e6 square with something other than his Queen.

CHAPTER 5, THE SQUARES F7 AND G6, contains exercises in which White captures Black’s pawn on f7, then occupies the g6 square.

CHAPTER 6, THE SQUARES F7 AND H7, contains exercises in which White sacrifices a piece for Black’s pawn on f7, which is defended only by the King, and after 1…Kxf7 White captures Black’s pawn on h7 with either 2 Qxh7+ or 2 Rxh7+. 
CHAPTER 1. EVEN NUMBER OF ATTACKERS AND DEFENDERS ON F7

This chapter contains exercises in which the number of White pieces attacking f7 is equal to the number of Black pieces defending f7, when one of Black’s defenders is the King. One of the main ideas for White is to exchange all of the pieces on f7, leaving Black’s Kf7 exposed to a variety of tactics.

In Diagram 1, the count on f7 is 2-2 and Black’s Bishop on b7 is undefended. After the moves 1 Nxf7 Rxf7 2 Bxf7+ Kxf7 (see Diagram 2), White wins a piece with 3 Qb3+ and 4 Qxb7, when White is up the exchange and a pawn.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. Double Attack by White’s Queen
2. Knight Forks
3. Miscellaneous Pins
4. Pins along the f-file
5. Miscellaneous Tactics
6. Pieces of Different Value
7. Winning on the Queenside
8. Mates

These themes are illustrated using forty-three preparatory positions, which are followed by forty visualization exercises ranging in depth from five to nineteen ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply:</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17+</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Double Attack by White’s Queen

1 [VX-9]. White can win Black's hanging Bc5 with 19 Qh5+ (1-0) Kg8 20 Qxc5, when White is up the exchange and two pawns.

2 [VX-8]. White is down a piece, but can get it back with 18 Qf3+ Bf6 (18...Nf6 drops the Ra8 to 19 Qxb7+) 19 Qxe4, when material is even.

3 [VX-7]. White can win Black's hanging Bb7 with 16 Qb3+ (1-0) Kf8 17 Qxb7, when White is up a piece.

4 [VX-26]. White can win back his piece with 21 Qh3+ Ke8 22 Qxb7 Rd8 23 Qxc6+, when White is up two pawns.

5 [VX-6]. White can win Black's Bg5 with 18 Qh5+ Kg8 19 Bxg5, when White is up the exchange and a pawn (6 points to 3).

6 [VX-17]. White can win a piece with 16 Bxc5 Bxc5 17 Qe4+ (Be) 18 Qxc5, when White is up the exchange and a pawn.

7 [VX-31]. White can win material with 11 d5 Na5 (11...Nb4 12 a3 traps Black's Knight) 12 d6 Bxd6 13 Qd5+ Kf8 14 Qxa8, when White is up two exchanges.

8 [VX-24]. White can win Black's Bb7 with 21 Rd7+ Kg8 22 Rxb7, when White is up the exchange and a pawn.

9 [VX-27]. White can win Black's Nb7 with 27 Rc1 Qf5 28 Rc7+ Kg6 29 Rxb7, when White is up the exchange and two pawns.
2. Knight Forks

10 [VX-15]. White can wins a piece with 20 Qxf7+ Kxf7 21 Ng5+ (1-0) Kg8 22 Nxe4 Bxd1 23 Rxd1.

11 [VX-16]. White can win a piece with 19 Qxc6 Qxc6 (19...Qf5 20 Rxe5 Qxd3 loses to 21 Ng5+ Kf8 22 Qe8, mate) 20 Nxe5+ Kf6 21 Nxc6.

12 [VX-5]. After 15 Nxf7 Rxf7? 16 Rxf7, Black can’t play 16...Kxf7 because of 17 Nd6+, winning Black’s Queen.

13 [VX-34]. White wins with either 22 Rg7+ or 22 Nxe6, attacking Black’s Queen and threatening 23 Rg7+ Kh8 24 Qh6.

14 [VX-34]. 22 Rxd7 d3+ gives Black play, but better is 22 Rg7+, when 22...Kxg7 23 Nxe6+ wins Black’s Queen and 22...Kh8 loses to 23 Rxf7+ Kg8 24 Qf4, e.g., 24...Rf8 25 Rh8+ Kxh8 26 Qh4+ Kg7 27 Qh7, mate.

3. Miscellaneous Pins

15 [VX-2]. Black’s Ne5 is pinned. White is up the exchange and a pawn after 25 Qxf7+ (25 Bxf7+ is also good) Nxf7 26 Bxc7.

16 [VX-14]. 19 Bxe3 wins Black’s Nf2, e.g., 19...Bxe3 20 Kxe3 (1-0) Kg6 21 Rxf2, when White is up a Rook or 19...Re8 20 Rxf2+ Kg8 21 Nf5, White remains up a Rook after 21...g6 22 Kd2 gxf5 23 Bxc5.
4. Pins along the f-file

17 [VX-10]. White can win Black's pinned Nf6 with 11 e5 Kg8 12 exf6 Bxf6.

18 [VX-21]. White gets a pin or a pawn fork after 15 fxe4 Qe7 (15...Bb4 drops the Nf6 to 16 e5) 16 e5, e.g., 16...Nxe5 17 dxe5 Qxe5 or 16...Bc7 17 exf6 Qxe3+ 18 Kh1 Nxf6, when White is up the exchange.

19 [VX-20]. Black's Nf6 is pinned, but Black can get out of it without losing a piece after 13 e5 g5 14 Qxg5 dxe5 15 dxe5 Ng4, when 16 h3 can be met by 16...Ngxe5. Note that 14...Ng4 15 Qh5+ Kg8 16 h3 traps Black's Knight and 14...Ne4 loses to 15 Qh5+ with 16 Nxe4.

5. Miscellaneous Tactics

20 [VX-40]. White wins Black's Queen with 21 Nf7+ Kg8 22 Nd6+ Kh8 23 Nxe8.

21 [VX-33]. White wins Black's Queen with 20 g6+.

22 [VX-33]. White wins with 19 Qh5, intending 20 gxh6, attacking two pieces at once.

23 [VX-13]. White wins Black's Ng6 with 17 Qf5+ Kg8 18 Qxg6, when White is up a pawn. Note that 17 Qf3 can be met by 17...Ke6.

24 [VX-25]. White wins the exchange with 14 Nf7+ Rxf7 (14...Kg8 drops the Queen to 15 Nd6+) 15 Bxf7 Qxf7 16 Qxd7.

25 [VX-11]. White wins a piece with 16 g5.
Preparatory Positions

Chapter 1. Even Number of Attackers and Defenders on F7

26 [VX-29]. White can back his piece for a pawn with 11 e5 and 12 exf6, but better is 11 Qh5+, winning a piece for free.

27 [VX-35]. White wins with 16 Qe8+ Bf8 17 Rf1 (White’s threat is 18 Qf7+ Kh8 19 Qxf8+) Qe7 18 Qxe8 and 19 Bxb8, when Black’s pieces are all tied up.

28 [VX-2]. White wins with 26 Nxe5+, when 26...Kh8 loses to 27 Ng6+ Kh7 28 Nxf8+ Kh8 29 Qh7, mate, and 26...Rf7 drops three pieces to 27 Bxf7+ Kf8 28 Rxd7.

29 [VX-39]. White wins with 29 Ne7, with multiple threats (30 Nxc8, 30 Nxd5, 30 Bg5, etc), e.g., 29...Kxe7 drops the Queen to 30 Bxc5+, 29...Rc7 loses to 30 Nd5, 29...Nd7 drops the Rook to 30 Nxc8, etc.

6. Pieces of Different Value

32 [VX-3]. White can win a Queen, Rook, and pawn for two Rooks and a Knight with 23 Rxf7 Rxf7 24 Rxf7 Qxf7 (24...Qe8 25 Rf6 wins Black’s g-pawn and gives White connected passed pawns on the kingside) 25 Nxf7 Kxf7.

33 [VX-18]. White can win a Queen, Knight and pawn for two Rook with 20 Rxf7 Nxf7 21 Bxf7+ Qxf7 22 Rxf7 Kxf7, then another piece and a pawn with 23 Qxg7+ Ke6 24 Nxe4, when White has a Queen, Knight, and pawn for two Rooks.

34 [VX-4]. After 25 Qf7+ Rxf7 (25... Kh8 26 Qxe8+ Rxe8 27 Nxe4 wins the Bg4) 26 exf7+ Qxf7 (26...Kf8 drops the Bg4 to 27 fxg8=Q+ Rxe8 28 Nxe4) 27 Nxf7 Kxf7 28 f3, White is up the exchange and a pawn.
7. Winning on the Queenside

35 [VX-28]. After 25 Qxc6 Ne7 26 Qc7 Re8, White wins with 27 Qxe8 Nxc8 28 b7 and the pawn queens.

36 [VX-28]. White wins with 24 Rxf7, since after 24...Rxf7 25 Qxf7+ Qxf7 26 Rxf7 Kxf7, White wins with 27 b7.

37 [VX-19]. White wins with 23 Ra1 Ba8 24 Rb1 Kh7 25 Rb8 Bd5 26 a8=Q Bxa8 27 Rxa8, when White is up the exchange and two pawns.

8. Mates

38 [VX-36]. White wins with 21 Nxa6 hxg6 22 Qh4+ Bh6 23 Qxh6, mate.

39 [VX-24]. White wins with 19 Ng5+ Kh8 20 Qg6, when 21...hxg5 loses to 21 Qh5, mate.

40 [VX-37]. White mates with 29 Qh7+ (1-0) Kf8 30 Qh8, mate.

41 [VX-32]. White wins with 19 Nxg6+, e.g., 19...Kg8 20 Qxe6+ Kh8 21 Qg8, mate; 19...hxg6 20 Qxe6+ Kf8 21 Qf7, mate; 19...Ke7 20 Qxe6+ Kd8 21 Nf7, mate, or 19...Kg6 20 Qe4+ Kxg5 21 h4+ Kh5 21...Kf6 22 Qxe6, mate) 22 Be2, mate.

42 [VX-38]. White wins with 18 f5xg6+ hxg6 19 Bg5 Nf7 20 Qe2 Rb4 21 Qe6+ Kg7 (21...Kf8 22 Bh6 is mate) 22 Rx6 Nxf6 23 Rf1 Qf8 (23...Rxb2 loses to 24 Bxf6+, attacking Black’s King, Queen and Rook) 24 Bxf6+ Kh7 25 Rf3, intending 26 Rh3, mate.

43 [VX-39]. White wins with 28 Nxf5 gxf5 29 Rxf5+, when 29...Be6 30 Bxc5 threatens 30 Qe7+ or 29...Kg7 30 Bh6+ and now: a) 30...Kxh6 31 Qh5+ Kg7 32 Rf7+ Kg8 33 Qxh7, mate; b) 30...Kh8 31 Qe5+ Kg8 32 Qg7, mate; or c) 30...Kg8 31 Qxe7 Qd4 32...Qg4 32 Rg5+ 32 Rg5+ Kh8 33 Bg7+ Kg8 34 Bxd4, mate.
1. The count is 3-3 on f7, 1-1 on e7. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bxf7+ Rxf7 15 Nxf7 Qxf7. What is the material balance and how can White win material? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 15...Qf8 leaves White up the exchange and a pawn (see exercise 40).

2 Hint: Black's Queen soon becomes pinned.

2. The count on f7 is 3-3, but Black's Ne5 is pinned. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Nxf7 Rxf7 25 Qxf7 26 Bxc7. What is the material balance?

1 This clears the h2-b8 diagonal. 2 24...Kh7 25 Qf5+ g6 (25...Kg8 drops three pieces after 26 Nxe5+ Rf7 27 Bxf7+ Kf8 28 Rxd7) can be met by 26 Nxe5 gx5 (26...Bxe5 27 Rxf7+ wins, as does 26...Nxe5 27 Bxe5 Bxe5 28 Rd7+ Kh8 29 Qh3 27 Rxd7+ Qxd7 27...Kh8 28 Ng6+ is mate) 28 Nxd7, when White has two pieces and a pawn for a Rook (7 points to 5) and threatens Black's Rf8, which is tied to the defense of the Bf6. 3 Also good is 25 Bxf7+, when White is up the exchange and a pawn.

3. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Rxf7 24 Rxf7 Qxf7 25 Nxf7 Kxf7. What is the material balance?

1 Attempting to pile on the f-pawn with 23 Qf3 can be met by 23...Nf5.

2 24...Qe8 25 Rf6 wins Black's g-pawn, giving White connected passed pawns on the kingside.

4. White is up two pawns, but his Queen is under attack. Also, Black's d-pawn could become dangerous. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Qf7 26 exf7+ Qxf7 27 Nxf7 Kxf7. What is the material balance and how does White neutralize Black's pressure?

1 25 Qd6 can be met by 25...Be2 26 Rf1 Rc2, when White still has work to do. 2 25...Kh8 drops the Bg4 to 26 Qxe8+ Rxe8 27 Nxc4. 3 26...Kf8 drops the Bg4 to 27 fxe8=Q+ Rxe8 28 Nxc4.
5. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bc7 Qc8\(^1\) 15 Nxf7\(^2\) Rxf7 16 Rxf7. What is the material balance and why can't Black play 16...Kxf7?

\(^1\) 14...Qe8 drops the Queen to 15 Nd6. \(^2\) White's threat is 16 Nd6, trapping Black's Queen.

6. The count on f7 is 2-2 and 1-1 on g5 but White can add another attacker to both. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nxf7 Rxf7 17 Bxf7+\(^1\) Kxf7. How does White win material here?

\(^1\) Moving the King leaves White up the exchange and a pawn. Black resigned here.

7. White is up a piece for a pawn, but two of his pieces are under attack, but note that Black's Bb7 is hanging. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Nxf7 Rxf7\(^1\) 15 Rxh7 Kxf7. How does White win here?

\(^1\) White is up two pawns after 14...Qe7 15 Nhx6+ Bxh6 16 Rxh+ with 17 Bxg6.

8. White is down a pawn, but Black’s Ne4 is hanging. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Rxf7 Rxf7 17 Bxf7+ Kxf7 18 Qf3+ Bf6\(^1\) 19 Qxe4. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) 18...Nf6 saves the Knight, but drops the Ra8 to 19 Qxb7.
9. White is up a pawn and Black's Bc5 is hanging. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxf7 Rxf7 18 Bxf7+ Kxf7 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Qxc5. What is the material balance?

1 Black is down two pawns after 17...Be6 18 Ng5 Bxb3 19 axb3. 2 18...Kh8 leaves White up the exchange and two pawns, when 19 Bd5 ties Black's pieces down to the defense of the b-pawn.

11. Black's Nd7 is defended only by the Nf6, which can be driven away by White's g-pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Nxf7 Rxh7 15 Bxf7+ Kg6 16 g5 Ke6 17 gxf6 Bxf6. What is the material balance?

1 15 g5 immediately is also good. 2 16...Rd8 17 gxf6 Bxf6 is similar to the game, but 16...Nh5 drops two pieces to 17 Rxd7+ Kg8 18 Rxb7, leaving White up a Rook and a pawn.

12. White's Rc1 and Bb2 are both under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 18 fxg6 hxg6 19 Rxf7 Kxf7 20 Rf1+ Bf6 21 Bxf6 Qc8. What is the material balance? For an extra challenge (11 ply), how does White win here?

1 Three alternatives: a) 18...fxg6 19 Qe6 is mate; b) 18...Nxc1 loses to 19 gxf7+ Kf8 20 Qg8/Qg7/Bg7, mate; c) 18...Nxb2 19 gxf7+ Kh8 20 fx8=Q+ Qxe8 gives White the exchange and a pawn (6 points to 3). 2 19...Bg5 prevents 20 Qxg6+, but then White wins with 20 Rg7+, e.g., 20...Kf8 21 Rf1+ or 20...Kh8 21 Rxe6+ Nxb2 22 Qh5+. 3 20...Kg8 allows 21 Qxg6, mate.
13. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Qh5 h6 15 Nxf7 Rxh7\(^1\) 16 Rxf7 Kxf7\(^2\) 17 Qf5+ Kg8 18 Qxg6. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) Any other move drops the Ng6 (at least). \(^2\) Otherwise White is up the exchange and a pawn.

14. White is up a piece for two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxf7\(^1\) Rxf7 18 Bxf7+ Kxf7 19 Bxe3\(^2\) Bxe3\(^3\) 20 Kxe3 Kg6 21 Rxf2. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) This is better than 17 Bxe3, which can be met by 17...Rde8. \(^2\) Note that two of Black’s pieces are under attack. \(^3\) 19...Re8 can be met by 20 Rxf2+ Kg8 21 Nf5, e.g., 21...g6 22 Kd2 gxf5 23 Bxe5, when White is up a Rook.

15. Black is up a pawn and has pressure on White’s pinned Nf3, but the position is ripe for a Knight fork on g5. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Bh6+\(^4\) Kg8 20 Qxf7+ Kxf7 21 Ng5+\(^5\) Kg8 22 Nxe4 Bxd1 23 Rxd1. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) This clears the g5 square for the Knight with tempo.

16. Black’s Queen is tied to the defense of c6. The position is ripe for a Knight fork on e5. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxf7 Rxf7\(^1\) 18 Bxf7+ Kxf7\(^2\). How does White win here?

\(^1\) White is up the exchange and a pawn after 17...Kh7 18 Re4 Rxf7 19 Ng5+ Kg6 20 Nxf7 and threatens 21 Qxc6+. \(^2\) White is up the exchange and a pawn after 18...Qxf7 19 Qxc6.
17. Black’s Nc5 is inadequately defended. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bxf7+ Rxf7\(^1\) 15 Nxf7 Kxf7\(^2\). How can White win material here?

\(^1\) White is up a pawn after 14...Kh8 15 Bxc5 Bxc5 16 Ne6 Bxe6 17 Bxe6. \(^2\) Better is 15...Be6 16 Nxe6+ gxh6 17 Bxh6, when White has a Rook and three pawns for two pieces. The actual game continued 15...Kh8 16 Nxe6+ when White is up the exchange and two pawns after either 16...Kh7 17 Nf5 (1-0) or 16...gxh6 17 Bxc5 Bxc5 18 Qc4+ Be6 19 Qxc5.

18. The count on f7 is 3-3, 2-2 on g7. White's Bh6 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rxf7\(^8\) Nxf7\(^1\) 21 Bxf7+ Qxf7 22 Rxf7 Kxf7. How can White win material here?

\(^1\) 20...Qxg3 loses to 21 Rf8, mate.

19. White’s Ng5 is under attack, but White has the advantage on the queenside. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxf7 Rxf7\(^1\) 18 Bxf7+ Nxf7 19 axb6 Bb7 20 Rxa7 Rxa7\(^2\) 21 bxa7 Qd5. What is the material balance? For an extra challenge (11 ply), how does White convert his passed pawn for a win?

\(^1\) After 17...Nxf7 18 axb6 Bb7 19 bxa7, White has three pawns for the piece and pressure on both the kingside and queenside. \(^2\) In the game Black tried 20...Bxc2 21 Kxg2 (1-0), but the check on g4 does nothing, e.g., 21...Qg4+ 22 Bg3 Qe4+ 23 f3 Qe6 24 Rxa8+ Qxa8 25 b7 and the pawn queens.

20. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Nxf7 Rxf7 12 Bxf7+\(^1\) Kxf7 13 e5 g5\(^2\) 14 Qxg5 dxe5\(^3\) 15 dxe5 Ng4. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) 12 e5 can be met by 12...d5. \(^2\) Trying to break the pin with 13...dxe5 14 dxe5 g5 drops the Nc6 to 15 Qc4+. \(^3\) The actual game continued 14...Ne4 15 Qh5+ Ke6 (other moves give up the Ne4) 16 d5+ Kd7 17 e6, mate.
21. White’s Bc4 is under attack, but can open up the f-file for his Rook. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxf7+ Rxf7 14 Nxf7 Qxf7\(^1\) 15 fxe4 Qe7\(^2\) 16 e5 Nxe5\(^3\) 17 dxe5 Qxe5. What is the material balance?

1 Black’s Nf6 is also pinned after 14…Kxf7. 2 15…Bb4 drops a piece to 16 e5. 3 Best. After 16…Be7 17 exf6 Qxe3+ 18 Kh1 Nxf6, Black is down the exchange without much counterplay.

22. Visualize the position after the moves 17 dxe5 Bf6\(^1\) 18 Bxf7+ Kxf7 19 Qc4+ Kg7 20 Rxd7+ 2 Qxd7 1 e6. What is the material balance?

1 17…Bf8 18 e6 fxe6 18 Bxe6+ Kh8 20 Bh2+Bg7 loses to 21 Bxg7+ Kxg7 22 Rxd7 Bxd7 23 Qd4+ Kh6 (23…Kh8 24 Qf6 is mate) 24 g4, threatening 25 g5+ Kh5 26 Qh4, mate. 2 Black resigned here. White is up only a pawn after 20 exf6+ Nxf6.

23. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxf7+ Rxf7\(^1\) 13 Nxf7 Kxf7 14 Qh5+\(^2\) Kg8\(^3\) 15 Bg5\(^\#\) g6. Both Queens are under attack, but White can save his Queen and win Black’s Queen. How? There are two solutions.

1 12…Kh8 can be met by 13 Qh5 (intending 14 Bg6), when 13…Bxe5 14 Bg6 h6 loses to 15 Bh6, for example, 15…gxh6 16 Qxh6+ Kg8 17 Qh7, mate or 15…Kg8 16 Be3 (threatening both 17 Qh7 and 17 Bxc5) Rf6 gives White a forced mate – 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Bxc5+ d6 19 Qh8+ Ke7 20 Rxe5+ and now: a) 20…Rf6 21 Qxg7, mate; b) 20…Kd7 21 Be8+ Qxe8 22 Qxe8, mate; or c) 20…Be6 21 Qxg7+ Rf7 22 Qxf7, mate. 2 Also good is 14 Qd5+ Ne6 (14…Kf8 15 Bg5 wins, e.g., Bb7 16 Qf5+, with 17 Bxd8) 15 Qxa8. 3 14…Kg8 15 Re8+ wins Black’s Queen, as does 14…g6 15 Qxh7+ Kh6 (15… Kf8 16 Bh6 is mate) 16 Qh4+ g5 17 Bxg5+.

24. The count on f7 is 2-3, but White can add another attacker, after which Black’s 7th rank becomes weak. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Qh5 h6 18 Nxf7 Rxf7\(^1\) 19 Qxf7+ Qxf7 20 Bxf7+ Kxg7 21 Rd7+ Kg8 22 Rxb7. What is the material balance and how can White win more material here?

1 18…Kh7 allows mate in three – 19 Ng5+ Kh8 20 Qg6 hxg5 21 Qh5, mate.
25. Black has just played f5, weakening the a2-g8 diagonal. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bc4+ Kh8 12 Ng5 f4 13 Be5 Qe8 14 Nf7+ Rxf7 15 Bxf7 Qxf7. What is the material balance and how does White win material here?

1 White’s threat is Nf7+. 2 The threat of Nf7+ is on again. 3 White wins the exchange after 13...Be8 14 Qxd8 Rxd8 15 Ne6. 4 14...Kg8 drops the Queen to 15 Nd6+.

26. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bc4 Qh5 19 Rxf7 Rxf7 20 Bxf7+ Kxf7 21 Qb3+ Ke8. What is the material balance and how does White get his material back?

1 This is better than 21 Rf1+ Kg7 22 Qb8 23 Qf7+ Kh6, intending 24...Rf8, when White lacks clear compensation for the piece.

27. Black's Nb7 is hanging. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Bxe6 Re7 25 Bxf7+ Rxf7 26 Nxf7 Kxf7. What is the material balance and how can White win material here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 24 Nxf7 Kxf7 25 Qxe6+ wins Black's Rce8, but better is 24...Re8. 2 24...fxe6 25 Qxe6+ allows a smothered mate, e.g., 25...Kh8 26 Nf7+ Kg8 27 Nh6+ Kh8 28 Qg8+ Rgx8 29 Nf7, mate. 3 Hint: Black's Nb7 is hanging.

28. White is up a pawn, but his Ng5 and Pb6 are under attack, yet Black's Queen can be drawn away from the queenside. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Nxf7 Rd7 23 Qxg6 Rxgx6 24 Rxf7. How does White win in this position?

1 22...Rxg7 23 Rxf7 Qxg7 24 Rxf7 Kxf7 loses to 25 Qxe6, e.g., 25...Ne7 26 Qc7 when 26...Rc8 loses to 27 Qxc8 Nxc8 28 b7. 2 Otherwise White is up a piece and two pawns.
29. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 9 Bxf7+ 10 Nxf7 Kxg7 11 e5+Nbd7 12 exf6 gxf6. What is the material balance and why can’t Black pay 12…Nxf6?

1 9 Nxf7 gives Black the advantage after 9…Qe7 10 Ng5+ Kh8 11 e5 d3+ 12 Kh1 Ng4. 2 9…Kh8 gives White the advantage after 10 Be6 Qe7 11 Bxc8 Rxc8 12 e5, e.g., 12…Nfd7 13 Qd3 g6 14 Rf7. 3 10…Qe7 is better, although White remains up the exchange after 11 e5 Qxf7 12 exf6. 4 Better is 11 Qh5+ Kg8 12 Qxc5.

30. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxf7+ Rxf7 14 e6 Re7 15 exd7+ Kh8 16 Rxe7 17 Qxe7 18 Qxe7 19 Qf7, when White threatens both 20 Qf8 mate and 20 Rxe8+ Qxe8 21 Qxe8, mate.

1 13…Kh8 loses to 14 e6, when 14…Nfd6 loses to 15 e7, forking Black's Queen and Rook. 2 14…Kf8 15 exf7+ gives White the exchange and a pawn, while 14…Nfd6 15 exf7+ Kf8 16 fxe8=Q+ Nxe8 nets White a Rook. 3 Also good is 16 Bg5 Rxe1+ 17 Rxe1 Qxd7 18 Re7 Qc6 19 Qf7, when White threatens both 20 Qf8 mate and 20 Rxe8+ Qxe8 21 Qxe8, mate.

31. Black’s Ra8 is undefended and White’s d-pawn is unobstructed. Visualize the position after the moves 9 Nxf7 Rxf7 10 Bxf7+ Kxg7 11 d5 Na5. What is the material balance and how can White win material here?

1 Also good is 11 Qf3+ Nf6 12 d5, e.g., 12…Nb4 13 d6 Bx6 14 Qxa8, but 11 d5 prevents Black's counterplay on c2. 2 11…Nb4 12 a3 traps Black's Knight, while 11…Nf6 12 dxc6 (1-0) dxc6 leaves White up the exchange, and if 11…Ne5 then 12 Qe2 Nf6 13 Qxe5, when White is up the exchange and a pawn.

32. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxf7 Rxf7 18 Rxf7 Kxf7 19 Nxc6+ Kg6 20 Qe4+ Kg5 21 h4+. How many legal moves does Black have and how does White mate after each one?

1 Alternatives: a) 19…hxg5 loses to 20 Qxe6+ Kh8 21 Qf7, mate; b) 19…Kf8 drops the Queen to 20 Nxe6+; c) 19…Kg8 20 Qxe+ Kh8 21 Qg8 is mate; d) 19…Kc7 20 Qxe6+ Kd8 21 Nf7 is mate. 2 20 Qxe6 allows 20…Nf6, defending. 3 20…Kf6 allows mate in three – 21 Qxe6+ Kxg5 22 h4+ Kh5 23 Qf5/Be2, mate.
33. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bxf7+ Rxf7 19 Rxg7 hxg7 20 Qh5 gxh4 21 Qg6 Qf8 22 Nxd6 Qxf7 23 Qxf7+ Kh8. What is the material balance?

1 18...Kh8 can be met by 19 Qh5, intending 20 gxh6, attacking two pieces at once. 2 This best way to defend the Bg7. 3 This move wins a pawn, threatens 23 Raf1, and also keeps the game m more under control than after 22 Rxf8+ Nxf8 23 Qxd6 (23 Qg5) Bxc3 24 Rf1 Bd4+ 25 Kh1 Bg4.

34. White’s Rf6 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Raf1 cxd4 20 Rxf7 Rxf7 21 Rxf7 Qc5 22 Rg7+ Kxg7 23 Nxe6+ Kh8 24 Nxc5 Nxc5 25 Qxd4. What is the material balance?

1 After 19...Nxf6 20 exf6 Qd6 21 Ne4 (21 Nh3 Rfc8 22 Qh6 allows 22...Qf8, defending) dxe4 22 Qh6, when White is up a Queen for a Rook and two pawns after 22...Qxd4+ 23 Kh1 Qxf6 24 Rxf6. 2 21...Qxf7 22 Nxf7 Kxf7 23 Qxd4 gives White a Queen and pawn for a Rook and Knight, while 21...Qd8 loses to 22 Nxe6, attacking Black’s Queen and threatening 23 Rg7+ Kh8 24 Qh6. 3 Black resigned here. 22 Nxe6 is also possible. 4 22...Kh8 23 Rxf7+ Kg8 24 Qf4 Rf8 loses to 25 Rh8+, e.g., 25...Kh8 26 Qb4+ Kg7 27 Kh7, mate.

35. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Rxf7 Rxf7 14 Bxf7+ Kxf7 15 Qh5+ Kf8 16 Rf1+ Bf6 17 Nd5+ cxd5 18 Bxf6 gxf6 19 Rxf6+ Ke7 20 Rf7+. What is the material balance?

1 Best. 15...Ke6 loses to 16 Qf5, mate, 15...Kg8 loses to 16 Qe8+ Bf8 17 Rf1, threatening 18 Qf7+ Kh8 19 Qxf8+, and 15...g6 allows 16 Qxh7+ Ke6 17 Bd3, when Black can’t stop 18 Qg8+, driving Black’s King to either d6 or f6, when White’s Rook enters the battle with check. 2 17 Bxf6 isn’t possible it’s pinned. 3 17...Nd7 allows 18 b4 (1-0), when 18...Qe4 loses to 19 Bd6+ Kg8 20 Qe8+ Nh8 21 Qxf8, mate. 4 18...Kg8 loses to 19 Bxg7, e.g., 19...Kxg7 20 Rf7+ Kg8 21 Qxh7, mate or 19...Qe7 20 Bf8 Qe6 21 Bh6 (threatening 22 Rf8, mate) Qe7 22 Qg5+ Qxg5 (22...Kh8 23 Qxe7) 23 Rf8, mate. 5 19...Kg8 loses to 20 Rf7 with 21 Qxh7, mate.

36. White can occupy the 7th rank. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Bxf7+ Rxf7 21 Nxh7 Kxh7 22 Re7+ Kf8 23 Ra6 Rd5 24 g4 Bc2 25 Rg7 Kxg7 26 Re7+ Kg8. How can White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 20...Kh8 loses to 21 Nxf6+, e.g., 21...hxg6 22 Qh4+ Bh6 23 Qxh6, mate. 2 22...Kg8 loses to 23 Re8+ Be8 (23...Kf7 24 Qe7, mate) 24 Qe7. 3 To clear a path to e5. White is up the exchange and some pawns after 24...Qf6 25 Qe3 Kg8 26 gxf5. 4 Hint: 27 Qf6 isn’t possible, but White can still take advantage of Black’s weak g7.
37. White is down a pawn and his Pc4 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Qh4 h6 23 Nxf7 Rxh7 24 Rxf7 Kxh7 25 Qg4+ Rh6 26 e6+ Kg8 27 Qxg6 Qb8 28 Bxh6 Bxh6. How does White mate in two?

1 White's threat is 26 Qe6+ Kf8 27 Bxg6 with 28 Qf7, mate. 25 Qe4 is similar, but 25 e6+ Kg8 26 Qe4 achieves nothing after 26...Bxc4 27 Bxc4 Nd6. 2 White's e-pawn cuts the board in half. Mate is unavoidable. 3 This defends the Ne8.

38. White is down a pawn and his Ng5 is under attack, but has a lead in development. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxf7 Kxf7 18 fxg6+ hxg6 19Bg5 Nd7 20 Qe2 Rb4 21 Qe6+ Kg7 22 Rxf6 Nxf6 23 Rf1 Qf8 24 Bxf6+ Kh7. What is the material balance and how does White win here?

1 18...Kxg6 19 Qd3+ wins the Rc4. Black's best option may be to decline the pawn with either 18...Kg7 or 18...Kg8 19 gxh7+ Kh8. 2 21...Kf8 22 Bh6 is mate. 3 23...Rxb2 loses to 24 Bxf6+, attacking Black's King, Queen and Rook.

39. White is down two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 26 exf7+ Bxf7 27 Bxf7+ Kxf7 28 Nxf7 gxf7 29 Rxf7+ Kg8 30 Bh6+ R Kg8 31 Qxe7 Qd4 32 Rg5+ Kh7. How does White mate in two?

1 28...Bf6 can be met by 29 Ne7 with multiple threats (30 Nxe8, 30 Bg5, 30 Qf3, etc) and 29...Kxe7 drops the Queen to 30 Bxc5+. 2 29...Kxe7 loses the Queen to 30 Bxc5, while White is up the exchange after 29...Bf6 30 Bxc5 threatens 30 Qe7+. 3 Black can’t avoid mate. 4 Black is down the exchange and a pawn after 30...Nxe7, mate, while 30...Kh8 loses to 31 Qe5+ Kg8 32 Qh5, mate. 4 31...Qg4 drops the Queen to 32 Rg5+.

40. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bxf7+ Rxf7 15 Nxf7 Qf8 16 Bg5 Nfd5 17 Nxd5 Nxd5 18 Rxe7 Nxe7 19 Nh6+ Kh8 20 Bxe7. Why can't Black play Qxe7 and how does White win after Qe8 21 Nf7+ Kg8?

1 White's threat is 16 N6d6+, winning Black's Queen. 2 15...Qxf7 16 Rxe7 leaves White up the exchange and a pawn (see exercise 1). 3 Black is down the exchange and a pawn after 16 Qxf7 17 Rxe7, as well as after 16...Nbd5 17 Ne5.
This chapter contains exercises in which White has or can get an extra attacker on f7, which allows White to sink a piece on f7, often with advantage.

In Diagram 1 the count on f7 is 1-2, but after the moves 1 Qd5+ Kh8, White has gain a 2-1 advantage on f7 (see Diagram 2), when 2 Nf7+ forks Black's King and Queen and wins the exchange after 2...Rxf7 3 Qxf7.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. White Wins Material with the Move Nf7+
2. White Wins Material by Freeing up f7
3. Mates Involving the Move Nxh6+
4. Mates Involving the Move Ng6+
5. Mates Involving the Maneuver Ng6-f8 with Qh7
6. White Plays Bg5
7. Back Rank Mates
8. Attacking g7
9. Attacking along the Diagonals
10. Miscellaneous Mates
11. Mate Threat Wins Black’s Queen
12. Miscellaneous Tactics
13. King Hunts

These themes are illustrated using sixty preparatory positions, which are followed by forty visualization exercises ranging in depth from five to twenty-one ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply:</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. **White Wins Material with the Move Nf7+**

44 **[VX-75]**. White has an extra attacker on f7 and wins the exchange with 15 Nf7+.

45 **[VX-43]**. White wins the exchange with 14 Bc4+ Kh8 15 Nxf7, since 14...Kf8 15 Nxh7 is mate.

46 **[VX-53]**. White wins the exchange with 12 Qd5+ Kh8 13 Nf7+.

47 **[VX-47]**. White wins the exchange with 18 Qa2+ Kh8 (18...Kf8 19 Nxh7 is mate) 19 Nf7+ Rxf7 20 Qxf7.

48 **[VX-42]**. White wins the exchange with 8 Qh5 h6 9 Nxf7, since 9...Qe8 drops the Queen to 10 Nd6+.

49 **[VX-52]**. White wins the exchange with 11 Ng5, threatening both 12 Nf7+ and 12 Ne6. 11...Qe6 12 Nf7+ wins the exchange, since 12...Kg8 drops the Queen to 13 Nd6+.

2. **White Wins Material by Freeing up f7**

50 **[VX-58]**. White can win Black’s Nd3 by vacating f7 with 20 Qb3, with the dual threat of 21 Nf7+ and 21 Qxd3.

51 **[VX-64]**. White can win Black’s Nd2 by vacating f7 with 25 Qf4/Qa2, with the dual threat of 26 Nf7+ and 26 Qxd2.

52 **[VX-65]**. White is up the exchange and can win a piece with 11 Qxf5 (1-0) Nxf5 12 Nf7+ Kg8 13 Nxh8, when White is up a Rook and a pawn.
3. Mates Involving the Move N×h6+

53 [VX-65]. White wins with 11 N×h6+ K×h7/K×h8 12 Nf5/Ng4/Ng8, mate.

54 [VX-73]. White wins with 12 N×h6+ K×h7/K×h8 13 Ng4/Nf5/Ng8, mate.

55 [VX-42]. White can either win Black’s Qe8 or mate with 10 N×h6+ K×h7/K×h8 11 Nf7+ (other moves drops the Qh5) K×g8 12 Qh8, mate.

4. Mates Involving the Move N×g6+

56 [VX-58]. 19 N×g6 is mate.

57 [VX-59]. White wins with 23 N×g6+ h×g6 24 Qh3, mate.

58 [VX-45]. White mate in three with 17 N×g6+ h×g6 18 Qh4+ B×h6 19 Q×h6, mate.

59 [VX-71]. White has already played N×g6+ (see next diagram), and now wins with 24 R×h3+ N×h6 25 B×h6, mating, e.g., 25...gxh6 26 R×h6, mate, or 25...Q×f6 26 B×g7/B×g5, mate.

60 [VX-71]. 22 N×g6+ wins (1-0), since 22...h×g6 loses to 23 R×e3, e.g., 23...N×g8 24 R×h3+ N×h6 25 B×h6, mating, and 22...N×g6 drops the Queen for a Rook and Knight.

61 [VX-78]. White wins with 24 N×g6+ (1-0) h×g6 25 R×e6 N×f6 26 B×f6 B×f6 27 Q×f6+ K×g8 28 R×h4 with 29 R×h8, mate.
5. Mates Involving the Maneuver Ng6-f8 with Qh7

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diagram 62 [VX-64]. White mates in three – 25 Ng6+ Kh7 26 Nxf8+ Kh8 27 Qh7, mate.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diagram 63 [VX-48]. White mates with 20 Ng6+ Kh7 21 Qd3, threatening 22 Nxf8+ Kh8 23 Qh7, mate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagram 64 [VX-72]. White mate in three with a Queen sacrifice – 22 Nxf8+ Kh8 23 Qh7+ Nxh7 24 Ng6, mate.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diagram 65 [VX-80]. White mates in four – 29 Ng6+ Kh7 30 Nf8+ Bxf8 31 Qg6+ Kh8 32 Qxh6, mate.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diagram 66 [VX-70]. White mates with 17 Qc2+ Kh8 (17...g6 loses to 18 Qxg6+ Kh8 19 Qxh6, mate) 18 Ng6+ Kh7 19 Nf8+ Kh8 20 Qh7, mate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagram 67 [VX-48]. White mates with 21 Ng6+ Kh7 22 Nf8+ Kh8 23 Re8, intending 24 Ng6+ Kh7 25 Rh8, mate.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6. White Plays Bg5

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diagram 68 [VX-75]. White mates in three with 17 Bg5 (1-0) Qg8 18 Bf6+ Qg7 19 Qxg7/ Bxg7, mate.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Diagram 69 [VX-67]. 15 Bg5 wins Black's Queen with (1-0), since 15...hxg5 loses to 15 Qh5, mate and 15...Qxg5 loses to 16 Qg8, mate.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diagram 70 [VX-56]. The count on e7 is 2-2, but 16 Bg5 wins Black's Knight, since 16...hxg5 loses to 17 Qh5, mate.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7. Back Rank Mates

71 [VX-45]. White mates in two with 18 Qe8+ (1-0) Bf8 19 Qxf8, mate.

72 [VX-54]. White wins with 26 Rxf7, when 26...Rxf7 27 Qxf7+ Kh8 loses to 28 Qf8+ (1-0) Rxf8 29 Rxf8, mate, and 26...Rfe8 loses to 27 Rd7 with 28 Qf7+.

73 [VX-69]. After 24 Bxe6, White is up a piece and a pawn and threatens 25 Qg8, mate, and if 24...Qxe6 then White should not play 25 Qxf8+ Qg8, but 25 Qxe6, when 25...Rxe6 allows 26 Rxf8, mate.

8. Attacking g7

74 [VX-70]. 20 Nf5 threatens mate on g7, when 20...Kf8 allows 21 Qxg7+ Ke8 22 Qe7, mate.

75 [VX-44]. 15 Nxe6 threatens both 16 Qxg7, mate and 16 Nxd8, winning Black's Queen.

76 [VX-63]. White wins with 25 Bxg6, threatening 26 Bh7, mate, and if Black defends h7 with 25...Nf8, then 26 Qg7 is mate.

9. Attacking along the Diagonals

77 [VX-80]. White wins with 30 Qxg7+ Ke7 31 Bf6, mate (1-0).

78 [VX-77]. White doesn't have to take Black's Rc8, but can play 25 d5 instead, clearing d4 for the Bishop and threatening 26 Rxc6 bxc6 27 Bd4+.

79 [VX-63]. White wins with 25 Bxg6, threatening 26 Bh7, mate, and if Black defends h7 with 25...Nf8, then 26 Qg7 is mate.
10. Miscellaneous Mates

80 [VX-42]. White wins with 11 Bxh6 threatening 12 Bf4, mate, when 11...gxh6 loses to 12 Qxh6 is mate.

81 [VX-61]. White mates with 21 Rf7+ Kg8 22 Qh6 Nf8 23 Qg7, mate.

82 [VX-62]. White mates with 17 Bxg6, threatening 18 Qxh7, mate, and if 17...hxg6 then 18 Nxg6 is mate.

83 [VX-71]. White wins with 19 Qh5, e.g., 19...g6 20 Bh6/Qh6, mate or 19...Ng6 20 Nxg6+ hxg6 21 Qh8, mate.

84 [VX-77]. White mates in three with a smothered mate – 26 Nh6+ Kh8 27 Qg8+ Rgx8 28 Nf7, mate.

85 [VX-74]. White mates with 24 Qg6+ Kh8 25 Nf7, mate.

86 [VX-74]. White wins with 24 Nf7+ Kh7 25 R-any, mate.

87 [VX-77]. White mates with 23 Qh7+ Kf8 24 Qh8+ Ke7 25 Qxg7+ Ke8 26 Qf7, mate.

88 [VX-80]. White mates in five: 29 Qg6+ Kh8 30 Nxd7 Be5 31 Nf8 with 32 Qh7, mate.
11. Mate Threat Wins Black’s Queen

89 [VX-50]. 21 Nh4 threatens Ng6, mate, when 21...Bxg5 drops the Queen to 22 Ng6+.

90 [VX-57]. White wins with 24 Qxg6, with the dual threat of 25 Nf7+ and 25 Qh7, mate. Note that 24…Kg8 25 Qh7 is still mate.

91 [VX-74]. 22 Rxf5 threatens 23 Nf7, mate and if Black moves his Queen, then Rook anywhere threatens 24 Qh7, mate.

12. Miscellaneous Tactics

92 [VX-48]. White wins the exchange with 20 Bg6+ Kh8 21 Nf7+.

93 [VX-70]. Black’s g-pawn is pinned, allowing White to win Black’s Nf6 with 20 Re5 Qg4 21 Rxf6.

94 [VX-70]. White is down a piece, but after 17 Ng6+ Kh7 18 Nxf8+ Nxf8 19 bxc3, he’s up the exchange and a pawn (6 points to 3).

95 [VX-74]. 24 Rxf8+ wins, since 24...Qxf8 drops the Queen to 25 Ng6+ and 24...Bxf8 loses to 25 Qg6, threatening 26 Qh7, mate.

96 [VX-55]. 25 Rxf7 threatens 26 Rf5+ Kh7 27 Rh5, mate, and if 25...Ne5 then Black’s Re8 is overworked -- 26 Bxe5 (1-0) Rxe5 27 Rxa7+ Kf8 28 Rxa8+, when White is up four pawns.

97 [VX-77]. White gets a windmill with 24 Qxe6+ Kh8 (24...Kf8 loses to 27 Nh7, mate) 25 Nh7+ Kg8 26 Nxd6+ Kh8 (26...Kf8 loses to 27 Rc5-f5) 27 Nf7+ Kg8 28 Nxd8+, when White is up a Rook, Bishop, and pawn.
13. King Hunts

98 [VX-73]. White mates in three with 15 Qf7+ Kh4 16 g3+ and now: 16...Kg4 17 Qf5, mate; 16...Kg5 17 Qg6/Qf5, mate; or 16...Kh3 17 Qf5/Bf5, mate or 17 Qh5+ Qh4 18 Qxh4, mate

99 [VX-80]. White wins with 30 Qxg7+ Ke6 31 Qg4+ Kh7 32 Bf6+ Kh8 33 Qh5+ Ke6 (33...Kg8 34 Qg6, mate) 34 Qe8+ Be7 35 Qxe7, mate.

100 [VX-80]. White wins with 32 Bf5+, e.g., a) 32...Kd6 33 Qe5, mate; b) 32...Kd8 33 Qg8+ Bf8 34 Qxf8, mate; or c) 32...Ke8 33 Qg6+ and now: c1) 33...Kd8 34 Qg8+ Bf8 35 Qxf8, mate or c2) 33...Kf8 34 Bg7+ Kg8 35 Bxh6+ Kh8 36 Qg7, mate.

101 [VX-73]. White wins with 16 Qf7+, e.g., a) 16...g6 17 Qf3+ Kh4 18 Qh3, mate; b) 16...Kg4 17 Qf5+ Kh4 18 Qh3/g3, mate; or c) 16...Kh4 17 g3+ Kg4 (17...Kh3 18 Qf5, mate) 18 Qf5, mate;

102 [VX-73]. White wins with 16 g3+, e.g., a) 16...Kh3 17 Bf5, mate; b) 16...Kh5 17 Qf7+ with either 17...g6 18 Qxg6, mate, or 17...Kg4 18 Qf5, mate; or c) 16...Kg4 17 f3+ Kh5 (17...Kh3 18 Bf5, mate) 18 Qf7+ g6 19 Qxg6, mate

103 [VX-73]. White wins with 16 h3+, e.g., a) 16...Kh4 17 g3+ a1) 17...Kxh3 18 Bf5, mate or a2) 17...Kh5 18 Qf7+ g6 19 Qxg6/Bc2, mate; b) 16...Kh5 17 Qf7+ and now: b1) 17...g6 18 Qxg6+ Kh4 19 Qg4/Qxh6, mate, or b2) 17...Kh4 with either 18 g3+ Kxh3 19 Qf5/Bf5, mate or 18 Qf4+ Kh5 19 Qg4, mate;
41. The count on f7 is 4-3, but White's Queen is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Bxf7+ Nxf7\(^1\) 25 Rx\(_f\)7 Qxe\(_7\)\(^2\) 26 Rx\(_e\)7. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) 24...Kh8 loses to 25 Bh3, when Ne6 drops the Knight to 26 Qxd6 cxd6 27 Bxe6. \(^2\) 25...Rx\(_f\)7 26 Qxf\(_7\)+ Kh8 is similar to the game, except that the Queens are still on the board.

42. The count on f7 is 2-2, but White can add another attacker. Visualize the position after the moves 8 Qh5 h6 9 Nxf7 Rx\(_f\)7\(^1\) 10 Bx\(_f\)7+. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) 9...Qe8 loses to 10 Nhx6+ Kh7 11 Nf7+ Kg8 12 Qh8, mate. \(^2\) 10 Qx\(_f\)7+ is also good.

43. White is up a pawn. The count on f7 is 1-2, but White can add two additional attackers. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Ng5 h6\(^1\) 14 Bc4+\(^2\) Kh8 15 Nf7+ Rx\(_f\)7\(^2\) 16 Bx\(_f\)7. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) 13...Rf6 loses material to 14 Bc4+, since 14...Kf8 15 Nhx7 is mate. \(^2\) 15...Kg8 loses to 16 Nhx6+ Kh7 17 Nxf5/Ng4/Ng8, mate.

44. The count on f7 is 1-1, but White can add another attacker. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Qh5 h6\(^1\) 14 Qx\(_f\)7+ Kh8. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

\(^1\) This loses. A better defense is 13...Bx\(_g\)5 14 hx\(_g\)5 Nf8. \(^2\) Hint: White has a winning Knight fork.
45. White is down a pawn, but has a 3-2 advantage on f7. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxf7+ Rxf7\(^1\) 17 Qxf7+ Kh8. How does White mate in two? See the last footnote for a hint.

\(^1\) 16...Kh8 allows mate in three: 17 Nxg6+ hxg6 18 Qh4+ Bh6 19 Qxh6, mate. \(^2\) Hint: Black’s back rank is weak.

46. White weakens e8, then adds an extra attacker on f7. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Rxe8+ \(^1\) Rxe8 24 Rf1 b5\(^2\) 25 Qxf7+ Qxf7 26 Nxf7. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) White gains little after 23 Rf1 Qxg5 24 Qxf7+, since 25 Qxe8 is not a threat. White can win the exchange for a pawn with 23 Nge6, e.g., 23...Rx e6 24 Qxe6 Bxd4+ 25 cxd4 Qxd4+, but the text move is better. \(^2\) Now 24...Qxg5 loses to 25 Qxf7+ Kh8 26 Qxe8+.

47. The count on f7 is 1-2, but White can add another attacker and drive Black’s King away from f7. Visualize the position after the moves 17 exf5\(^3\) exf5\(^5\) 18 Qa2+ Kh8\(^4\) 19 Nf7+ Rxf7 20 Qxf7. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) This opens up the a2-g8 diagonal for White. \(^2\) White is up two pawns after 17...Nf8 18 fxe6. \(^3\) 18...Kf8 allows 19 Nxf7, mate.

48. White is up a pawn, but both of his central pawns are under attack. The count on f7 is 2-2, but White can add an extra attacker. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Ne5 Nxd6\(^1\) 18 Nxd6 Qxd6 19 Bxf7+\(^2\) Rxf7\(^3\) 20 Qxf7+. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) 17...Be6 drops another pawn to 18 Bxe6 fxe6 19 Qxe6+, while 17...Nxe4 drops a pawn and the exchange to 18 Bxf7+ Kh8 (18...Kh7 19 Qd3 threatens 20 Nf6+ Kh8 21 Qh7, mate) 19 Ng6+. \(^2\) This is better than 19 Nxf7 Qxd4. \(^3\) 19...Kh7 drops the exchange to 20 Bg6+ Kh8 21 Nf7+, while 19...Kh8 loses to 20 Ng6+ Kh7 21 Qd3, with the threat of 22 Nxf8+ Kh8 23 Qh7, mate.
49. White is up a pawn and has an extra attacker on f7, but his Ne4 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Nf7+ Rxf7\(^1\) 26 Qxf7 fxe4. What is the material balance and how can White win a piece here?

\(^1\) 25...Kg8 26 Nh6+ gives White a smothered mate.

50. White has a 3-2 advantage on f7, but his Ng5 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Bxf7+\(^1\) Kh8 21 Nh4\(^2\) Bxg5. How can White win Black's Queen?

\(^1\) With Black's Qf8 and Kh8, White intends to occupy g6 with a Knight. \(^2\) White's threat is Ng6, mate. In the actual game White played 21 Bg6 hxg5 22 Ne5 Qf4 (better is 22...g4) 23 Nh7\(^+\) (1-0) Kg8 24 Nxg5\(^+\) with mate in three: 24...Kf8 (24...Kf8 25 Nh7, mate) 25 Qh3+ Kg8 26 Qh7+ Kf8 27 Qh8, mate.

51. White is down two pawns, but has an extra attacker on f7. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Nxf7 Qe7\(^1\) 13 Nxd6+ Be6 14 Qxb7 Ra7\(^2\) 15 Qxe7 Rxe7. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) 12...Be6 can be met by either a) 13 Nxd8 Bxb3 14 Nxb7, when two of Black's pieces are under attack, or b) 13 Qxe6 Rxe6 14 Nxd8, when White is up a piece for a pawn (1-0, 16). \(^2\) 14...Qxb7 15 Nxb7 is similar to the game, while Black is down a Rook and a pawn after 14...Nbd7 15 Nxe8 Qxe8 16 Bxc6.

52. Both f7 and e6 are weak. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Ng5 Qe8\(^1\) 12 Ne6 Nb6\(^2\) 13 Bb5\(^3\) Qf7\(^4\) 14 Nxf8 Qxf8. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) The actual game continued 11...Rf6 12 Nf7+ Rxf7 13 Bxf7 (1-0, 20). \(^2\) 12...Rg8 drops the Ra8 to 13 Nxc7. \(^3\) 13 Nxc7 Nxc4 14 Qc1 Qc6 15 Nxa8 allows Black to wins White's Na8 after 15...f4 16 Bxa7 Be6. \(^4\) 13...e6 drops the exchange to 14 Nc7.
53. White’s Nb5 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Nd6 Ne8 11 Nce4 f5. How does White material here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 This is too ambitious. Better is 11...Nxd6, taking the pressure off of f7. 2 Hint: White can add another attacker to f7.

54. White has an extra attacker on f7. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Nxf7 Bxf7 26 Rxf7 Rx7 27 Qxf7+ Kh8. How does White win here?

1 25...Rxf7 26 Rxf7 Rxd3 allows 27 Rf8+ Kh7 28 Qe8, threatening both 29 Rh8, mate and 29 Qxe6, while 25...Rxd3 loses to 26 Nxh6, e.g., 26...gxh6 27 Qg6+ Kh8 27 Rfx8, mate or 26...Kh7 with either 27 Nh7+ Kg8 28 Rfx8, mate. 2 26...Rfe8 loses to 27 Rd7, threatening 28 Qf7+.

55. White is down a piece for two pawns and his Rf4 and Pg2 are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Rxf7 Bxf7 25 Rxf7 Ne5. What is the material balance and how does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 White’s threat is 26 Rf5+ Kh7 27 Rh5, mate. 2 This prevents the mate by closing off the b2-h8 diagonal. 3 Hint: Black’s Re8 is overworked.

56. White has a 3-2 advantage on f7, but watch the count on e7 also. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Nxf7 Rxf7 15 Qxf7+ Kh8 16 Bg5 Qg8 17 Bxe7 Qxf7 18 Bxf7. What is the material balance?

1 14...Qe8 loses to both 15 Nxd6+ and 15 Nhx6+ Kh7 16 Nf7+ Kg8 17 Qh8, mate, while 14...Qd7 loses to both 15 Ne5+ and 15 Nhx6+ Kh8 16 Ng4/Ng8/Nf5, mate. 2 The actual game continued 16 Bd3 Bxd7 17 Bxh6 (1-0) Qf8 18 Qxf8+ Rxf8 19 Bd2, when White is up the exchange and two pawns. 3 16...hxg5 allows 17 Qh5, mate, while 16...Bf5 17 Bxe7 is similar to the main line.
57. The count on f7 is 1-1, but White can remove the Be6. Watch the count on g6 as well. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Nxe6 fxe6 22 Ng5+ Kg8 23 Qf7+ Kh8. How does White win in this position?

1 21...dxe6 22 Ng5+ Kg8 23 Qxf7+ is similar to the main line, while 21...Rxe6 drops the exchange and more to 22 Ng5+ Kg8 23 Qxf7+ Kh8 24 Nxe6 dxe6. 2 The only move, as both 22...Kh8 and 22...Kh6 drop the Queen to 23 Nf7+.

58. White's Be3 is under attack, but White can get an extra attacker on f7. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Qh5 Nxe3 18 Bxf7+ Rxf7 19 Qxf7+ Kh8. What is the material balance and how can White win here?

1 This loses material. Better is 17...g6. 2 18...Kh8 loses to 19 Ng6, mate.

59. The count on f7 is even, but White can add an extra attacker by giving up his Rf4 to get his Knight to e5. Visualize the position after the moves 19 g5 1 Nxf4 20 exf4 Be6 21 Ne5 Bxc5 22 Bxf7+ Rxf7 23 Qxf7+. What is the material balance?

1 Moving the Rook out of the way gets White nowhere, e.g., 19 Rf5 Ne7. 2 Black can keep the f-pawn defended with 20...Bd8 21 Ne5 Qc7, but then 22 Re1 threatens 23 Nxf7 Rx f7 24 Re8, mate. 3 The only move. 22...Kh8 loses to 23 Ng6+ hxg6 24 Qh3, mate.

60. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Ng5 Ne7 11 Qb3+ Kh8. Now 12 Nf7+ isn't possible because Rxf7 13 Qxf7 Be6 traps White's Queen, yet White can win material here. How?

1 Black can secure the a2-g8 diagonal at the cost of a pawn with 10...e6 11 exf5 Rx f5 (11...exf5 12 Qb3+) 12 Nxe6 Bxe6 13 Rxe6, when White is better after 13... d5 14 Bf4. 2 Relatively best is 11...e6 12 exf5 Rxf5.
61. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Bxg7+ Kg7 20 fxe6 Ne5 21 Rxf7+ Nxf7 22 Rxf7+ Qxf7 23 exf7 Kxf7. What is the material balance?

1 Taking on e6 with either the pawn or Rook loses to 21 Rf7+ Kg8 22 Qh6, with either 23 Qg7 or 23 Qxh7, mate.

62. Black has just taken White's Bg3. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Qxf7+ Kh8 17 Bxg6 1 Qxf2+ 18 Kxf2 Rf8 19 Qxf8+ Bxf8 20 Kxg6+ hxg6 21 Nxg6+. What is the material balance?

1 White's threat is 18 Qxh7, so Black gives up his Queen to freeze White's Queen. 2 17...hxg6 loses to 18 Nxg6, mate.

63. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Ng5 1 Qb6 22 Rf7 1 g6 23 Nxe6 Bxe6 24 Rxf8+ Rxf8. How does White mate in two?

1 White's threat is 22 Rxf8+ Bxf8 23 Nxe6 Bxe6 24 Qg6, with mate on h7. 2 21...Bxg5 22 Rxf8+ Qxf8 23 Rxf8+ Kxf8 24 Qxg5 gives White a Queen and pawn for two Rooks. 3 White's threat is 23 Rxf8+ Kxg7 24 Nxe6+ Kh6/Kh8 25 Qg7, mate. 4 23...Nxe5 24 Qxe5 Nxe6 loses to 25 Bxg6, threatening 26 Bh7, mate, when defending h7 with 25...Ng4 loses to 26 Qg7 mate. 25...Ng4 Qg7 is also mate (1-0).

64. White's Qg3 and Bd2 are under attack, but White can get another attacker on f7. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Qg6 Nxd2 23 Bxh7+ Rxh7 24 Qxh7+ Kh7 25 Rfd1 Ne4. What is the material balance and how does White win material here?

1 After 23...Kh8 24 Qd3, White's main threat is 25 Ng6+ Kh7 26 Nxg8+ Kh8 27 Qh7, mate. 2 After 24...Kh8 25 Qd4 White threatens both 26 Nf7+ and 26 Qxd2. 3 The only move to try to save the Knight.
65. White can add another attacker on f7. Visualize the position after the moves 8 Qh5 Bf5\(^1\) 9 Bxf7\(^+\) Rxh7\(^2\) 10 Qxf7+ Kh8. What is the material balance and how can White win a piece here?

\(^1\) 8...h6 9 Nxf7 forces Black to play 9...Rxh7, since 9...Bb4+ 10 Ne3 Qxd4 loses to 11 Nh6+ Kh7 12 Nf5/Ng4/Ng8, mate. \(^2\) Not so good is 9 Nxf7, which can be met by 9...Bb4+ with 10...Qxd4, e.g., 10 Ne3 Qxd4 or 10 Bd2 Bxd2+ 11 Nxd2 Qxd4. \(^3\) Better is 9...Kh8. This gives White a tactic.

66. White can add an extra attacker on f7. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Rhf1 Qc5 19 Nxf7\(^1\) Rxf7\(^2\) 20 Rxh7\(^3\) Qb6\(^4\) 21 Rxe7+ Kh8. How does White mate in two? See the last footnote for a hint.

\(^1\) White's threat is 20 Ng5+, when 20...Kh8 undefends the Rf8 and 20...Kg7 drops the Queen to 21 Ne6+. \(^2\) 19...Qxd4, e.g., 19...Nf5 drops the exchange to 20 Ng5+ Kh8 21 Ne6. \(^3\) White is threatening both 21 Rf5+, winning Black's Queen, and 21 Rxe7+ Kh8 22 Rxc7. Black resigned here. \(^4\) 20...Qe5+ 21 Kd1 doesn't change anything. \(^5\) Hint: Black's Nc6 is overworked.

67. White is down a pawn and his Ra1 is under attack, but can get an extra attacker on f7. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Ng5 Bxa1 12 Qh5 h6\(^1\) 13 Nxf7 Rxf7\(^2\) 14 Qxf7+ Kh8. How does White win Black's Queen?

\(^1\) After 12...Qxg5 13 Bxg5 Bxd4 14 Bf6 gx6 15 Bd3 Re8, White could take the perpetual check with 16 Qxh7+ Kf8 17 Qh8+ Ke7 18 Qxf6+ Kf8 19 Qh8+ or play on with 19 Re1, intending Re4-h4-h8, but White has to prove he has compensation after 19...Rxg5. \(^2\) 13...d5 14 Nxd8 Rxd8 15 Bb5 Nxd4 gives Black a Rook, Knight and pawn for the Queen, but better is 14 exd6, setting up a discovered check along the a2-g8 diagonal.

68. The count on f7 is 2-2, but White can add an extra attacker. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Rf3 Rad8 20 Raf1 Rd7\(^1\) 21 Rxf7 Rdx7 22 Rxf7 Rxf7 23 Qe8+ Qf8\(^2\). What is the material balance and how does White win here?

\(^1\) This weakens Black's back rank, which lets White get an extra attacker on f7. \(^2\) Better is 23...Kh7 24 Qxf7, when Black is down only a pawn.
69. The count on f7 is 2-2, but White can remove one of the Black’s defenders. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nxc5 Qxc5 21 Rxe6 Rbxe6\(^1\) 22 Qxf7+ Kh8 23 Bd5\(^k\) Qe7\(^2\) 24 Bxe6 Qxe6. What is the material balance and how does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 Best. 21...fxe6 drops the Re8 to 22 Qf7+ Kh8 23 Qxe8, while 21...Rxe6 allows mate in three – 22 Qxf7+ Kh8 23 Qxf8+ Qxf8 24 Rxf8, mate. 2 23...Rxe7 loses to 24 Qg8, mate. 3 Hint: Find something stronger than 25 Qxf8+, which can be met by 25...Qg8. Also, Black’s Re8 is overworked.

70. The count on f7 is 2-2, but White can add another attacker (the Rf1). Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nh4 Bxc3 16 Bxf7+ Rxf7\(^1\) 17 Qxf7+ Kh7 18 bxc3 Qxc3\(^2\) 19 Qg6+ Kg8. How can White win here?

1 16...Kh8 drops the exchange to 17 Ng6+ Kh7 18 Nxf8+ Nxf8 19 bxc3, while 16...Kh7 loses to 17 Qc2+, e.g., 17...g6 18 Qxg6+ Kh8 19 Qxh6, mate or 17...Kh8 18 Ng6+ Kh7 19 Nxf8+ Kh8 20 Qh7, mate. 2 18...Nf6 simply drops the Knight to 19 Rxf6, while 18...Qe5 19 Rae1 threatens both 20 Rf5 and 20 Re8, when 19...Nf6 drops the Knight to 20 Re5 Qg4 21 Rxf6.

71. White is down the exchange. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nh4 Nxe4 18 Qh5 Nef6\(^2\) 19 Bxf7+ Kh8\(^3\) 20 Qh6+ Kh7 21 Qf5 R Re7 22 Nxf8+ Kh8. How can White mate in two? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 This loses. 2 18...g6 loses to 19 Bxf7+, e.g., 19...Kxf7 20 Qxg6+ Ke7 21 Nf5, mate, or 19...Kh8 20 Nxe6+ Kg7 (21...Rxf8 22 Qh6 is mate) 22 Nf5+ and now: 22...Kxf8 23 Bxh6, mate, 22...Kh8 23 Qxh6, mate, or 22...Kf6 23 Qg6, mate. 3 19...Kh7 20 Qf5+ Kh8 21 Nf6+ Kh7 22 Nxf8+ is similar to the game. 4 21...Re6 drops a Rook and Bishop to 22 Nxf8+ Kh8 23 Nxe6. 5 Hint: Look for a Queen sacrifice.
73. The count on f7 is 2-2, but White can add an extra attacker. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Qh5 h6 11 Nxf7 Rx f7 12 Qxf7+ Kh7 13 Qg8+ Kg6 14 Bd3+ Kh5 15 Qf7+ Kh4 16 g3+ Kg4. How does White mate in this position?

1 Moving the Queen allows mate in two, e.g., 11...Qe7 12 Nxh6+ Kh7/Kh8 13 Ng4/f5/g8, mate, but now White has a forced mate in eight moves. 2 14...Kg5 15 Bc1+ mate in six (see the preparatory position). 3 White also mates with 16 Qf5, intending 17 g3, mate, and if 16...Qg5 then 17 Qh3 is mate.

74. White is down a pawn and both his Knights are under attack, but has an extra attacker on f7. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Rxf7 Nxe3 1 20 Qg6 Rg8 2 21 Bd3 Nf5 3 22 Rxf5 Be6 23 Qxe6 Rf8 24 Rxf8+. How can White win after either 24...Qxf8 or 24...Bxf8?

1 19...Bxe5 loses to 20 Qh7, mate. 2 The Knight is not a stable defender of g7, e.g., 20...Nf5 21 Bd3. 3 21...Bf5 loses to 22 Rxf5, with the dual threat of 23 Nf7, mate and 23 R-any with 24 Qh7, mate. 4 White threatens 23 Nf7+ and 23 R-any with 24 Qh7, mate. 5 This defends against 24 Nf7+. Moving the King (23...Kh7) loses to 24 Qg6+ Kh8 25 Nf7, mate, while moving the Queen (23...Qc7) loses to 24 Nf7+ Kh7 25 R-any, mate.

75. White can get an extra attacker on f7. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Qd3 g6 13 Qc4 Bd4 14 dxc6+ Kh8 15 Nf7+ Rx f7 16 Qxf7 Nxc6. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 Better is 13...b6. 13...Bb6 14 dxc6+ Kh8 15 cxb7 Bxb7 16 Nf7+ gives White the exchange and two pawns, while 13...Qb6 can be met by 14 Nce4, defending f2 and attacking c5 twice and intending to meet 14...Bd4 15 dxc6+ Kg7 with 16 cxb7 and 17 c3 and either 18 Ne6 or 18 Nd6. 2 14...Kg7 loses to 15 cxb7, when 15...Bxb7 drops the Queen to 16 Ne6+. 3 Hint: Black’s kingside dark squares are weak.

76. Black has just played e6-e5. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Qb3+ Kh8 13 Ng5 Na5 14 Nf7+ Kg8 15 Nxd8+ Nxb3 16 axb3 Rfxd8 17 Bg5 Re8 18 exf5 Bxf5. How does White win material here?

1 In the game Black tried to trap White's Queen with 14...Rxf7 15 Qxf7 d5, but White was able to save it with 16 Bg5 Nac6 17 exd5 Be8 18 Qe6 Bd7 19 Qd6 (1-0).
77. White's Ne4 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Bxd5 exd5 22 Qb3 Bh2+ 23 Kh1 Rf8 24 Qxd5+ Kh8 25 Nf7+ Rxf7 26 Qxf7 fxe4. What is the material balance and how can White win material?

1 21...fxe4 loses to 22 Qxe4, e.g., 22...h6 23 Qh7+ Kf8 24 Qh8+ Ke7 25 Qxg7+ Ke8 26 Qf7, mate or 22...g6 23 Nxe6 Bxe6 24 Bxe6+ Kh8 25 d5, clearing d4 and threatening 26 Rxc6 bxc6 27 Bd4+. 2 22...fxe4 23 Qxd5+ threatens a smothered mate, which Black can only avoid by playing 23...Be6, when White gets a windmill with 24 Qxe6+ (see the preparatory positions). 3 25...Kg8 allows 26 Nh6+, with a smothered mate.

78. White’s pawn on c3 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Qf3 Nxd5 23 Qxf7+ Kh8 24 Nxg6+ R hxg6 25 Re4 Nf6 26 Bxf6 Bxf6 27 Qxh6+ Kg8 28 Qg6+ Kf8. How does White mate in three? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 22...Rxc3 23 Qf4 Bb5 24 Rb2 doesn’t change anything, while 22...Qd8 23 Nxd7 Rxd7 gives White a 4-2 advantage on e6, e.g., 24 dxe6 fxe6 25 Rxe6, when White is up a pawn and has an attack. 2 Hint: Find something stronger than 29 Rh4, which lets Black’s King escape with 29…Ke7, making White’s task more difficult.

79. White is up a piece for a pawn, but his Na3 and Be2 are hanging. Visualize the position after the moves 20 fxe5 hxg5 21 Bc4 Qxa3 22 Rxf7 Rxf7 23 Bxf7+ R Kf8 24 Nh6+ Kf7 25 Qxg7+ Ke8 26 Qf7, mate or 22...g6 23 Nxe6 Bxe6 24 Bxe6+ Kh8 25 d5, clearing d4 and threatening 26 Rxc6 bxc6 27 Bd4+. 2 22...fxe4 23 Qxd5+ threatens a smothered mate, which Black can only avoid by playing 23...Be6, when White gets a windmill with 24 Qxe6+ (see the preparatory positions). 3 25...Kg8 allows 26 Nh6+, with a smothered mate.

80. The count on f7 is 4-3, but White’s Ne5 is pinned. Visualize the position after the moves 26 Rxf7 Rxf7 27 Rxf7 Rxf7 28 Bxf7+ Kf8 29 Nxd7 Ke7 30 Qxg7 Kxd7 31 Bg6+ Be7 32 Bf5+ Ke8 33 Qg6+. How does White mate here? Consider both 33...Kd8 and 33...Kf8.

1 This adds another attacker on f7. 2 22...Kh7 23 Qd3 Qc5+ 24 Kh1 g4 keeps Black in the game. 3 White’s threat is 25 Qxg6+ Kg8 26 Be4 Kh8 27 Oh5+ Bb6 28 Qxd6, mate. 4 24...Qb2 25 Qxg6+ Kg8 loses to either 26 Rf1 or 26 Bc4+ Kh8 27 Qh5+ Bh6 28 Qxb6, mate. 5 Black defends g6. 6 26...Qxc3 loses to 27 Qxg6+ Kg8 28 Rf1, threatening 29 Qh7, mate, which Black can only avoid by giving up his Queen with 28...Qxd3.
This chapter contains exercises in which White plays 1 Nxf7 and 2 Qxe6, when White has sacrificed a piece for a pawn on f7, but has obtained a powerful Queen on e6. A similar situation can occur if White sacrifices a Bishop on g6 with the moves 1 Bg6 fxg6 2 Qxe6+.

In Diagram 1, after the moves 1 Nxf7 Kxf7 2 Qxe6+ (see Diagram 2), if Black plays 2…Kf8, then after 3 Qxe7+ White is up a couple of pawns and will answer 3…Kg8 with 4 Nb5-d6, with a strong attack, while if 2…Kg6 then 3 Nxd5 threatens both 4 Nxc7 and 4 Nxe7+, winning back the piece and forking Black's Kg6 and Rc8.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. Miscellaneous Tactics
2. Pins
3. Smothered Mate
4. The Threat of Smothered Mate Wins Material
5. The Sequence Bg6 and Qf7
6. Checkmate from a Rook Lift
7. Miscellaneous Mates
8. How to Meet …Be7-g5, Discovering an Attack on White’s Qe6
9. Defensive Ideas for Black

These themes are illustrated using seventy-eight preparatory positions, which are followed by forty-four visualization exercises ranging in depth from five to twenty-four ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply:</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Miscellaneous Tactics

104 [VX-107]. White is down a piece for a pawn, but can get it back with 20 Qxe6+ Kg7 21 Bxd5.

105 [VX-83]. White is down a piece for a pawn, but can get back it with 28 Qxe6, attacking two pieces at once.

106 [VX-81]. White is down a piece, but can get it back with 17 Qxe6+ Kg6 (17...Kf8 allows 18 Qxe7+ with check) 18 Qxe7, when White is up a pawn.

107 [VX-82]. White is down a piece for a pawn, but can get it back with 13 Qxe6 Rf8 14 Qxe7, when White is up two pawns. Note that 14...Re8 can be met by 15 Qxd8.

108 [VX-102]. White is down a piece for a pawn, but can get his piece back with 23 Qxe6+ Kf8 (23...Ke8 24 Qxe7 is mate) 24 Qxe7+, when White is up two pawns.

109 [VX-117]. White is down a piece, but can get it back with 18 Qxe6+ Kf8 (23...Ke8 24 Qxe7 is mate) 19 Qxe7+, when White is up a pawn.

110 [VX-99]. White is down a piece, but can win the exchange on f7, as well as Black’s Be7, with 15 Nxf7 Qxf7 16 Qxe7, when White is up the exchange and two pawns.

111 [VX-105]. Black’s e6, e7, f6, and g7 are all weak, allowing White to mate in four with 25 Qxe6+ Kf8 (25...Kg7 is similar) 26 Qxe7+ Kg8 27 Bxf6 with Qg7, mate to follow.

112 [VX-88]. White is down a piece for a pawn, but can get it back with 18 Bxe6+, when White is up two pawns after either 18...Bxe6 19 Qxe6+ Kg6 20 Qxe7 or 18...Kf8 19 Bxc8 Raxc8 20 Qxe7+.
113 [VX-85]. White had a Rook and pawn for two pieces, but can win a piece and a pawn with 17 Qxe6+ Kf8 18 Qxd6+, when White is up the exchange and two pawns.

114 [VX-90]. White's Queen is under attack, but the count on e8 is 3-2 in White's favor. White wins with 21 Nxe8 Rxe8 22 Qxe8+ Nxe8 23 Rxe8+ Nf8 24 Rxf8, mate.

115 [VX-97]. Black’s overworked Queen allows White to win a piece, e.g., 27 Bxh7+ Kxh7 28 Rxd8 Qxd8 29 Kxh2, when White is up the exchange and a pawn.

116 [VX-98]. White can win a pawn with 24 Bxd5 Nxd5 25 Nh6+ (25 Qxe6 Rxf7 26 Qxd5 is also good) Kg7 26 Bxe7 Nxe7 27 Qxe6, when Black’s Ne7 is under attack.

117 [VX-89]. White is down a piece for a pawn, but can get it back with 18 Qxe6 when 18...Bxf4 19 Qxd5 is also good) Kg7 26 Bxe7 Nxe7 27 Qxe6, when White is up the exchange and two pawns.

118 [VX-104]. White is down a piece for a pawn, but can get it back with 22 Qxe6+ Kf8 (22...Ke8 loses to 23 Bxd5, with the dual threat of 24 Qxf7+ and 24 Qxe7, mate) 23 Bxd5 Bxd5 24 Qxe7+ Kg8, White is up two pawns, but wins more material with 25 Bc7.

119 [VX-118]. White is up two pawns, but his Queen is under attack, yet the tactics are in White’s favor after 24 d6 Rxe6 25 Nxe6+, when White will have a discovered check wherever Black’s King goes, e.g., Kg8 26 Nxc5+ Kh8 27 Nxa6, when White is up a Rook, Bishop and two pawns.

120 [VX-117]. Black is threatening mate on g2, but White wins material with 18 Be4 Nxe4 19 Nxd8 Nxd3 (White is up the exchange and a pawn after 19...Rxd8 20 Qxe4) 20 Nxc6 Nxe2+ 21 Rxe2 (1-0) Bxc6 22 Rxe6 (two of Black’s pieces are under attack) Bf6 23 Rxc6 Bxb2 24 Rd1, when White is up the exchange and a pawn.

121 [VX123]. Black’s Bb4 is tied to the defense of d6. 20 a3 Bxa3 (20...Bxe1 21 Bd6 is mate) 21 bxa3 Ne8 (21...Qxa3 22 Bd6+ wins, as does 21...Re8 22 Bd6+ Re7 23 Bxe7+ Ke8 24 Bd6+ Kh8 25 Qe7, mate) 22 Nf5 Nd6 23 Bd6+ Rxd6 24 Nxd6 Nxd6 25 Qxd6+ Kg8, when White wins Black's Re8 with 26 Qe6+ Kh7 27 Qxe8, when White has two Rooks and a pawn for a Knight.
2. Pins

122 [VX-105]. White wins with 26 Bxg6, when Black can't stop 27 Qxf7 Kh8 28 Qh7, mate.

123 [VX-120]. White can win Black's pinned Rook with 24 Rc7, when the count on f7 is 3-2.

124 [VX-89]. White can win Black's pinned Rf7 with 21 Rd3 and 22 Rf3, since Black can't support the Rf7 with 22...Rf8.

125 [VX-98]. White is down a piece for a pawn, but Black's Be7 is pinned, allowing White to win his piece back with 26 Bxf6, since 26...Rxf6 drops the Rook to 27 Qxf6 (1-0).

126 [VX-124]. The count on e7 is 3-3, but White can win Black's pinned Ne7 with 25 h4, e.g., 25...Qd5 26 Qxd5 cxd5 27 h5.

127 [VX-107]. White is down a piece for a pawn, but wins Black's Nd5 with 20 Qxe6, when moving the Nd5 drops the Rf7.

128 [VX-97]. After 25 Qxe6+ Kf8 26 Qe7+ Kg8 27 Bxh7+ Kxh7 (27...Nh7 28 Qxg7 is mate) White can win Black's pinned Nf6 with 28 Bxf6, then gang up on the pinned g-pawn with 28...Rg8 29 Rd7 (1-0), e.g., 29...Rc7 30 Red1.

129 [VX-111]. White can gang up on Black's pinned Be7 with 17 Re3 Kf8 18 Bb2 and doubling Rooks on the e-file, e.g., 18...a5 19 Rae1 a4 20 Qxf7+ Qxf7 21 Bxf7, when White is up the exchange and two pawns (1-0, 28). Black can also defend his Be7 with 18...Ng6 19 Rae1 Ng8, but White can move his Queen and play Bxf7.

130 [VX-120]. Black's Rf7 is pinned after 18 Qxe6 Bxd4 (moving the Nd5 allows 19 Qxf7+ 19 Bxd5, e.g., 19...Bxf2+ 20 Kh1 Qf8 (20...Qf6 drops the Rc8) 21 Rf1 Rc2 (21...Kh8 drops the Rf7; 21...Rc7 drops the Bf2; and 21...Re8 loses to 22 Qxf7+ Qxf7 23 Bxf7+ Kxf7 24 Rxf2+, when White is up a Rook) 22 Rac1 Rxc1 23 Rxc1 (1-0), when White threatens both 24 Rc8 and 24 Qxf7 Qxf7 25 Rc8+. 
3. Smothered Mate

131 [VX-95]. White's Queen is under attack, but that doesn't stop the smothered mate in three: 16 Nh6+ Kh8 17 Qg8+ Nxg8 18 Nf7, mate.

132 [VX-94]. White's Queen is under attack, but can mate in three with 18 Nxh6+ Kh8 (18...Kf8 loses to 19 Qf7, mate) 19 Qg8+ (1-0) Rxg8 20 Nf7, mate.

134 [VX-93]. Black's h-pawn is on h6, but that doesn't prevent the smothered mate if White controls h7. Here White's Queen is under attack as well, but mates in three with 14 Nxh6+ Kh8 15 Qg8+ (1-0) Nxg8 16 Nf7, mate.

135 [VX-90]. Here the smothered mate doesn't work, since 19 Nh6+ Kh8 20 Qg8+ can be met by 20...Nxg8, when Black's Rf8 prevents 21 Nf7+, but White can win Black's Be7 with 19 Qxe7, intending to meet 19...Rxf7 with 20 Ba2 and 19...Rce8 with 20 Qd6.

136 [VX-102]. Here the smothered mate doesn't win immediately, but White can win Black's Rf8 with 24 Ne5+ Kh8 25 Ng6+ Kh7 26 Nxf8+ Kh8, then set up the smothered mate with 27 Ng6+ Kh7 28 Ne5+ Kh8 29 Nf7+ Kg8 30 Nhx6+.

137 [VX-96]. White wins with 16 Ng5+, since 16...Kh8 drops the Queen to 17 Nxe6+ and 16...Kg8 gives White a smothered mate after 17 Qxe6+ Kh8 18 Nf7+ Kg8 19 Nh6+.

138 [VX-108]. White wins with 17 Ng5+, when 17...Kh8 drops the Queen to 18 Nxe6+ and 17...Kg8 allows a smothered mate after 18 Qxe6+ Kh8 19 Nf7+ Kh8 20 Nh6+.

139 [VX-84]. Black's Ne7 controls g8, leaving Black's Rf8 to defend f7, but the smothered mate still works, e.g., 22 Nxf7+ Kh8 23 Qg8+ Nhx6 24 Nh7+ Rxh6 25 Nxe6, mate.
4. The Threat of Smothered Mate Wins Material

140 [VX-121]. White wins Black's Queen with 22 Ne5, since 22...Qd8 loses to 23 Qxe6+, with a smothered mate.

141 [VX-106]. Both Queens are under attack, but White wins with 16 Qxe6, threatening both 17 Nxd8 and 17 Nh6+, with a smothered mate.

142 [VX-84]. The threat of the smothered mate with 22 Nxh6+ Kh8 23 Qg8+ Nxg8 24 Nhf7+ Rxf7 25 Nxf7, mate, forces Black to give up the exchange with 21...Rxf7 22 Qxf7.+

143 [VX-95]. After 15 Qxe6, White threatens a smothered mate, which Black can avoid with 15...g6, but then White wins the exchange with 16 Nd6+ Kh8 17 Nxe8 Rxe8.

144 [VX-106]. After 16 Qxe6 Ne5, Black has defended f7 and stopped the smothered mate threat, but then White wins Black's Nd5 with 17 Qxc8 Raxc8 18 Bxd5, when White is up a piece and two pawns.

145 [VX-96]. Black can avoid the smothered mate with 16..g6 (16...Rf8 17 N3g5 threatens 18 Nh6+ again), but then comes 17 Nd6+ Kh8 18 Nxe8 Rxe8 19 Bxd4, when White is up the exchange and two pawns.

146 [VX-92]. White wins with 28 Ng5, threatening Qxg6+ with a smothered mate. Now a) 28..Qf8 29 Qxh7 is mate; b) 28...Rd6/Re8 gives up two pawns to 29 Qxh7 Kf8 30 Qxg6, when White also has an attack; and c) 28...Qe7 29 Qxh7+ Kf8 drops to the Queen to 30 Nxe6+, e.g., 30...Kf7 31 Ng5+ or 30...Kc6 31 Nxc7+.

147 [VX-108]. After 17 Qxe6 Bh5 (17...Bg4 loses to 18 Nh6+ 18 Nd6+ Kh8 19 Nxc8, Black can defend with either 19...Qxc8 20 Re1 cxd4 21 Qh3 Be5, with two pieces for a Rook and pawn or 19...Bf8 20 Qh3 Bxd1 21 Rxd1 Qxc8 22 d5, with a piece for two pawns, but White's passed e-pawn and two Bishops provide compensation.
5. The Sequence Bg6 and Qf7

148 [VX-93]. White wins with 13 Qe6+ Kf8 14 Bg6, when Black can't stop Qf7, mate.

149 [VX-94]. White wins with 17 Qxe6+ Kf8 18 Bg6, when Black can't stop 19 Qf7, mate.

150 [VX-105]. White wins with 26 Bxg6 Qg5 27 Qxf7 Kh8 28 Qh7, mate (since Black's Nf6 is pinned).

151 [VX-113]. White is down a piece for a pawn, but wins with 19 Qxe6 hxg5 20 Bg6, when 20...Qf8 loses to 21 Bxf7 (21 Bxg5 is even better), e.g., 21...Qxf7 22 Rh8+ wins Black's Qf7.

152 [VX-102]. White is down a piece for two pawns, but wins with 24 Bg6 Be8 25 Bxf7+ (25 Qxb6 axb6 26 Bxh7 is not so good, as 26...Kxf7 defends Black's Be7) Bxf7 26 Qxb6 (this is better than 26 Qxe7 Qxb2) axb6 27 Rxe7, when White is up the exchange and a pawn.

6. Checkmate from a Rook Lift

154 [VX-88]. White can set up a mating net with 21 Bxf6 gxf6 and either 22 Ne4 or 22 Re3, when ...Rc7 drops the Rd8.

155 [VX-116]. White wins with 22 Qxe6+ Kf8 23 Re3 (1-0), threatening 24 Rf3+ Bh6 25 Bh6, mate, e.g., 23...Red8 loses to 24 Bxe7+ Ke8 25 Bxd8+ Kxd8 (25...Kf8 26 Qe8, mate) 26 Qe8, mate.

156 [VX-115]. White wins with 26 Qxe6+ Kf8 27 Qe7+ Kg8 28 Rg3 g5 29 Rxe5+ hxg5 30 Qxg5+ (1-0), when Black's King has four moves (Kf7, Kf8, Kh7 and Kh8), but all of them lose to 31 Re7 with 32 Qg7, mate.
7. Miscellaneous Mates

157 [VX-86]. White wins with 14 Bd3+ Kh5 15 Qh3, mate.

158 [VX-118]. White wins with 22 Bc2+ Kh5 23 Qf5+ g5 24 Qh3, mate.

159 [VX-81]. White is up a pawn but wins a piece after 18 Ng5 (threatening mate on f7) Ne5 19 Qxe5 or 19 Rxe5.

160 [VX-95]. After 15 Qxe6+ Kf8 16 Ng5, Black has no way to defend against 17 Qf7, mate, e.g., 16 Ne5 17 Rxe5 Bd5 18 cxd5 Qxd5 19 Rxd5.

161 [VX-103]. White wins with 23 Bxh7, threatening 24 Qg8, mate, e.g., 23...Nf6 24 Qxe7, mate, or 23...Ke8 24 Bh6+ Kf8 25 Qf7, mate.

162 [VX-121]. White wins with 28 Qd7+, e.g., 28...Kg8 29 Rxe8+ Rxe8 30 Qxe8, mate; 28...Kf6 29 Qf5, mate; or 28...Kg6 29 Qf5+ Kh6 30 Qh5, mate.

163 [VX-104]. White wins with 23 Bxd5, threatening both 24 Qxf7+ and 24 Qxe7, mate.

164 [VX-92]. White wins with 28 Qxe6+ Kf8 29 c5, when White is threatening mate in three ways -- 30 Qe7, 30 Qf7, and 30 Qg8 (1-0).

165 [VX-87]. After 13 Qxe6+ Kg6 (13...Kf8 14 Qf7 is mate) White wins with either 14 Qf7+ Kf5 15 Be6, mate, or 14 Bd3+ Kh5 15 Qh3, mate.
166 [VX-98]. 25 Qxe7+ leads to mate, e.g., 25...Kh8 26 Qxf8+ Ng8 27 Qxg8/Bf6, mate or 25...Rf7 26 Qxf7+ Kh8 27 Bxf6/Qxf6, mate.

167 [VX-105]. White wins with 26 Ng5+ Kg7 27 Bxf6+, when 27...Rxf6 loses to 28 Qd7+, e.g., 28...Kf8 29 Re8, mate; 28... Kh8 29 Qh7, mate; or 28...Kg8 with either 29 Qh7+ Kh8 30 Qh8, mate or 29 Re8+ Bh8 30 Qh7, mate.

168 [VX-110]. White can infiltrate the light squares with 18 Qxe6+ Kg7 (18...Kf8 loses to 19 Qf7, mate) 19 Qf7+ Kh8 (Black’s Nf6 is now weak) 20 Rxe7 (1-0) Qxe7 (20...Rxe7 21 Bxf6 is mate, as is 20...Rg8 21 Bxf6+ Rg7 22 Qxg7, mate) 21 Bxf6+, when Black has to give up his Queen to stop mate.

169 [VX-103]. White wins with 21 Qxe6+, e.g., 21...Ke8 22 Nxd5 (the threat is 23 Qxe7, mate) Nxd5 23 Qg8+ Kd6 25 Qe6, mate or 21...Kf8 22 Nxd5 Nxd5 23 Bxh7, when the threat of 24 Qg8, mate, wins, e.g., 23...Nf6 24 Qxe7 is mate or 23...Ke8 24 Bg6+ Kf8 25 Qf7, mate.

170 [VX-112]. White wins with 24 Bxg6 hxg6 25 Rc3 (White’s threat is both 26 Rf3, mate and 27 Rh3-h8, mate) Rd5 (Black defends against both threats) 26 g4 (both threats are on again; also good is 26 Qxg6, intending 27 Rf3+ Kg8 28 Qf7+ Kh7 29 Rh5+) Qb4 27 Rh3, again threatening 28 Rh8, mate. See next diagram.

171 [VX-112]. After 27...Qxe1+ 28 Qxe1, White has a Queen and two pawns for Rook and Bishop and now wins a Rook after 28...Kf7 29 Rf3+ Kg8 30 Qe6+ Kh8 31 Rh3+ Rh5 32 gxh5 g5 (32...gxh5 33 Rxh5, mate).
8. How to Meet \ldots Be7-g5, Discovering an Attack on White’s Qe6

172 [VX-113]. White wins with 19 Qh5, intending to meet 19...Nxr5 with 20 Bh7, mate. If Black now takes White's Knight with 19...hxg5, then White mates with 20 Nh6+ gxf6 21 Qg6+ Kh8 22 Rxh6+ Nh7 23 Qxh7, mate, and if Black defends along the 7th rank with 19...Bd6, then White wins material with 20 Nhx6+ gxf6 21 Qxh6 Qg7 22 Qxg7+ Kxg7 23 Nxe6+ Kg8 24 Nf8 Rxf8, when White is up a Rook and four pawns for two pieces.

173 [VX-121]. 22 Qxe6+ Kf8 23 Qc6 Rb8 24 Bf4 Qxd4 25 Bxc7 Nd6 (Black gives up the Knight in order to defend his Rb8) 26 exd6 (two of Black's pieces are under attack) 26...Bxd6 (after 26...Rb8 27 Bxb8 Rxb8, White is up a Rook and a pawn) 27 Bxd6+ (1-0) Kf7 (27...Kg8 loses to 28 Rxe8+), when White wins with 28 Qd7+, e.g., a) 28...Kf6 29 Qf5 is mate; b) 28...Kg8 29 Rxe8+ Rxe8 30 Qxe8, mate; or c) 28...Kg6 29 Qf5+ Kh6 30 Qh5, mate.

174 [VX-119]. White wins with 19 Ba2 Nd5 20 Nxd5, threatening 21 Nf6 with 22 Qf7, mate. If Black plays 20...Bxg5, discovering an attack on White's Queen, then 21 Ne7 covers the attack and opens up the a2-g8 diagonal, threatening Qf7, mate. Black can defend f7 with 21...Ne5, but now White mates in four with 22 Qg8+ Kxe7 23 Qf7+ Kd6 24 dxe5+ Kc6 25 Qc4, mate.

175 [VX-106]. White wins with 17 Nxd5, threatening 18 Nf6/Nxe7 with 19 Qf7, mate. Now 17...Bxd5 loses to 18 Bxd5, with 19 Qf7/Qg8 mate. Black’s best try is 17...Bxg5, discovering an attack on White's Queen, but then comes 18 Ne7, defending the Queen and threatening 19 Qf7/Qg8, mate (1-0), when 18...Bd5 19 Bxd5 Ne5 defends f7, but after 20 dxe5/ Rxe5, removing Black's Knight, the only way that Black can stop 21 Qf7, mate is by giving up his Queen with 20...Qxd5.
9. Defensive Ideas for Black

176 [VX-98]. After 24 Qxe6, Black can minimize the damage with 24...Bd5, e.g., 25 Bxd5 Nxd5 26 Qxd5, when White is up a pawn.

177 [VX-99]. Here 14...Bd5 can be met by 15 Nxf7 Bxe6 16 Nxd8 Rxd8 17 Rxe6, when White is up the exchange and two pawns.

178 [VX-99]. Here 14...Bd5 seems good for Black, but White wins with 15 Qxd5, e.g., 15...Nxd5 16 Bxh7 is mate, and 15...Rxf7 16 Qb3 gets the Queen out of danger and threatens 17 Nxf7, e.g., 16...g6 17 Nxf7 Qxf7 drops the Queen to 18 Be4 and 16...c6 17 Nxf7 Qxf7 18 Rxe7 wins the Be7.

179 [VX-109]. 19 Ba2 Bd5 20 Nxd5 (White threatens 21 Nxf6 Bxf6 22 Qg8, mate) Qd7 21 Qxd7 (also good is 21 Nc7 Qxe6 22 Nxe6+ Kg8 23 Nc7+ Kf8 24 Nxa8, when White is up a Rook and two pawns) Nbxd7 22 Nxe7 Rxe7 23 Bd6, when White is up two pawns and will win Black's Rook, e.g., 23...Ng8 24 Bxg8 Kxg8 25 Rxe7.

180 [VX-101]. After 20 Qxe6+ Kf8 21 Rxd8+ Rxd8 22 Re5 (1-0), White threatens 22 Rxc5 and 22 Rf5, mate, but Black can defend with the surprising 22...Be8, attacking White's Queen and defending f5. Now moving the Queen drops the Re5, while after 23 Rxc5 Bxe6 White is down a piece for two pawns without compensation, e.g., 24 Rc7 Rd7.

181 [VX-86]. 14 Re1 Ng8 15 Nb5 Nb6 16 Nd6+ (after 16 Nc7+ Kd8, two of White's pieces under attack) Kd8 17 Nf7+ Ke8 (best, as 17...Kc7 loses to 18 Bf4+ Bd6 19 Qxd6, mate, and White gets a slight advantage after 17...Rx f7 18 Rd1+ Bd7 19 Qxf7) 18 Nd6+ Kd8 19 Nf7+ with a perpetual.
81. White is down a pawn, but Black’s Be7 is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nxf7 Kxf7 17 Qxe6+ Kg6 18 Qxe7. What is the material balance?

1 After 16...Re8 17 Qxe6 Kf8 18 Ng5, Black has to give up his Knight to defend f7, e.g., 18...Ne5 19 Qxe5 (1-0), when White is up a piece and a pawn. 2 17...Kf8 is worse, as 18 Qxe7+ comes with check.

82. Black’s Be7 is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Nxf7+ Rxf7 13 Qxe6 Re8 14 Qxe7. What is the material balance?

1 The actual game continued 13...Qc7 14 Qxf7, when White is up the exchange (1-0, 16).

83. Visualize the position after the moves 27 Nxf7+ Rxf7 28 Qxe6 Rd8. How can White win material here?

1 28...Qc2 can be met by 29 R3d2, when three of Black’s pieces under attack (1-0).

84. White’s Nd6 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nexf7+ Kg8 21 Qxe6 Rxf7 22 Qxf7+. What is the material balance?

1 White threatens a smothered mate with 22 Nxe6+ Kh8 23 Qg8+ Nxe8 24 Nxf7+ Rxf7 25 Nxf7, mate.
85. Black’s Bd6 is hanging. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nxf7 Rxf7 16 Nxf7 Kxf7\(^1\). How does White win material here?

\(^1\) In the game Black played 16...Bxh2+, but White is up a Rook after 17 Kxh2 (1-0) Qc7+ 18 Ne5.

86. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Nxf7 Kxf7\(^1\) 13 Qxe6+ Kgs\(^2\) 14 Bd3+ Kh5. How does White mate in one?

\(^1\) 12...Rxf7 drops a Rook to 13 Qxe6. \(^2\) Better is 13...Ke8 14 Re1 Ng8, defending e7 and threatening 15...Nb6, attacking both the Qe6 and the Be4. The actual game continued 15...Qc5 15 Na4 (1-0, 18) Qb4 16 Bd2, trapping Black’s Queen, although Black can minimize the damage with 15...Ne5 16 Qxe5 Qxe5 17 Rxe5, when White is up a pawn and has the better position.

87. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Nxf7 Kxf7\(^1\) 13 Qxe6+ Kgs\(^2\). How does White mate in this position? There are two solutions.

\(^1\) After 12...Qc7 13 Bxe6, White is up two pawns and a solid center after 13...Kf8 14 d5, when Black cracked after 14...Bd7 15 Ne4 Nxd5 16 Bxd5 (1-0). \(^2\) 13...Kf8 14 Qf7 is mate.

88. Black’s Be7 is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxf7 Kxf7 18 Bxe6+ Bxe6\(^1\) 19 Qxe6+ Kg6 20 Qxe7. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) 18...Kf8 drops the Be7 to 19 Bxc8 Raxc8 20 Qxe7+, when White is up two pawns and can now set up a mating attack after 20...Kg8 21 Bxf6 gxf6, with either 22 Ne4-Nxf6+ or 22 Re3-g3+. 
89. Black’s Bd6 is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxf7 Rxf7 18 Qxe6\(^1\) Bd5\(^2\). How can White win material here?

\(^1\) Two of Black’s pieces are under attack. \(^2\) White is up the exchange and two pawns after 18...Bxf4 19 Qxf7+ Kh8 20 Qxb7.

90. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxf7 Qc7\(^1\) 18 Qxe6 Rf8\(^2\) 19 Nd6+\(^3\) Kh8 20 Qxc7\(^4\). What is the material balance and what is White’s threat?

\(^1\) For 17...Kxf7 18 Qxe6+ Kf8 19 Ba2 see exercise 119. \(^2\) 18...Kf8 loses to 19 Nh6, threatening 20 Qf7, mate, when 19...gxh6 20 Bxh6 is mate and 19...Qc4 can be met by 20 d5, when the threat of 21 Qf7 is still on. \(^3\) White can also play 19 Qxe7, e.g., 19...Rxf7 20 Ba2 or 19...Rxex8 20 Qd6, when White is up a piece and two pawns, but 19 Nh6+, intending 19...Kh8 20 Qg8+, can be met by 19...Nxg8, leaving the Rook on f8 to defend against 20 Nh7+. \(^4\) The actual game continued 20 Nxc8 Bxa3 21 bxa3 Bxc8 22 Nb5 (1-0).

91. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Ngxf7 1 Rxf7 18 Nxf7 Kxf7 19 Qxe6+ Kf8 20 Qxg6 Nh6f6\(^2\). What is the material balance?

\(^1\) 17 Nfxg6 fxg6 is not so good, since 18 Nxe6 can be met by 18...Bd8, when White’s Ne6 is pinned, and 18 Qxe6+ Kh8 19 Qxg6 Nfx6 (19...Nh6 weakens g7 and loses to 20 Ne6, attacking Black’s Qc7 and the pawn on g7) 20 g4 Bxc5 gives Black counterplay. 20...Nf4 is not good for Black, for after 21 Bxf4 Qxf4 White can gang up on Black’s pinned Be7 with 22 Re6 and 23 Rae1. \(^2\) 20...Ndf6 puts the Nh5 in no man’s land and can be met by 21 Re5, preventing ...Nf4 and threatening 22 g4, trapping Black’s Knight.

92. Black is threatening to play 26...Bxe5, but White strikes first. Visualize the position after the moves 26 Bxb4 Qxb4 27 Nxf7 Kxf7\(^1\) 28 Qxe6+ Kf8. How does White win in this position?

\(^1\) 27...Rxd4 28 Qxe6 can be met by 28...Qf8, defending against the smothered mate, but better for White is 28 Ng5, threatening Qxe6+ with a smothered mate. Now 28...Qf8 loses to 29 Qxh7, mate, while 28...Qe7 loses to the Queen to 29 Qxh7+ Kf8 30 Nxe6+ Ke8 31 Nxc7+.
93. White's Bg5 is under attack, but the light squares around Black's King are weak. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Nxf7 Qc8 13 Qe6 Bf8. White's Queen is under attack, but White can mate in three. How? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 12...Kxf7 loses to 13 Qe6+ Kf8 14 Bg6 with Qf7, mate. 2 White can create a smothered mate.

94. The light squares around Black's King are weak. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nxf7 Qc7 17 Qxe6 Bd6. White's Queen is under attack, but White can mate in three. How?

1 Forced, since 16...Kxh7 loses to 17 Qxe6+ Kh8 18 Bg6, when Black can't stop 19 Qf7, mate. 2 After 17...g5 18 Nxh6+ Kh8 (18...Kh7 loses to 19 Qf7+ Kxh6 20 Qg6, mate) 19 Bxg5 White is up four pawns and has a dominant position.

95. Black has just won a pawn with 13...cxd4. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Nxf7 Bxf3 15 Qxe6 Bg4. White's Queen is under attack, but has a mate in three. How?

1 14...Kxf7 15 Qxe6+ Kf8 loses to 16 Ng5, when Black has no way to defend against 17 Qf7, mate, while after 14...Qe7 15 Qxe6 g6 16 Nxd6+ Kh8 17 Nxe8 Rxe8, White is up the exchange and a pawn.

96. Black has just taken White's d-pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nxf7 Qc7 16 Qxe6 g6 17 Nd6+ Kh8 18 Nxe8 Rxe8 19 Bxd4. What is the material balance?

1 Two alternatives: a) 15...Kxh7 loses to 16 Ng5+, when 16...Kf8 drops the Queen to 17 Nxe6+ (17 Qxe6 can be met by 17...Ne5 18 Qxe5 18 Be8, covering e6) and 16...Kg7 gives White a smothered mate after 17 Qxe6+ Kh8 18 Ng7+; b) 15...Bxh3 loses to 16 Qxe6, with the dual threat of 17 Nxd8 and 17 Nh6+, with a smothered mate (1-0, 18). 2 White threatens 17 Nh6+, with a smothered mate. 3 This creates an escape square on g7 for Black's King. 16...Rf8 can be met by 17 N3g5, when the threat of 18 Nh6+ is on again. Note that 17 Nh6+ Kh8 18 Qg8+ can be met by 18...Nxg8, when Black's Rf8 still guards f7.
97. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Nxf7 Kxf7 25 Qxe6+ Kf8 26 Qe7+ Kg8 27 Bxh7+ Kxh7. What is the material balance and how can White win a piece?

1 White is up a pawn after 24...Rf8 25 Be5 Bxe5 26 Nxe5, while after 24...Bxg3 25 Nxd8 Bh2+ 26 Kh1 Rxd8 Black's Queen is overworked, allowing White to win a piece with 27 Bxh7+ Kxh7 28 Rxd8 Qxd8 29 Kxh2. 2 27...Nxh7 loses to 28 Qxg7, mate.

98. Black is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Nxf7 Kxf7 24 Qxe6+ Ke8 25 Re1 Qc7. What is the material balance and how can White win a piece?

1 Alternatives: a) White is up a pawn after 23...Rxf7 24 Qxe6 Bd5 25 Bxd5 Nxd5 26 Qxd5; b) White is also up a pawn after 23...Bd5 24 Bxd5 Nxd5 25 Nh6+ Kg7 26 Bxe7 Nxe7 27 Qxe6; or c) 23...Qc6 24 d5, when 24...exd5 drops the Be7 to 25 Nh6+ Kh8 26 Qxe7, 24...Qc5 25 dxe6 leaves White up a pawn with the better position, and 24...Nxd5 25 Bxd5 exd5 loses to 25 Nh6+ Kh8 26 Qxe7, e.g., 27...Qe8 28 Qf6+ Rxf6 29 Bxf6, mate. 2 24...Kg7 loses to 25 Qxe7+ Kh8 26 Qxf8+ Ng8 27 Qxg8, mate. 3 25...Ng8 doesn’t help, as White still has a 3-2 advantage on e7.

99. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Nexf7 Rxf7 14 Qxe6 Bd5 15 Nxf7 Bxe6 16 Nxd8 Rxd8 17 Rxe6. What is the material balance?

1 13...Qe8 14 Qxe6 Bd5 can be met by 15 Qxd5, when 15...Nxd5 loses to Bxh7, mate, and 15...Rx7 can be met by 16 Qb3, threatening 17 Nxf7 Qxf7 18 Be4, winning Black's Queen. 2 White is up the exchange and two pawns after 14...Qf8/Qe8 15 Nxf7 Qxf7 16 Qxe7.

100. Black has just played Nf6-d7, challenging White's Ne5. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Ng6 Bxg3 19 fxg3 fxg6 20 Qxe6+ Bf7 21 Rxf7 Rxf7 22 Qxf7+. What is the material balance?

1 White is up a pawn after 18...fxg6 19 Qxe6 Bf7 20 Bxd6. 2 This important move adds another attacker to f7. 3 20...Kh7/Kh8 loses to 21 Rxf8 and if 21...Nxf8 then 22 Qg8 is mate.
101. Black can defend here. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nxf7 Kxf7 20 Qxe6+ Kf8 21 Rxd8+ Rxd8 22 Re5. White is down a piece for two pawns, but threatens both 23 Rxc5 and 23 Rf5, mate, yet Black can defend. How? See the footnote for a hint.

1 Hint: Black can attack White’s Queen and add a defender to f5.

102. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Nxf7 Rf8 23 Qxe6 Rxf7 24 Bg6 Be8 25 Bxf7+ 2 Bxf7 26 Qxb6 3 axb6 27 Rxe7. What is the material balance?

1 White is up two pawns after 22...Kxf7 23 Qxe6+ Kf8 (23...Ke8 loses to 24 Qxe7, mate) 24 Qxe7+. 2 The move order 25 Qxb6 axb6 26 Bxf7+ is not good because Black can ply 26...Kxf7, defending the Be7. 3 This is better than 26 Qxe7 Qxb2.

103. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nxf7 Kxf7 21 Qxe6+ Kf8 22 Nxd5 Nxd5 3 23 Bxh7. What is White’s threat and how does White win after either 23...Nf6 or 23...Ke8?

1 After 20...Rf8 21 Ng5, White is up a pawn and will win Black’s e-pawn. 2 21...Ke8 22 Nxd5 (White’s threat is 23 Qxe7, mate) 22...Nxd5 loses to 23 Qg8+ Kd7 24 Bf5+ Kd6 25 Qe6, mate. 3 After 22...Bxd5 23 Qxe7+ White has regained his piece and is now up two pawns (1-0, 29).

104. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Nxf7 Kxf7 22 Qxe6+ Kf8 23 Bxd5 Bxd5 24 Qxe7+ Kg8. What is the material balance and how does White win material here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 White is up two pawns after 21...Rf8 22 Nh6+ gxh6 23 Qxe6+ Kh8 24 Qxd7. 2 22...Ke8 loses to 23 Bxd5, with the threat of 24 Qxe7, mate. 3 Hint: The count on d7, but White can remove one of Black’s defenders.
105. Black’s Be7 is hanging. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Rxd8+ Rxd8 24 Nxf7 Rf8 25 Qxe6 Rxf7 26 Bxg6 Qg5. How does White win here?

1 23 Nxf7 immediately allows 23...Rxd1, drawing one of White’s pieces away from e6. 2 24...Kxf7 drops the Be7 and Nf6 to 25 Qxe6+ Kf8 26 Qxe7+ Kg8 27 Bxf6, when Black can’t stop Qg7, mate. 3 White’s threat was 26 Qxe7. 25...Bc5 loses to 26 Ng5+ Kg7 27 Bxf6, for example, 27...Rx f6 28 Qd7+ Kg8 with either 29 Qh7 Kf8, mate or 29 Re8+ Rf8 30 Qh7, mate.

106. White’s Bg5 is under attack, but watch the count on d5. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nxf7 Kxf7 16 Qxe6+ Kf8 17 Nxd5 Bxg5 18 Ne7+ Bd5 19 Bxd5 Ne5. How does White win here?

1 Two alternatives: 15...Nxc3 loses to 16 Qxe6, with the dual threat of 17 Nxd8 and 17 Nh6+, while after 15...Qc8 16 Qxe6 Ne5 (the only move to stop the smothered mate) 17 Qxc8 Raxc8 18 Bxd5, White is up a piece and two pawns. 2 White’s threat is 18 Nf6/Nxe7 with 19 Qf7, mate. 3 17...Bxd5 18 Bxd5 threatens 19 Qf7/Qg8 mate. This defends the Queen and threatens 19 Qf7/Qg8 again. Black resigned here. 4 This is better than 19 Qxd5, as played in Atkins-Te Kolste, Amsterdam, 1899 -- 100 years before this game was played!

107. White’s Ne5 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nxf7 Rxf7 20 Qxe6+ Bb4+ 21 Bxd5 Rec7 22 Qe8+ Qxe8 23 Rxe8+ Kg7 24 Bxf7 Kxf7. What is the material balance?

1 White is up two pawns after 19...Kxf7 20 Qxe6+ Kg7 21 Bxd5. 2 This puts an extra attacker on Black’s Nd5, which can be defended, but can’t move because of 21 Qxf7+ and 22 Rxe7. Black resigned here. 3 Black moves his weak Be7.

108. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nxf7 Bxf3 17 Qxe6 Bh5 18 Nd6+ Kh8 19 Nxc8 Bf8 20 Qh3 Bxd1 21 Rxd1 Qxe8 22 d5. What is the material balance?

1 16...Kxf7 loses to 17 Ng5+, when 17...Kf8 drops the Queen to 18 Nxe6+ (18 Qxe6 is also good) and 17...Kg8 allows a smothered mate after 18 Qxe6+ Kh8 19 Nf7+, etc. 2 17...Bg4 loses to 18 Nh6+, with a smothered mate. 3 Black can also play 19...Qxc8 20 Rb1 cxd4 (Black’s threat is 21...Bb4, attacking two of White’s pieces at once) 21 Qh3 Be5, when Black has two pieces for a Rook and pawn.
109. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxf7 Kxf7 18 Qxe6+ Kf8 19 Ba2 20 Nxd5 Qd7 21 Qxd7 Nbd7 22 Nxe7 Rxe7. What is the material balance and how can White win more material?

1 Moving the Queen to d7, c7, or b6 is better. 2 White's threat is 20 Qf7, mate. Black resigned here. 3 White's threat is 21 Nxf6 with 22 Qg8, mate, but 20 Bxd5 Nxd5 21 Nxd5 is also good. 4 White can also play 21 Nc7 Qxe6 22 Nxe6+ Kg8 23 Nc7+ Kf8 24 Nxa8, when White is up a Rook and two pawns.

110. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Qh3 1 h5 17 Nxf7 Kxf7 18 Qxe6+ Kg7 19 Qf7+ Kh8. How can White win here?

1 White's threat is 17 Nxf7, when 17...Kxf7 loses to 18 Qxe6+ Kg7 (18...Kf8 19 Qf7 is mate) 19 Qf7+ Kh8 20 Bxf6+ Bxf6 21 Rxe8 Qxe8 22 Qxf6, mate. 2 16...Bd5 17 Nxd5 exd5 is better, closing the a2-g8 diagonal. 3 The only move, as 18...Kf8 loses to 19 Qf7, mate.

111. White is able to get a pin on e7. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nxf7 Rx7 16 Qxe6 Qe8 17 Re3 Kf8 18 Bb2 a5 19 Rae1 a4 20 Qxf7+ Qxf7 21 Bxf7. What is the material balance?

1 15...Qe8 16 Ng5 wins White's e-pawn. 2 16...Qf8 drops the Nd7. 3 Intending to double Rooks on the e-file. 4 Black wants to attack White's Bb3, but it comes too late. Black can hold the Be7 with 18...Nf6 19 Rae1 Ng8, although White can always win the exchange by moving his Queen and playing Bxf7.

112. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Nxf7 Kxf7 23 Qxe6+ Kf8 24 Bxg6 hxg6 25 Rc3 Rd5 26 g4 Qb4. How can White create a mate threat that wins Black's Queen?

1 22...Re8 23 Nd6 Re7 loses to 24 Nxb7 Rx7 25 Qxe6+, winning the c-pawn at least. 2 White threatens both 26 Rf3, mate and 27 Rh3-h8, mate. 3 Black intends to meet 26 Rf3 with 25...Rf5 and 26 Rh3 with 25...Rh5. 4 Now both threats are on again (1-0). Also good is 26 Qxg6, intending 27 Rf3+ Kg8 28 Qf7+ Kh7 29 Rh5+.
113. White’s Ng5 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Nexf7 Rxf7\(^1\) 19 Qxe6 hxg5 20 Bg6 Qf8 21 Bxg5\(^2\) Rc8\(^3\) 22 Bxf7+ Qxf7. What is the material balance and how can White win here?

\(^1\) 18...Qd7 can be met by 19 Qh5, when 19...Nxh5 loses to 20 Bh7, mate and 19...hxg5 loses to 20 Nh6+ e.g., 20...gxh6 21 Qg6+ Kh8 22 Rxh6+ Nh7 23 Qxb7, mate. Black’s best defense is 19...Bd6 20 Nxd6 20 Nxb6+ gxh6 21 Qxb6 Qg7, although this loses the exchange to 22 Qxg7+ Kxg7 23 Nxe6+ Kf8 24 Nxe8 Rf8, when White has a Rook and four pawns for two pieces. \(^2\) 21 Bxf7+ is also good, but White takes the opportunity to win another pawn since Black can’t do anything useful with the extra move. \(^3\) 21...Nh5 22 Rxf5 Bxg5 23 Bxf7+ (1-0, 29) is similar, but adds an extra move to the variation.

114. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Nxf7 Kxf7\(^1\) 24 Qxe6+ Kf8 25 Bg6 Qe7\(^2\) 26 Re1 Nf4\(^3\) 27 Qxc8+ Qxc8 28 Rxc8+ Ke7 29 gx4 Bxf4. What is the material balance? start

\(^1\) It’s better to give up the pawn with 23...Re8 24 Nxd6 Qxd6. \(^2\) 25...Rc7 drops the Bd6 with check. \(^3\) 26...Qd7 loses to 27 Rxc8+ Qxc8 28 Qf7, mate. Relatively best is 26...Re8 27 Bxe8 Qe7 28 Bf7, when White is up the exchange and two pawns. Black resigned here. This is better than 27 Rxc7 Nxe6 28 Rxc8+, when White has a Rook and two pawns for a Knight.

115. White is able to put pressure on \(g7\). Visualize the position after the moves 25 Nxf7 Kxf7 26 Qxe6+ Kf8 27 Qe7+ Kg8 28 Rg3 g5 29 Rxe5+ hxg5 30 Qxg5+ Kh8\(^1\). How does White mate in two?

\(^1\) Other King moves meet with the same reply.

116. Visualize the position after the moves 19 e6 dxe6\(^1\) 20 Ne5 Qc7\(^2\) 21 Nxf7 Kxf7\(^3\) 22 Qxe6+ Kf8 23 Re3\(^4\) Red8\(^5\) 24 Bxe7+ Ke8. How does White mate in two?

\(^1\) Black can defend with 19...fxe6 20 Ne5 Qd8 (this is better than 20...Bc8 because it defends the Re8, which is weak in the line 21 Qf3+ Bf6 22 Bxf6 exf6 23 Qxf6+ Kg8 24 Qf7+) 21 Qf3+ Bf6 22 Ng4 Kg7, etc. \(^2\) 20...Be8 drops the exchange to 21 Nxc6. \(^3\) The losing move. Both 21...Bf6 and 21...Be8 are better. \(^4\) White’s threat is 24 Rf3+ Bf6 25 Bh6, mate. Black resigned here. \(^5\) This clears e8 for the King.
117. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxf7 Qc6\(^1\) 18 Be4 Nxe4 19 Nxd8 Nxe2\(^2\) 20 Bxe6 Bxc6 21 Rxe6\(^3\) Bf6 23 Rxe6 Bxb2 24 Rd1. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) 17...Kxf7 leaves Black down two pawns after 18 Qxe6+ Kf8 19 Qxe7+. \(^2\) White is up the exchange and a pawn after 19...Rxd8 20 Qe4. \(^3\) Two of Black’s pieces are under attack.

118. White’s pawn on c4 is pinned, but not for long. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nxf7 Kxf7 1 21 Qxe6+ Kf8 2 22 cxd5 Bxg3 23 hxg3\(^3\) Re8 24 d6 Rxe6 25 Nxe6+ Kg8 26 Nxc5+ Kh8 27 Nxa6. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) After 20...Rd7 21 Nxd6 Rxd6 White can break the pin with 22 Qe5, attacking both the Rd5 and Nd5. \(^2\) 21...Kg6 allows mate in three: 22 Bc2+ Kh5 23 Qf5+ g5 24 Qh3, mate. \(^3\) The actual game continued 23 Qf5 Bxf2+ 24 Qxf2 (White is up a pawn and threatens 25 Ne6+) Kg8 25 Nc6 with the dual threat of 26 Nxd8 and 26 Ne7+ (1-0).

119. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxf7 Kxf7\(^1\) 18 Qxe6+ Kf8 19 Ba2 Nd5 20 Nxd5\(^2\) Bxg5 21 Ne7\(^3\) Ne5\(^4\) 22 Qg8+ Kxe7 23 Qf7+\(^5\) Kd6. How does White mate in two?

\(^1\) The actual game continued 17...Qc7 18 Qxe6 (see exercise 90). \(^2\) White’s threat is 21 Nf6 with 22 Qf7, mate. \(^3\) This discovers an attack on White’s Queen. \(^4\) White closes the e-file and opens the a2-g8 diagonal for his Bishop, threatening Qf7, mate. \(^5\) This covers f7, but now White mates in four. \(^6\) 23 Rxe5+ Kd6 is less forcing, as White’s only check is 24 Re6+, which can be met by 24...Kc7, e.g., 25 Qxg7 Be7 25 Qe5+ (25 Re1+ Kb8) Bd6.

120. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxf7 Rxf7 18 Qxe6\(^1\) Bxd4 19 Bxd5 Bxf2+ 20 Kh1\(^2\) Qf8 21 Rf1 Rc2\(^3\) 22 Rac1 Rxc1 23 Rxcl\(^4\) h6\(^5\). What is the material balance and how does White win here?

\(^1\) Moving the Nd5 loses to 19 Qxf7+. \(^2\) Why isn’t 20 Kxf2 possible? See the answer key for the answer. \(^3\) 20...Qf6 drops the Rc8. \(^4\) 21...Rc7 22 Rxf2 drops the Bf2, while 21...Re8 loses to 22 Qxf7+ Qxf7 23 Bxh7+ Kxh7 24 Rxh7+, when White is up a Rook. \(^5\) White threatens both 24 Rc8 as well as 24 Qxh7 Qxh7 25 Re8+. Black resigned here.
121. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Nxf7 Kxf7 1 22 Qxe6+ Kf8 23 Qc6 Rb8 24 Bf4 Qxd4 25 Bxc7 Nd6 26 cxd6+ Bxd6 19 ply 27 Bxd6+ Kf7 28 Qd7+ Kg6. How does White win here?

1 21...Qd7 loses to 22 Ne5, when 22...Qd8 23 Qxe6+ gives White a smothered mate. 2 Black gives up the Knight to defend his Rb8. 3 Two of Black’s pieces are under attack. 4 White is up a Rook and a pawn after 26...Bf6 27 Bxb8 Rxb8. 5 27...Kg8 28 Rxe8+ leads to mate. 6 28...Kg8 loses to 29 Rxe8+, while 28...Kf6 29 Qf5 is mate.

122. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bg6 fxg6 1 12 Qxe6+ Kh8 13 Nf7+ Kh7 14 N3g5+ hxg5 15 hxg5+ Nh5 16 Rxe8+ Kh8. How does White mate in three?

1 After 11...hxg5 12 Bxf7+ Kxf7 13 Nxg5+ Kh8 14 Qxe6+ Kh7, White can choose between a perpetual check with 16 Ne5+ Kh8 17 Nh7+ or play on with 16 Nxd8 Bxd8 17 Qxe8 Nxe8, when White has a Rook and three pawns for three pieces. 2 After 14 Nxe8 Bxe8, White’s Queen is pinned along the e-file.

123. White’s Re1 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Nxf7 Kxf7 1 19 Qxe6+ Kf8 20 a3 Bxa3 21 bxa3 Ne8 22 Nf5 Ndf6 23 Bd6+ Rxd6 24 Nxd6 Nxd6 25 Qxd6+ Kg8. What is the material balance and how can White win Black’s Re8?

1 White is up two pawns after 18...Rf8 19 Nd6 Bxe1 20 Nxe8 Rxe8 21 Qxe6+ Kh8 22 Qxe1, but Black can improve with 20...Bxh2, e.g., 21 Ne7+ Kf7 22 Nxe6 with either 22...Bxh2 23 Qxh2 e5 or 22...Qa4 23 Ne5+ Nxe5 24 Bxe5 Bxg3 25 Bxg3, when White is up a pawn. 2 20...Bxe1 loses to 21 Bd6, mate. 3 This covers d6. 21...Qxa3 loses the Queen to 22 Bd6+, while 21...Re8 loses to 22 Bd6+ Re7 23 Bxe7+ Ke8 24 Bd6+ Kd8 25 Qe7, mate. 4 Also good is 23 Ne7, threatening 24 Ng6, mate. The game continued 23...Qxh5 24 Nxc8 Qg6+ 25 Kb2 Qxg2 26 Qc7+ Kg8 27 Qxd8 Qxf2+ 28 Bd2 (1-0).

124. White can get a pin on e7, then remove a defender. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxf7 Kxf7 18 Qxe6+ Kf8 19 Nd6 Bxd6 20 Bxd6+ Re7 21 Rh3 Nf6 22 Rae1 Nd5 23 Rxe2 Ke8 24 Bxe7 Nxe7 25 h4 Qd5 26 Qxd5 cxd5. What is the material balance and how can White win more material?

1 White is down a piece for two pawns, but will win the exchange. The count is 3-3 on e7, but White can add another attacker. 2 Now the count is 4-4 on e7, but White can remove a Black defender with either c4 or h4. 3 The actual game continued 23 Rh3+ Nf6 24 g4 Ke8 25 Bxe7 Nxe7 26 g5 Nf5 27 c4 (1-0) Nc7, when White gets another pin with 28 Qf7+ Kd7 29 Rfe3, winning Black’s Ne7. 4 Other moves allow c4, e.g., 23...Qc8 24 c4 Qxe6 25 Rxe6, winning either the Nd5 or Black’s pinned Re7.
CHAPTER 4. THE SQUARES F7 AND E6

This chapter contains exercises in which White sacrifices a piece on f7, then occupies the e6 square with something other than his Queen.

In Diagram 1, for example, after the moves 1 Ngxf7 Rxf7 2 Bxe6 Raf8 (see Diagram 2), 3 Nxf7 wins a Rook, leaving White up the exchange and two pawns. Note that Black can't play 3...Rxf7 here because of 4 Qg6, which wins Black’s pinned Rf7.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. Miscellaneous Tactics
2. Discovered Attack
3. Pins
4. Mates
5. White Plays Ne6
6. King Hunts
7. Comparing Various Captures on e6 (Rxe6, Bxe6, Pxe6)

These themes are illustrated using fifty-four preparatory positions, which are followed by thirty-two visualization exercises ranging in depth from five to twenty-five ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply:</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17*</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Miscellaneous Tactics

182 [VX-146]. 17 Qg4+ wins either the Bg7 or the Ne7.

183 [VX-142]. White is up a pawn and can win Black's Nd7 with 20 Qe6+ Kh8 21 Rxd7.

184 [VX-149]. White has three pawns for the piece, but his Bg5 is under attack, yet after 18 Bf4, Black's Rook is trapped.

185 [VX-140]. White wins on the dark squares with 21 Bc1 Qf6 22 Qxe7+ Qxe7 23 Rxe7+ Kxe7 24 Bg5+, picking up Black's Rd8 for free after 24...Ke8 25 Re1+ Kd7 26 Rd1+.

186 [VX-151]. White is down a piece for a pawn, but can win Black's Rd8 with 19 Bg5+ Kd6 20 Bxd8, since 20...Qxd8 drops the Queen to 21 Ndxb5+ with a skewer along the d-file.

187 [VX-153]. White is down a piece for a pawn, but can win Black's Rf8 with 23 Ng5+ Kg8 24 Nxe6 Qc8 25 Nxh8+, when White is up the exchange and two pawns after 25...Bxc4 26 Rxc4 Bxf8 27 Bxe7.

188 [VX-146]. White is down a piece for a pawn, but can get it back (and more) with 18 Qg4, e.g., 18...Kf8 19 Qxg7+ Ke8 20 Qg8+ Nf8 21 Ng7+ Ke7 22 Nxe6 Nxe6 23 Qxa8, when White is up a Rook and a pawn, or 18...Re7 19 Nxe7+ Kf7 20 Qxd7, White again is up a Rook and a pawn.

189 [VX-141]. White wins with 26 Rxf6 exf6 27 e7, e.g., a) 27...Qd7 28 exf8=Q+ wins Black's Queen; b) 27...Qe8 28 exf8=Q+ Qxf8 29 Rxf8+ Kxf8 gives White a Queen and Bishop for a Rook; or c) 27...Rx7 28 exd8=Q+ Rxd8 gives White a Queen and Bishop for two Rooks.

190 [VX-145]. After 28 Rxf7+ Qxf7 29 Qxb6, White is threatening to win Black's weak Bb7 with 30 e6 (since 30...Qe7 loses the Queen to 31 Bc5), when 29...Rb8 drops the Rook to 30 Qd6+ and 29...Re8 30 Bc5+ Kg8 31 e6 Qc7 loses to 32 Qxc7 Rxc7 33 c7, when White's e-pawn Queens, e.g., 33...Kf7 34Bg6+ or 33...Rc8 34 Bg6.
191 [VX-147]. White is down a Rook for two pawns, and can’t win Black’s Queen with 16 Nc7 Nxb3 17 Nxe8 Nxa1, as Black will have two Rooks and a Bishop for a Queen and two pawns, but after 16 Nxc5 Bxc5 17 Bxc5 White will be up two pawns after winning the exchange on f7.

192 [VX-147]. White is down a Rook for two pawns and his Queen is under attack, but after 17 Bxf7+ Kxf7 18 Qxh7+ Ke6 19 Qxg6+, White has four pawns for the piece and a winning attack, e.g., 19...Kd7 20 Rd1+ wins Black’s Queen or 19...Kxe5 20 Re1, with a forced mate, e.g., a) 20...Qd7 21 Bf2+ Kf4 22 Bg3, mate, or b) 20...Bh4 21 Bf2+ Kf4 22 Bg3+ Bxg3 23 hxg3, mate.

2. Discovered Attack

193 [VX-151]. White wins with 18 Bxg7 when 18...Bxg7 loses to 19 Qh5+ Ke7 20 Qf7, mate, and if 18...Rc8, freeing up d8 for the King, then 19 Bxf8, when best is 19...Nxf8 20 Bxc8, when White is up three pawns, since 19...Kxf8 loses to 20 Rf1+ (1-0), mating e.g., 20...Kxe8 21 Qg8+ Ke7 22 Qf7, mate, or 20...Ke7 21 Qg5+ Ke8 22 Qg8+ Ke7 23 Rf7, mate.

194 [VX-156]. White wins with 24 Bxe6 Qe8 25 Nxd8+ Kh7 26 Nxb7.

195 [VX-130]. White wins Black's Queen with 24 Rxh6, when 24...gxh6 loses to 25 Qg6+.

196 [VX-155]. White is down a piece for two pawns, but can win a piece and a pawn with 24 Rxc6+ Ke8 25 Rxc7, when White is up three pawns.

197 [VX-140]. White's Queen is under attack, but White wins with 20 Rxh6+, e.g., 20...Bxf6 21 Qf7, mate, or 20...Qxf6 21 Qg8, mate.

198 [VX-137]. White is down two pieces for two pawns, but after 25 Bxf6+ (1-0) Kd6 26 Bxg7, White is up two pawns. Note that 25...Kf7 drops both the Rook and Queen to 26 Bxd8+.

199 [VX-131]. White wants to play Bxc8 with check, and so plays 18 d5, threatening 19 d6, when 18...Qd6 20 Bxc8 Bxc8 21 Nb5 drives Black’s Queen off of d6, since 21...Qxd5 loses to 22 Nc7+. 
3. Pins

200 [VX-153]. White wins Black's Rf7 for free with 24 Ng5.

201 [VX-143]. White wins Black's Rook with 18 Qg6.

202 [VX-132]. White is down a piece for two pawns, but can win material with 16 Qe2 Rf7 17 Re1 and 18 Re3.

203 [VX-149]. White wins Black's Ra8 with 19 d5, e.g., 19...Be8 20 Qb7 or 19...Bd7 20 Bxf7+ Qxf7 21 Qb7.

204 [VX-149]. White wins with 19 Bxf7+ Kxf7 (19...Qxf7 drops the Ra8 (1-0)) 20 Qb3+ Nd5 (the only legal move) 21 Qxd5+ Kf6 22 Qe6/Qf3, mate.

205 [VX-147]. White is down a Rook for two pawns, but after 17 Rf1 Bf6 18 Bxf7+ Qxf7 19 Qxf7+ Kxh7 20 exf6 gxf6, White is up a pawn (1-0, 21).

206 [VX-154]. White wins with 28 Qxg6+ Kh8 29 Bxf7, when White is up a piece and a pawn and threatens 30 Qh6, mate, and if 29...Qf8 then 30 a6 wins, as does 30 Rc1 Re5 31 Rxc5 dxc5 32 a6.

207 [VX-154]. White wins with 28 Qxg6+ Kh8 29 Bxf7, threatening 30 Qh6, mate, when 29...Qf8 30 Rc1 threatens 31 Rc8 Qxc8 32 Qh6, mate, and if 30...Rh8, then 31 Rc4 wins, e.g., 31...Qg7 32 Rh4+ Qh6 33 Rxc6/Qxh6, mate.

208 [VX-139]. White is down a piece for two pawns, but White can win a whole Rook with 24 Rxf7 Rfxf7 (1-0) 25 Rf1 Qe7 (this puts pressure on White's Be6) 26 Bxf7+, White is up the exchange and two pawns.
209 [VX-153]. White is down a piece for two pawns, but after 24 Ne5 Raa7 25 Nxc6 Qa8 26 Nxa7 Qxa7, White wins with 27 g5, attacking the only defender of Black's Nd5.

210 [VX-144]. White is down a piece for two pawns, but can win two pieces with 21 Rxd5 (1-0) Nxd5 22 Bxf7+ Kf8 (22...Kxf7 drops the Queen to 23 e6+) 23 Bxd5, when White is up a piece and two pawns.

211 [VX-145]. White can win Black's pinned Rf7 with 28 Bg6 Qd7 (getting out of the pin with 28...Kh8 loses to 29 Rxf7 Rxf7 30 Qe8+ (1-0) Rf8 31 Qxf8, mate) 29 Bxf7+ Rxf7 30 Qxd7 (taking on f7 just activates Black's King) Rxd7 31 Bxb6, when White is up two pawns and will also win Black's a-pawn.

4. Mates

212 [VX-154]. White wins with 27 Rf1+ Ke8 28 Bxe6, threatening 29 Qxf8, mate, when 28...Rxf1+ doesn't help because after 29 Kxf1 Black can't stop 30 Qh8, mate.

213 [VX-147]. After 16 Ng5, White threatens to take on both f7 and h7, e.g.,
   a) 16...Bxg5 loses to 17 Qxf7+ Kh8 18 Qf8, mate; b) 16...Nbd7 17 Qxh7+ Kf8 18 Qh8 is also mate; c) 16...Qh6 17 Qxf7 Kh8 18 Qg8, mate; or d) 16...Qg6 drops the Queen to 17 Bxf7+.

5. White Plays Ne6

214 [VX-125]. White wins with 18 Nxe6+, forking Black's King and Queen.

215 [VX-126]. White wins with 17 Ne6, threatening both 18 Nxd8 and 18 Qxg7, mate.

216 [VX-126]. White mates in two with 17 Ne6+ Kxf7 18 Qxg7, mate.
217 [VX-141]. 23 Ne6 traps Black's Queen.

218 [VX-138]. White wins with 11 Ne6 Kxe6 (in the game Black gave up his Queen with 11...Nde5 12 Nxd8+ Rxd8 (1-0, 16)) 12 Qd5+ Kf6 13 Qf5, mate.

219 [VX-148]. White wins with 11 Ne6 Kxe6 (11...dxe6 drops the Queen) 12 Qd5+ Kf5 13 g4+ Kxg4 14 Rg1+ (14 Qe4+ also wins), mating, e.g., a) 14...Kh5 15 Kg5, mate; b) 14...Kh3 15 Qg2+ Kh4 16 Qg4, mate; c) 14...Kh4 15 Qe4+ Kh5 16 Qg4, mate; and d) 14...Kh5 15 Qg2, with 16 Qg4/Qg5, mate.

6. King Hunts

220 [VX-155]. White wins with 26 Re1+ Kd5 27 Qf5+, e.g., 27...Kd6 28 Re5+ Ka6 29 Qd7, mate, or 27...Kxd4 28 Be3+ Kc3 29 Re1+ Kb4 30 Qb1+ Ka5 31 Kc1+ Kb4 32 Qb4+, mate.

221 [VX-147]. White wins with 19 Qxg6+ Kxe5 20 Re1, threatening threats 21 Bf2+ Kf5 22 Bd4, mate, e.g., 20...Qe7 21 Bf2+ Kf4 22 Bg3, mate, or 20...Be4 21 Bf2+ Kf4 22 Bg3+Bxg3 23 hxg3, mate.

222 [VX-150]. White wins with 17 Rae1+ Kd6 18 Qf4+ Ne5 (18...Kd5 19 Qxf5+ wins Black's Queen) 19 Rxe5 Qe7 (other moves drop the Queen, e.g., 19...Qb6 20 Re5+ or 19...Qxa2 20 Re5+) 20 Re5+ Kd7 21 Qxf5+ Kd6 22 Qe6, mate.

223 [VX-155]. White wins with 29 Qxf6+ Kc8 30 Qxc6, threatening both 31 Qxa8 and Qe6+, winning Black's Rg8, e.g., 30...Rxh8 31 Qxh8 or 30...Bb7 31 Qe6+ Kb8 32 Qxg8+.

224 [VX-155]. White wins with 29 Rxe8+ Nxe8 30 Bg5+ Nf6 31 Bxf6+ (31 Qf8+ Kd7 32 Qxa8 is also good) exe6 32 Qf8+ Kd7 33 Qxa8, when White has a Queen and three pawns for two Bishops.

225 [VX-155]. Here 29 Bxg7 drops the Queen to 29...Bxh2+, but White can win with 29 Qe7+ Kc8 30 Qe6+ Kb8 31 Bxg7 Re8 32 Rb1+ Rb7 33 Qf5, when White has a Queen and four pawns for a Rook and two pieces.
226 [VX-134]. White wins with 25 Bxf7+ Kxf7 26 Rd7+, e.g., a) 26...Re7 27 Qd5+ Kf8 28 Rd8+ Re8 29 Qf5+ Ke7 (29...Kg8 30 Rxe8 is mate) 30 Rd7, mate, or b) 26...Kf8 27 Qa3+ c5 28 Qc3 Re7 29 Rxe7 Kxe7 30 Re1+ with 31 Qe3 or 31 Qd3+, e.g., 30...Kd8 31 Qd3+ Kc7 32 Re7+ Kb8 33 Qd6+, etc.

227 [VX-151]. White wins with 20 Qxh7+ Kd6 21 Bf4+ Kc5 22 Qf5+ Kb4 23 a3+ Ka5 24 b4+ Bxb4 25 axb4+ Kxb4 26 Na2+, e.g., a) 26...Ka5 27 Bd2+ Ka4 28 Bb3+ Ka3 29 Bc1, mate; b) 26...Ka4 27 Bb3+ Ka5 (27...Ka3 28 Bc1, mate) 28 Bd2, mate; or c) 26...Ka3 27 Bc1+ Ka4 28 Bb3+ Ka5 29 Bd2, mate.

228 [VX-156]. White wins with 28 Bxh6, e.g., a) 28...Bxh6 29 Qf6+ Ke8 (29...Kg8 loses to 30 Qxd8 and 31 Qxc8) 30 Re1+ Be6 (30...Kd7 31 Qe7 is mate) 31 Rxe6+ Kd7 32 Re7+ Kc8 33 Qc6+ Kb8 34 Qb7, mate, or b) 28...Rd7 29 Bxg7+ and now: 30...Rxg7 31 Re8, mate or 30...Kg8 31 Re8+ Rf8 32 Rxg8, mate.

229 [VX-148]. White wins with 12 Qd5+ Kf5 13 g4+ Kxg4 14 Kg1+ (14 Qe4+ Kg1 is also good) and now: a) 14...Kf5 15 Rg5, mate; b) 14...Kh3 15 Qg2+ Kh4 16 Qg4, mate; c) 14...Kh5 15 Qg2 with 16 Qg5/Qg4, mate; d) 14...Kh4 15 Qe4+ (15 Bg5+ and 15 Qg2 also win) Kh5 (15...Kh3 16 Qg4+ Kxh2 17 Qg3, mate) 16 Qg4, mate.

230 [VX-154]. White can drive Black's King to d-file and win Black's Queen with 29 Qh7+, e.g., a) 29...Kf8 30 Rf1+ Ke8 21 Qg8+ Kd7 32 Rg1+ Ke7 33 Qxd8+; b) 29...Ke8 30 Qg8+ Kd7 31 Rd1+ Ke7 32 Qxd8+; c) 29...Ke6 30 Qg6+ Kd7 31 Rg1+ Ke7 32 Qc2+; or d) 29...Qf6 30 Rf1+ Ke6 (30...Qg5 31 Qh4, mate) 31 Qxg6+ Kd7 32 Rd1+ Ke7 33 Qc2+, winning Black's Queen.

231 [VX-134]. White wins with 23 Bxe6+, e.g., a) 23...Kxe6 24 Qd5+ and now: a1) 24...Ke7 25 Qe5+ Kf7 26 Rd7+ Kg8 27 Qxg7, mate, a2) 24...Kf6 25 Qf5+ Ke7 26 Rd7+ Kg8 27 Qxg7, mate; b) 23...Ke7 24 Rd7+ Ke8 27 Qe6+ Qe7 28 Qxe7, mate; or b) 23...Ke7 24 Rd7+ and now: b1) 24...Kxe6 25 Qd5+ Kf6 26 Qf5, mate, b2) 24...Kf6 25 g5+ Kg6 26 Qe4+ Kh5 27 Qxh7, mate, b3) 24...Ke8 25 Qxh7 Rd8 26 Qc6, with the threat of 27 Rxg7+ Rd7 28 Qxd7, mate.
7. Comparing Various Captures on e6 (Rxe6, Bxe6, Pxe6)

232 [VX-132]. Here 15 Rxe6 can be met by 15...b4 16 Na4 Nf8 17 Re1 Bd5, when Black controls the a2-g8 diagonal, but better is 15 Bxe6 Nf8 16 Bxf7+ Kxf7, with a Rook and two pawns for two pieces.

233 [VX-136]. White is down a piece for a pawn, but can play either 23 Rxe6 or 23 dxe6, e.g., 23 dxe6+ Ke7 24 Qf5 Nh8 25 Qe5, threatening 26 Qxg7, or 23 Rxe6 Rd6 24 Qf5+ Kg8 25 Qxg6, when White is up two pawns.

235 [VX-140]. Here White can win with either 18 Rxe6 or 18 Bxe6:

   a) 18 Rxe6 Kf8 19 Qd5 (1-0) threatens 20 Rf6+ with either 21 Qf7 or 21 Qg8, mate. Now 19...Nf6 loses to 20 Rxf6+, e.g., 20...Bxf6 21 Qf7, mate or 20...Qxf6 21 Qg8, mate, while after 19...Ne5 20 Qxe5 Qxe5 21 Rxe5, White is up two pawns.

   b) Even better is 18 Bxe6, e.g., 18...Kf8 19 Qh5 or 18...Ke8 19 Qe2 (now 19 Qh5+ g6 20 Qxh7 allows 20...Nf8, attacking two pieces at once) 19...Qg5 20 Bc4 (intending 21 Qe6) Nf8, when White wins on the dark squares with 21 Bc1 Qf6 22 Qxe7+ Qxe7 23 Rxe7+ Kxe7 24 Bg5+ Ke8 25 Re1+ Kd7 26 Rd1+, winning Black's Rd8.
125. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Ndxf7 Rxf7. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 White is up a pawn after 17...Qe7 18 Nd6. 2 Hint: Note the count on e6.

126. The count on f7 is 2-2, but Black’s e6 and g7 are weak. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxf7+1 Nxf7. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 The actual game continued 16 e5 (1-0, 23). 2 After 16...Kf8 17 Ne6+ Kxf7, instead of taking Black’s Queen, White can play 18 Qxg7, mate. 3 Hint: Note the count on e6.

127. The count is 3-3 on f7 and 2-2 on e6, but White can remove one of the defenders of f7. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nxe6 Rxe6 21 Bxf7+ Nxf7 22 Rxe6. What is the material balance?

1 21...Kh8 22 Bxe6 gives White a Rook and pawn.

128. Watch the count on e6. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Nxh7 Kxh7 19 dxe6+ Bxe6 20 Rxe6. What is the material balance?

1 18...Rxh7 19 dxe6 Bxe6 (19...Rf8 drops the Be7 after 20 exd7 Qxd7 21 Rxe7) 20 Rxe6 is similar to the main line. 2 The actual game continued 19...Ke8 20 Rd1 Rc8 21 Bxf6 (1-0) Bxf6 22 exd7+ Kf7 23 dxc8=Q Qxc8 24 Bd5+, when White is up a Rook and a pawn.
129. White is up a piece for a pawn, but his Rf5 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Rxf7 Rxf7 15 Bxe6 dxc3 16 Bxf7+ Kh8. What is the material balance?

130. Watch the count on f7 and e6. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Nxf7 Kxf71 23 Rxe6 Qxe6 24 Bxe6+ Kxe62. What is the material balance?

1 22...Qxf7 loses to 23 Bxe6, while 22...Rxd4 23 Rxe6 Qxf7/Qf8/Qb8 loses to 24 Rxf6, and if 24...gxf6 then 25 Qg6+. 2 23...Qd7 drops the Queen to 24 Rd6+.

131. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nxf7 Rxf71 17 Bxe6 Re7 18 Bxf7+ Kxf7. What is the material balance?

1 After 16...Kxf7 17 Bxe6 Ke8, White’s idea is to take Black’s Re8 with check, so he plays 18 d5, threatening to play 19 d6, driving Black’s Ne7 off the e-file, when 19...Qd6 can be met by 20 Bxe8 Bxe8 21 Nb5, driving Black’s Queen off of d6, since 21...Qxd5 loses to 22 Ne7+.

132. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Nxf7 Rxf71 15 Bxe62 Nf8 16 Bxf7+ Kxf7. What is the material balance?

1 14...Kxf7 15 Rxe5 Ke8 gives White a pin on e7, e.g., 16 Qc2 Rf7 17 Re1, when White’s threat is 18 Re3 and Black’s Rf7 is trapped after either 17...Kf8 18 Re3 or 17...Nf8 18 Re3. 2 15 Rxe6 gives up the a2-g8 diagonal after 15...b4 16 Na4 Nf8 17 Re1 Bd5.
133. White is down two pawns, but Black’s Be6 is pinned. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Bxf7 Qe7\(^1\) 20 Rxe6 Qd7 21 Bxg8 Rxc8. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) Two alternatives: a) 19...Qd7 20 Bxe6 Qa4 21 Bxg8 Rxc8, when White has a Queen for a Rook, Bishop, and pawn, when Black resigned after 21 Qf4 Bxe2 22 Qxd4 (1-0), when defending the c-pawn with 22...Rac8 drops the a-pawn and 22...Rxc8 allows 23 Re7, attacking the g-pawn.

134. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Nxf7 Rxf7\(^1\) 23 Bxe6 Re8\(^2\) 24 Bxf7+ Kxf7. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) 22...Kxf7 loses to 23 Bxe6+, e.g., a) 23...Kf8 24 Rd7+ Ke8 25 Qxb7 Rd8 26 Qc6, with the threat of 27 Rxg7+ Rd7 28 Qxg7, mate (1-0) or b) 23...Kxe6 24 Qd5+ a forced mate (see the preparatory positions). \(^2\) The passive 23...Ra8 can be met by 24 g5, locking out Black’s Queen, e.g., 24...Re8 25 Bxf7+ Kxf7 26 Rd7+, with a winning attack (see the preparatory positions).

135. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Nxf7 Rxf7 13 Bxe6 Ne5\(^1\) 14 dxe5\(^2\) Bxe6 15 Qxe6. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) White is up two pawns after 13...Qc7 14 Bd5 Nc6 15 Bxe6 Rh8 16 Qc4. \(^2\) Also good is 14 Bxf7+ Nxf7 15 Bxc5, when White has a Rook and three pawns for two pieces (8 points to 6).

136. Black is weak along the 6th rank. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Nxf7\(^1\) Kxf7 23 Rxe6\(^2\) Rd6 24 Qf5+ Kg8 25 Qxg6. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) This is better than 22 Nxe6 fxe6 23 Rxe6 Rd6, when Black’s King is on g8 (rather than f7), when 24 Qf5 isn’t possible because it doesn’t come with check. \(^2\) This move attacks Black’s Qb5 and threatens 24 Qf5+.
137. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Nxf7 Kxf7 1 24 Bxe6+ Kxe6 25 Bxf6+ Kd6 26 Bxg7. What is the material balance?

1 After 23...Nxe5 24 Nxe5 Re8, White will win Black's e-pawn with 25 Qf5, and if 25...Qxb2, then White is up the exchange after 26 Bxe6+ Rx e6 (26...Kf8 27 Ng6, mate) 27 Qxe6+. 2 Even better is 26 Qg3+, for example, 26...Kd5 27 Re5+ when 27...Nxe5 gives White a forced mate: 28 Qxe5+ Kc4 29 Qe2+ Kd5 30 c4+ Kd6 31 Qe7, mate.

138. Black's Qd8 is hemmed in. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxf7+ Kxf7 11 Ne6 Kxe61. How does White mate in two?

1 In the game Black gave up his Queen with 11...Nde5 12 Nxd8+ Rxd8 and resigned a few moves later (1-0, 16).

139. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Nxf7 Rxf7 23 Bxe6 Rec7 24 Rx e7 Rx f7 25 Rf1 Qe 71 26 Bxf7+. What is the material balance?

1 This puts pressure on White's Be6, but other moves are similar.

140. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxf7 Kxf7 18 Rxe6+ Kf8 19 Qd5+ Ne5 20 Qxe5 Qxe5 21 Rx e5. What is the material balance?

1 18 Bx e6 is also good. 2 White's threat is 20 Rf6+ and 21 Qf7/Qg8, mate. Black resigned here. 3 19...Nf6 loses to 20 Rx f6+, e.g., 20...Bxf6 21 Qf7, mate or 20...Qxf6 21 Qg8, mate.
141. If White can get in Ne6, he'll win Black's Queen. Visualize the position after the moves 21 fxg6 hxg6 22 Rxf71 Nf82 23 Ne6 Nxe6 24 dxe6 Rf83 25 Rcf1. What is the material balance?

1 White's threat is 23 Ne6. 2 White is up a Queen and pawn for a Rook and Knight after 22...Kxf7 23 Ne6 Nxe6 24 Nxd8+ Rxd8. 3 24...Nc7 attacks White's e-pawn, but can be met by 25 Qg4, defending the e-pawn and threatening 26 Qxg6 and 27 Qxg7, mate.

142. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxf7 Kxf71 18 dxe6+2 Kg8 19 exd7 Nxd7. What is the material balance and how can White win more material here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 Declining the Knight is fine for White, e.g., 17...Nc5 (17...Bf8 gives up another pawn to 18 dxe6) 18 Ne5, e.g., 18...Bd6 19 Bg6 Rf8 20 b4 or 18...exd5 19 Nxd5 Bxd5 20 exd5 Bd6 21 Re1, overprotecting the Ne5 so that White can get out of the pin with 22 Qf3. 2 This is better than 18 Qxe6+ Kf8 19 Bg6 Ne5 20 Qxe5, White is up two pawns. 3 Hint: The count on d7 is 1-1, but White can add an extra attacker.

143. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Ngxf7 Rxg7 16 Bxe6 Ra8 17 Nxf7 Rxg7 18 Qg61 Qb4 19 Qxg7+ Kh8. What is the material balance?

1 The actual game continued 18 Qb3 Nd5 19 Bxf7+ (1-0) Kxf7 20 e4 Kg8 21 exd5 exd5, when White is up two Rooks and a pawn for two pieces (11 points to 6), but Black could have defended f7 another time with 18...Qh5 19 Bxf7 Qxf7, when White has two Rooks and two pawns for three minor pieces (12 points to 9).

144. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Neg5 Nb41 19 Nxf7 Rxg7 20 Bxe6 Bd5 21 Rxd51 Nxd5 22 Bxf7+ Kf82 23 Bxd5. What is the material balance?

1 This prepares ...Bd5, but better is 18...h6 19 Nxe6 fxe6 20 Bxe6+ Kh8 21 Bxd7 Rxh4 22 Bxh6, when White is up two pawns. 2 22...Kxf7 allows a discovered attack on the Queen after 23 e6+. 3
145. Black's Re7 is overworked. Visualize the position after the moves 26 Rxf7 Rxf7 27 Qxe6 Raf81 28 Bg6 Qd72 29 Bxf7+ Rxd7 30 Qxd7 Rxh7 31 Bxb6. What is the material balance?

1 Breaking the pin with 27...Kf8 loses to 28 Rxf7+ Qxf7 29 Qxb6, when Black's Queen is tied to the defense of the Bb7, which White threatens to take advantage of with 30 e6, when 30...Qe7 loses to 31 Bc5. Now 29...Rb8 drops the Rook to 30 Qd6+, and if 29...Rc8 then 30 Bc5+ Kg8 31 e6 Qc7 32 Qxc7 Rxc7 e7, when White's e-pawn threatens, e.g., 33...Kf7 34 Bg6+ or 33...Rc8 34 Bg6. 2 28...Kh8 loses to 29 Rxf7 Rxf7 30 Qe8+ (1-0) Rf8 31 Qxf8, mate.

146. White wants to get rid of Black's pawn on e6 so he can play Nf5 and Qg4. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxf7+ Rxf7 16 dxe6 Re7 17 Nf5 Rxe6 18 Qg4 Re7 19 Nxe7+ Kf7 20 Qxd7. What is the material balance?

1 After 15...Kxh7 16 dxe6+ Kxh6, White wins either the Bg7 or the Ne7 with 17 Qg4+. 2 17...Ne5 drops the Re7 (1-0), while 17...Qd8 18 Nxc5+ Rxc5 19 exd7 Qxc7 19 exd7 Qxd7 nets White the exchange and a pawn. 3 18...Kf8 loses to 19 Qxg7+ Ke6 20 Qxh7+ Kf5 21 Ne5, when White is up two pawns after winning the exchange on f7. 2 After 16...g6 17 Bxf7+ Kxf7 18 Qh7+ Ke6 19 Qxe6+, White has four pawns for the piece and an attack, e.g., 19...Kxe5 (19...Kd7 drops the Queen to 20 Rd1+) 20 Re1 with a forced mate, e.g., a) 20...Qd7 21 Bf2+ Kf4 22Bg3, mate, or b) 20...Bh4 21 Bf2+ Kf4 22 Bxg3 23 hxg3, mate.

147. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Rxf7 Rxh7 15 Nxe6 Nxe61 16 Bxe6 Qe82 17 Rf1 Bf6 18 Bxf7+ Qxf7 19 Qxf7+ Kxf7 20 exf6 gxf6. What is the material balance?

1 Moving the Queen is worse, e.g., a) 15...Qb6 loses to 16 Ng5, when White is threatening to take both f7 and h7, or b) 15...Qe8 16 Nxc5 (this is better than winning Black's Queen with 16 Ne7 Nxb3 17 Nxe8 Nxa1, when Black has two Rooks and a Bishop for a Queen and two pawns) Bxc5 17 Bxc5, when White will be up two pawns after winning the exchange on f7. 2 After 16...g6 17 Bxf7+ Kxf7 18 Qxh7+ Ke6 19 Qxe6+, White has four pawns for the piece and an attack, e.g., 19...Kxe5 (19...Kd7 drops the Queen to 20 Rd1+) 20 Re1 with a forced mate, e.g., a) 20...Qd7 21 Bf2+ Kf4 22Bg3, mate, or b) 20...Bh4 21 Bf2+ Kf4 22 Bxg3 23 hxg3, mate.

148. Visualize the position after the moves 9 e5 Ne81 10 Bxf7+ Kxf7 11 Ne6 Kxe62 12 Qd5+ Kf5 13 g4+ Kxg4 14 Rg1+ Kh5 15 Qe4+ Kh45. How does White mate in one?

1 Better is 9...Nxb3 10 exf6 Nxa1 11 fxg7 Kxg7 12 Qxa1, when White has two pieces for a Rook and pawn. 2 In the game Black chose 11...dxe6 12 Qxd8, giving up his Queen and pawn for two pieces (1-0, 42). 3 14 Qe4+ Kh5 15 Rg1 is also good. 4 Three alternatives: a) 14...Kf5 15 Rg5, mate; b) 14...Kh5 15 Qg2 e6 16 Qg4, mate; c) 14...Kh3 15 Qg2+ Kh4 16 Qg4, mate. 5 15 Bg5+ and 15 Qg2 also win. 6 15...Kh3 allows 16 Qg4+ Kxh2 17 Qg3, mate.
149. White’s Bg5 and d-pawn are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nxf7 Rxf7 16 Bxe6 Qf8 17 Qxb6 hgx5 18 Qxb7 Nbd7 19 Bxf7+ Kxf7 20 Qb3+ Nd5 21 Qxd5+ Ke6. How does White win in this position?

1 After 15...Qxd4 16 Be3 Qh4 17 Bxe6 Kh7 18 Qxb6, White is up two pawns. 2 Black’s b-pawn falls after 16...Qe8 17 Bf4 and 18 Qxb6, giving White three pawns for a piece, plus the exchange on f7. 3 Black’s Rook is trapped after 17...Kh7 18 Bf4, while 17...Bc6 loses to 18 Bxf6 Bxf6 19 d5, e.g., 19...Bd7 20 Bxf7 Qxf7 21 Qb7 with 22 Qxa8. 4 19...Qxf7 drops the Ra8 (1-0). 5 The only legal move.

150. White can take advantage of Black’s undefended Qa5. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nxf7 Kxf7 16 Bxe6+ Kxe6 17 Rae1+ Kd6 18 Qf4+ Ne5 19 Rxe5 Qc7 20 Re3+ Kd7. How does White win here?

1 16...Bxe6 isn’t possible because of 17 Qxa5. 2 The game continued 17...Ne5 18 Rxe5+ Qxe5 19 dxe5, when White has a Queen and two pawns for a Rook and Bishop (1-0, 23). 3 18...Kd5 drops the Queen to 19 Qxf5+. 4 Other moves drop the Queen, e.g., 19...Qb6 20 Rb5+ or 19...Qxa2 20 Ra5+, while 19...Qxe5 20 Qxe5+ Kd7 21 Qxf5+ gives White a Queen and two pawns for a Rook.

151. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Rxf7 Kxf7 17 Bxe6+ Ke8 18 Bxg7+ Rxe8 19 Bxf8 Rxf8 20 Rf1+ Ke7 21 Qg5+ Ke8. How does White mate in two?

1 After 17...Ke7 18 Qf5, White threatens 19 Qf7, mate, when a) 18...Nf6 19 exf6+ gxf6 20 Qxh7+ Kd6 21 Bf4+ Ke5 22 Qf5+ gives White a mate in seven (see the preparatory positions) and b) 18...Nxe5 drops the Rook to 19 Bg5+ Kd6 20 Bxd8, since 20...Qxd8 drops the Queen to 21 Ndx5+, with a skewer along the d-file. 2 Now White’s threat is 19 Qh5+ Ke7 20 Qf7, mate. 3 This frees up d8 for the King and is best, since 18...Bxg7 loses to 19 Qh5+ Ke7 20 Qf7, mate. 4 Relatively best is 19...Nxh1, giving up the exchange to 20 Bxc8, when White is up three pawns. 5 20...Ke8 21 Qg8+ Ke7 22 Rf7 is mate.

152. Visualize the position after the moves 7 Bxf7+ Rxf7 8 Ne6 Qe8 9 Nxc7 Qd8 10 Nxa8 b6 11 dxe5 Nxe5 12 Bg5 Bd7 13 Bxf6 Bxf6 14 Qxd6 Qxa8. What is the material balance?

1 White is temporarily up the exchange and two pawns, but his Na8 is trapped. 2 10...exd4 11 Qxd4 b6 12 Nb5 Nc5 13 Nxa7 Bb7 14 f3 Qxa8 15 Nb5 Qa5+ 16 Nc3, when White has a Rook and three pawns for two pieces (1-0, 19). 3 Better, but difficult to find, is 14...Nc6 15 Ne7 Be5.
153. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Nxf7 Rxf7\(^1\) 23 Bxe6 Ned5\(^2\) 24 Ne5 Raa7 25 Nxc6\(^3\) Qa8 26 Nxa7 Qxa7 27 g5\(^4\) Nf4\(^5\) 28 Bx7+ Qx7 29 gxf6 Bxf6. What is the material balance?

\(^{1}\) After 22...Kxf7 23 Ng5+ Kg8 24 Nxe6 Qe8 25 Nxf8+ Bxc4 26 Rxc4 Bxf8 27 Bxe7, White is up the exchange and two pawns. 2 23...Kf8 drops the Rf7 to 24 Ng5. 3 After 25 Rxc6 Nf4 26 Rxa6 Rxa6 27 Bxf7+ Kh8 White is up three pawns (1-0). 4 This undermines the only defender of Black's Nd5. 5 After 29...Nh3+ 30 Kg2 Nf4+ 31 Kh1 Qd5+, White can consolidate his position with 32 f3, and if 32...Be2 then 33 Qb3 gets the Queens off the board.

154. Both minor pieces under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 25 fxg6 hxg6 26 Rxf7 Rxf7\(^1\) 27 Bxe6 dxe5\(^2\) 28 Qxg6+ Kh8 29 Bx7 Qf8\(^3\) 30 Re1. What is White's threat and how does White win after 30...Rb8?

\(^{1}\) 26...Kxf7 loses to 27 Rf1+ Ke8 28 Bxe6, threatening 29 Qxf8, mate, when after 28...Rx1+ 29 Kxf1 Black can't stop 30 Qh8, mate. 2 After 27...Rxe5 28 Qxg6+ Kh8 29 Bx7 White is up a piece and a pawn and threatens 30 Qb6, mate. 3 Also good is 28 Bx7+, as played in the game, e.g., 28...Kxf7 29 Qh8+ Kh7 30 Rf1+ (1-0) Ke6 (30...Kg5 31 Qd4, mate) 31 Qg6+ Kd7, when 32 Rd1+ Ke6 33 Qc2+ wins Black's Queen. 4 This prevents 30 Qh8, mate.

155. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Nxf7 Kxf7 23 Rxe6 Qxe6\(^1\) 24 Bxe6+ Kxe6 25 Qg6 Rg8 26 Re1+\(^2\) Kd7\(^3\) 27 Qf7+ Kd8 28 Bxh6 Re8\(^4\) 29 Rxe8+ Nxe8 30 Bg5+\(^5\) Nf6 31 Bxf6+ gxf6. How can White wins Black's Rook here?

\(^{1}\) White is up three pawns after 23...Qf8 24 Rxc6+ Ke8 25 Rxc7. 2 Also good is 26 Bxh6 gxh6 27 Re8+. 3 26...Kd5 drops the Bc7 to 27 Qf7+ Kxd4 28 Qxc7. 4 Two alternatives: a) 28...gxh6 loses to 29 Qxf6+ Ke8 30 Qxc6, when White threatens both 31 Qxa8 and Qe6+, e.g., 30...Rb8 31 Qxa6 or 30...Bb7 31 Qe6+ Kb8 32 Qxg8+; b) 28...Ra7 drops the g-pawn, giving White three connected passed pawns on the kingside, e.g., 29 Qe7+ Ke8 30 Qe6+ Kb8 31 Bxg7 Re8 32 Rb1+ Rb7 33 Qf5. 5 Also good is 31 Qf8+ Kd7 32 Qxa8.

156. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Bb3 Qa5\(^1\) 23 Nxf7 Rxf7\(^2\) 24 Bxe6 Bc8 25 Bxf7+ Kxf7 26 Rxe7+ Kxe7 27 Qxg6 Kf8\(^3\) 28 Bxh6 Bxh6 29 Qf6+ Ke8 30 Re1+ Be6\(^5\) 31 Rxe6+ Kd7 32 Re7+ Ke8. How does White mate in two?

\(^{1}\) 22...Qd6 23 Nxf7 Qd7 24 Bxe6 Qe8 loses to 25 Nxd8+ Kh7 26 Nxb7. 2 23...Kxf7 24 Bxe6+ Ke8 allows 25 Bd6, intending either 26 Bb3 or 26 Bxe7 Kxe7 27 Qc7+. 3 This defends the Bg7 without losing the pawn on h6. 4 Defending the Bg7 with 28...Rd7 allows a back rank mate, e.g., 29 Re1 Rf7 30 Bxg7+ and now: 30...Rxf7 31 Re8, mate, or 30...Kg8 31 Re8+ Rf8 32 Rxf8, mate. 5 30...Kd7 loses to 31 Qe7, mate.
CHAPTER 5. THE SQUARES F7 AND G6

This chapter contains exercises in which White captures Black’s pawn on f7, then occupies the g6 square.

In Diagram 1, the count on f7 is 2-2, but White wins with 1 Nxf7, when Black can’t move his Queen because of 2 Qxg6, mate, while 1...Rxf7 loses to 2 Qxg6+ (see Diagram 2), e.g., 2...Kf8 3 Qxf7, mate, or 2...Kh8 3 Bxf7, when White is up the exchange and a pawn and threatens 4 Qh6, mate.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. White Dominates the f7 Square
2. Black Doesn’t Take on f7
3. Black Takes on f7 with his Rook
4. Black Takes on f7 with his Rook, White has a Knight on g5
5. Black Takes on f7 with his King
6. Positions with White’s Queen on g6

These themes are illustrated using thirty-nine preparatory positions, which are followed by twenty visualization exercises ranging in depth from five to nineteen ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply:</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Diagram 1

Diagram 2
1. White Dominates the f7 Square

236 [VX-162]. White wins with either 20 Rxf7 Rxf7 21 Rxg7, threatening 22 Qh7/Qg7, mate, or 20 Bxf7, threatening 21 Qh6, mate, and if 20...Rxf7, then 21 Rxf7 wins.

237 [VX-161]. White wins with 24 Rxf7, e.g., a) 24...Qxf7 25 Qg6+ Kh8 26 Qh7, mate, or b) 24...Kh7 25 Rh7+ Kxh7 26 Qg6+ Kh8 27 Qh7, mate.

238 [VX-166]. 22 Rxg7+ Kxg7 23 Bh6+ wins, e.g., a) 23...Kxg6 24 Qf7, mate; b) 23...Kf7 24 Rh7+ Kxh7 25 Qg6+ Kh8 26 Qf7, mate.

2. Black Doesn’t Take on f7

239 [VX-174]. White wins with 21 Qg6+ Kf8 22 Ne5, with 23 Qf7, mate.

240 [VX-169]. White wins with 21 Qf6, when Black has to give up his Queen to stop 23 Qf7, mate.

241 [VX-170]. White wins with 18 Qxg6+ Bg7 19 Nhx6+ Kh8 (19...Kf8 20 Qg7 is mate) 20 Qh7, mate.

242 [VX-170]. Here Black controls e5, but White mates in five with 18 Qg6+ Kg8 19 Qhx6+ Kxh7 20 Bg6+ Kf8 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Qf7, mate.

243 [VX-170]. White wins with 18 Qg6+ Kf8 19 Qf6, with the threat of 20 Nhx6, mate, e.g., 19...Rd8 (Black runs out of checks after 19...Bxb2 20 Qxb2 Qb4+ 21 Ka1, and if 21...Re7 then 22 Qh8+ Kxf7 23 g6 is mate) 20 Nhx6+ Ke8 21 Qf7/Bg6, mate.

244 [VX-167]. 21 Nhx6+ wins, e.g., a) 21...Kf8 22 Bb6+ Re7 22...Qx6 23 Qf7 is mate) 23 Qf7, mate, or b) 21...Kh8 22 Bxg5 (threatening 23 Bxf6 Bxf6 24 Nf7+) Kf8 23 Rx6, e.g., 23...Qxe6 24 Bxf6 Bxf6 25 Qh7, mate or 23...Re6 24 Bxf6 Bxf6 25 Re8 Rx8 26 Nf7+.
3. Black Takes on f7 with his Rook

245 [VX-166]. After 20 Rxf7, Black can’t play 20...Rxf7 because it drops the Queen to 21 Ng6+.

246 [VX-160]. White wins Black’s Queen with 17 Qxf7+ (1-0) Kxf7 18 Bg5+ Kg8 19 Bxh4, when White is up a Rook.

247 [VX-172]. White has only a single pawn for the piece, but gets two more pawns with 15 Qxg6 and 16 Bxh6, giving him three pawns for the piece.

248 [VX-173]. White controls the e-file and wins with 15 Qh7+ Kf8 16 Qh8, mate.

249 [VX-173]. White wins with 15 Rxe8+ Qxe8 16 Nf6+, when White either mates or wins Black’s Queen, e.g., 16...Rxh6 17 Qxe8+, 16...Kh8 17 Nxe8, or 16...Kh7 17 Qh7, mate.

250 [VX-161]. White wins with 24 Qxg6+ Rg7 (24...Ng7 drops the Rf7) 25 Qxe6+ Kh8 26 Rf8+ Qxf8 27 Qxh6/Rxg8/Qxh6, mate.

251 [VX-162]. White wins with 20 Qxg6+, e.g., a) 20...Kf8 21 Rxf7+ Ke8 22 Qg8, mate or b) 20...Kh8 21 Rxf7, threatening both 22 Rxc7 and 22 Qh7, mate, and after 21...Qxf7 22 Bxf7, Black can’t stop 23 Qh6, mate.

252 [VX-172]. White wins with 18 Rxf7+ Kxf7 19 Rf1+ (1-0) Ke8 (19... Kg8 20 Qh7 is mate; 19...Nf5 drops the Queen to 20 Qh7++; and 19...Ke7 20 Qxg7+ Kd7 21 Rf8 is mate) 20 Qh8+ Ke7 21 Qxg7+ (or 21 Qf8+ Kd7 22 Rf7, mate) Kd7 22 Rf8, mate.

253 [VX-172]. White wins after 18 Rxf7+ Kxf7 19 Qh7+ (19 Rf1+ also wins), e.g., 19...Ng7 20 Rf1+ Ke8 21 Qg8+ Kd7 22 Rf7, mate.
254 [VX-162]. White has two ways to win. 20 Rxf7 Qxf7 drops the Queen to 21 Qxg6+ Kh8 22 Bxf7, when Black can't stop Qh6, mate, e.g., 22...Bf5 23 exf5 Rf8 24 Qh6, mate. See the next exercise for 20 Qxg6+.

255 [VX-162]. White can also win with 20 Qxg6+, when 20...Kf8 loses to 21 Rxf7+ 21...Ke8 (21...Qxf7 22 Qxf7 is mate) 22 Qg8, mate or 20...Kh8 21 Rxf7 Qxf7 22 Bxf7, when Black can't prevent 23 Qh6, mate. See the previous exercise for 20 Rxf7.

256 [VX-165]. White wins with 17 Qxg6+ Kh8 (17...Kf8 18 Qxf7 is mate) 18 Bxf7, threatening 19 Qh6, mate, when a) 18...Bf8 loses to 19 Qg8, mate; b) 18...Qf8 loses to 19 Qh5+ Kg7 20 Bh6+ Kh7 21 Bxf8, mate; and c) 18...Bf5 19 Qxf5 Qf8 loses to 20 Qxh5+.

257 [VX-168]. White wins with 19 Rf3, threatening to win Black's Nf6 with 20 Rxf6, since both of Black's defenders are pinned. Now 19...Nd5 drops the Queen to 20 Rxf7 Qxf7 21 Re8+ and 19...Kf8 loses to 20 Rxf6 e.g., a) 20...Rx f6 21 Qh7, with the threat of 22 Qh9, mate, or b) 20...gx f6 21 Qxh6+ Kg8 22 Re3 with 23 Rg3+.

258 [VX-173]. White wins with 15 Bxh6+, e.g., a) 15...Bg7 16 Qh7 (threatening 17 Qh8, mate) Ne7 17 Qh8+ Ng8 18 Bh7 Ne6 19 Nxf6, when Black can't stop 20 Qxg8, mate; b) 15...Ng7 16 Qh7 Re7 17 Bg6, when Black can't stop Qh8, mate; or c) 15...Rg7 16 Rxe8+ Qxe8 17 Qxf6+ Qf7 18 Bxg7+, winning Black's Queen, e.g., 18...Ke8 19 Bg6 or 18...Kg8 19 Bh7+. 
4. Black Takes on f7 with his Rook, White has a Knight on g5

259 [VX-164]. White wins with 19 Qh7+ Kf8 20 Qh8, mate.

260 [VX-164]. White wins with 19 Bxf5, e.g., 19…Rxf5 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Qh8, mate, or 19…gxh6 20 Qh7+ Kg8 21 Qh8, mate.

261 [VX-163]. White wins with 25 Nxe6 (threatening 26 Qh7, mate) Re7 (creating an escape square on f7) 26 Rf1, when Black can't stop 27 Qh7, mate.

262 [VX-164]. White wins Black's Queen with 19 Nxhf7 (19 e6 also wins) Qxf7 20 Qh7+ (1-0) Kf8 21 Rf1 Qxf1+ 22 Kxf1, when White is up a Queen for a Rook.

263 [VX-164]. White wins with 19 e6 (19 Nxhf7 also wins), e.g., 19...Qd8 (defending the Rook doesn't help, e.g., a) 19...Qe8 20 exf7+ gives White a pawn fork, while b) 19...Qe7 loses to 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Qh8, mate) 20 Qxf7+ Kf8 21 Qg6 Kg8 (21...Qg8 drops the Queen to 22 Nxhf7+) 22 Qh7+ Kf8 23 Qh8+ Ke7 24 Qxg7+ Ke8 25 Qf7/Bg6, mate.
5. Black Takes on f7 with his King

264 [VX-169]. White wins with 21 Qg6+ Kf8 22 Qxh6+ Kg8 (22...Kf7 loses to 23 Qg6+ Kf8 24 Bxg5, threatening 25 Bh6, mate) 23 Bxg5 e3 24 Qg6+ Kh8 (24...Kf8 loses to 25 Bh6, mate) 25 Bxf6+ Bxf6 26 Qh7, mate.

265 [VX-170]. White wins with 18 Qxg6+ Kf8 19 Qxh6+, e.g., a) 19...Kf7 20 Bg6+ Kg8 21 Qf7/Qf7/Qh8, mate, or b) 19...Kg8, when White can win with either 20 Qf7+ Kf8 21 Qh8+, Kf7 22 g6, mate or 20 Bh7+, and now, a) 20...Kf7 21 Qg6+ Kf8 22 Qg8, mate, or 20...Kh8 21 Bg6+ Kg8 22 Qh7+ Kf8 23 Qf7, mate.

266 [VX-174]. White wins with 21 Qg6+ Kf8 22 Qxh6+, e.g., a) 22...Kg8 23 Qg6+ Kh8 (23...Kf7 transposes to the main line) 24 Bxg5 Rf8 25 Bxf6+ Rxh6 26 Qh7, mate, or b) 22...Kf7 23 Qg6+ Kf8 24 Bxg5 Ng8 25 Bh6+ Nxh6 26 Qxh6+, e.g., b1) 26...Kg8, 27 Qh7+ Kf8 28 Bg6 with 29 Qf7, mate, or b2) 26...Kf7 27 Bg6+ Kf6 28 Bxe8+ Ke5 (28...Kf5 29 Qf4, mate) 29 Qf4, mate.

267 [VX-167]. White wins with 20 Qg6+ Ke7 21 Rx6+, and now: a) 21...Kxe6 22 Bf5+ Ke7 23 Re1+ Ne4 24 Rx4 is mate, or b) 21...Kd7 22 Qf7+ Re7 23 Rd6+ Kc7 24 Rxd8+ Kxd8 25 Qxf8+ Ne8, when White is up a Queen and two pawns for a Rook.

268 [VX-171]. White wins with 20 Qg6+ Ke7 21 Rx6+, with a forced mate, e.g., a) 21...Kxe6 22 Re1+ Kd5 (22...Kd7 23 Qf5+ Re6 24 Qxe6 is mate) 23 Qf5+ Kxd4 (23...Kc4 loses to 24 Bb3+, e.g., 24...Kxd4 25 Rd1, mate or 24...Kb4 25 Bd2, mate) 24 Rd1+ Ke4 25 Bd3+ Kb4 (25...Kd4 26 Bf1/Bxb5 is mate) 26 Bd2+ Ka4 27 Bc2, mate, or b) 21...Kd7 22 Qf7+, e.g., b1) 22...Ke8 23 Rx8 Nxe8 24 Bf5+ Qd7 25 Qxe8, mate, or b2) 22...Re7 23 Rd6+ Ke8 24 Rx8+, when White has a Queen and pawn for a Rook after Kxd8 25 Qxf6.
6. Positions with White’s Queen on g6

269 [VX-173]. White wins with 15 Rxe8+ Qxe8 16 Qxe8, mate.

270 [VX-159]. White wins Black’s Queen with 21 Qxg7+ Ke8 22 Qh8+ Kd7 23 Rg7+, when Black either has to move his King away from the Queen or give up the Queen with 23...Qe7.

271 [VX-175]. White wins with 18 Rxe6, threatening 19 Rxe7 Kxe7 20 Qxg7 Ke6 21 Re1+, and if 18...Re8 19 Nf5, threatening mate on g7, when 19...Nhx5 loses to 20 Nhx6 gxhr6 21 Bxh6+ Ng7 22 Qxg7, mate.

272 [VX-176]. White wins with 23 Qxe6+ Kf8 (23...Kd8 24 Qxe8 is mate) 24 Qxh6+, when a) 24...Kg8 loses to 25 Bh7+, e.g., 25...Kf7 26 Qg6+ Kf8 27 Qg8, mate, or 25...Kh8 26 Kg6+ Kg8 27 Kh7+ Kf8 28 Qf7, mate; and b) 24...Kf7 loses to 25 Kg6+, e.g., 25...Kg8 26 Qh7+ Kg8 27 Qf7, mate, or 25...Kf6 26 Bh5+ Kf5 27 g4, mate.

273 [VX-175]. White wins with 18 Bxh6, e.g., a) 18...Bf8 19 Bxg7 Bxg7 20 h6 Ne8 21 Rxe6 (White’s threat is 22 Rxe8 Rxe8 23 Qxg7, mate), when 21...Nf8 loses to 22 Rxe8 Rxe8 23 Qxg7, mate and 21...Ndf6 loses to 22 Rxf6 Qc7 (22...Nxf6 23 Qxg7 is mate) 23 h7+ (1-0) Kh8 24 Rf8+ Bxh6 25 Qg8, mate, or b) 18...Ne8 19 Qxe6+, when 19...Kf8 drops the Be7; 19...Kh7 loses to 20 Qg6+ Kg8 21 Rxe7; and 19...Kh8 loses to 20 Bxg7+ Nxc7 21 Kh6+ Kg8 22 Rxe7 Nf5 23 Qh7+ Kf8 24 Qf7, mate.

274 [VX-176]. White wins with 23 Qxh6+, e.g., a) 23...Ke7 24 Qxh6+ Kf8 25 Qh6+ Kf7 (25...Kg8 loses to 26 Bh7+ Kf7 27 Qg6+ Kg8 28 Qg8, mate) 26 Kg6+ Kf6 (26...Kg8 27 Qh7+ Kh8 28 Qf7/Qh8, mate) 27 Bh5+ Kf5 28 g4, mate; b) 23...Kg8 loses to 24 Bh7+, e.g., 24...Kf7 (24...Kh8 loses to 25 Kg6+ Kg8 26 Qh7+ Kf8 27 Qf7, mate) 25 Qg6+ Ke7 26 Qxe6+ Kf8 27 Qg8, mate; or c) 23...Kf7 24 Kg6+ Ke7 25 Bxe8 Kxe8 (otherwise White is up the exchange and three pawns) 26 Qxe6+ Kf8 27 Qc7+ Kg8 28 Qg5+ Kh8 29 Re7, threatening mate on g7, and if 29...Rg8 then 30 Qh6 is mate.
157. The count on f7 is 2-2, but White can add an extra attacker. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nxf7 Rxf7\(^1\) 17 Qxg6+ Kh8\(^2\) 18 Bxf7. What is the material balance and What is White’s threat?

1 Moving the Queen loses to 17 Qxg6, mate. 2 17...Kf8 loses to 18 Qxf7, mate.

158. White is down the exchange for a pawn, but Black’s Qd8 is defended only by the Rf8. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nxf7+ Rxf7\(^1\). How does White win Black’s Queen?

1 Forced, as 20...Kh7 drops the Qd8.

159. White is down a pawn and two of his pieces are under attack, but Black’s pawn on g7 is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Ngxf7 Rxf7 19 Nx f7 Kxf7 20 Qg6+ Ke7\(^1\) 21 Qxg7+. What is the material balance?

1 20...Kg8 loses to 21 Qxg7, mate. 2 20...Kf8 loses the Queen to 21 Qxg7+ Ke8 22 Qh8+ Kd7 23 Rg7+.

160. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nxf7 Rx f7\(^1\) 16 Qxg6 Qxh4\(^2\) 17 Qxf7+ Kxf7 18 Bg5+ Kg8 19 Bxh4. What is the material balance?

1 White is up a pawn after 15...Nx f4 16 Nxd8 Nxd3 17 Nxc6. 2 This move loses, but otherwise Black is down a pawn.
161. White is down two pawns, but Black’s pawns on f7 and g6 are weak. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Rxf7 Rxf7\(^1\) 24 Qxg6+ Rg7\(^2\) 25 Qxe6+ Kh8. How does White mate in two?

\(^1\) 23...Ng7 loses to 24 Rxg7+, e.g., a) 24...Kxg7 25 Rh7+ Kh8, mate. \(^2\) 24...Ng7 drops the Rf7.

162. The count is 3-3 on f7, but White can add another attacker. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Rxf7\(^1\) Rxg7 20 Qxg6+\(^2\) Kh8\(^3\) 21 Rxf7\(^4\) Qxf7 22 Bxf7. What is White’s threat in this position and how can Black parry it?

\(^1\) Also good is 19 Qxg6+ e.g., 19...Kh8, with either 20 Rxf7 Rxg7 21 Rxh7 or 20 Bxf7, threatening 21 Qh6, mate. \(^2\) Black resigned here. Also good is 20 Rxf7, when 20...Qxf7 drops the Queen to 21 Qxg6+ Kh8 22 Bxf7, when Black can't stop Qh6, mate, e.g., 22...Bf5 23 exf5 with 24 Qh6, mate. \(^3\) 20...Kf8 loses to 21 Rxh7+ e.g., 21...Qxf7 22 Qxh7, mate or 21...Ke8 22 Qg8, mate. \(^4\) White’s main threat is 22 Qh7, mate.

163. White's Ng5 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Rxf7\(^1\) Rxf7 24 Qxg6\(^2\) Qd7 25 Nxe6\(^3\) Re7\(^4\). How does White mate in two? See the last footnote for a hint.

\(^1\) Also good is 23 Nfx7 Nh8 24 Nhx8 Kxh8 25 Qg6, \(^2\) White's threat is 25 Qh7+ Kf8 26 Qh8, mate. Black resigned here. \(^3\) This takes away Black's escape square on f8 and threatens 26 Qh7, mate. \(^4\) This creates an escape square on f7. \(^5\) Hint: First immobilize Black’s King, then mate it.

164. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Rxf7 Rxf7 18 Qxg6\(^1\) Qd7\(^2\) 19 Nfx7\(^3\) Qxf7 20 Qh7+\(^4\) Kf8. How does White win here?

\(^1\) White's threat is 19 Qh7+ Kf8 20 Qh8, mate. \(^2\) This creates an escape square on e7. Other moves, such as 18...Bf5 19 Bxf5 Rxh5, lose to 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Qh8, mate. \(^3\) 19 e6 is also good.
165. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nxf7 Rxf7 17 Qxg6+ Kh8 18 Bxf7 Qf8. Which move is stronger for White -- 19 Bh6 or 19 Qxh5+?

1 17...Kf8 loses to 18 Qxf7, mate. 2 White's threat 19 Qh6, mate. Black resigned here. 3 18...Bf8 defends h6 but loses to 19 Qg8, mate, while 18...Bf5 19 Qxh5 Qf8 doesn't change anything.

166. White is down a pawn and his Ne7 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxf7+ Nxf7 18 Nxg6+ Kg8 19 Ne7+ Kh8 20 Rxf7 Rxf7. How does White win here?

1 17...Rxf7 drops the Queen to 18 Nxg6+ hxg6 19 Qxd8+. 2 After 20...Be6 21 Ng6+ Kg8 22 Rxg7+ Kxg7 23 Bh6+ White has a piece and three pawns for a Rook, plus a strong attack. Note that Black can't play 23...Kxg6 because of 24 Qh5, mate.

167. White's Bf4 is under attack, but Black doesn't have time to take it. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nxf7 Kxf7 20 Qg6+ Ke7 21 Rxe6 22 Bf5+ Ke7. How can White mate in two?

1 18...Qd7 20 Qg6+Bg7 loses to 21 Nhx6+, when a) 21...Kf8 loses to 22 Bd6+ with 23 Qf7, mate, e.g., 22...Qxd6 23 Qf7, mate, or 22...Re7 23 Qf7, mate, and b) 21...Kh8 22 Bxf5 threatens 23 Bxf6 Bxf6 24 Nf7+, and if 22...Rf8, to overprotect f7 and f6, then White can play 23 Rxe6, when Black's Queen can't leave the 7th rank since 23...Qxe6 allows 24 Bxf6, threatening Qh7, mate, and 23...Rc6 loses to 24 Bxf6 Bxf6 25 Re8 Rxe8 26 Nf7+, forcing 26...Qxf7. 2 Also good is 21 Be5 Nbd7 22 Nd5+ (1-0), when mate is unavoidable, e.g., 22...Nxd5 23 Qh7+Bg7 24 Qxg7, mate, or 22...edx5 23 Bxf6+ Kd6 24 Be5+ Ke7 25 Bd6, mate. 3 After 21...Kd7 22 Qf7+ Re7 23 Rd6+ Kc7 24 Rxd8+ Kxd8 25 Qxf8+ Ne8, White is up a Queen and two pawns for a Rook.

168. White's Ng5 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxf7 Rxf7 18 Qg6 Qf8 19 Rf3 Nd5. How can White win Black’s Queen in this position? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 18...Qd7 19 Rf3 Nd5 transposes to the game, while 19...Kf8 loses to 20 Rxf6 e.g., a) 20...Rx6 21 Qh7, with the threat of 22 Qg8, mate or b) 20...gx6 21 Qxh6+ Kg8 22 Re3 with 23 Rg3+. 2 White's threat is 20 Rxf6, winning a piece, since both of Black’s defenders are pinned. 3 Hint: Black’s back rank is weak.
169. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nxf7 Kxf7 21 Qg6+ Kg8 22 Qxh6+ Kg7 23 Bxg5+ e5 24 Qg6+ Kh8. How does White win here?

1 20...gxh4 loses to 21 Qg6+ Kf8 22 Ne5, threatening 23 Qf7, mate. 2 22...Kf7 loses to 23 Qg6+ Kf8 24 Bxg5, threatening 25 Bh6, mate. 3 White has a winning attack. 4 Other moves are similar. 5 24...Kf8 loses to 25 Bh6, mate.

170. Black has just taken White's pawn on e3. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxf7 Kxf7 18 Qxg6+ Kf8 19 Qxh6+ Kg8. How does White win here?

1 Five alternatives: a) 17...Rf8 18 Qxg6 is mate; b) 17...Qf5 drops the Queen to 18 Nxh6+; c) 17...Bf8 18 Qxg6+ Bg7 loses to 19 Nxh6+, e.g., 19...Kh8 20 Qh7, mate or 19...Kf8 20 Qf7, mate; d) 17...Bd7 loses to 18 Qxg6+ Kf8 19 Qxh6+ Kg8 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Qf7, mate; e) 17...Ba3 loses to 18 Qxg6+ Kf8 19 Qxh6+ Kg8 20 Bg6+ Kg7 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Qf7/Qh8, mate. 2 19...Kf7 loses to 20 Bg6+ Kg8 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Qf7/Qh8, mate.

171. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nxf7 Kxf7 20 Qg6+ Ke7 21 Rxe6+ Kxe6 22 Re1+ Kd6 23 Qf5+ Kxd4 24 Rd1+ Kc4. How does White win in this position?

1 This gives White a forced mate. 2 21...Kd7 loses to 22 Qf7+, e.g., a) 22...Re7 23 Rd6+ Kc8 24 Rxd8+, when White has a Queen and pawn for a Rook after 24...Kxd8 25 Qxf6 or b) 22...Kc8 23 Rxe8 (1-0) Nxe8, when White mates in two with 24 Bf5+ Qd7 25 Qxe8, mate. 3 22...Kd7 loses to 23 Qf5+ Re6 24 Qxe6, mate. 4 23...Kc4 loses to 24 Bb3+, e.g., 24...Kxd4 25 Rd1, mate, or 24...Kb4 25 Bd2, mate.

172. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Nxf7 Rxf7 15 Qxg6 Kf8 16 Bxh6 Bxh6 17 Qxh6+ Ng7 18 Rxf7+ Kxf7 19 Rf1+ Ke8 20 Qh8+ Ke7. How does White mate in two?

1 17...Ke7 loses to 18 Rxf7+, e.g., 18...Kxf7 19 Qh7+ (19 Rf1+ also wins) Ng7 20 Rf1+ Ke8 21 Qg8+ Kd7 22 Rf7, mate. 2 Three alternatives: a) 19...Kg8 20 Qh7 is mate; b) 19...Ng5 drops the Queen to 20 Qh7+; and c) 19...Ke7 20 Qxg7+ Kd8 21 Rf8 is mate.
173. Black has just played 11...d6, attacking White's Ne5. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Qe4 g6 13 Nxf7 14 Qxg6+ Kf8 15 Bxh6+ Bg7 16 Qh7+ Ne7 17 Qh8+ Ng8 18 Bh7+ Nef6. How does White win here?

1 Also good is 13 Nxg6, e.g., a) 13...fxg6 14 Qxg6+ Ng7 15 Qh7+ Kf8 16 Bxh6+ with a winning attack. 2 Covering on g7 doesn't help, e.g., a) 14...Bg7 15 Qh7+ Kf7 16 Bg6, mate, or b) 14...Rg7 loses to 15 Rxe8+ Qxe8 16 Qh7+, mate.

174. White's Bh4 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nxf7 Kxf7 21 Qg6+ Kf8 22 Qxh6+ Rf8 23 Qg6+ Kf8 24 Bxg6 Kg8 25 Bh6+ Nhx6 26 Qxh6+ Kg8. How does White win here?

1 20...gxh4 loses to 21 Qg6+ Kf8 22 Ne5 and 23 Qf7, mate. 2 22...Kg8 23 Qg6+ transposes to the game, while 23...Kf8 24 Bxg5 Rf8 loses to 25 Bxh6+ Rf8 26 Qh7, mate. 3 26...Kf7 loses to 27 Bg6+ Kf6 28 Bxe8+ Ke5/Kf5 29 Qf4, mate.

175. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nxf7 Kxf7 17 Qg6+ Kg8 18 Bxh6 Bf8 19 Bxg7 Bxg7 20 h6 Ne8 21 Rxe6 Ndf6 22 Rxf6 Qc7 23 h7+ Kh8. How does White mate in two?

1 After 17...Kf8 18 Rxf6, White threatens 19 Rxe7 20 Qxe7 Ke6 21 Re1+, with an attack, e.g., 18...Re8 19 Nf5 (White threatens mate on g7) Nhx5 20 Nhx6 gxh6 21 Bxh6+ Ng7 22 Qxg7, mate. 2 18...Ne8 loses to 19 Qxe6+ e.g., a) 19...Kf8 drops the Be7; b) 19...Kh7 loses to 20 Qg6+ Kg8 21 Rxe7; and c) 19...Kh8 20 Bxh6+ Nhx5 21 Qh6+ Kg8 22 Rxe7 wins, e.g., 22...Nf5 23 Qh7+ Kf8 24 Qf7, mate. 3 White's threat is 22 Rxe8 Rxe8 23 Qxg7, mate. 4 21...Nf8 allows White to carry out his threat, e.g., 22 Rxe8 Rxe8 23 Qxg7, mate. 5 22...Nxf6 loses to 23 Qxg7, mate.

176. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Nxf7 Kxf7 22 Qxg6+ Kf8 23 Qxh6+ Kf7 24 Bg6+ Ke7 25 Bxe8 Kxe8 26 Qxe6+ Kf8 27 Qe7+ Kg8 28 Qg5+ Kh8. How does White win here?

1 White is up two pawns after 21...Nf8 22 Nxf6+, 2 The game continued 22...Ke7 23 Qh7+ (1-0) Kd8 24 Qxh6, when White has three pawns for the piece, but better is 23 Qxe6+ Kf8 (23...Kd8 24 Qxe8 is mate) 24 Qxh6+ when a) 24...Kf7 loses to 25 Bg6+, e.g., 25...Kg8 26 Qh7+ Kf8 27 Qf7, mate, or b) 25...Kf6 26 Bh6+ Kf5 27 g4, mate, and b) 24...Kg8 loses to 25 Bh7+, e.g., 25...Kh8 26 Bh6+ Kg8 27 Qh7+ Kf8 28 Qf7, mate, or c) 25...Kf7 26 Qg6+ Kf8 27 Qg8, mate. 3 23...Ke7 24 Qxe6+ transposes to the main line, while 23...Kg8 loses to 24 Bh7+, e.g., a) 24...Kh8 25 Bg6+ Kg8 26 Qh7+ Kf8 27 Qf7, mate, or b) 24...Kf7 25 Qg6+ Ke7 26 Qxe6+ Kf8 27 Qg8, mate. 4 Otherwise White is up the exchange and three pawns.
CHAPTER 6. THE SQUARES F7 AND H7

This chapter contains exercises in which White sacrifices a piece for Black’s pawn on f7, which is defended only by the King, and after 1...Kxf7 White captures Black’s pawn on h7 with either 2 Qxh7+ or 2 Rxh7+.

In Diagram 1, after the moves 1 Rxf7 Kxf7 2 Qxh7+ (see Diagram 2), Black’s only move is 2...Kf8, which loses to 3 Bh6, mate.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. Using the f-file to Win a Piece on g7
2. Mates and Tactics Involving the f-file
3. Mates and Tactics Involving the Move Qxg6
4. Mates and Tactics Involving the Move Bxg6
5. Mates along the 7th Rank
6. Back Rank Mates
7. Mates by the Queen
8. Mates by a Minor Piece
9. King Hunts
10. Miscellaneous Mates
11. Miscellaneous Tactics

These themes are illustrated using one hundred and three preparatory positions, which are followed by forty visualization exercises ranging in depth from five to nineteen ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply:</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Using the f-file to Win a Piece on g7

275 [VX-193]. White can win Black's Bg7 with 23 Rf3+ Ke6 24 Qxg7.

276 [VX-197]. White wins Black's Qg7 with 25 Rf1+ Nf6 26 Rxf6+ Kxf6 27 Rf1+.

277 [VX-206]. White will win two pieces with 23 Bxg6+ Kf6/Kf8 24 Rf1+.

278 [VX-210]. White wins Black's Bg7 with 24 Qh8+ Ke7 (24...Ke8 loses to 24 Qg8+ Ke7 25 Rf7, mate) 25 Qxg7+, with a strong attack, e.g., 24...Kd8 25 Rf7, threatening 26 Nxc5, since Black's Qc6 is tied to the defense of d7.

279 [VX-190]. White can win a piece with 23 Rf1+ Ke7 (23...Ke8 loses to 24 Qg8+ Ke7 25 Rf7, mate) 24 Qxg7+, with a strong attack, e.g., 24...Kd8 25 Rf7, threatening 26 Nxc5, since Black's Qc6 is tied to the defense of d7.

280 [VX-188]. The count on g7 is 2-2. Black's Kf7 and Rg8 are both tied to the defense of the Bg7, so White can play 29 Rxe8, winning either the Bg7 or the Rg8.

281 [VX-202]. White wins with 22 Rf1+ Ke8 23 Qxg7, threatening 24 Qe7, mate, when 23...Kd8 24 Rxf8+ Nxf8 loses to either 25 Qe7+ Ke8 25 Qe8, mate or 25 Qc7+ Ke8 26 Qe7, mate.

282 [VX-203]. White wins with 23 Rf1+ Ke8 24 Qxg7, threatening to win Black's pinned Be7 with 25 Rf7, and if Black breaks the pin with 24...Qc5 then after 25 Bxe7 Qxe7 White wins Black's Queen with 26 Qxg6+ (1-0) Kd7 27 Rf7.
2. Mates and Tactics Involving the f-file

283 [VX-191]. 21 Rf1 is mate.

284 [VX-184]. 25 Rf1+ Bf3 26 Rxf3 is mate.

285 [VX-202]. 22 Rf1+ Nf6 23 Rxf6 is mate.

286 [VX-195]. 28 Rf3+ mates in a few moves.

287 [VX-211]. 26 Rf3+ mates in a few moves.

288 [VX-197]. White wins with 25 Rf1+ Nf4 26 Rxf4+, when Black has to give up his Queen to stop the mate.

289 [VX-191]. White wins Black's Queen with 21 Rf1+, since 21...Kg5 22 h4+ Kg4 23 Qxg6+ Kxh4 loses to 24 Bf2+, mating.

290 [VX-190]. White wins with 23 Rf1+ Nd6 24 Nxf6, threatening 25 Nd7, double check and mate, and if 24...Nx6 25 Rxf6+ Ke8 then White wins with 26 Rf7 and Qg8, mating.

291 [VX-197]. White wins with 25 Rf1+ Nf6 26 Rxf6+ Qxf6 27 Rf1 Qxf1+ 28 Bxf1, when White has a Queen and a pawn for two Rooks, but Black's h-pawn is indefensible.
3. Mates and Tactics Involving the Move Qxg6

292 [VX-204]. 26 Qxg6 is mate.

293 [VX-196]. 25 Qxg6 is mate.

294 [VX-184]. White wins with 24 Qxg6 f6 25 Rh7.

295 [VX-183]. White can win back his Rook with 22 Qxg6+ Kd8 23 Qxd3+.

296 [VX-216]. White wins with 23 Qxg6+, e.g., 23...Kh8 24 Nf7/Qh7, mate, or 23...Kf8 24 Qf7, mate.

297 [VX-215]. White wins with 23 Rf1+ Ke8 28 Qxg6 with 25 Qg5/Qf5/Bf4, mate.

298 [VX-194]. White wins with 19 Qg6+ Ke7 20 Bg5+ Kf8, when White can either win Black's Queen with 21 Bxd8 or mate with 21 Bh6+ Ke7 22 Qf6+ Ke8 23 Qf8, mate.

299 [VX-195]. White wins with 27 Rf3+ Ke8 28 Qxg6+ Kd7 29 Qf5+ Ke6 (29... Ke8 30 Qf7, mate) 30 Qxc8+ Bc7 31 Qxc7, mate.

300 [VX-187]. White wins with 20 Qxg6+ Ke7 21 Qxe6+ Kf8 (1-0) 22 Rf1+ Kg7 23 Qg6+ Kh8 24 Qh7, mate.
301 [VX-193]. White wins with 22 Qxg6+, e.g., 22...Ke5 23 Qf5+ Kd4 24 Qd5, mate, or 23...Bf6 23 Qf5+ Kf7 24 Bxf6, when 24...exf6 loses the Queen to 25 Qh7+.

302 [VX-193]. White wins with 24 Qxg6+, for example, 24...Ke5 25 Qf5+ Kd4 26 Qd5, mate, or 24...Bf6 25 Qf5+ Kf7 26 Bxf6, when 24...exf6 loses the Queen to 25 Qh7+.

303 [VX-208]. White wins with 24 Qxg6+ Ke7 (24...Kf8 25 Bd6, mate) 25 Bd6+ (25 Bf6+ Kf8 just drives Black's King to the kingside), e.g., a) 25...Kd7 26 Qf7+ Kd8 27 Qe7, mate or b) 25...Kd8 26 Qf6+ Kd7 27 Qe7, mate.

304 [VX-198]. White wins with 20 Qxg6+, e.g., 20...Bf6 21 Qf5+ Kf7 22 gxf6 Nxf6 23 Rg6 Qe7 24 Rf3 or 20...Nf6 21 Qf5+ Kf7 22 gxf6 Bxf6 23 Rg6 Qe7 24 Rf3.

305 [VX-203]. White wins with 23 Rf1+, e.g., 23...Bf6 24 Bh6+ Ng7 25 Rxf6+ with 26 Qxg7 or 23...Nf6 24 Qxg6, threatening Bh6, mate, and if Black creates an escape square with 24...Bc5, then White mates with 25 Rxf6+ Ke7 26 Qf7+ Kd6 27 Qxe6, mate.

306 [VX-207]. White wins with 24 Qxg6+, e.g., a) 24...Kd8 25 Re1 Ne5 26 Qf6+ Kd7 27 Rxe5, threatening 28 Bxf5+, mate, or b) 24...Ke7 25 d6+ Kd8 26 Qg8+ Nf8 27 Qxf8+ Kd7 28 Qe7+ Kc6 (28...Kc8 29 Bxf5 is mate) 29 Bxf5, with 20 Qd7/Bd7 or 20 Qe4/Be4, mate.
4. Mates and Tactics Involving the Move Bxg6

307 [VX-196]. White wins with 25 Bxg6+ Kf8 26 Qf7/Qh8, mate.

308 [VX-179]. White wins with 21 Bxg6+ Kf8 22 Qf7, mate.

309 [VX-187]. White wins with 20 Bxg6+ Kf8 21 Qf7, mate.

310 [VX-216]. White wins with 23 Bxg6+ (1-0) Kg8 24 Qh7+ Kf8 25 Qf7, mate.

311 [VX-216]. White wins with 25 Bg6+ Kg8 26 Qh7+ Kf8 27 Qf7, mate.

312 [VX-196]. White wins with 25 Bxg6, threatening either 26 Qf7 or 26 Qh8, mate (1-0).

313 [VX-206]. White wins with 22 Bxg6 hxg6 23 Qxg6, threatening Qxg7, mate.

314 [VX-209]. After 23 Bxg6+ Kf8 24 Bh6 (1-0) Qd7 (23...Bxh6 24 Qf7 is mate), White can win Black'sBg7 as well as the exchange on e8 with 25 Qh8+ Ke7 26 Qxg7+ Kd8 27 Bg5+ Ne7 28 Bxe8 Kxe8, when White is up the exchange and three pawns.

315 [VX-210]. After 22 Bxg6+ Kf8 23 Bh6 (1-0) Qc7 (23...Bxh6 24 Qf7 is mate) White can win Black'sBg7 as well as the exchange on e8 with 24 Qh8+ Ke7 25 Qxg7+ Kd8 (25...Kd6 is similar) 26 Bxe8 Qxg7 27 Bxg7 Kxe8, when White is up the exchange and three pawns.
316 [VX-193]. 21 Rxe8 wins the exchange, but better is 21 Bxg6 first, threatening mate on h7, and if 21...e6 then White can win the exchange with 22 Bxe8 Rxe8, when White is up the exchange and two pawns.

317 [VX-198]. White wins material with 20 Bxg6, e.g., a) 20...Bd8 21 Qxf8, mate; b) 20...Re8 21 Bxh7 Bd8 22 Bg6+ Nh7 23 Bxe8; or c) 20...exd4 21 Bxh7 dxc3 22 Bg6+ Kg8 23 Qh8, mate.

318 [VX-204]. White wins with 26 Bxg6+ Kf6 (26...Kf8 27 Qh8 is mate) 27 Qh6, threatening 28 Bh5+ Kf5 29 Qg6+ Kg4 30 Qh5, mate, and if 27...Bg4 then 28 Bxh7 Kf5 29 Qg6+ Kf4 30 Qe4/Rf4, is mate, as is 30 g3+ Kf3 31 Qd3/Qe4/Re3, mate.

319 [VX-206]. White wins with 23 Bxg6+ Ke7 (23...Kf6/Kf8 24 Rf1+ wins the Bg7) 24 Qxg7+, e.g., a) 24...Kd6 25 Bxe8 exd4 loses the Queen to 26 Qf8+; b) 24...Kd8 can be met by either 25 Bxe8 Kxe8 26 Rxe5 or 25 Rd1 (1-0), when 25...exd4 loses to 26 Rxd4+ Bd7 27 Qxd7, mate, and 25...Bd7 loses to 26 Nxe6+ Rxe6 27 Qxd7, mate.

320 [VX-213]. White wins with 25 Bg6 h6 26 Bxg5, threatening to create a mating net with 27 f7, 28 Bxh6, and 29 Bxh8, mate (26 f7 Re6 is less clear), when ...Re6 comes too late, e.g., a) 26...Re6 27 Bxh6 Nxf6 28 Rxf6 Rxf6 29Bg7+, blocking the Black Queen's defense of h7 with check, e.g., 29...Kxg7 30 Qh7, mate, or b) 26...d5 27 f7 Re6 (too late) 28 Bxh6 Rxf6 29 Bxh8+ with mate next move; c) 26...Re8 shows a variation on White's main threat: 27 f7Bg7 28 Bxh6, threatening 29 Bg5+, with mate to follow, while d) 26...Nxf6 27 Rxf6 Kg8 28 Bxh6 d5 loses to 29 Bf7+ Kh7 30 Bxh8, mate. (Note: These type of positions will become easier after studying Book 3 in the series.)

321 [VX-200]. White wins with 20 Bxg6+ Kd8 21 Qg8+, e.g., a) 21...Nf8 22 Ba5 Qxa5 (22...Be5+ 23 Nxc5 Qxa5 loses to 24 Qxf8+ Kc7 25 Qd6, mate) 23 Nxa5 Kd7, when White has a Queen and three pawns for a Rook and Bishop or b) 21...Bf8 22 Bg5+* Nf6 23 Qxf8+ Kd7 24 Qg7+ Ke6 25 exf6, when White has two pieces and three pawns and a dangerous passed pawn for the Rook.

*White should avoid 22 Ba5 Bxb3 23 Bxc7+ Kxe7, when Black has a Rook and two pieces for a Queen and three pawns, threatens to win Black's Queen with 24...Be5+, and has open lines for his Bishops and Rooks.
5. Mates along the 7th Rank

322 [VX-192]. 19 Qxh7+ Kf6 20 Qe7 is mate.

323 [VX-183]. 23 Qg8+ Ke7 24 Rg7 is mate.

324 [VX-202]. White wins with 23 Rxf6+ Ke8 24 Rxf8+ Kd7 25 Qxg7, mate.

325 [VX-192]. 19 Qxh7+ mates, e.g., 19...Kf6 20 Qe7, mate or 19...Kf8 20 Re7 with 21 Qf7, mate.

326 [VX-214]. White’s Ba3 controls e7 and f8. White wins with 20 Rfe1+ Ne7 21 Qxe7, mate.

327 [VX-214]. White wins with 22 Rad1+ Ke8 23 Rfe1+, when 23...Kf8 loses to 24 Re7, with mate on f7 or g7 to follow, and 23...Be6 loses to 24 Rd7, when Black can’t stop both 25 Qe7 and 25 Qf7, mate.

328 [VX-213]. White mates in four with either a) 29 Qg8+ Ke7 30 Rf7+ Ke6 31 Qg6+ Nf6 32 Qxf6, mate, or b) 29 Qh8+ Ke7 30 Rf7+ Ke6 31 R1f6+ Nxf6 32 Qxf6, mate.

329 [VX-202]. After 23 Rxf6+ Ke8 24 Bxe7, taking White’s Be7 with 24...Kxe7 loses to 25 Qxg7+ Kd8 26 Rf8, mate, while taking White’s Rook with 24...Qxf6 loses to 25 Bxf6, when Black can’t stop 26 Qe7, mate.

330 [VX-207]. White wins with 24 Bxf5 gxf5 (24...Nf6 25 Bxg6 threatens both 26 Rxf6 and 26 Qf7, mate) 25 Rxf5+, when 25...Nf6 loses to 26 Rxf6+ Ke8 27 Qg8+ Ke7 28 Rf7, mate and 25...Ke8 loses to 26 Qg8+, e.g., 26...Ke7 27 Rf7, mate, or 26...Nf8 27 Qxf8+ Kd7 28 Rf7, mate.
6. Back Rank Mates

331 [VX-210]. 24 Qh8 is mate.

332 [VX-186]. 27 Qh8 is mate.

333 [VX-208]. White wins with 22 Qxh7+ Kf8 23 Qh8, mate.

334 [VX-180]. White wins with 13 Ng5 Re8 14 Qxh7+ Kf8 15 Qh8, mate.

335 [VX-184]. White wins with 23 Qxh7+ Kf8 24 Rxf6 exf6 25 Nd5, controlling e7 and threatening 26 Qh8, mate.

7. Mates by the Queen

336 [VX-179]. 23 Qf7+ Kh8 24 Qf8 is mate.

337 [VX-184]. 23 Qxh7+ Kf8 24 Qxf7/Rxf7 is mate.

338 [VX-216]. White wins with 23 Nd6 and 24 Qh7, mate.
339 [VX-213]. 26 Qg8 is mate.

340 [VX-213]. White wins with 27 g8=Q+ Rxg8 28 Qf7, mate.

341 [VX-208]. 24 Bd6+ (1-0) Ke8 25 Qe7 is mate.

342 [VX-194]. White wins with 17 exf6, threatening mate on g7, and if 17...Qf8 then 18 Qxh7 is mate.

343 [VX-185]. White wins with 26 Qxh7+ Ke6 (26...Ke8 27 Qd7 is mate) 27 Qd7+ Ke5 28 Qd5, mate.

344 [VX-201]. White wins with 20 Qf6, with either 21 Qh8, mate or 21 Qxf7/ Bxf7, mate.

345 [VX-189]. White can set up a mating net with 24 Qh8+ Kf7 25 Nf4, threatening 26 Ne6 and 27 Qf8, mate, and if 25...Bb7, then 26 Bxc4 wins a piece while maintaining the attack.

346 [VX-215]. White wins with 24 Bg5+ Nf6 25 Bxf6+, e.g., 25...Kd7 26 Qh3+ Re6 27 Qxe6, mate, or 25...Kf8 26 Bxg7+ Ke7 27 Bf6+ Kf8 28 Be7, double check and mate.

347 [VX-216]. White wins with 23 Nd6 Bxd6 24 Qh6+ Kf7 25 Bg6+ Kg8 26 Qh7+ Kf8 27 Qf7, mate.
8. Mates by a Minor Piece

348 [VX-186]. 26 Be7 is mate.

349 [VX-177]. 26 Bh6 is mate.

350 [VX-178]. 22 Bxg6 is mate.

351 [VX-212]. 24 Ng6 is mate.

352 [VX-184]. 25 Ne4 is mate.

353 [VX-194]. White wins with 21 Rf1+ Kg5 22 h4+ Kg4 23 Qxg6+ Kxh4 24 Bf2+ Qg3 25 Bxg3, mate.

9. King Hunts

354 [VX-205]. White wins with 15 Rae1+ Kd5 16 c4+ Kxc4 17 Qd3+ Kd5 18 c4/Qb5/Qb3, mate.

355 [VX-191]. White wins with 21 Rf1+ Kg5 22 h4+ Kg4 23 Qxg6+ Kxh4 24 Bf2+ Qg3 25 Bxg3, mate.

356 [VX-191]. White wins with 25 Ne4+ Kf5 (25...Ke6 loses to 26 Qxg6+ Kd5 27 Qxe8) 26 Qh3+ Kxe4 27 Qf3, mate.
357 [VX-211]. After 26 Rxg6+ Kd5 27 Qh5+ Ke4 28 Rxc6+ bxc6 29 Qf7+ Rxe6 30 Qxe7 b5, White has a Queen and three pawns for two Rooks.

358 [VX-206]. White wins with 23 Rf1+, e.g., a) 23...Kg5 24 Qxg6+ Kh4 25 Qf7+ (25...e5 26 Qg6 is mate) 26 Qg6+ (26 Bf6+ Kxf6 27 Qg6 is also mate) Kh4 27 Bf6+ Qg5 28 Qxg5, mate.

359 [VX-205]. White wins with 16 Nxg5+, e.g., a) 16...Kf5 17 Rxf4+ Kxg4 18 Rf1+ Ke3 19 Bc1, mate; b) 16...Kd7 17 Qg4+ Re6 18 Qxe6, mate; c) 16...Kd5 17 Qf3+ Ke4 18 Qd3+ Kd5 19 Qb5/ c4, mate; or d) 16...Kf6 17 Rxf4+ Bf5 with either 18 Rxg5+ Kxg5 19 Rf1, mate, or 18 Nh7+ Ke6 19 Qxf5, mate.

360 [VX-214]. 19 Qxg6+ wins: a) 19...Kd5 20 Rd1+ Ke4 21 Rf4, mate; b) 19...Ke5 20 Bd6+ Kd7 21 Rxd6+ Kxd6 (22...Rxd6 23 Qxd6, mate) 23 Qf5+ Ke8 24 Rf4+ Kd8, mating; or c) 19...Kd7 20 Rd1+ Ke7 (20...Kc5 drops the Queen to 21 Be3+) 21 Bf4+ 22 Ba3+ wins; or d) 19...Ke5 20 Re1+ Kd5 21 Qf7+ Kc6 (21...Kc5 22 Be3+) 22 Ba3+ wins.

361 [VX-191]. White wins the exchange with 26 g5+ Kxg5 27 Be7+, since moving the King allows mate, e.g., a) 27...Kg4 28 Qxg4+ Kh3 (other moves allow 29 Qxe4, mate) 29 Qg3, mate; b) 27...Kf4 28 Qh4+ Ke3 (other moves loses to 29 Qxe4, mate) 29 Qf2, mate; c) 27...Kf5 28 Qh3+ and now: c1) 28...Kf4 29 Qg3+ Ke5 30 Qg5, mate or c2) 28...Kf5 29 Qg3+ Kd5 (29...Kf5 30 Qg5, mate) 30 Qd6+ Ke4 31 Qd4, mate.

362 [VX-204]. Here 26 Bxg6 can be met by 26...Qf6, defending both f7 and h8, but 26 Qh6+ wins, e.g., a) 26...Kf7 27 Bxg6+ Kf6 28 Re6, mate; b) 26...Ng7 27 Bxg6, threatening 28 Qh8, mate, and if 27...Kg8 then 28 Qh7+ Kf8 29 Qh8 is mate; c) 26...Kg8 27 Qxg6+ Ng7 28 Qh7+ Kf7 29 Bg6+ Kf6 30 Qh6 (White's threat is 31 Bh5+ Kf5 32 Qg6+ Kf4 33 Qh7 mate) Bg4 31 Bh5+ Kf5 32 Qg6+ Kf4 33 Qe4/Qe4 is mate, although White can also play 33 g3+ Kf3 34 Re3/Qe4/Qd3, mate.
10. Miscellaneous Mates

363 [VX-211]. 26 Rxg6+ Kf5 27 Qf7+ is mate.

364 [VX-181]. White can sacrifice his Queen with 24 Qxh7+ Kxh7 25 Rh4, mate.

365 [VX-180]. White wins with 17 Nd5+ Ke6 18 f5+ Kd7 (18...gxf5 19 Qxf5, mate) 19 Nf6, mate.

366 [VX-190]. 22 Ng5 wins, e.g., a) 22...Re7 23 Rxf8+ Nxf8 24 Qxf8, mate; b) 22...Rf7 23 Rxf7 with 24 Qxh7, mate; or c) 22...Nf6 23 Rxf6 Qd7 24 Rxf8+ Rxf8 25 Qxf8, mate.

367 [VX-183]. After 22 Qh8+ Kf7 23 Rf3+ Bf6 White mates with either 24 Qxf6+ Ke8 25 Qf8+ Kd7 26 Rf7, mate or 24 Rxf6+ Ke7 25 Qg7+ Kd8 26 Rf8, mate.

368 [VX-186]. White wins with 25 Rxg7+ Kxg7 26 Bf6+, e.g., a) 26...Kg8 27 Qxe6+ Ke8 28 Qe7+ Kf8 29 Qg7, mate, or b) 26...Ke8 27 Qh6+ Ke7 28 Qxh7, threatening both 29 Qe7, mate and 29 Bxg6+ Kf8 30 Qh8, mate.

369 [VX-189]. White wins with 29 Rxe7+ Kxe7 30 Qg7+ and now: a) 30...Ke8 31 Bxf6 Qd8 32 Ba4+ Qd7 33 Bxd7, mate, or b) 30...Kd8 31 Ne6+ Kc8 (31...Ke8 32 Qf8+ Kd7 33 Qf7+ transposes) 32 Qxf8+ Kd7 33 Qf7+ Kc8 34 Qe8+ Qd8 35 Qxd8, mate.

370 [VX-199]. Black is threatening to win White's Queen with 19...Ne2+, but White wins with 19 Nd5, threatening both 20 Nxf4 and 20 Rxe7, mate, e.g., a) 19...Nxd5 20 exd5+ Qxd5 21 Qxd5+ Kf6 22 Rf7, mate; b) 19...Re8 20 Nxf4, mate; c) 19...Ne2+ 20 Kb1 Re8 (20...Nxd4 21 Rxe7 is mate) 21 Rxe7+ (1-0) Rxe7 22 Qf6, mate.

371 [VX-208]. White wins with 23 Qxh7+, e.g., a) 23...Kf8 24 Bd6+ Nxd6 25 Rxd6 (Black's Bishop can't move and Black's Queen has to stay in touch with d8) Qb6 26 Rf6+ Ke8 27 Rf7 Bf6 28 Qg8, mate, or b) 23...Ke6 24 Re1 (the threat is 25 Be7+, winning Black's Queen) Qb5 25 Qxg6+ Ke7 26 Bd6+ Kd7 27 Re7+ Kd8 28 Qxe8, mate.
11. Miscellaneous Tactics


373 [VX-188]. White wins Black's Queen with 25 Qg8+ (25 Rae1+ Kd5) Kf6 26 Be3+.

374 [VX-189]. White wins Black's Queen and more with 26 Qg8+ Kd7 27 Ba4+ Nc6 28 Bxc6+ Qxc6 29 dxc6+ with 30 Qxa8.

375 [VX-182]. 24 Bc4 can be met by 24...Re1+, but White can win Black's Bb7 (and save his Bg5) with 24 Rxh7+ Kf8 (24...Ke6 drops the Queen to 25 Be4 Kf5 26 g4+) 25 Bh6+ Kg8 26 Rxb7.

376 [VX-205]. White wins with 16 Nxe7, threatening 17 Qh7, mate, e.g., a) 16...Ne7 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Rxf4+ (1-0) Bf5 19 Rxf5+ Bf6 20 Rxf6 is mate; b) 16...Re7 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Qg6 wins, e.g., 18...Kg8 19 Rxh4 with 20 Qh7, mate; c) 16...Bf5 17 Qf7+ Kh8 18 Qxf5 threatens 19 Qh7, mate, which Black can stop only by giving up his Queen on g5.

377 [VX-215]. White wins with 25 Bxf6 Qxf6 26 Rxf6+ Kxf6 27 e5+ and now: a) 27...Kxe5 28 Qxg7+ (1-0) Kd5 29 Qxb7+ gives White a Queen and two pieces for two Rooks; b) 27...Kf7 drops the exchange to 28 Bxg6+, e.g., 28...Kf8 29 Bxe8 Rxe8 30 e6, with a Queen and three pawns for a Rook and Bishop, with a dominant pawn on e6; c) 27...Rxe5 28 Qxg6+ Ke7 29 Qxg7+, when White has a Queen, Knight, and two pawns for two Rooks.
177. Black’s King is defenseless. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Rxf7 Kxf7 1 25 Qxh7+Kf8. What’s the quickest way for White to win this position?

1 24...h5 loses to 25 Qd7 with mate in three, e.g., 25...Qc6 26 Rg7+ Kh8 27 Rh7+ Kg8 28 Qg7, mate.

178. White is up the exchange and the light squares around Black’s King are weak. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nxf7 Kxf7 21 Qxh7+Bg7 1 22 Qxg6+. What is the material balance?

1 21...Ke8 loses to 22 Bxg6, mate, while after 21...Kf6 22 Qxg6 Ke7, White has a Rook and three pawns for the piece.

179. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nxf7 Kxf7 1 20 Qxh7+Kf6 21 Qxg6+. What is the material balance?

1 19...Qxd3 drops the Queen to 20 Nxd8.

1 20...Ke8 loses to 21 Bxg6+ Kf8 22 Qf7, mate, while 20...Kf8 21 Bxg6 Be8 gives White three pawns for the piece.

180. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxe6 fxe6 1 13 Ng5 Rf7 14 Nxf7 Kxf7 15 Qxh7+. What is the material balance?

1 12...Bxe6 loses to 13 Ng5, e.g., 13...Re8 14 Qxh7+ Kf8 15 Qh8, mate.
181. White is up a pawn, but his Bd5 is under attack, yet the light squares around Black’s King are weak, as is Black’s Bb7. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Bxf7+ Kxf7 1 24 Qxh7+ Re8 2 25 Re4+ 3 Ne5 26 Qxb7. What is the material balance? For an extra challenge, how does White win after 26...Qxf6?

1 23...Kh8 allows the Queen sacrifice 24 Qxh7+ Kxh7 25 Rxh7+ mate.
2 24...Ke6 25 Re1+ gives White a strong attack.
3 Also good is 25 f7+ Kf8 26 Re1, for example, 26...Ne5 27 Qb7+ Ke7 28 f8=Q+ Rx f8 29 Rxe5 Kd7 30 Qg7+.

182. White is up a pawn, but his Bg5 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Rxf7 Kxf7 1 24 Rxh7+ Kf8 2 25 Bh6+ Kg8. How does White win material here?

1 23...Qxf7 24 Qxf7 Kxf7 drops the Bb7 to 25 Rxh7+ and 26 Rxb7.
2 24 Be4 gives Black the advantage after 24...Re1+ 25 Bf1.
3 24...Ke6 drops the Queen to 25 Bc4 Kf5 26 g4+.

183. White is down a pawn and his Bd2 is under attack, but the light squares around Black’s King are weak, including Black’s Rd3. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rxf7 Kxf7 21 Qxh7+ Ke8 22 Qxg6+ Kd8 23 Qxd3+. What is the material balance?

1 21...Kh8 allows the Queen sacrifice 24 Qxh7+ Kxh7 25 Rh4, mate.
2 24...Ke6 25 Re1+ gives White a strong attack.
3 Also good is 25 f7+ Kf8 26 Re1, for example, 26...Ne5 27 Qh8+ Ke7 28 f8=Q+ Rx f8 29 Rxe5 Kd7 30 Qg7+.

184. White has a Rook for four pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Qh6 Bh4 1 23 Rxf7 Kxf7 24 Qxh7+ Kf6. What is White’s best move here?

1 22...Qxd4 loses to 23 Qxh7+ Kf8 24 Qxf7/Rxf7, mate.
2 22...Bf7 loses to 23 Qxh7+ Kf8 24 Qxf6 f6 25 Rh7; and c) 22...Bf6 23 Qxh7+ Kf8 24 Rx f6 exf6 loses to 25 Nd5, controlling e7 and threatening 26 Qh8, mate.

1 Three alternatives: a) 22...Qxd4 loses to 23 Qxh7+ Kf8 24 Qxf7/Rxf7, mate; b) 22...Bf7 loses to 23 Qxh7+ Kf8 24 Qxf6 f6 25 Rh7; and c) 22...Bf6 23 Qxh7+ Kf8 24 Rx f6 exf6 loses to 25 Nd5, controlling e7 and threatening 26 Qh8, mate.
185. White is down the exchange and a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Bxf7+ Kxf7 26 Qxh7+. How does White win here? Consider both 26...Ke8 and 26...Ke6.

1 25...Kh8 allows the Queen sacrifice 26 Qxh7+ Kxh7 27 Rh4+ Bh6 28 Rxh6, mate.

186. White is down two pawns, but the light squares around Black’s King are weak. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Rxf7 Kxf7 25 Qxh7+ Ng7. How does White mate in two? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 24...Ng7 25 Rxf7+ Kxg7 26 Bf6+ gives White a forced mate, e.g., 26...Kg8 27 Qxe6+ Kf8 28 Qg7+, mate, or 26...Kf8 27 Qh6+ Kc8 28 Qxh7, threatening both 29 Qc7, mate and 29 Bxg6+ Kf8 30 Qh8+, mate. 2 25...Kf8 26 Be7 is mate. 3 Hint: White can bring his Bc2 into play.

187. Black is up two pawns, but the light squares around his King are weak. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Rxf7 Kxf7 19 Qxh7+ Kh8 20 Rf1+ Qf5 21 Bxf5 gx5+f. What is the material balance?

1 White has the better position after 18...Qh5 19 Qxh5 gxh5 20 Rxh7. 2 Best. 19...Ke8 loses to 20 Bxg6+ Kf8 21 Qf7, mate, while 19...Kf6 loses to 20 Qxg6+ Ke7 21 Qxe6+ Kf8 (1-0) 22 Rf1+ Kg7 23 Qg6+ Kh8 24 Qh7, mate. 3 Other moves allow mate.

188. White is up a pawn, but his Qh5 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Bxf7+ Kxf7 24 Qxh7+ Bg7 25 Bc3+ Qf5 26 Rxf5+ gx5. What is the material balance? For an additional challenge, how does White win after 27 Bh6 Rg8 28 Re1 Re8?

1 23...Kg7 drops the Re8. 2 24...Ke6 drops the Queen to 25 Qg8+ Kf6 26 Be3+.
189. White is down the exchange and two pawns and his Queen is under attack, but the dark squares around Black’s King are weak and this leads to a weakness of the light squares. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Qh6 f6 21 Ng5 Rf7 22 Nx f7 23 Qxh7+ Ke8 24 Qxg6+. What is the material balance?

1 23...Kf8 24 Qh8+ Kf7 allows 25 Nf4, when Black can’t do anything about the threat of 26 Ne6 and 27 Qf8, mate.

190. White is up a pawn, but is about to lose his f-pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 20 f7+ Rxf7 21 Rxf7 Kxf7 22 Qxh7+ Kg8 23 Qxg6+. How does White win a piece here?

1 20 Ng5 can be met by 20...Nxf6. 2 20...Kh8 loses to 21 fxe8=Q Rxe8 22 Ng5. 3 After 22...Kf8 23 Rf1+ Nd6 24 Nxf6 White is up a Bishop and a pawn and threatens 25 Nd7, double check and mate, when 24...Nxf6 loses to 25 Rxf6+ Ke8 26 Rf7, with Qg8, mate to follow.

191. White is down a pawn, but the light squares around Black’s King are weak. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Rxf7 Kxf7 20 Qh7+ Kf6 21 Rf1+ Qf5 22 Bd6+ Qxf1 23 Kxf1. What is the material balance?

1 20...Qg7 loses to 21 Rf1, mate. 2 Best, since 21...Kg5 loses to 22 h4+ Kg4 23 Qxg6+ Kxh4 24 Bf2+ Qg3 25 Bxg3, mate. 3 22 Rxf5+ exf5 23 Bb2, intending 24 Bb4+, is also good. 4 The actual game continued 22...Ne5 23 Qh4+ Kg7 24 Rxf5 exf5 25 Qd4, winning Black’s Ne5.

192. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Be4+ 1 Rf7 18 Bxf7+ Kxf7 19 Qxh7+ Kf8. How does White win in this position?

1 17 Re7 Nf7 18 Be4 gives White the better position, but no immediate mate. 2 17...Nxc4 loses to 18 Re7 Rf7 19 Re8+ Rf8 20 Qxf8, mate, while 17...Nd7 loses to 18 Bxf7, e.g., 18...Kxf7 19 Qxh7+ Kf6 20 Qe7, mate or 18...Rxf7 19 Re8+ Rf8 20 Rxf8, mate. 3 18...Nxf7 allows 19 Re8, mate. 4 19...Kf6 20 Qe7 is mate.
193. White’s Re1 and Pc6 are under attack, but the light squares around Black’s King are weak. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Bxf7+ Kxf7 9 ply 21 Qxh7+ Kg7 22 Ra3 Qxc6 23 Rd3+ Ke6 24 Qxg7. What is the material balance and what is White’s most immediate threat?

1 20...Kf8 loses to 21 Qxh7 with 22 Qg8, mate, while 20...Kh8 loses to 21 Bxg6, e.g., 21...e6 22 Bxe8 Rxe8, when White is up the exchange and two pawns. 2 21...Ke6 loses to 22 Qxg6+, e.g., a) 22...Ke5 23 Qf5+ Kd4 24 Qd5, mate, or b) 22...Bf6 23 Qf5+ Ke7 24 Bxf6, when 24...Qxf6 drops the Queen to 25 Qh7+. 3 22...Rg8 loses to 23 Rf3+ Ke6 24 Qxg6+, e.g., 24...Ke5 25 Qf5+ Kd4 26 Qd5, mate or 24...Bf6 25 Rxf6+ Ke5 26 Qf5+ Kd4 27 Qd5+ Ke3 28 Bd2+ Kxc2 29 Re1, mate.

194. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxf5 exf5 17 Rxf7 Kxf7 11 ply 18 Qxh7+ Kg8 2. How does White mate in three?

1 16...Rx6 17 exf6 threatens 18 Qg7, mate, and if 17...Qf8 then 18 Qxh7 is mate. 2 18...Ke8 loses to 19 Qg8+ Ke7 20 Bg5, mate, while 18...Ke6 loses to 19 Qg6+ Ke7 20 Bg5+ Kf8, when White can either win Black’s Queen with 21 Bxg6 or mate with 21 Bh6+ Ke7 22 Qf6+ Ke8 23 Qf8, mate.

195. White is up the exchange for two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Rxf7+ Kxf7 11 ply 26 Qxh7+ Ke8 27 Qxg6+ Kd7 28 Qf5+ Rf8. How does White win here? Consider both 28...Kc6 and 28...Ke8.

1 After 25...Ke8 26 Qxh7 Black can prevent 27 Qg8, mate, by playing 26...d3 27 Kh1 Re1+ 28 Bf1 Rxf1+ 29 Rxf1, but then White is up two exchanges and threatens 30 Qf7, mate. 2 26...Ke6 27 Qxg6+ Kd7 transposes, as does 26...Kf8 27 Rf3+ Ke8 28 Qxg6+ Kd7. 3 27...Kf8 28 Rf3+ leads to mate.

196. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Nxf7 Bxf7 22 Rxf7 Rxf7 23 Rxf7 Kxf7 24 Qxh7+. How does White win here? Consider all possible replies -- 24...Kf6, 24...Kf8, and 24...Ke8.
197. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Nxf7 Kxf7¹ 24 Qh7+ Kf8² 25 Rf1+ Nf6 26 Rxf6+ Qxf6 27 Rf1 Qxf1+ 28 Bxf1. What is the material balance and how does Black defend his h-pawn?

¹ Material is even after 23...Nxe3 24 Nxg5 Nxc2 25 Kxc2 hxg5, but White's passed h-pawn and better pieces give him the advantage. ² 24...Kf6 loses to 25 Rf1+ Nf4 26 Rxf4+, when Black has to give up his Queen to stop the mate, while 24...Qg7 drops the Queen to 25 Rf1+ Nf6 26 Rxf6+ Kxf6 27 Rf1+.

198. White's Bd4 is under attack, but Black's pawn on h7 is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Rd3 Rfc8¹ 18 Bxf7+ Kxf7² 19 Qxh7+ Ke8³ 20 Qxg6+ Kd8 21 Qg8+ Nf8⁴ 22 Bxe5. What is the material balance?

¹ 17...exd4 loses to 18 Rh3, e.g., 18...Bxg5+ 19 Rxc5 Rfe8 20 Qxh7+ Kf8 21 Qxg6+, mate. ² 18...Kxh7 with 19...Kxh8, 20 Bxg7 Qh5+ 21 Kh2, and 20...Bxg5 21 Qg8+ Kf7 22 Qxg7+ Ke8 23 Qxe5 Kd7 24 Kf1, mate. ³ 19...Kf6 20 Qg6+ Nf6 drops to 21 Qf7+ Kf8 22 Bxf6 Bxf6/Nfx6 23 Rg6 Qxe7 24 Rf7, mate. ⁴ 21...Bf8 can be met by 22 g6.

199. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxf7+ Kxf7¹ 18 Rxf7+ Ke8 19 Qxh7+ Ke8 20 Bxg6+ Kd8 21 Qg8+ Nf8² 22 Kb1 Re8³. How does White mate in two?

¹ 17...Kf8 gives White the better position. ² Moving to the back rank allows 19 Qh8, mate. ³ This threatens both 20 Rxh5, mate and 20 Nxf4, mate. ⁴ 19...Nxd5 loses to 20 Qxh5, when Black's only legal move is 20...Qxd5, while defending e7 with 19...Re8 allows 20 Nxf4, mate. ⁵ 20...Nxd4 allows 21 Rxe7, mate.

200. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Rxf7 Kxf7 19 Qxh7+ Ke8 20 Bxg6+¹ Kd8 21 Qg8+ Nf8². How does White win back his material in this position?

¹ 20 Qxg6+ Kd8 21 Bd8/Be7, mate. ² 21...Bf8 White should avoid 22 Ba5 Bxb3 23 Bxc7+ Kxc7, when Black has a Rook and two pieces for a Queen and three pawns, threats to win Black's Queen with 24...Bc5+, and has open lines for his Bishops and Rooks, but better for White is 22 Bg5+ Nf6 23 Qxf8+ Kd7 24 Qg7+ Kc6 25 exf6, when White has two pieces and three pawns (including a dangerous passed pawn) for a Rook.
201. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Be5 Qc6 20 Bxf7+ Kxf7 21 Qxh7+ Ke6 22 Bg7+ Rk6 23 Bxf8 Rxh8. How does White win his material back? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 19...Qd7 loses to 20 Qf6, with either 21 Qh8, mate or 21 Qxf7/Bxf7, mate. 2 21...Bg7 22 Qxg7+ just drops the Bishop. 3 Hint: What's the count on e7?

202. Black's Queen is out of play on a6, his kingside is defenseless, and his Nd7 is undefended. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rxf7 Kxf7 21 Qxh7 Nf6 22 Rf1 Re7 23 Rxf6 Ke8 24 Bxe7. What is the material balance and why can't Black play 24...Kxe7 or 24...gxh6?

1 Relatively best 20...Nf8, defending h7. 2 White's threat is 22 Rf1+, when a) 22...Bf6 24 Bh6+ Ng7 loses to 25 Rxf6+ and 26 Qxg7 and b) 22...Nf6 24 Qxg7 threatens Bh6, mate, and if Black creates an escape square with 24...Be5, then White mates with 25 Rxf6+ Ke7 26 Qf7+ Kd6 27 Qxe6. 3 White is threatening 25 Rf7, pinning and winning Black's Be7. 4 This breaks the pin on e7 and attacks White's Bg5.

203. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxf7 Kxf7 22 Qxh7+ Ng7 23 Rf1+ Ke8 24 Qxg7 Qc5 25 Bxe7 Qxe7 26 Qxg6+ Kd7. How does White win here?

1 22...Kf8 loses to 23 Rf1+, when a) 23...Bf6 24 Bh6+ Ng7 loses to 25 Rxf6+ and 26 Qxg7 and b) 23...Nf6 24 Qxg6 threatens Bh6, mate, and if Black creates an escape square with 24...Be5, then White mates with 25 Rxf6+ Ke7 26 Qf7+ Kd6 27 Qxe6. 2 White is threatening 25 Rf7, pinning and winning Black's Be7. 3 This breaks the pin on e7 and attacks White's Bg5.

204. White is down a piece and his Re7 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Rxf7 Kxf7 25 Qxh7+ Ng7 26 Bxg6+ Kf6 27 Qh6 Bg4. How does White mate in three?

1 25...Kf6 26 Qxg6 is mate, while after 25...Kf8, White should avoid 26 Bxg6 Qf6, defending both f7 and h8, but instead play 26 Qh6+, e.g., a) 26...Kf7 27 Bxg6+ Kf6 28 Re6, mate; b) 26...Ng7 27 Bxg6 threatens 28 Qh8, mate, and if 27...Kg8 then 28 Qh7+ Kf8 29 Qh8 is mate; while c) 26...Kg8 27 Qxg6+ Ng7 28 Qh7+ Kf7 29 Bg6+ Kf6 transposes to the game (26...Kf6). 2 26...Kf8 loses to 27 Qh8, mate. 3 White's threat is 28 Bh5+ Kf5 29 Qg6+ Kf4 30 g3, mate. 4 Black has no practical way to stop the mate.
205. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Ba3 Re8 13 Bxf7+ Kxf7 14 Qxh7+ Kg8 15 Qh5+ Bf5 17 Qf7+ Kh8. What is the material balance and how does White win here?

1 14...Ke6 15 Rae1+ Kd5 loses to 16 c4+ Kxc4 17 Qd3+ Kd5 18 c4/Qb5/Qb3, mate. 2 15...Kf6 loses to 16 Nxg5 Bf5 17 Rxf4 Qd5 18 Raf1, with the threat of 19 Rf5 Qxf5 20 Nh7+ and 21 Qxf5, while 15...Ke6 can be met by 16 Nxe5+ e.g., a) 16...Kd7 17 Qg4+ Re6 18 Qxe6, mate; b) 16...Kf5 17 Rxf4+ Kxf4 18 Rf1+ Ke3 19 Bc1, mate; or c) 16...Kd5 17 Qf3+ Kc4 18 Qd3+ Kd5 19 c4/Qb5, mate. 3 White's threat is 17 Qh7, mate. 4 16...Ne7 loses to 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Rxf4+ (1-0) Bf5 19 Rxf5+ Bf6 20 Rxf6, mate, while 16...Re7 loses to 18 Qf8+, e.g., 18...Kg8 19 Rf4 with 20 Qh7, mate.

206. White is down a pawn and his Nd4 is under attack, but Black's Ng6 is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxf7 Kxf7 22 Qxh7+ Bg7 23 Bxg6+ Ke7 24 Qxg7+ Kd8 25 Rd1+ Bd7 26 Nxe6+ Rxe6. How does White win here?

1 21...Bg6 hxg6 23 Qxg6 threatens Qxg7, mate. 2 22...Kf6 loses to 23 Rf1+, e.g., 23...Kg5 24 Qxg6+ Kh4 25 Nh7+, and now: a) 23...Qf4 24 Rxf4+ exf4 25 Ne6+ Kg5 26 Qg6+, mate; b) 23...Kd5 17 Qf3+ Ke4 18 Qd3+ Kd5 19 c4/Qb5, mate. 3 Black can't hold on to his Kg7, since 23...Kf8 and 23...Ke7 are both met with 24 Rf1+. 4 24...Kd6 25 Bxe8 exd4 drops the Queen to 26 Qf8+. Black resigned here. White can also play 25 Bxe8 Kxe8 26 Rxe5, 26...exd4 loses to 26 Rxd4+ Bd7 27 Qxd7, mate.

207. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Re7 Rf7 22 Rxf7 Kxf7 23 Qxh7+ Kh8 24 Bxh5 gxh5 25 Rxf5+ Ke8. How does White mate in three?

1 23...Ke8 loses to 24 Qxg6+, for example, a) 24...Kd8 25 Re1 Ne5 26 Qf6+ Kd7 27 Rxe5, threatening 28 Bxf5+, or b) 24...Ke7 25 d6+ Kd8 26 Qg8+ Nf8 27 Qxg8+ Kd7 28 Qe7+, and now: 28...Kc6 29 Bxf5 is mate or 28...Kc6 29 Bxf5 with 20 Qd7+Bd7, mate or 20 Qe4/Bf4, mate. 2 24...Nf6 can be met by 25 Bxg6, threatening both 26 Rxf6 and 26 Qf7, mate, e.g., 25...Qd8 26 Qf7 is mate. 3 25...Nf6 loses to 26 Rxf6+ Ke7 27 Qg8+ Ke7 28 Rf7, mate.

208. Here a weakness on the dark squares (Black's Ng7) leads to a weakness on the light squares. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Qh6 Rf7 21 Ng5 Ne6 22 Nxf7 Kxg7 23 Qxh7+ Ke8 24 Qxg6+ Ke7 25 Bd6+ Kd8. How does White mate in two?

1 21...Kf8 22 Bxh5 hxg6 23 Qxg6 threatens Qxg7, mate. 2 22...Kf6 loses to 23 Rf1+, e.g., 23...Kd5 24 Qxg6+ Kh4 25 Nh7+, mate, or 23...Nh4 24 Rxf4+ exf4 25 Ne6+ Kg5 26 Qg6+, mate (or 26 Bxf6+ Kxf6 27 Qg6, mate) Kb4 27 Bf6+, with mate next move. Black can't hold on to his Kg7, since 23...Kf8 and 23...Kf7 are both met with 24 Rf1+. 4 24...Kd6 25 Bxe8 exd4 drops the Queen to 26 Qf8+. Black resigned here. White can also play 25 Bxe8 Kxe8 26 Rxe5, 26...exd4 loses to 26 Rxd4+ Bd7 27 Qxd7, mate.
209. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Nxf7 Kxf7 1 22 Qxh7+Bg7 23 Bxg6+ Kf8 24 Bh6 Qd7 25 Qh8+ Ke7 26 Qxg7+ Kd8 27 Bg5+ Ne7 28 Bxe8 Kxe8. What is the material balance?

1 21...Qd7 22 Ne5 just drops a pawn. Best is 21...Qb4, threatening White's b- and d-pawns. 2 Moving the Re8 is allows mate in one, e.g., 24...Red8 25 Qxg7, mate or 24...Re7 24 Qh8, mate. 3 White now wins Black's Bg7, as well as the exchange on e8.

210. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nxf7 Kxf7 1 21 Qxh7+Bg7 22 Bxg6+ Kf8 23 Bh6 Qc7 24 Qh8+ Ke7 25 Qxg7+ Kd8 26 Bxe8 Qxg7 27 Bxg7 Kxe8. What is the material balance?

1 Refusing the Knight is better, e.g., 20...Qb4 21 b3 Qxd4. 2 23...Bxh6 24 Qf7 is mate, as is 23...Re7 24 Qh8, mate. 3 25...Kd6 is similar.

211. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Bxf7+ Nxf7 24 Rxh7 Kxh7 25 Qxh7 Ke6 1 26 Rxc6+ Kd7 27 Qh5+ Ke6 28 Rxc6+ bxc6 29 Qf7+ Rxe6 30 Qxc7 b5. What is the material balance?

1 25...Kf8 loses to 26 Rf3+ (1-0), mating, while 25...Kf6 loses to 26 Rxc6+ Kf5 27 Qf7+, with mate next move.

212. White's down a pawn, but Black's Kingside is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Bxf7+ Kxf7 21 Qxh7+ Kh8 22 Nh4 Be4 23 f3 Qa5 1 24 Rd1 Qc7 25 Ng6+ Ke8 26 Qxc7 Bxc7 27 fxe4 fxe4. What is the material balance?

1 White's threat is 23 Ng6, mate. 2 Moving the Be4 re-opens the e-file and allows 24 Ng6, mate. 3 In the actual game Black played 24...Qa4, which drops the Bishop to 25 Bxd6. 4 Better is 26 Qg8+ Ke7 27 Qf7+ Ke6 28 Qxf6, threatening to win back his piece with 29 fxe4 or Ne5+. 
213. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Bxf7+ Kxf7/1 25 Qxh7+ Bg7² 26 fxg7+ Ke7³ 27 g8=Q+ Kd8 28 Qxe8+ Kxe8. How does White mate in four?

1 After 24...Kh8, White doesn’t have to take on e8, but can continue attacking with 25 Bg6 h6 26 Bxg5, threatening to create a mating net with 27 f7, 28 Bxh6, and 29 Bxf8, mate. ² 25...Ke6 loses to 26 Qg8, mate (1-0). ³ Best. 26...Ke6 loses to 27 g8=Q+ Rxg8 28 Qf7, mate.

214. White is up a pawn, but his Qh5 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxf7+ Kxf7 18 Qxh7+ Kf8 19 Ba3+ Ne7² 20 Bxe7+ Ke8 21 Bxd8³ Kxd8 22 Rad1+ Ke8 23 Rfe1+ Be6⁴. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 18...Ke6/Ke8 drops the g-pawn with check to 19 Qxg6+, while 18...Kf6 19 Bh6 threatens both 20 Qg7+ and 20 Rae1 and 21 Qg7, with an attack (1-0, 23), e.g., 19...Bf5 20 Qg7+ Ke6 21 Rf1+ or 19...Be6 20 Qg7+ Kf5 21 f3, threatening 22 g4, mate. ² 19...Ke6 loses to 20 Rf1+, mating. ³ 21 Rf1 also wins. ⁴ 23...Kf8 loses to 24 Re7, with mate on f7 or g7 to follow. ⁵ Hint: White has a stronger move than 24 Qh8+, winning Black’s Ra8.

215. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxf7 Kxf7¹ 22 Qxh7+ Bg7² 23 Rf1+ Nf6³ 24 Bg5 Qe7 25 Bxf6³ Qxf6 26 Rxf6+ Kxf6 27 e5+ Rxe5⁵ 28 Qxg6+ Ke7 29 Qxg7+. What is the material balance?

1 21...Bg7 drops the Nd7 to 22 Qxd7. ² 22...Kf6 loses to 23 Rf1+ Ke5 24 Qxg6 with 25 Bf4/Qf5/Qg5, mate. ³ 23...Ke7 loses to 24 Bg5+ Nf6 25 Bxf6+, e.g., 25...Kd7 26 Qh3+ Re6 27 Qxe6, mate, or 25...Kf8 26 Bxg7+ Ke7 27 Bf6+ Kf8 28 Be7, mate. ⁴ 25 e5 is even better. ⁵ 27...Kf7 drops the exchange to 28 Bxg6+, e.g., 28...Kf8 29 Bxe8 Rxe8 30 e6, while 27...Kxe5 28 Qxg7+ (1-0) Kxd5 29 Qxb7+ gives White a Queen and two pieces for two Rooks.

216. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Rxf7 Kxf7 20 Qxh7+ Kf8 21 Qh6+ Kg8 ² 22 Qxd6 Kf8 ² 23 Nf6 Bxd6 24 Qh6+ Kg8 ² 25 Bh7+³ Kf7 26 Qg6+ Kf8. How does White mate in six?

1 21...Kf7 loses to 22 Nd6+, mating, e.g., a) 22...Bxd6 23 Bxg6+ (1-0) Kg8 24 Qh7+ Kf8 25 Qf7, mate or b) 22...Kg8 23 Qxg6+ Kf8 24 Qf7, mate. ² 22...Kh8 23 Nd6 Bxd6 allows 24 Qh7, mate. ³ 24...Ke7 25 Qg7 is mate, as is 24...Kf7 25 Bg6+ Kg8 26 Qh7+ Kf8 27 Qf7, mate. ⁴ White can also play 25 Qh7+ Kf8 26 Qh8+ Kf7 27 g6+ Ke7 28 Qg7, mate.
SECTION 2. SACRIFICES ON G6

This section contains exercises in which White sacrifices one or more pieces for a Black pawn on g6. It includes the following chapters:

CHAPTER 7. WHITE SACRIFICES A PIECE ON G6
CHAPTER 8. WHITE PLAYS 1 RXG6
CHAPTER 9. WHITE SACRIFICES TWO PIECES ON G6

CHAPTER 7, WHITE SACRIFICES A PIECE ON G6, contains exercises in which White sacrifices a piece for two pawns on g6 in order to obtain a dominant Queen on g6 or some other positional advantage. The typical sequence is either 1 Nxg6 fxg6 2 Qxg6 or 1 Bxg6 fxg6 2 Qxg6.

CHAPTER 8, WHITE PLAYS 1 RXG6, contains exercises in which White sacrifices a Rook for two pawns on g6 in order to obtain a dominant Queen on g6 or some other positional advantage. The typical sequence is 1 Rxg6+ fxg6 2 Qxg6+.

CHAPTER 9, WHITE SACRIFICES TWO PIECES ON G6, contains exercises in which White sacrifices two pieces for three pawns on g6 in order to obtain a dominant Queen on g6 or some other positional advantage. This can come about via two different sequences -- a) 1 Nxg6 fxg6 2 Bxg6 hxg6 3 Qxg6+ or b) 1 Nxh7 Kxh7 2 Qh5+ Kg8 3 Bxg6 fxg6 4 Qxg6+.
CHAPTER 7. WHITE SACRIFICES A PIECE ON G6

This chapter contains exercises in which White sacrifices a piece for two pawns on g6 in order to obtain a dominant Queen on g6 or some other positional advantage.

In Diagram 1, after the moves 1 Bxg6 fxg6 2 Qxg6 White has given up a piece for two pawns (see Diagram 2), but has a dominant Queen on g6 and threatens 3 Qh7, mate. If Black creates an escape square on f8 by playing either 2...Re8 or 2...Rf5, then White wins with 3 Rh8+ Kxh8 4 Qh7, mate.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. The Idea of Qh7, Mate
2. White Plays Qg7
3. Mating with the Queen and Bishop
4. The Weakness on e8
5. The Open h-file
6. Rook Lifts
7. Black Refuses to Take White’s Ng6
8. Miscellaneous

These themes are illustrated using fifty-two preparatory positions, which are followed by twenty-four visualization exercises ranging in depth from five to twenty-one ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply:</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. The Idea of Qh7, Mate

378 [VX-218]. 21 Qh7 is mate.

379 [VX-224]. Here White’s Nf6 will support Qh7, e.g., 22 Nf6+ Kh8 (22...Qxf6 23 Rxf6) 23 Qh7, mate.

380 [VX-219]. Here Black’s Qc7 covers h7, but White wins with 20 Qxg6+ (1-0) Kh8 21 Qh6+ Qh7 22 Qxh7, mate.

381 [VX-218]. Here 21 Qh7 can be met by 21...Kf8, but 21 Rh8+ wins, e.g., 21...Kxh8 22 Qh7, mate.

382 [VX-239]. White wins with 15 Ng5 (1-0), with the dual threat of 16 Qf7, mate and 16 Rh8+ Kxh8 17 Qh7, mate, so that if Black defends against 16 Qf7, mate, with 15...Qe7, then White wins with 16 Rh8+ Kxh8 17 Qh7, mate.

383 [VX-220]. White wins with 16 Ng5, threatening both 17 Qf7 and 17 Rh8+, e.g., 16...Nf8/Rf8 17 Qh7, mate or 16...Re7/Qe7/Qf6 17 Rh8+ Kxh8 18 Qh7, mate.

384 [VX-221]. White wins with 17 Ng5, threatening 18 Qh7, mate, when 17...Rf6 creates an escape square on f8 for the King, but loses to 18 Rh8+ Kxh8 19 Qh7, mate.

385 [VX-219]. Here 22 Qh7+ isn’t mate, but leads to the creation of a mating net, e.g., 22...Kf6 23 Qh4+ Kg7 24 Qg5+ Kh8 25 Qh6, mate.

386 [VX-219]. This is similar to the previous position, except that White’s Ne7 is missing. White wins with 22 Qh7+ Kf6 23 Qh4+ Kg7 24 Qg5+ Kh8 25 Qh6+ Kg8 26 Qh7, mate.
2. White Plays Qg7

387 [VX-228]. White wins with 22 Qh6+ Kg8 23 Qg7, mate.

388 [VX-217]. Black’s f-pawn is pinned, allowing White to win with 19 Qxg6+ Kh8 20 Qg7, mate (1-0).

389 [VX-229]. White wins with 20 Rh7, threatening 21 Rxg7+ Rxg7 22 Qxg7, mate, when 20...Kb8 loses to 21 Rxg7 Rxg7 22 Qxg7+ Ke8 23 Nd6, mate.

390 [VX-237]. White wins Black’s Rook with 19 Qxg7+ (1-0) Kxg7 20 Ne8+ Kf7 21 Nxc7, when White is up a Rook and two pawns.

391 [VX-224]. Black’s Qc7 is tied down to the defense of g7, allowing 22 Nd6, when White threatens both 23 Rf7 and 23 Rf8+ Kxf8 24 Qe8, mate, e.g., 22...Qxd6 23 Qxg7, mate, or 22...Bb7 23 Rf7.

392 [VX-223]. White wins with 22 Rf7+, e.g., 22...Kg8 23 Rxd7+ wins Black’s Queen, 22...Bg7 23 Bxg7 with 24 Qh6+ and 25 Qb8, mate; and 22...Kh8 23 Bg5 Qa5 24 Bf6+ Nxf6 25 Qh6+ Kg8 26 Qg7, mate.

393 [VX-227]. White wins with 18 Rxe8+ Kxe8 19 Bf6+, e.g., a) 19...Kg8 20 Qh6 when Black runs out of checks after 20...Qxe3+ 21 Kh1 Qxa1+ 22 Ke2 (1-0) and 20...Qc7 loses to 21 Qh8+ Kf7 22 Qg7/Ng5, mate, or b) 19...Kh7 20 Ke2, threatening 21 Qh6+ Kh6 22 Rh1, mate, when 20...Kg8 21 Qh6 transposes to 19...Kg8.

394 [VX-234]. White wins with 25 Re7, threatening Qg7, mate, e.g., 25...Rf7 26 Qxf7+ Kh7 27 Qxg7, mate, or 25...Rf1+ 26 Kxf1 Qf8+, when Black’s Ng7 is defended, but after 27 Kg1 (1-0) White is threatening both 28 Rxg7+ Qxg7 29 Re8, mate and 28 Re8 Bd7 29 Rxf8+ Rxf8 30 Re7, mating.

395 [VX-225]. Here after 24 Rxh6 Nxf6 25 Qxf6+ Black’s Queen is defending g7, but White can win with 24 Ba6+, when 24...Kg8 loses to 25 Bxf6+ Kf8 27 Qg7, mate, and 24...Bxg7 loses to 25 Rf7 (1-0) Bd4+ 26 Kh1 Nf8, when both Queens are under attack, but White wins with 27 Qh6/Qh5+ Kg8 38 Rxc7.
3. Mating with the Queen and Bishop

396 [VX-229]. 21 Bd6+ is mate.

397 [VX-223]. 24 Qh6 is mate.

398 [VX-240]. White mates in two with 32 Bc4+ Qd5 33 Bxd5, mate.

399 [VX-225]. White mates in two with 32 Bc5+ Kd8 33 Bxb6, mate.

400 [VX-226]. White wins with 23 Bg5 Qe6 24 Bf6+, creating a mate threat that wins Black’s Queen.

401 [VX-223]. White wants to get his Queen to h6, so 23 Bd8 wins (1-0), e.g., 23...Qxd8 24 Qh6, mate.

402 [VX-229]. White wins with 21 Bd6+, creating a mating net that wins Black’s Queen, e.g., 21...Qe7 22 Bxe7+, with mate in two to follow.

403 [VX-225]. 30 Bxc5+ creates a mating net that wins Black’s Queen, e.g., 30...Qe7 31 Bxe7+, when after 31...Ke8 White mates in two with 32 Be5+ Kd8 33 Bxb6, mate.

404 [VX-240]. White wins with 30 Qh5+ (1-0), when 30...Kg8 loses to 31 Bc4+ and 30...Bh6 loses to 31 Qxh6+ Kg8 32 Bc4+ Qd5 33 Bxd5, mate.
4. The Weakness on e8

405 [VX-224]. White wins with 22 Nf6+, threatening both 23 Qh7 and Qe8, mate, e.g., 22...Kh8 23 Qh7, mate or 22...Kf8 23 Qe8, mate.

406 [VX-234]. The simplest way to win is with 28 Rxg7+ Qxg7 29 Re8, mate, although 28 Re8 also wins, e.g., 28...Bd7 29 Rxf8+ Rxf8 30 Re7, with mate to follow.

407 [VX-229]. White’s pressure on g7 has lured Black’s Queen away from d8, leaving Black’s Re8 undefended and allowing White to win with 20 Qxe8+ Qf8/Nf8 21 Ne7, mate.

5. The Open h-file

408 [VX-222]. White wins with 18 Qxe6+ Kg7 (18...Kf8 19 Rh8+ Kg7 20 Rh7+ is similar) 19 Rh7+ Kxh7 (19...Kh8 20 Qh7, mate) 20 Qf7+ Kh8 21 Rh1, mate.

409 [VX-227]. White wins with 17 Bf6, e.g., 17...Bxf6 18 exf6, intending 19 Rh8+ Kh8 20 Qh6+ Kg7 21 Qg7, mate, or 17...Bg7 18 Bxg7 Kxg7 19 Qh6+ Kg8 20 Qb8, mate.

410 [VX-225]. White wins with 29 Rf3 (1-0) Qh4 30 Rh3 Qxh3 31 gxh3, when White has a Queen and two pawns for a Rook and Knight.

6. Rook Lifts

411 [VX-233]. White wins with 21 Qh6+ Kg8 22 Rg1+ Kf7 23 Rg7+ Ke8 with either 24 Qe6+ Qe7 25 Qxe7, mate, or 24 Qg6+ Rf7 25 Qxf7, mate.

412 [VX-232]. White wins with 20 Rc3 (1-0), when 20...e5 prevents 21 Rh3, but loses to 21 Oh5+ Kg7 22 Rg3+ Kf6 23 Qxe5+ Kf7 24 Rg7, mate.
7. Black Refuses to Take White's Ng6

413 [VX-217]. White wins with the double check 19 Ne7+ Kh8 20 Rxf5, when Black can't stop 21 Qg7, mate.

414 [VX-240]. White wins a Bishop and then the exchange with 24 Bxd5, since 24...Qxd5 drops the Queen to 25 Ne7+.

8. Miscellaneous

415 [VX-228]. White wins with 22 Qxg6+ Kf8 23 Nxe6, mate (1-0).

416 [VX-228]. White wins with 20 Rxe7+ Kg8 21 Rg7, mate.

417 [VX-228]. White wins with 19 Re7+, e.g., 19...Kg8 20 Rg7, mate or 19...Ke8 20 f7, mate.

418 [VX-230]. White wins with 27 Bf8/Be3/ Bf4/etc, e.g., 27...Qh3+ 28 Rhx3, mate.

419 [VX-230]. White wins with 27 Rg1, with 28 Bf8+/Be3+/etc, followed by mate.

420 [VX-230]. White wins with 28 Bg5, threatening 29 Rh8, mate, when 28...Qe6 loses to 29 Rh6 (1-0), e.g., 29...Qd7 30 Rh8, mate or 29...Qg4 30 Rxe7+ Kd8 31 Rh8, mate.
421 [VX-231]. White wins with 19 Qg7+ Ke6 20 f5, mate.

422 [VX-231]. White wins with 19 Qh7+ Kf8 20 Bg6 Qe7/Re7 21 Qh8, mate.

423 [VX-231]. White wins with 20 Qg6+, e.g., 19...Kg8 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Bg6+ Qe7/Re7 22 Qh8, mate; or 19...Kf7 20 Qg7+ Ke6 21 f5, mate.

424 [VX-231]. White wins with 18 Bg6+, e.g., 18...Kg8 19 Qh7+ Kf8 20 Bg6 Qe7/Re7 21 Qh8, mate; or 18...Kf7 19 Qg7+ Ke6 20 f5, mate; or 18...Kf7 19 Bg6+ and now: c1) 19...Ke6 20 f5+ Ke7 21 Qg7, mate; c2) 19...Kg8 20 Qh7+ Ke6 21 f5, mate; c3) 19...Ke7 20 Qg7+ Ke6 21 f5, mate.

425 [VX-231]. White wins with 18 Qxh6+, e.g., a) 18...Kg8 19 Qh7+ Kf8 20 Bg6 Qe7/Re7 21 Qh8, mate; b) 18...Ke6 19 Qg7+ Ke6 20 f5, mate; c) 18...Kf7 19 Bg6+ and now: c1) 19...Ke6 20 f5+ Ke7 21 Qg7, mate; c2) 19...Kg8 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 f5, mate; c3) 19...Ke7 20 Qg7+ Ke6 21 f5, mate.

426 [VX-239]. White wins with 15 Rh7, threatening 16 Qf7, mate, when 15...Re7 loses to 16 Bh6+, e.g., 16...Bg7 17 Rh8, mate; or 16...Kg7 17 Bxg7+ and now: 17...Bxg7 18 Qxg7+ Ke8 19 Qf7, mate; or 17...Ke7 18 Rh8, mate; or 17...Ke7 18 Bf8+ Kxf8 19 Qf7, mate.

427 [VX-236]. White wins with 16 Bxf6, when 16...Qxf6 drops the Re8 and 16...Qd7 loses to either 17 Ng5, threatening 18 Rh8+ Kxh8 19 Qxh7, mate or 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Qh8+ Bxh8 20 Rxh8, mate or 17 Bxg7 Qxg7 18 Qxe8+ (1-0) Qf8 19 Rh8+ Kxh8 20 Qxf8+.

428 [VX-238]. White wins with 19 Qh7+ Kf7 20 Re3 (White’s threat is 21 Rae1 and 22 Rf3) and now: a) 20...Qxd4 21 Rae1 (1-0) White’s threat is 22 Re7+ Kf6 23 Qxg7, mate or 22 Rh3+ Bf5 23 Rxf5+ Qf6 24 Bc4, mate; b) 20...Bxe6 21 Bg6+ Kf6 22 Rae1, threatens 23 Rxe6, when 22...Qd5 loses material to 23 Rxe6+ Qxe6 24 Rxe6+ Kxe6 25 Qxg7.

429 [VX-240]. White wins with 25 Rfx8+ Kxf8 (25...Qxf8 26 Bxd5+ wins a Rook) 26 Rf1+, e.g., 26...Kg8 27 Qx7+ Kd6 (27...Kf8 28 Qf7+, mates) 28 Qxd4 Ke6 29 Bxd5+, when 29...Qxd5 drops the Queen to 30 Rd6+ or 26...Kg8 27 Rf7 Bxf7 28 Qx7+ Kh7 29 Bd3+ Kh8 30 Qh5+ (1-0) Bh6 (30...Kg8 31 Bc4+ Kf8 32 Qf7, mate) 31 Qxh6+ Kg8 32 Bc4+ Qd5 33 Bxd5, mate.
217. The count on g6 is 2-1. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Nxg6 hxg6 19 Qxg6+ Kh8. How does White win here?

1 18...Nf5 defends g7 and attacks White’s Queen, but loses to 19 Ne7+ Kh8 20 Rxf5, threatening 21 Qg7, mate.

218. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Bxg6 fxg6 20 Qxg6+ Rf51. How does White win here?

1 White’s threat is 21 Qh7, mate. 2 20...Re8 doesn’t change anything.

219. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nxg6 fxg61 20 Qxg6+ Kh8 21 Qh6+ Qh7. How does White win here?

1 Better is 19...Bxh2+ 20 Kh1, when 20...hxg4 loses to 21 Ne7+ Kh8 22 Qh7+ Kf6 23 Qh4+ Kg7 24 Qg5+ Kh8 25 Qh6, mate, but better is 20...Rfd8, e.g., 21 Rh4 Bd6 22 Rfxh5, when White is up a pawn.

220. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bxg6 fxg61 15 Qxg6+ Bg7 16 Ng52 Re72. How does White mate in two?

1 Otherwise White is up a pawn with an attack. 2 Note that this move creates two threats. Black resigned here. 3 16...Qc7 and 16...Qf6 don’t change anything, while 16...Nf8 and 16...Rf8 both lose to 17 Qh7, mate.
221. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxg6 fxg6 16 Qxg6+ Kg7 17 Ng5\(^1\) Rf6. How does White mate in two?

\(^1\) White's threat is 18 Qh7, mate.

222. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxg6 fxg6 18 Qxe6+ Kg7 19 Rh7+ Kxh7\(^2\). How does White win here?

\(^1\) 18...Kf8 19 Rh8+ Kg7 20 Rh7+ transposes. \(^2\) 19...Kf8 20 Qf7 is mate.

223. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nxg6 fxg6 21 Bd5+ Kh8\(^1\) 22 Bg5 Qc7 23 Bd8\(^2\) Qxd8. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 21...Kh7 loses to 22 Rf7+, e.g., 22...Kg8 23 Rxd7+, wins Black's Queen; 22...Bg7 23 Bxg7 with 24 Qh6+ and 25 Qh8, mate; or 22...Kh8 23 Bg5 Qa5 24 Bf6+ Nxf6 25 Qh6+ Kg8 26 Qg7, mate. \(^2\) This clears the c1-h6 diagonal for White's Queen (1-0).

224. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Bxg6 hxg6 20 Qxg6 Bf8\(^1\) 21 Ne4\(^3\) Qe7 22 Nf6+ Kh8\(^2\). How does White win here?

\(^1\) 20...Bb4 21 Ne4 threatens 22 Nf6+ with mate next move, e.g., 22... Kh8 23 Qh7, mate; or 22...Kf8 23 Qe7, mate, while 20...Bb4 prevents Ne4-f6+ but loses to 21 Ne4, b5 22 Nd6, threatening both 23 Rf7 and 23 Rf8+ Kxf8 24 Qe8, mate, when 22...Qxd6 23 Qxg7 is mate and 22...Bb7 23 Rf7 wins. \(^2\) 22...Qxf6 drops the Queen to 23 Rxf6.
225. Visualize the position after the moves 27 Bxg6 fxg6 28 Qxg6+ Bg7 29 Qxe6+ Kg8. How can White create a mate threat that wins Black’s Queen?

1 Other moves just concede the pawn. 2 28...Kh8 29 Rf3 (1-0) Qb4 30 Rh3 Qh3 31 gxh3 gives White a Queen and two pawns for a Rook and Knight. 3 29 f5 exf5 30 Bh6 Qd4+ gives Black at least a draw, e.g., 31 Rf2 Qd1+ 32 Rf1 Qd4+ since playing 31 Kh2 loses to 31...Qb4+ 32 Kg1 Qxh6. 4 29...Kh7 30 Rf3 creates a mate threat that wins Black’s Queen, e.g., 30...Qh4 31 Rh3 Qh3 32 gxf3, when White has a Queen and three pawns for a Rook and Knight.

226. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Bxg6 fxg6 22 Qxg6+ Kh8 23 Bg5 Qe6. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 22...Qg7 drops the Re8. 2 The game continued 23...Qxg5 (1-0, 25) 24 Qxe8+ Kh7 25 Rf7+ (1-0). 3 Hint: White can create a mating net that forces Black to give up his Queen.

227. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxg6 hxg6 18 Rxe8+ Kxe8 19 Bf6+ Kg8 20 Qh6 Qc7 21 Qh8+ Kf7. How does White win here? There are two solutions.

1 19...Kh7 loses to 20 Ke2, threatening 21 Qh6+ Kxh6 22 Rh1, mate, and if 20...Kg8 then 21 Qh6 Qc7 22 Qh8+ is similar to the game. 2 Black runs out of checks after 20...Qxc3+ 21 Kf1 Qxa1+ 22 Ke2 (1-0).

228. The count on g6 is 3-3, but White can removes one of Black’s defenders. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Rc1 Qa3 19 Rc7+ Bd7 20 Rxd7+ Nxd7 21 Bxg6+ hxg6 22 Qxg6+ Kf8. How does White win here?

1 19...Nd7 20 Bxg6+ is similar to the game, while other moves lose outright, e.g., 19...Kg8 20 Rg7, mate; 19...Ke8 20 f7, mate; or 19...Be7 20 Rxe7+ Kg8 21 Rg7, mate. 2 21...Kf8 loses to either 22 Qh6+ Kg8 23 Qg7, mate or 22 Nxex6+ Kg8 23 f7/Be8/Bh5, mate.
229. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxg6 hxg6 18 Qxg6+ Bg7 19 Nf5\(^1\) Qf6\(^2\) 20 Qxe8+ Nf8. How does White win here?

\(^1\) White's threat is 20 Qxg7, mate, but also good is 19 Ne6 (1-0), e.g., 19...Qf6 drops the Re8 with check, while 19...Rxg6 20 Qxe6+ Kb8 21 Bb6+ creates a mating net that wins Black's Queen.

2 19...Rxg7 20 Qxg7, mate, and if 20...Kf8 then 21 Rxg7 Rxg7 22 Qxg7+ Ke8 23 Nd6 is mate.

230. White has a piece for three pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Nxg6 hxg6 26 Rxe6+ Kf8 27 Qg7+ Ke8 28 Bg5 Qe6. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

\(^1\) The only move. 26...Nxg6 27 Qg7 is mate, while 26...Kf8 loses to 27 Be3/Bf8+ Qh3 28 Rxh3, mate, and if 26...Kh8 then 27 Rg1 with 28 Be3/Bf8+, mating.

\(^2\) Best. 27...Kf8 loses to 28 Qh5+ Kg7 29 Kg6 Qe6, and if 28...Kf7 then 29 Qg6+ Ke7 30 Kg7, mate.

3 White's threat is 29 Rd7, mate. \(^\text{Hint}\): Black's Queen is tied to the defense of e7.

231. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nxg6 fxg6 17 Qxg6+ Kf8\(^1\) 18 Qh6+ Ke7\(^2\) 19 Bd6+ Ke7\(^3\). How does White win here?

\(^1\) 17...Kh8 18 Qh7 is mate. \(^2\) 18...Ke7 loses to 19 Qg7+ Ke6 20 f5, mate, while 18...Kg8 loses to 19 Bh7+ Kf7 20 Qg6+, e.g., 20...Ke7 21 Qg7+ Ke6 22 f5, mate, or 20...Kf8 21 Qg8+ Ke7 22 Qg7+ Ke6 23 f5, mate.

\(^3\) 19...Kg8 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Qf7, mate, while 19...Ke6 loses to 20 f5+ Ke7 21 Qg7 mate.

232. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bxg6 hxg6\(^1\) 19 Qxg6+ Kh8 20 Re3\(^6\) e5\(^2\) 21 Kh5+ Kg7 22 Kg3+ Kf6 23 Qxe5+ Kf7. How does White win here?

\(^1\) Other moves just concede the pawn, e.g., 18...Nf5 19 Bxf5 Rxf5, etc.

\(^2\) Black's Bd7 now prevents 21 Rh3.
233. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Bxg6 hxg6\(^1\) 20 Qxg6+ Kh8 21 Qh6+ Kg8 22 Rg1+ Kf7. How does White mate in this position?

\(^1\) Better is 19...Ra7, e.g., 20 Rg1 Kh8, when Black’s weaknesses have been covered.

234. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Bxg6 fxg6\(^1\) 24 Qxg6+ Ng7 25 Re7\(^2\) Rf1+\(^3\) 26 Kxf1 Qf8+ 27 Kg1\(^8\) b6. How does White mate in two?

\(^1\) Better is 23...Ng7 24 Bd3, when Black is down only a pawn. \(^2\) Black now has to give up a Rook in order to defend his Ng7. \(^3\) 25...Rf7 loses to 26 Qxf7+ Kh8 27 Qg7/Qh7, mate.

235. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Bxg6 hxg6 23 Qxg6+ Kh8 24 Bg7\(^1\) Bxg7\(^2\) 25 Rf7\(^6\) Bd4+ 26 Kh1 Nf8. Both Queen are under attack in this position, but White can win here. How?

\(^1\) 24 Rxf6 Nxf6 25 Qxf6 doesn’t win because Black’s Queen is defending g7. \(^2\) 24...Kg8 loses to 25 Bxf6+ Kf8 26 Qg7, mate.

236. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bxg6 hxg6\(^1\) 15 Qxg6+ Kg7 16 Bxf6 Qd7\(^2\) 17 Bxg7\(^3\) Qxg7 18 Qxe8+\(^5\) Qf8. How does White win here?

\(^1\) Other moves drop a second pawn, e.g., 14...Re7 15 Bxf6 Qxf6 16 Bxh7+. \(^2\) 16...Qxf6 drops the Re8. \(^3\) Also good is 17 Ng5, intending either 18 Rh8+ Kxh8 19 Qxh7, mate or 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Qh8+ Bxh8 20 Rxh8, mate.
237. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxg6 fxg6 16 Qxg6+ Kf8 17 Ne4 Re7 18 Nxf6 Rg7. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 Other moves drop the Re8. 2 17...Re6 loses to 18 d5, but better is 17...Qd8, e.g., 18 Kh2 Qe7 19 Rg1 Qg7, although Black is down two pawns after 20 Nxf6 Qxg6 (20...Nxf6 21 Qxg7 is mate) 21 Rxf6. 3 Hint: White can create a winning Knight fork in this position.

238. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxg6 fxg6 18 Qxg6+ Bg7 19 Qh7+ Kf7 20 Re3 Qxd4 21 Rae1 Bf5 22 Re7+ Kf6. How does White win here?

1 18...Kh8 19 Qh7 is mate. 2 One of White's threats is to double his Rook on the e-file, then play Rd5. 3 20 Be6 can be met by 21 Bg6+ Kf8 22 Rxe6 Qxe6 23 Rxe6 Kxe6 25 Qxg7. 4 White threatens both 22 Re7+ Kf6 23 Qxg7, mate and 22 Rg3+ Bf5 23 Rxf5+ Qf6 24 Bc4, mate. Black resigned here.

239. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxg6 fxg6 14 Qxg6+ Kf8 15 Rh7 16 Bh6+ Kg8 17 Bxg7+ Ke8. How does White mate in two? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 13...cxd4 14 Bh7+ with 15 Nxd4 just concedes the pawn. 2 14...Bg7 loses to 15 Ng5 (1-0), when Black can't stop both 16 Qf7, mate and 16 Rh8+ Kxh8 17 Qh7, mate. 3 White's threat is 16 Qf7, mate. 4 16...Bg7 loses to 17 Rh8, mate. 5 17...Kg8 18 Rh8 is mate, while 17...Bxg7 loses to 18 Qxg7+ Ke8 19 Qf7, mate. 6 Hint: White's first task is to keep Black's King from escaping to d6.

240. Black has the two Bishop and White's Ne5 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Nxg6 hxg6 24 Qxg6+ Bg7 25 Rxf8+ Kxf8 26 Rf1+ Kg8 27 Rf7 Bxf7 28 Qxf7+ Kh7 29 Bd3+ Kh8 30 Qh5+ Bh6 31 Qxh6+ Kg8. How does White mate in two?

1 23...Rf7/Re8 loses to 24 Bxd5, when Black can't play 24...Qxd5 because of 25 Ne7+. 2 25...Qxf8 drops the Ra8 to 26 Bxd5+. 3 After 26...Ke7 27 Qxg7+ Kd6 28 Qxd4, White is up three pawns and will also win Black's pinned Bd5, e.g., 28...Kc6 29 Bxd5+, when Black can't play 29...Qxd5 because of 30 Rf6+, winning Black's Queen. 4 Also good is 29 Qf5+ Kh6 30 Bf7 Qg5 31 Kh3+ Qh4 32 Qxh4, mate. 5 30...Kg8 loses to 31 Bc4+ Kf8 32 Qf7, mate.
CHESS VISUALIZATION COURSE
CHAPTER 8. WHITE PLAYS 1 RXG6

This chapter contains exercises in which White sacrifices a Rook for two pawns on g6 in order to obtain a dominant Queen on g6 or some other positional advantage.

In Diagram 1, after the moves 1 Rxg6 fxg6 2 Qxg6+ (see Diagram 2), White has given up a Rook for two pawns, but has obtained a dominant Queen on g6 and now wins after either 2...Kf8 3 Qf7, mate, or 2...Kh8 3 Nf7, mate.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. Black’s King is on h8
2. Black’s King is on f8
3. Black’s King is on g8
4. Black Refuses the Rg6 and Plays 1...Kh8
5. Black Refuses the Rg6 and Plays 1...Kf7
6. Black Refuses the Rg6 and Plays 1...Kf8
7. Black Refuses the Rg6 and Interposes a Piece on g7

These themes are illustrated using sixty-eight preparatory positions, which are followed by forty visualization exercises ranging in depth from five to twenty-three ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply:</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Black’s King is on h8

430 [VX-241]. 25 Rh1 is mate.

431 [VX-242]. 30 Rxf8 is mate.

432 [VX-263]. White wins with 21 Rg1 with either 22 Qg7 or 22 Qh6, mate.

433 [VX-254]. 28 Nf7 is mate.

434 [VX-247]. 26 Nf7 is mate.

435 [VX-247]. 26 Nf7 is mate.

436 [VX-243]. 30 Qxh6 is mate.

437 [VX-249]. White wins with 27 Qh6+ (1-0) Qh7 28 Qxh7, mate.

438 [VX-250]. 27 Qh6+ Nh7 28 e5 wins, since Black can't prevent Qh7, mate.

439 [VX-266]. White wins with 23 Qh5+ Kg8 24 Ne7+/Nf6+, mate.

440 [VX-280]. White wins with 23 Qh6+ Kg8 24 Rg1+ Kf7 25 Qg7, mate.

441 [VX-268]. White wins with 24 Qh6+ (1-0) Kg8 25 Rg1+ Kf7 (25...Ng4
26 Qg7 is mate) 26 Qg6, mate.

442 [VX-252]. White wins with 27 Rh3+ Qh7 28 Qxh7/Rxh7, mate.

443 [VX-257]. White wins with 24 Re3 Bf8 25 Rh3+, mating, e.g., 25...Bh6 26 R hx6+ Qh7 27 Qxh7/Rxh7, mate.

444 [VX-270]. White wins with 23 Rf4 Nh7 (now Black's Be7 controls h4) 24 Rf7 (1-0) Nf6 25 Qg7, mate.

445 [VX-273]. White wins with 20 Bg7+ Rxg7 21 Qxg7, mate.

446 [VX-273]. White wins with 20 Bg7+ Kg8 21 Be5+ Kf8 22 Qg8, mate.

447 [VX-273]. White wins with 20 Bg7+ Kg8 (20...Bxg7 21 Qxg7 is mate) 21 Bxf6+ Bg7 22 Qxg7, mate.

448 [VX-257]. White wins with 24 Re3 (1-0), e.g., 24...Bf8 25 Rh3+ Bh6 26 R hx6, mate.

449 [VX-259]. White wins with 27 Qh6+ Kg8 28 Rf6, threatening 29 Rg6, mate, and if 28...Rxd5 then 29 Qg5+ (1-0) Kh7 30 Rh6 is mate.

450 [VX-266]. White wins with 24 Qh5+, e.g., 24...Bh7 25 Qxh7, mate; 24...Kg8 25 Ne7/Nf6, mate; or 24...Bh6 25 Qxh6+ Kg8 (25...Bh7 26 Qxh7, mate) 26 Ne7, mate.
451 [VX-244]. White wins with 30 Qxh5+ Kg7 31 Rg3+ Qg4 32 Rxg4, mate.

452 [VX-262]. White wins with 25 Qh5+ Kg8 26 Rf4 (26 Qg5+ Kh8 27 Rf4 (1-0, 29) is also good) 26...Bf5 27 Rh4 with Qh8, mate.

453 [VX-260]. White wins with 24 Qh5+ Kg7 25 Re7+ Rf7 (25...Kg8 loses to 26 Qh7, mate) 26 Rxf7+ Kg8 27 Qh7, mate.

454 [VX-278]. White wins with 24 Qh6+ Kg8 25 Bc4+ bxc4 26 Rg1+ Kf7 27 Rg7+ Ke8 28 Qg6+ Rf7 29 Qxf7, mate.

455 [VX-261]. White wins with 20 Qxf6+, e.g., a) 20...Kg8 21 Rg1+ Kh7 22 Bxf8, threatening 23 Qg7/Qh6/Qh4, mate, or b) 20...Kh7 21 Bxf8 Rx8f 22 Rg1, threatening both 23 Qg7 and 23 Qh4, mate.

456 [VX-255]. Black’s Qd7 is tied to the defense of g7, so White wins with 22 Rxe8+, e.g., 22...Qe8 23 Qg7, mate, or 22...Rf8 23 Rx8, mate.

457 [VX-275]. White wins with 30 Qf6+, e.g., a) 30...Kh7 31 Be4+ Kg8 32 Rg1+ or b) 30...Kg8 31 Rg1+, when the threat of Qg7, mate wins Black’s Queen, e.g., 31...Rg2 32 Rxg2+ Qxg2 33 Bxg2.

458 [VX-269]. White wins with 23 Qh6+ Kg8 24 g5 (1-0), threatening 25 g6 and 26 Qh7, mate, e.g., 24...Qb6 25 g6 Qxg6 26 Qxg6+ with a mate in three: 26...Kh8 27 Qh6+ Kg8 28 Rg1+ Ng7 29 Qxg7, mate.

459 [VX-248]. Black’s Qc6 prevents 23 Rh1, mate, but White wins with 23 e4 (1-0), threatening 24 Rh1, mate, when Black has to give up his Queen to prevent mate, e.g., 23...Qxe4 24 Qxe4 Kg7, when White is up a Queen and two pawns for a Rook.
460 [VX-267]. White wins with 23 Bd3
(1-0; 23 Bxc4 and 23 Bd2 are also good)
23...Nf6, e.g., a) 24 Qxf6+ Kg8 25 Qg6+
Kh8 26 Qh7/Rh1, mate; b) 24 exf6 with
25 Qh7/Qg7/Rh1, mate; c) 24 Rh1+ Nh5
(24...Nh7 25 Qxh7/Rxh7, mate) 25
Rhx5, mate.

461 [VX-271]. White wins with 22
Qh6+ Kg8 23 Bh3* Rf6 24 Rg1+ Kf7
(24...Rf7 loses to 24 Rg1+, while 23...Nh7
loses to 24 Rg1+ Kf7 25 Qg6, mate) 25
Rg7+ Kh8 (1-0) Ke8 (25...Kf8 26 Qh8, mate)
26 Qh5+ (26 Qh8+ and 26 Nxf6+ also win)
Kh8 27 Qh7, mate.

*23 Be2 also wins, e.g., 23...exd5
24 Rg1+ Kf7 25 Qg6, mate.

462 [VX-276]. Here 22 Bc4
yields only
the exchange and a pawn after 22...Rf7
23 Bxe6 Rg7 24 Qxg7+ Kxg7 25 Bxc8
Nxc8 26 exf5, but White can win with
22 Qh6+ Kg8 23 Bh3* Rf6 24 Rg1+ Kf7
(24...Kf8 26 Qh8, mate) 26
Qh5+ (26 Qh8+ and 26 Nxf6+ also win)
Kh8 27 Qh7, mate.

*24 Re5 is also possible, intending 25 Rh5,
mate, when 24...fxe5 25 Bxe5+ wins, but
Black can also play 24...f5, when White has
to play 25 Re3 anyway.

463 [VX-272]. White wins with 24 Re3*
e5 (this controls h3), when White can
win with either 25 Qh5+ Kg7 26 Rg3+
Bg4 27 Rxg4, mate, or 25 Qh6+ Kg8 26
Rg3+ Kh7 27 Qg6+ Ke6 28 f5, mate.

464 [VX-277]. White wins with 24
Bxf6+ (1-0) Rxf6 25 Qxf6+, e.g., a)
25...Kh7 26 Qf7+ Kh6 (26...Kh8 27
Qxe8+) 27 Rf6+ Kg5 28 Qg7+ Kh4 29
Rh6+ Qh5 30 Qg3, mate, or b) 25...Kg8
26 Qf7+ Kh8 27 Qxe8+ Kg7 28 Rf7+
Kh6 29 Qg6+, and now: b1) 29...Kh5 30
Rh7+ Kg5 31 Rg7+ Kh4 32 Qg4, mate
or b2) 29...Kg5 30 Rg7+ Kf4 (30...Kh5
31 Qh3, mate; 30...Kh4 31 Qh3/Qg4,
mate) 31 Rg4, mate.

465 [VX-279]. White wins with 25
Qh6+ Kg8 26 Rf3 (1-0) (White's threat
is 27 Rg3+ Bg4 28 Rxf4 Kf7 29 Rg7+
Kf8 30 Qh8, mate) Ne5 27 Rg3+ Bg4
(27...Kf7 28 Qg7 is mate, while 27...Ng4
28 Bxg4 Kf7 29 Bxe6+ is similar to the
game) 28 Bxg4 Kf7 29 Be6+ Ke7
(29...Rxg6 loses to 30 Rg7+ Ke8 31
Qh8, mate) 30 Rg7+ Nf7 30...Kf8 31
Qh8, mate; 30...Kd8 31 Qf6+ Re7 32
Qxe7, mate) 31 Rxf7+ Kd8 32 Qf6+ Re7
33 Qxe7, mate.
2. Black’s King is on f8

466 [VX-254]. 28 Qf7 is mate.

467 [VX-257]. 24 Qf7 is mate.

468 [VX-270]. 23 Bh6 is mate.

469 [VX-252]. White wins with 27 Rf3+ (1-0) Ke7 28 Rf7+ Ke8 29 Qg8, mate.

470 [VX-256]. White wins with 26 Rh8+ (1-0) Kxh8 27 Qh7, mate.

471 [VX-256]. White wins with 26 Bc5+, e.g., 26...Re7 27 Qxf6+ Kg8 28 Rh8, mate or 26...Be7 27 Qf6+ Kg8 28 Rh8, mate.

472 [VX-245]. White wins with 22 Rf1+ Ke7 23 Qf7, mate.

473 [VX-258]. White wins with 20 Qh6+ (1-0), e.g., a) 20...Kf7 21 Qg7, mate, or b) 20...Kg8 21 Qh8+ Kf7 22 Qg7, mate.

474 [VX-251]. White wins with 28 Bh5, threatening 29 Qg7, mate (1-0), which Black can stop with 28...Qf7, but then 29 Qh6+ wins Black's Queen.
475 [VX-246]. White wins with 20 Rg1, threatening 21 Qg8, mate (1-0), when a) 20...Qf7 loses to 21 Qxh6+ Qg7 22 Qxg7+, mate, and b) 20...Bxg3 21 Rxg3 Qxg3 22 Qxg3 gives White a Queen, Knight and two pawns for two Rooks (15 pts to 10).

476 [VX-263]. White wins with 21 Bxf6, e.g., a) 21...Bxf6 22 Qxf6+ and now: a1) 22...Kg8 23 Rg1+ Kh7 24 Qg7, mate, or a2) 22...Ke8 23 Qe6+ Kf8 24 Rg1 with 25 Rg8, mate, or b) 21...Qc7/Rb7 22 Bg7+ Kg8 23 Bh6+ Kh8 24 Qg7, mate.

477 [VX-264]. White wins with 25 Qh6+ Kh8 (25...Kf7 drops the Queen to 26 Qg7+ Ke6 27 Bf6+) 26 Qh8+ Kf7 27 Qg7+ Ke6, when 28 Bf6+ wins Black's Queen (1-0), e.g., a) 28...Kd7/Kd5 29 Rxe7, when White has a Queen and three pawns for a Rook, or 28...Kf5 29 Qg5, mate.

478 [VX-244]. White wins with 30 Rg3 and 31 Qxg7, mate.

479 [VX-255]. White wins with 22 Re7 Rf7 23 Qxf7+ Kh7 24 Qxg7, mate.

480 [VX-253]. White wins with 27 Qe8+ Qf8 28 Rg1+ Kh7 29 Qg6, mate.

481 [VX-265]. White wins with 17 Ng5, threatening 17 Qh7, mate, when 17...Rd8 (1-0) loses to 18 Qxf7+ Kh8 19 Bxg7+ Bxg7 20 Qh5+ Bh6 21 Qxh6, mate.
4. Black Refuses the Rg6 and Plays 1...Kh8

483 [VX-269]. 22 Qxf8 is mate.

484 [VX-267]. 22 Qg7 is mate.

485 [VX-262]. 24 Rg7 wins.

5. Black Refuses the Rg6 and Plays 1...Kf7

486 [VX-267]. 22 Qxh7 is mate.

487 [VX-271]. White wins with 21 Rg7+ Ke8 22 Qh5+ Rf7 23 Qxf7, mate.

488 [VX-258]. White wins with 19 Rg7+ Kxf6 20 Qd4+ Kf5 21 g4/Rg5, mate.

489 [VX-277]. White wins with 23 Qxh7+ Ke6 24 Rgx6+ Rx6 25 Rx6, mate.

490 [VX-255]. White wins with 21 Rg7+, e.g., 21...Kf8 22 Rxe8+ Qxe8 23 Rg1, mate or 21...Kf6 22 Qh4+ Rg5 23 Qxg5, mate.

491 [VX-253]. White wins with 26 Rx6+ ex6 27 Qd7+, e.g., a) 27...Kg8 28 Rg1+ Qg7 29 Qe8, mate or b) 27...Kg6 28 Rg1+ Kh5 29 Qh3, mate.
6. Black Refuses the Rg6 and Plays 1...Kf8

492 [VX-252]. White wins with 26 Qf6+ Ke8 27 Rg8+ Kd7 28 R3g7, mate.

493 [VX-258]. White wins with 19 Rg7 with Qxh7, e.g., 19...Qc5+ 20 Bd4 Qd6 21 Qxh7, with 22 Qh8, mate.

494 [VX-256]. White wins with 25 Bc5+ Re7 (25...Be7 26 Rh8, mate) 26 Rg8+ Kxg8 27 Rh8+ Bxh8 28 Qh7+ Kf8 29 Qxh8, mate.

495 [VX-256]. 25 Bc5+ wins, e.g., a) 25...Kf7 26 Rxh7+Bg7 27 Rhxg7, mate or b) 25...Be7 26 Rf6+ Kg7, when White has several ways to win: b1) 27 Rhx7+Kxf6 28 Qxe5, mate or b2) 27 Qxh7+ Kxf6 28 Qg6/Ne4, mate.

7. Black Refuses the Rg6 and Interposes a Piece on g7

496 [VX-265]. White wins with 16 Rxg7+ Kh8 17 Qxe4 Nf6 18 Qxe7, when White is up two pieces and two pawns.

497 [VX-265]. Here 16 Ne4 hxg6 17 Nxf6+ Nxf6 18 Qxg6 threatens mate on g7, but loses to 18...Bf5+, but White can win by retracting his Rook with 16 Rg3, then play 17 Ne4 and 18 Nxf6.
241. White has a Knight for three pawns, but his Ra1 and Pc2 are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Rxg6+ fxg6 24 Qxg6+ Kh8. How does White win here?

1 23...Kh7 and 23...Kh8 both lose to 24 Rh1, mate.

242. Visualize the position after the moves 28 Rxg6+ fxg6 29 Qxg6+ R Kh8. How does White win here?

243. Visualize the position after the moves 28 Rxg6 fxg6 29 Qxg6+ R Kh8. How does White win here?

1 28...Qxe7 loses to 29 Qg7, mate.

244. Visualize the position after the moves 28 Rxg6+ hxg6 29 Qxg6+ R Ng7. How does White win here?

1 29...Kh8 loses to 30 Qxh5+ Kg7 31 Rg3+ Qg4 32 Rxg4, mate.
245. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rxg6+ fxg6 21 Qxg6+ Kf8 22 Rf1+ Ke7
1. How does White win here?

1 22...Bf3 23 Rxf3+ doesn't change anything.

246. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Rxg6+ fxg6 19 Qxg6+ Kf8
1. What is the material balance?

1 19...Kh8 drops the Re8 with check.

247. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Rxg6+ fxg6 24 Qd3+ Kh8 25 Qxg6+ Kg8.

1 24 Qg3 is also good. 2 24...Bf8 loses to 25 Qxg6+ Kh8 26 Nf7, mate.

248. White is up a pawn, but his Qe4 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxg6+ hxg6
1 22 Qxg6+ Kh8.

1 21...Kh8 drops a second pawn to 22 Qxc6 bxc6 23 Rxe6 dxe3 24 f5 or 24 Rf6 while 21...Kf7
drops an additional pawn to 22 Rf6+ Kg7 23 Qxc6 bxc6 24 exd4 cxd4 25 Rxd4. 2 Hint: White will win if he can
play Rh1+, but Black's Queen controls h1 for now. How does White gain control over h1?
249. Visualize the position after the moves 24 hxg6 hxg6 25 Rwg6+ fxg6 26 Qxg6+ Kh8. How does White win here?

250. White is up a Queen for two pieces, having trapped Black's Queen earlier. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Rwg6 fxg6 26 Qxg6 Rg8 27 Qh6+ Nh7. How does White win here?

251. Visualize the position after the moves 26 Rwg6+ fxg6 27 Qxg6+ Kf8 28 Bh51 Qf7. How does White win Black's Queen?

1 White's threat is 29 Qg7, mate (1-0).

252. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Rwg6+ hxg61 26 Qxg6+ Kf8 27 Rf3+ Ke7. How does White win here?

1 25...Kh8 loses to 26 Rg8+ Rf8 27 Qxg8, mate, while 25...Kf8 and 25...Kf7 lose to 26 Qf6+ Ke8 27 Rg8+. 2 26...Kh8 loses to 27 Rh3+ Qh7 28 Qxh7/Rxh7, mate.
253. White has a piece for three pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Rxg6+ hxg6\(^1\) 26 Qxg6+\(^2\) Qg7 27 Qe8+ Qf8 28 Rg1+ Kh7. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 25...Kf7 loses to 26 Rxf6+ exf6 27 Qd7+, e.g., 27...Kg6 28 Rg1+ Kh5 29 Qh3, mate or 27...Kg8 28 Rg1+ Qg7 29 Qe8, mate.

254. White is down two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Bxg6\(^1\) fxg6 25 Bxf6\(^2\) Nxf6\(^3\) 26 Rxg6+ hxg6 27 Qxg6+. How does White mate after either 27...Kh8 or 27...Kf8?

\(^1\) 24 Bxf6 Nxf6 25 Bxg6 transposes. \(^2\) 24...hxg6 doesn’t change anything. \(^3\) This threatens mate on g7 and clears the g-file for the Rook. 25 Nxg6 loses to 25...Rxg3, threatening 26...Qxg2, mate. 25...Re7 loses to 26 Rxg6+ hxg6 27 Qh8, mate (1-0).

255. White is down a piece for a pawn and his Queen is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rxg6+ hxg6\(^1\) 21 Qxg6+ Ng7\(^2\) 22 Re7\(^3\) Rf7. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 20...Kf7 loses to 21 Rg7+, e.g., 21...Kf6 22 Qh4+ Rg5 23 Qxg5, mate, or 21...Kf8 22 Rxe8+ Qxe8 23 Rg1, mate. \(^2\) 21...Kh8 loses to 22 Rxe8+, e.g., 22...Rf8 23 Rxh8, mate or 22...Qxe8 23 Qg7, mate. \(^3\) 22 Re8+ Rf8 23 Re7 is also good.

256. White is down two pawns, but has a favorable count on g6. Visualize the position after the moves 23 hxg6 hxg6\(^1\) 24 Rxg6+ fxg6\(^2\) 25 Qxg6+ Bg7\(^3\). How does White mate in two?

\(^1\) 23...fxg6 24 Rxg6+ hxg6 transposes to the game, but 24...Kf8 loses to 25 Be5+ Be7 26 Rf6+ Kg7, when White has several ways to win: a) 27 Rxb7+ Kxf6 28 Qxe5, mate or b) 27 Qxh7+ Kxf6 28 Qg6/Nf4, mate. \(^2\) 24...Kf8 gives White a forced mate: 25 Be5+ Re7 (25...Be7 26 Rh8, mate) 26 Rg8+ Kxg8 27 Rh8+ Bxh8 28 Qh7+ Kf8 29 Qxh8, mate. \(^3\) 25...Kf8 loses to 26 Be5+, e.g., 26...Re7 27 Qxf6+ Kg8 28 Rh8, mate or 26...Be7 27 Qf6+ Kg8 28 Rh8, mate.
257. White's Qh5 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rg3 Re8 22 Rxg6 hxg6 23 Qxg6+ Kh8 24 Re3 Bf8. How does White win here?

1 21...Qb7 is similar to the main line, e.g., 22 Rxg6+ hxg6 23 Qxg6+ Kh8 (23...Kf8 24 Qf7, mate) 24 Re3, etc. 2 23...Kf8 24 Qf7 is mate.

1 White's threat is 18 Rxg7+ Qxg7 19 Bxg7 Kxg7, winning the Queen and two pawns for a Rook and Bishop. 2 18...Kf7 loses to 19 Rg7+ Kf8 20 Qd4+ Kf5 21 Rg5, mate, while 18...Kf8 loses to 19 Rg7, e.g., 19...Qc5+ 20 Bd4 Qd6 21 Qxh7 with 22 Qh8, mate. 3 20...Kf7 loses to 21 Qg7, mate.

259. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Rxg6+ hxg6 26 Qxg6+ Kh8 27 Qh6+ Kg8 28 Rf6 Rxd5. How does White win here?

1 25...Kh8 loses to 26 Qxf8/Qg7, mate. 2 White's threat is 29 Rg6, mate.

260. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Rxg6+ fxg6 23 Qxg6+ Kh8 24 Qh5+ Kg7 25 Re7+ Rf7. How does White mate in two?

1 White can also win with 25 Rg1+ Qg2 26 Rfxg2+ Kf6 27 Qe5+ Kf7 28 Rg7, mate (1-0). 2 25...Kg8 loses to 26 Qh7, mate.
261. White’s Bh6 is under attack, but Black’s Nf6 is undefended. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Rxg6+ hxg6 19 Qxg6+ Kh8 20 Qxf6+ Kh7 21 Bxf8 Rxf8 22 Rg1. What is White's threat and how does White win if Black plays 22...Rg8?

1. 19...Bg7 20 Qxg7 is mate. 2. 20...Kg8 21 Rg1+ Kh7 22 Bxf8 threatens 23 Qg7/Qh6/Qh4, mate.

262. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Rxg6+ hxg6 24 Qxg6+ Kh8 25 Qh5+ Kg8 26 Rf4 Bf5. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1. 23...Kh8 loses to 24 Rg7. 2. Also good is 26 Qg5+ Kh8 27 Rf4 (1-0, 29). 3. Hint: White can win with 27 Rxf5, Rxd5 28 Qg4+ Kh7 29 Rxd5, etc, but look for something quicker.

263. Visualize the position after the moves 18 fxg6 fxg6 19 Rxg6+ hxg6 20 Qxg6+ Kf8 21 Bxf6 Qc7. How does White mate in three? See the last footnote for a hint.

1. 18...hxg6 19 Rxg6+ transposes. 2. 20...Kh8 loses to 21 Rg1 with either 22 Qg7 or 22 Qh6, mate. 3. 21...Rh7 doesn't change anything, while 21...Bxf6 loses to 22 Qxf6+, e.g., a) 22...Kg8 23 Rg1+ Kh7 24 Qg7, mate, or b) 22...Ke8 23 Qe6+ Kf8 24 Rg1 with 25 Rg8, mate. 4. Hint: White can drive Black’s King to the corner of the board.

264. White is up a piece and a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Bxg6 fxg6 23 Rxg6+ hxg6 24 Qxg6+ Kf8 25 Qh6+ Kg8 26 Qh8+ Kf7 27 Qg7+ Ke6. How does White win here?

1. 25...Kf7 drops the Queen to 26 Qg7+ Ke6 27 Bf6+.
265. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Rxg6 hxg6¹ 16 Qxg6² Bf6 17 Ng5³ Rd8⁴ 18 Qxf7+ Kh8 19 Bxg7+ Bxg7. How does White win here?

¹ 15...Bf6 can be met by 16 Rg3 with 17 Ne4, intending 18 Nxf6, but not 16 Ne4 hxg6 17 Nxf6+ Nxf6 18 Qxg6, which drops the Queen to 18...Bf5+: 15...e4 loses to 16 Rfxg7+ Kh8 17 Qxe4 Nf6 18 Qxe7, when White is up two pieces and two pawns. ² White's threat is 17 Qxg7, mate.

2 White's threat is 17 Qh7, mate (1-0).

3 Black resigned here. Also good are 23 Bxc4 and 23 Bd2.

266. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Bxe5 fxe5 21 Rxg6 hxg6 22 Qxg6 ² Bg4 ² 23 Ng5 ³ Bf5 ² 24 Qh5+ Bh6 4 25 Qxh7, mate. How does White mate in one?

¹ White's threat is 23 Qh5+ Kg8 24 Ne7 or 24 Nf6, mate. ² This prevents 23 Qh5+. ³ Now White's threat is 24 Qh7, mate (1-0). ⁴ 24...Bh7 loses to 25 Qxh7, mate, while 24...Kg8 loses to either 25 Ne7 or 25 Nf6, mate. ⁵ 25...Bh7 26 Qxh7 is mate.

267. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Qh6 g6¹ 20 hxg6 fxg6 21 Rxg6+ hxg6² 22 Qxg6+ Kh8 23 Bd3³ Nf6. How does White win here?

¹ 19...g5 loses to 20 Rfxg5+ Kh8 21 Qg7, mate. ² 21...Kf7 loses to 22 Qxh7, mate, while 21...Kh8 loses to 22 Qg7, mate. ³ Black resigned here. Also good are 23 Bxc4 and 23 Bd2.

268. White has a forced mate in this position. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Qg5 g6¹ 21 Qh6+ Kg8 22 Rxg6+ fxg6 23 Qxg6+ Kh8 24 Qh6+² Kg8 25 Kg1+ Ng4². How does White win here?

¹ 20...Ne8 loses to 21 Bxh7+, while 20...Rg8 loses to 21 Nxf6, and if 21...Rx6, then 22 Qxh5+ Rh6 23 Qxh6 is mate. ² 25...Kf7 loses to 26 Qg6, mate.
269. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rd6 Qc7\(^1\) 21 Rfxg6+ hxg6\(^2\) 22 Qxg6+ Kh8 23 Qh6+ Kg8 24 g5\(^3\) Qb6 25 g6 Qxg6. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 20...Nxd6 loses to 21 Qg7, mate, while 20...Ncxg6 loses to 21 Ne7+ Kh8 22 Qxh8, mate. \(^2\) 21...Kh8 loses to 22 Qxh8, mate. \(^3\) White's threat is 25 g6 and 26 Qh7, mate. Black resigned here.

270. Visualize the position after the moves 19 g5 hxg5\(^1\) 20 Rfxg5 g6\(^2\) 21 Rfxg6+ fxg6 22 Qxg6+ Kh8\(^3\) 23 Rf4 Nh7\(^4\) 24 Rf7\(^5\) Nf6. How does White win here?

\(^1\) Moving the Knight drops the h-pawn. \(^2\) 20...Bf8 drops the Nf6 to 21 Rxf6, while 20...d4 loses to 21 Rxg7+ Kf8 22 Bh6, threatening 23 Rg8/Rg3, mate, and if 22...Bd8, then 23 Nxd5 wins, e.g., 23...Nxd5 24 Rfxf7, mate. \(^3\) 22...Kf8 loses to 23 Bh6, mate. \(^4\) Black's Be7 controls h4. 23...Nxe4 24 Rf7 doesn't change anything.

271. White is down a pawn and his Nd5 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rfxg6+ hxg6\(^1\) 21 Qxg6+ Kh8 22 Qh6+ Kg8 23 Bh3\(^2\) Rf6 24 Rg1+ Kf7\(^3\) 25 Rg7+ Ke8\(^4\). How does White win here?

\(^1\) 20...Kf7 loses to 21 Kg7 Ke8 22 Qh5+ Rf7 23 Qxh7, mate; 20...Kh8 21 Qg7, mate. \(^2\) 23 Be2 also wins, e.g., 23...Qd7 24 Rg1+ Kf7 25 Qxg6, mate. \(^3\) 24...Rg6 loses to 25 Bxe6, mate (or 25 Qxg6+, e.g., 25...Kf8 26 Qg8, mate or 25...Kh8 26 Qh6/Qg7, mate. \(^4\) 25...Kf8 26 Qh8 is mate.

272. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Qh6 g6\(^1\) 22 Rfxg6+ hxg6 23 Qxg6+ Kh8 24 Re3\(^2\) e5\(^3\) 25 Qh6+ Kg8 26 Rg3+ Kf7 27 Qg6+ Ke6. How does White mate in one?

\(^1\) Relatively best is defending g7 with 21...Re7, although White is up a pawn after 22 Qxf6 Rf7. Note that 22 Bxe7 Qxe7 wins the exchange, but gives up White's dominant Bd6. \(^2\) 24 Re5 is also possible, when 24...fxe5 loses to 25 Bxe5+, but Black can play 24...f5, when White has to play 25 Re3 anyway. \(^3\) This controls h3. \(^4\) Also good is 25 Qh5+ Kg7 26 Rg3+Bg4 27 Rxf4, mate.
273. White is down a pawn, but the g-file is open. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxg6 hxg6 16 Rh6 1 Kg7 17 Rxg6+ fxg6 18 Bh6+ Kh8 19 Qxg6 Bf8 20 Bg7+ Kg8. How does White win here?

1 16 Bh6 can be met by 16...Ne4, attacking White's Rh4. 2 18...Kf7 and 18...Kxh6 both lose to 19 Qxg6, mate. 3 19...Nh5 loses to 20 Bg7+ Kg8 21 Be5+ Kf8 22 Qg8, mate. 4 20...Bxg7 21 Qxg7 is mate.

274. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Bxg6 hxg6 26 Qh6 Qf8 27 Rxg6+ fxg6 28 Qxg6+ Ng7 29 Ng5 Bf5 30 f7+ Rh8. How does White mate in two?

1 27...Ng7 loses to 28 Rxg7+ Qxg7 29 Qxg7, mate. 2 30...Qxf7 31 Qxf7 Kh8 32 Rxf5 gives White a Queen and Bishop for two Rooks. 3 30...Kh7 loses to 31 Be4+ Kg8 32 Qxe4, mate.

275. White is up a piece for two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 24 fxg6 fxg6 25 Rxg6+ hxg6 26 Qxg6+ Kh8 27 Rh1 Rf2+ 28 Kh3 Rb8+ 29 Ka3 Rh2 30 Qf6+ Kg8. How does White win?

1 24...hxg6 25 Rxg6+ fxg6 26 Qxg6+ transposes, while 24...Rxc6 loses to 25 gxf7, mate. 2 29...Qxh1 30 Bxh1 gives White a Queen and Bishop for two Rooks. 3 30...Kh7 loses to 31 Be4+ Kg8 32 Rg1+.

276. White is up the exchange for a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 19 g6 fxg6 20 Rgx6+ hxg6 21 Qxg6+ Kh8 22 Qh6+ Kg8 23 Be4 Bf6 24 Qg6+ Kh8 25 Rg1 Qd7 26 Qh6+ Qh7. How does White win here?

1 This is better than 22 Bc4 (1-0, 26), which wins the exchange and a pawn after 22...Rf7 23 Bxe6 Rg7 24 Qxg7+ Kxg7 25 Bxc8 Nxc8 26 exf5. 2 23...Rf7 loses to 24 Rg1+, while 23...Nxc4 loses to 24 Rg1+ Kf7 25 Qg6, mate.
277. White is down a piece and a pawn and Black threatens 22...Nxb2 and 22...Nf2+. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Rxg6+ hxg6 23 Qxg6+ Kh8 24 Bxf6+ Rx6 25 Qxf6+ Kg8 26 Qf7+ Kh8 27 Qxe8+ Kg7 28 Qf7+ Kh6 29 Qe6+ Kg5 30 Rg7+. How does White mate after 30...Kh5, 30...Kh4, and 30...Kf4?

1 22...Kf7 loses to 23 Qxh7+ Ke6 24 Rgxf6+ Rxf6 25 Rxf6, mate. 2 25...Kh7 loses to 26 Qf7+ Kh6 (26...Kh8 27 Qxe8+ transposes to the line 25...Kh8 26 Qf7+ Kh8 27 Qxe8+) 27 Rf6+ Kg5 28 Qg7+ Kh4 29 Rh6+ Qh5 30 Qe6+ Kg5 31 Rg7+ Kh4 32 Qg4, mate.

278. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Qh61 gxf52 21 g6 fxg6 22 Rxg6+ hxg6 23 Qxg6+ Kh82 24 Qh6+ Kg8 25 Bc4+ bxc4 26 Rg1+ Kf7 27 Rg7+ Ke8. How does White win here?

1 White's threat if 21 f6 and 22 Qg7, mate. 2 20...Kh8, intending to meet 21 f6 with Rg8, loses to 21 Qxf8, mate.

279. White is down a pawn and his Rf6 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Rxg6+ hxg6 24 Qxg6+ Kh8 25 Qh6+ Kg8 26 Rf3 Ne51 27 Rg3+ Bg4 28 Bxg4 Kf7 29 Be6+ Ke7 30 Qg7+ Nf74 31 Rxg7+ Kd8. How does White win here?

1 White’s threat is 27 Rg3+ Bg4 28 Rxg4+ Kf7 29 Qg7+ Kf8 30 Qh8, mate. 2 27...Kf7 loses to 28 Qg7, mate, while 27...Ng4 28 Bxe6+ Kf7 29 Bxe6+ is similar to the main line. 3 29...Rx6 loses to 30 Qg7+ Ke8 31 Qh8, mate. 4 30...Kf8 loses to 31 Qh8, mate, while 30...Kd8 loses to 31 Qf6+ Re7 32 Qxe7, mate.

280. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bxg7 Kxg71 19 Qh6+ Kg82 20 g6 fxg6 21 Rxg6+ hxg6 22 Qxg6+ Kf83 23 Qh6+ Kf7 24 Qh5+ Ke6 25 Rg1 Bf8 26 Qh4+ Kf7 27 Qh7+ Kf6. How does White win here?

1 18...bxc3 leads to a similar position after 19 g6 fxg6 20 Rxg6 hxg6 21 Qxg6, when White threatens 22 Bf6+ Kg8 23 Qg7, mate, and if 21...Bg5+ then 22 Qxg5 Re7 23 Rg1 wins (1-0). 2 19...Kh8 20 g6 fxg6 21 Rfx6 wins, e.g., a) 21...Bb8 22 Rg8+ Kxg8 23 Rg1+ Kh8 24 Qf6+, or b) 21...Rg8 22 Rfg1 Bd7 (this defends Black’s Rg8) 23 Rg7, when Black has to give up his Queen to prevent the mate on h7 (e.g., 23...Qxe4 24 Nxe4 Bxe4). 3 22...Kh8 loses to 23 Qh6+ Kg8 24 Rg1+ Kf7 25 Qg7, mate. 4 24...Kf8 loses to 25 Qf3+ Kg8 26 Rg1+ Kh7 27 Qh5, mate. 5 26...Ke5 loses to 27 Qf5+ Kd4 28 Rd1, mate.
CHAPTER 9. WHITE SACRIFICES TWO PIECES ON G6

This chapter contains exercises in which White sacrifices two pieces for three pawns on g6 in order to obtain a dominant Queen on g6 or some other positional advantage.

In Diagram 1, after the moves 1 Nxg6 fxg6 2 Bxg6 (see Diagram 2) Black can’t play 2...hxg6 because of 3 Qxg6+, mate, but other moves also lose, e.g., 2...Bf6 3 Qxh7, mate; 2...Rf6 3 Qxh7+ Kf8 4 Qh8, mate; or 2...Rf7 3 Bxf7+ Kf8 4 Be6, threatening 5 Qf7, mate, and if 4...Qe8 then 5 Qh6 is mate.

White can also sacrifice two pieces for three pawns and obtain a Queen on g6 using a different move order (see Diagram 3), e.g., 1 Nxh7 Kxh7 2 Qh5+ Kg8 3 Bxg6 fxg6 4 Qxg6+ (see Diagram 4). After 4...Kh8 5 Re4, White threatens 6 Rh4, mate, when 5...Qd8 defends h4 but loses to 6 Qh5+ Kg7 7 Rg4+ Qg5 8 Rxg5, mate.

Note that 2...Kg7 (instead of 2...Kg8 in Diagram 3) doesn’t change anything, as White obtains the same position after 3 Qh6+ Kg8 4 Bxg6 fxg6 5 Qxg6+.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. Black Responds to Qxg6+ with ...Kh8
2. Black Responds to Qxg6+ with ...Kf8
3. Black’s King is on g8
4. Miscellaneous Mates
5. Black Refuses to Take White’s Ng6
6. Black Refuses to Take White’s Bg6

These themes are illustrated using sixty-five preparatory positions, which are followed by twenty-four visualization exercises ranging in depth from seven to twenty-three ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply:</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Black Responds to Qxg6+ with ...Kh8

498 [VX-304]. Black can't stop 18 Qh7, mate.

499 [VX-303]. 26 Qh6 is mate.

500 [VX-284]. White is down two pieces for three pawns, but can repeat the position with 16 Qh6+ Kg8 17 Qg6+ Kh8 18 Qh6+ with a draw.

501 [VX-296]. 20 Qg7 is mate.

502 [VX-286]. White mates in two with 26 Bg7+ Kg8 27 Rh8, mate.

503 [VX-288]. White wins with either 22 Bg7+ Kg8 23 Bxf6+Bg7 24 Qxg7, mate, or 22 Bxf8 Qc7 (22...Rxf8 23 Qg7, mate) 23 Bg7+ Kg8 24 Bxf6+ Kf8 25 Qg8, mate.

504 [VX-300]. White wins with 25 Qh6+ Kg8 (25...Qh7 allows 26 Qxf8) 26 Rg4+ Kf7 27 Qh5+ Ke7 28 Rg7+ Kf7 29 Qxf7, mate.

505 [VX-292]. White wins with 19 Qh6+ Kg8 20 Nf6+ (1-0) Kf7 21 Qh7+, e.g., 21...Kf8 22 Qg8+ Ke7 23 Qe8, mate, or 21...Ke6 22 Qg8+ Kc6 (22...Ke7 23 Qe8, mate) 23 Qd5, mate.

506 [VX-300]. White had three pawns for the piece and can win another pawn with 26 Qxe6, since 26...Qxg5 drops the Queen to 27 Qh3+ Kg8 28 Rg4.
507 [VX-301]. White wins with 23 Be5, threatening 24 Rh3+, and if 23...Bc8 then 24 Rg3 wins, e.g., 24...Qf8 25 Qh5+, with mate next move.

508 [VX-300]. White wins with 26 Rh4+ Rh7 27 Bf4 Qd7 28 Be5 with 29 f7, mate. Note that 28...Qf7 loses to 29 Qxh7, when Black can't take back because his Rh7 is pinned.

509 [VX-290]. White wins with 26 Be5+, e.g., a) 26...Rf6 27 Rxf6 (White's threat is 28 Rf8, mate) Bxf6 28 Bxf6+ Ng7 29 Qxg7, mate; or b) 26...Bf6 27 Rxf6 (White's threat is 28 Rxf8, mate) Rxf6 28 Bxf6+ Ng7 29 Qxg7, mate.

510 [VX-289]. White wins with 16 Re4, threatening 18 Rh4, mate, and if 16...Bg4 then 17 Rxg4 threatens 18 Qg7/Rh6/Rh4, mate, forcing Black to give up his Queen with 17...Qxg4 18 Qxe7 22 Re7, with mate next move.

511 [VX-292]. White wins Black's Queen with 18 Rxf8+ Bxf8 19 Nf6 Qxf6 20 Qxf6+, when White is up a Queen and two pawns for three pieces and will win more material soon, e.g., 20...Bg7 21 Qd8+ with 22 Qc8 or 20...Kg8 21 Qg6+Bg7 22 Re1 Bd7 23 Re7, with mate next move.

512 [VX-301]. Black can defend with 22...Be4, when White is down two pieces for two pawns and his Queen is under attack. Now 23 Rxe4 Nxe4 24 Qxe4 leaves White down a Rook for two pawns, but can draw with 24 Qh6+ Kg8 25 Qg6+, etc.

513 [VX-293]. White wins with 14 Qh6+ Kg8 15 Qxe6+ Rf7 16 Bxe7 Qxe7 17 Qxe7 Rxe7 18 Nxd5, when White has four pawns for the piece and is attacking Black's Re7 and Pc7, leading to the win of Black's Ra8.

514 [VX-294]. White wins with 20 Qh6+ Kg8 21 Qxe6+ (1-0) Rf7 22 g6 (22 Nxd5 is also good) Bxb4 23 gxh7+ Nxf7 24 Nxd5, when White is up the exchange and two pawns.

515 [VX-304]. White wins with 19 Rh3 Qe7 20 Bg5, threatening 21 Rxe7, mate, and if 20...Qg7 then 21 Rfx4+, mate, and if 20...Qg7 then 21 Rfx4+, mate, and if 20...Qg7 then 21 Rfx4+, mate.
516 [VX-287]. White has several ways to win, e.g., a) 22 Bxd6, threatening 23 Be5, e.g., 22...Rf6/Qf6 23 Be5 wins; b) 22 Re5, threatening 23 Rh5, mate, e.g., 22...Bxe5 23 Bxe5+ wins; or c) 22 Be5+ Bxe5 23 Rx5, threatening 24 Rh5, mate, which Black can stop only by giving up his Queen with 23...Qd5.

517 [VX-301]. White wins with 23 Bxd6, threatening 23 Be5, and clearing the third rank for White's Re3, and if Black defends e5 with 23...Nd7 then 24 Rh3+ Kg8 25 Be5+ Rxh4 26 Bxh4, when White has a Queen and three pawns for a Rook and Knight.

518 [VX-291]. White has compensation for his piece after 22 Re5 (threatening 23 Rh5+) Bg7, followed by either piling up on Black's Bg7 with 23 Rh5+ Kg8 24 Be5 Qd7 25 Rh7 Re7 26 Bxg7 Rxg7 27 Rxg7+ Qxg7 28 Qxe6+ or by increasing the pressure with 23 Rae1 Qd7 (23...Bd7 24 Qf7 threatens 25 Rh5) 24 Rxe6 Rxe6 25 Rxe6, with three pawns for the piece.

519 [VX-299]. Black has stopped the threat of Rh3, mate, since 25 gxh3 loses to 25...Rg8, but White can win with 25 Rxh3 Bxf3 26 Qh6+ Kg8 27 Qxe6+ Kh8 28 Qg6, threatening 29 Bh6, mate, e.g., 28...Bd8 29 e6 Nb6 30 Bd4+ Be7 31 Qf7, mate, or 28...Bh4 29 e6 (now White's threat is 31 Qf7, mate) Nf6 30 Bd4+ Qe7 31 Qf7, mate.

520 [VX-299]. Black has stopped the threat of Rh3, mate, since both 25 gxh3 and 25 Rxh3 Rxh3 26 gxh3 lose to ...Rg8, but White can win with 25 Qh6+ Kg8 26 Qxe6+ Kh8 (26...Rf7 allows 27 Rxf3) 27 Qxe7, when White has four pawns for his piece and will win Black's Bf3, e.g., 27...Nb6 28 Qh4+ Qh7 (28...Kg8 29 Qg3+ Qf7 30 Rxh3) 30 Qxh7+ Kxh7 30 Rx3, when White is up four pawns.

521 [VX-302]. White wins with 23 d5 threatening 24 Bb2+, e.g., 23...Bxg5 24 Qh5+ (24 Bb2+ is also good, but not 24 Bxg5 because of 24...Qxg5+ 25 Qg5 Rg8) 24...Kg7 25 Bxg5 (1-0, 29) Nf6 26 Bh6 Bh6 gang up on Black's pinned Rf6) 26 Qh6+ Kf7 27 Re6, with a 3-2 advantage on f6.

2. Black Responds to Qxg6+ with ...Kf8

522 [VX-303]. 25 Bh6 is mate.

523 [VX-285]. 21 Rh8+ Ng8 22 Qxg8, mate.

524 [VX-298]. 25 Bxg7+ Qxg7 26 Qf5+ Kg8 27 Rg6 wins Black's Queen.
525 [VX-283]. 18...Kh8 drops the Queen to 19 Bxd6 while 18...Kf8 allows 19 Bh6, mate.

526 [VX-295]. White wins with 25 Qxg6+, e.g., a) 25...Bg7 26 Qxe6+ Kh7 27 Qxb6, when White is up a piece and two pawns or b) 25...Kf8 26 Qxf6+ Kg8 27 Qxe6+ Kh7 28 Nf5, when White is up a piece and two pawns and threatens 29 Qh6+ Kg8 30 Qg7, mate.

527 [VX-298]. White wins with 22 Rad1, threatening 23 dxc5 with 24 Bd6, mate, e.g., a) 22...Nb3 23 dxc5 Qe7 24 Bd6 wins Black's Queen or b) 22...Qe7 23 Bh6+ Bg7 24 Rxe6 Qc7 25 Bxg7+ Qxg7, when White can win Black's Queen with 26 Qf5+ Kg8 27 Rg6.

3. Black's King is on g8

528 [VX-282]. Black to move has to interpose his Knight with 19...Ng7, when White wins with 20 Qxg7, mate.

529 [VX-281]. If Black interposes on g7 with 21...Bg7 then 22 Rx6 wins back one of the pieces, giving White three pawns for his piece.

530 [VX-292]. 19 Nf6+ Rxf6 20 Rxf6 threatens 21 Qg5+ Kh7 22 Rh6, mate, and if 20...Qe5 then 21 Rg6+ wins, e.g., 21...Kf7 22 Qh7+ Ke8 23 Rg8+ Bf8 24 Rf1 Nd7 25 Qg6+ Kd8 26 Rgxh8+ Nxf8 27 Rxh8+ Kd7 28 Rf7+, when Black can stop mate only by giving up his Queen with 28...Qe7.

4. Miscellaneous Mates

531 [VX-297]. White wins with 16 Qxg6+ Kh8 17 Qh7, mate.

532 [VX-303]. White wins with 28 Qg4+ Kf7 (28...Kh7 29 Qh5+ Kg7 30 Rxe8 Qxe8 29 Qxb4 wins; see next diagram) 29 Rf3+ Ke7 30 Qg7, mate.

533 [VX-297]. White wins with either 20 Bh7+ Kf7 21 Qg6, mate, or 20 Be8/ Bh5+ Kf5 21 Qg6, mate.
534 [VX-304]. White wins with 19 Qh5+ Kg7 20 Rg3+ when 20...Kf6 21 Qg6 is mate and 20...Bg5 drops the Queen to 21 Rxg5+ Kf6 22 Qh6+ Ke7 23 Rg7+ Kf7 24 Rxf7+ Kxf7 25 Qxd6.

535 [VX-297]. White wins with 17 Qh7+ Kf7 18 Bg6+ Kf6 19 Qh6 (White's threat is 20 Bh7 mate) e5 with either 20 Bh7+ Kf7 21 Qg6, mate, or 20 Be8/Bh5 + Kf5 21 Qg6, mate.

536 [VX-303]. After 28 Rxe8 Qxe8 29 Qxh4 Qe1+ 30 Kh2, White is threatening to win Black's Queen with 31 Bh6+, and if 30...Kg8 White can break the pin with 31 Qg5+, e.g., a) 31...Kf8 32 Qf6+ Kg8 (32...Ke8 33 Qh8+ wins the Ra8) 33 Qg6+ Kh8 34 Bg5 or b) 31...Kf7 32 Qh5+ Kg8 (32...Kg7 33 Bh6+) 33 Qg6+ Kh8 34 Bg5, threatening 25 Bf6, mate.

5. Black Refuses to Take White's Ng6

537 [VX-282]. White wins with 18 Nxe7+ Qxe7 19 Bxf6 with 20 Qxh7, mate.

538 [VX-297]. White wins with 16 Qh8+ Kf7 17 Ne5, mate.

539 [VX-302]. White wins with 21 Nxe7+ Rxe7 22 Qxh7+ Kg8 23 Qh8, mate.

540 [VX-283]. White can win Black's Queen with 17 Nxe7+ Kf8 18 Qxh7+ Kxe7 19 Bg5+.

541 [VX-293]. White is up a piece and a pawn after 12 Ne7+ Kg7 13 Qxg5+ Kh8 14 Qh6 f5 15 Qxe6.

542 [VX-296]. White is up a pawn after either 18 Rxe8+ Qxe8 19 Bxg5 hxg6 or 18 Bxg5 Rxe1+ 19 Rxe1 Qxg5 20 Ne5.
543 [VX-301]. White wins with 20 Nxe7+, e.g., a) 20...Rx e7 21 Qxh7+ Kf8 22 Qh8, mate or b) 20...Kg7 21 Qxh7+ Kf6 22 Qh6, mate.

544 [VX-284]. White wins with 14 Nxe7+, e.g., 14...Rxe7 15 Qxh7+ Kf8 16 Qh8, mate, or 14...Kg7 15 Qxh7+ Kf6 16 Qh6, mate.

545 [VX-289]. Black has to take the Ng6, since 13...Re8 14 Ne7+ Rxe7 loses to 15 Qxh7+ Kf8 16 Qh8, mate and moves like 13...Qc7 and 13...Bg4 lose to 14 Ne7+ Bxe7 15 Qxh7, mate.

546 [VX-283]. White wins with 17 Nxe7+ Rxe7 18 Qxh7+ Kf8 19 Rad1 (19 Bh6+ Ke8 20 Qg8+ fails to 20...Kd7, discovering an attack on White's Qg8; 19 Rad1 prevents 20...Kd7) 19...Qf6 20 Bh6+ Ke8 21 Qg8, mate.

547 [VX-298]. Here 20 Ne7+ doesn't win after 20...Rx e7 21 Qxh7+, because Black controls h8, but after 20 Ne5 Black's Kingside position has been compromised and White will win Black's h-pawn.

548 [VX-294]. White wins with 18 Nxe7+ Kg8 19 Nxd5, when White is up a piece and two pawns and has a dominant position, since 19...Rx e7 loses to 20 Qh6+ Kg8 (20...Ke8 21 Nf6 is mate) 21 Qxh7+ Kf8 22 Qh8, mate.

549 [VX-297]. White wins with 16 Qh6+, e.g., 16...Kf6 17 Nh8, mate; 16...Kg8 17 Qh8+ Kf7 18 Ne5, mate; or 16...Kf7 17 Qh7+ Kf6 18 Bg5+ Kxg5 19 Ne5, threatening 20 Qg6+ Kf4 21 Qg3, mate or 20...Kh4 21 Nf3, mate.

550 [VX-287]. Refusing to take on g6 loses, e.g., 19...Bxf4 20 Ne7+ Kg7 21 Qxh7+ Kf6 22 Qf5+, and now: a) 22...Kxe7 23 Bxe6+ Kd6 (23...Be5 24 Qxe5, mate) 24 Qxf4, mate, or b) 22...Kg7 23 Qg4+ wins, e.g., b1) 23...Kf6 24 Qxf4+ Kg7 (24...Kxe7 25 Bxc6 is mate) 25 Qg5+ Kh8 26 Qh6, mate; or b2) 23...Kh8 24 Qxf4 with 25 Qh6+ Kg8 26 Qh7, mate.
6. Black Refuses to Take White’s Bg6

551 [VX-288]. White wins with 19 Bxf7+ Kh8 20 Bg7, mate.

552 [VX-301]. Defending against the threat of Qxh7, mate, with 20...Rf7 leaves Black down the exchange and a pawn after 21 Bxf7+.

553 [VX-282]. Defending against the threat of Qxh7, mate, with 18...Rf7 leaves Black down the exchange and a pawn after 19 Bxf7+ Kxf7 20 Qxh5+.

554 [VX-283]. If Black refuses to take White’s Bg6 with 17...Qxf4, defending f7, then White wins with 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Qh8, mate (1-0).

555 [VX-293]. Black has refused to take White’s Bg6 with 12...Rf7, but after 13 Bxf7+ Bxf7 14 Bxe7 Qxe7 15 Nxd5 White has a Rook and three pawns for two pieces (1-0, 26).

556 [VX-286]. White wins with 25 Bxh7+, e.g., a) 25...Kxh7 26 Bxf8+ Nh5 27 Rxh5 is mate or b) 25...Kf7 26 Qg7+ Ke8 27 Bg6+ Rf7 28 Bg5 Nd5 29 Qg8+ Kd7 30 Bx7, when White is up the exchange and three pawns.

557 [VX-287]. Black can refuse the Bg6 and play 20...Qc7, defending h7, but White is up three pawns after 21 Bxd6 hgx6 22 Qxg6+ Qg7 23 Qe6+ Qf7 24 Qxf7+ e.g., a) 24...Kxf7 25 Re7+ Kg8 26 Rxb7 or b) 24...Rxf7 25 Re8+ Kg7 26 Rxb8.

558 [VX-295]. White wins with 26 Bh7+, e.g., a) 26...Kh8 loses to 27 Rxe6, and if 27...fxe6 then 28 Bf5+ Kg8 29 Bxe6+ Kf8 30 Qf7 is mate, or b) 26...Kf8 27 Qxc5+ Ke8 28 Bg5 (1-0), threatening 29 Qe7, mate, when b1) 28...Nd5 loses to 29 Bd3 with 30 Bxb5+ and b2) 28...Rd7 29 Rxe6+ Kxe6 loses to 30 Bg6+ Rf7 31 Qe7, mate.

559 [VX-285]. Taking the Bishop with 19...fxe6 loses to 20 Qxe6+, but Black can defend with 19...Kf8, when White is down a piece for two pawns with no clear compensation, e.g., 20 Rh8+ allows 20...Kg7, attacking two pieces at once and forcing Black to trade Rooks on d8 so that he can then retreat his Bg6.
560 [VX-296]. 19 Rxe6 wins, e.g., a) 19...fxe6 20 Bh7+ Kh8 21 Bg7+ Kxg7 22 Qg6+ Kh8 23 Bg8 Rxe8 24 Qh6, mate; b) 19...fxg6 20 Qxg6+ Kh8 21 Qg7, mate; c) 19...Bf6 20 Rxe8+ Qxe8 21 Bh7+ or Be4 gives White two extra pawns; and d) 19...Qd5 20 Bxf7+ Kh8 (20...Kxf7 21 Qg6 is mate) 21 Bg7+ Kxg7 22 Qg6+ Kf8 (22...Kh8 23 Qh6, mate) 23 Qg8, mate.

561 [VX-281]. Giving back material with 20...Qd7 is relatively best, e.g., 21 Bxe8 Rxe8, when White has a Rook and two pawns for two pieces, but saving the Re8 with 20...Re7 loses to 21 Rx e6, e.g., a) 21...Rx e6 22 Qxh7+ Kf8 23 Qf7, mate; b) 21...Rg7 22 Re8 wins Black’s Queen; or c) 21...hxg6 22 Qxg6+ when c1) 22...Rg7 drops the Bf6 and c2) 22...Bg7 23 Bg5 wins Black’s pinned Rc7.

562 [VX-286]. Giving back material with 24...Rf7 is relatively best, e.g., 25 Bxf7+ Kxf7 (1-0, 30), when 26 Qg7 Ke8 accomplishes little, but White can play 26 Re1, threatening 27 Qg7+ Ke8 28 Rx e6+, etc, when a) 26...Qd7 loses to 27 Qg7+ Ke8 28 Qf8, mate; b) 26...Nxd4 27 Qg7+ wins Black’s Queen; c) 26...Qe7 covers f8 but creates a pin on the e-file and allows 27 d5, when play might continue 27...Nd4 28 d6 Qb7 29 Qg7+ Ke8 30 d7+ Nxd7 31 Qg8+ Ke7 32 Ne4, covering d6 and threatening 33 Bg5+ Nf6 34 Rhx7, mate.
281. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nxg6 fxg6¹ 20 Bxg6 hxg6² 21 Qxg6+ Bg7³ 22 Rxe6. What is the material balance?

¹ After 19...cxd4 20 Ne5, Black's Kingside position has been compromised and White will win Black's h-pawn. ² 20...Re7 loses to 21 Rxe6, e.g., a) 21...Rxe6 22 Qxh7+ Kf8 23 Qf7, mate; b) 21...Rg7 22 Re8+ wins Black's Queen; c) 21...hxg6 22 Qxg6+ and now: c1) 22...Rg7 23 Qxf6 nets White three pawns or c2) 22...Bg7 23 Bg5 wins Black's pinned Re7. ³ For 21...Kh8 and 21...Kf8, see exercises 291 and 298, respectively.

282. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxg6 fxg6¹ 18 Bxg6 hxg6² 19 Qxg6+ Ng7. How does White win here?

¹ 17...Ng6 loses to 18 Nxc7+, e.g., 18...Qxc7 19 Bxh6 with either 20 Bxh7 or 20 Qxh7, mate. ² After 18...Rf7 19 Bxf7+ Kxe7 20 Qxh5+ White is up the exchange and a pawn (1-0, 21).

283. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nxg6 hxg6¹ 17 Bxg6 fxg6² 18 Qxg6+ Kf8³. What is White's best move here? See the last footnote for a hint.

¹ 16...Qxd4 loses to 17 Nxc7+ Rxc7 18 Qxh7+ Kf8 19 Rad1 Qf6 20 Bh6+ Ke8 21 Qg8, mate, while after 16...Qd8 17 Nxc7+ Kf8 18 Qxh7+ Kxe7, White can win Black's Queen with 19 Bg5+. ² 17...Qxf4 loses to 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Qh8, mate (1-0). ³ 18...Kh8 drops the Queen to 19 Bxd6. ⁴ Hint: White can win Black's Queen, but White has something stronger as well.

284. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Qh5 g6¹ 13 Nxg6 fxg6² 14 Bxg6 hxg6 15 Qxg6+ Kh8. How does White guarantee the draw?

¹ After 12...h6 13 Bxh6 gxh6 14 Qxh6, White threatens 15 Qh7, mate, which also guarantees a draw, e.g., 14...f5 15 Qg6+ Kh8 16 Qh6+ Kg8 17 Qg6+. ² 13...Re8 loses to 14 Nxc7+, e.g., a) 14...Rxe7 15 Qxh7+ Kf8 16 Qh8, mate or b) 14...Kf8 15 Qxh7 Kxe7 16 Bg5+, winning Black's Queen.
285. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Nxg6 hxg6 19 Bxg6 fxg6 20 Qxg6+ Kh8. How does White mate in two?

1 18...fxg6 19 Bxg6 forces Black to take on g6, since refusing to do so drops the h-pawn. 2 19...Kg7 can be met by 20 Rg3 (1-0, 25), but after 19...Kh8 White is down a piece for two pawns with no clear compensation, e.g., 20 Rh8+ allows 20...Kg7, attacking two pieces at once.

286. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Nxg6 fxg6 24 Bxg6 hxg6 25 Qxg6+ Kh8. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 24...Rc7 loses to 25 Bxh7+, e.g., 25...Kxh7 26 Bxf8+ Nh5 27 Rxc7 mate or 25...Kf7 26 Qg7+ Ke8 27 Bg6+ Rf6 28 Bxg7 mate. 2 Better is 24...Qc7, defending h7, although after 21 Bh6 hxg6 22 Qxg6+ Qg7 23 Qe6+ Qf7 (1-0, 26) 24 Qxf7+ White will win another piece after either 24...Kxf7 25 Re7+ Kh8 26 Bxh6 or 24...Rxg7 25 Re8+ Kg7 26 Rxb8, when White is up three pawns.

287. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nxf6 fxg6 20 Bxg6 hxg6 21 Qxg6+ Kh8. How does White win?

1 19...Bxf4 loses to 20 Ne7+ (20 Nxf4 is also good) Kg7 21 Qxh7+ Kf6 22 Qf5+ Kxe7 23 Bxc6+, e.g., 23...Kd6 24 Qxf4, mate. 2 Better is 20...Qc7, defending h7, although after 21 Bh6 hxg6 22 Qxg6+ Qg7 23 Qe6+ Qf7 (1-0, 26) 24 Qxf7+ White will win another piece after either 24...Kxf7 25 Re7+ Kg8 26 Bxh6 or 24...Rxg7 25 Re8+ Kg7 26 Rxb8, when White is up three pawns.

288. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bxg6 fxg6 19 Nxf6 hxg6 20 Qd3 Nf4 21 Bxf4 Ne4 22 Nxe4. What is the material balance?

1 White’s threat is 19 Bxf7+ Kh8 20 Bg7, mate. 2 18...hxg6 19 Nxf6 fxg6 20 Qd3 transposes. 3 White’s threat is 21 Qe6+ Kh8 22 Qg7, mate. Black resigned here. 4 20...Bf8 loses to 21 Qxg6+ Kh8 22 Bg7+ Kg8 23 Bxf6+ Bg7 24 Qxg7, mate. The idea behind 20...Nf4 is to interpose a piece on e4, blocking the Queen’s access to g6. 5 21...Be4 22 Nxe4 is similar.
289. Visualize the position after the moves 13 \textit{N}xg6 \textit{fxg6} 14 \textit{B}xg6 hxg6 15 \textit{Q}xg6+ \textit{Kh8} 16 \textit{Re}e4 17 \textit{R}xg4\textsuperscript{1} \textit{Q}xg4 18 \textit{Q}xg4. What is the material balance?

\textsuperscript{1} Moves like 13...\textit{Q}c7 and 13...\textit{B}g4 lose to 14 \textit{N}e7+ \textit{B}xe7 15 \textit{Q}xh7, mate. 2 The threat of 17 \textit{Rh}4, mate, wins more material. Black resigned here. 3 Now the threat is 18 \textit{Q}g7, \textit{Q}h6, or \textit{Rh}4, mate.

290. Visualize the position after the moves 23 \textit{B}xg6 \textit{fxg6} 24 \textit{Nx}g6 hxg6 25 \textit{Q}xg6+ \textit{Kh8} 26 \textit{Be}5+. How does White win after the moves 26...\textit{Ng}7, 26...\textit{B}f6 and 26...\textit{R}f6?

\textsuperscript{1} 23...\textit{N}xf4 drops a pawn to 24 \textit{B}xf7 \textit{Kh8} 25 \textit{Q}xf4. 2 24...\textit{N}xf4 drops a pawn to 25 \textit{N}xe7+ \textit{Kh8} 26 \textit{R}xf4 (1-0, 28), when 27...\textit{R}xc2 isn't possible because of 27 \textit{R}xf8, mate. 3 25...\textit{Ng}7 drops the Queen to 26 \textit{Q}x\textit{b}6.

291. Visualize the position after the moves 19 \textit{Nx}g6 \textit{fxg6} 20 \textit{B}xg6 hxg6 21 \textit{Q}xg6+ \textit{Kh8} 22 \textit{Re}5\textsuperscript{4} \textit{B}g7 23 \textit{Rae}1\textsuperscript{5} \textit{Q}d7 24 \textit{Rx}e6 \textit{Rx}e6 25 \textit{R}xe6. What is the material balance?

\textsuperscript{1} For 19...\textit{c}xd4 see exercise 281. \textsuperscript{2} 20...\textit{Re}7 loses to 21 \textit{Rx}e6 (see exercise 281). \textsuperscript{3} For 21...\textit{B}g7 and 21...\textit{K}f8, see exercises 281 and 298, respectively. \textsuperscript{4} The threatens 23 \textit{Rh}5+ and gives White compensation for the piece. \textsuperscript{5} White can play on Black’s pinned \textit{B}g7 with 23 \textit{R}h5+ \textit{K}g8 24 \textit{Be}5 \textit{Q}d7 25 \textit{Rh}7 \textit{Re}7 26 \textit{B}xg7 \textit{Rx}g7 27 \textit{Rx}g7+ \textit{Q}xg7 28 \textit{Q}x\textit{e}6+, when White has three pawns for the piece. \textsuperscript{6} 23...\textit{B}d7 loses to 24 \textit{Q}f7, controlling g8 and threatening 25 \textit{Rh}5, mate.

292. White is down a pawn and his \textit{N}f4 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 14 \textit{Nx}g6 \textit{fxg6} 15 \textit{B}xg6 hxg6 16 \textit{Q}xg6+ \textit{Kh8} 17 \textit{Nd}5\textsuperscript{1} \textit{Q}e5\textsuperscript{2} 18 \textit{R}x\textit{f}8+ \textit{B}x\textit{f}8 19 \textit{N}f6 \textit{Q}x\textit{f}6 20 \textit{Q}x\textit{f}6+. What is the material balance?

\textsuperscript{1} 17 \textit{R}x\textit{f}8+ \textit{B}x\textit{f}8 18 \textit{Nd}5 allows 18...\textit{Q}h6, when the position is about even after 19 \textit{Q}x\textit{h}6+ \textit{B}x\textit{h}6 20 \textit{N}x\textit{c}7 \textit{B}f5 21 \textit{c}3 and 22 \textit{N}ax\textit{h}8, when White has a Rook and three pawns for two pieces, with connected passed pawns on the Kingside and a healthy queenside pawn majority.

\textsuperscript{2} Alternatives: a) 17...\textit{Q}e\textit{f}8 loses to 18 \textit{Q}h\textit{f}6+ \textit{K}g\textit{f}8 19 \textit{N}f\textit{f}6; b) 17...\textit{R}x\textit{f}1+ 18 \textit{R}x\textit{f}1 (White’s threat is 19 \textit{N}f\textit{f}6 with mate next move) \textit{Q}e\textit{f}2 19 \textit{Q}h\textit{f}6+ \textit{K}g\textit{f}8 20 \textit{N}f\textit{f}6 (1-0) \textit{K}f\textit{f}7 21 \textit{Q}h\textit{f}7+ and now: a) 21...\textit{K}f\textit{f}8 22 \textit{Q}g\textit{f}8+ \textit{K}e\textit{f}7 23 \textit{Q}e\textit{f}8, mate or b) 21...\textit{K}e\textit{f}6 22 \textit{Q}g\textit{f}8+ \textit{K}e\textit{f}5 23 \textit{Q}d\textit{f}5, mate.
293. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Nxg6 fxg612 Bxg6 hxg613 Qxg6+ Kh8 14 Qh6+ Kg8 15 Qxe6+ Rf7 16 Bxe7 Qxe7 17 Qxe7 Rxe7 18 Nxd5. What is the material balance and what is White's threat?

1 After 11...Bxg5 12 Ne7+ Kg7 13 Q xg5+ Kh8 14 Qh6, White threatens 15 Qxh7, mate, when 14...f5 15 Qxe6 gives White an extra piece and a pawn. 2 12...Rf7 13 Bxf7+ Bxf7 14 Bxe7 Qxe7 15 Nxd5 Qd6 gives White a Rook and three pawns for two pieces (1-0, 26).

294. Black's Be6 will be weak as soon as Black's f-pawn moves. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxg6 hxg618 Bxg6 fxg6 19 Qxg6+ Kh8 20 Qh6+ Kg8 21 Qxe6+ Rf7 22 Qg6+ Bxh4 23 gx7 f7+ Nxf7 24 Nxd5. What is the material balance?

1 White's threat is 18 Nxe7+ with 19 Qxh7, mate, and if 17...Re8 then after 18 Nxe7+ Kf8 19 Ncxd5 White is up a piece and two pawns and has a dominant position, since 19...Rxe7 loses to 20 Qh6+ Kg8 (20...Ke8 21 Nf6 is mate) 21 Qh8+ Kf8 22 Qh8, mate. 2 Other moves drop the Be7 as a minimum. 3 22 Nxd5 is also good.

295. Visualize the position after the moves 20 e5 Nxe51 21 Nxe5 Rd82 22 Qh5 g63 23 Nxe6 hxg6 24 Bxg6 fxg6 25 Qxg6+ Bg75 26 Qxe6+ Kh7 27 Qxb6. What is the material balance?

1 Relatively best is 20...Rd8, when White is up a pawn after 21 Bxh7+ Kxh7 22 Qe2+ Kg8 23 exf6. 2 21...Bxe5 loses to 22 Qh5 f5 23 Nxf5 Bxf5 24 Bxh5, when White is up a Rook after 24...g6 25 Be6+ Rf7 26 Bxe7+ Kxe7 27 Qxe5. 3 22...h6 can be met by 23 N3g4 when 23...Nd5 loses to 24 Bxh6, e.g., 24...gxh6 25 Nxf7 Bxf7 26 Nhx+ with 27 Qh7+ to follow. 4 24...Qa5 25 Nc2 Bg7 (25...fxg6 26 Qxg6+ Bg7 27 Qxe6+ gives White two pawns and an attack with 28 Re4/Re7) 26 Bh7+ Kf8 27 Qxc5+ Ke8 28 Bg5 (1-0). 5 25...Kf8 drops the Bf6 and more.

296. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxe5 hxe5 18 Bxg6 Be62 19 Rxe6 fxe6 20 Bh7+ Kh8 21 Bg7+ Kxg7 22 Qg6+ Kh8. How does White mate in two?

1 White is up a pawn after 17...Bg5, e.g., 18 Rxe8+ Qxe8 19 Bxg6 hxg6 or 18 Bxg5 Rxe1+ 19 Rxe1 Qxg5 20 Ne5. 2 18...fxg6 loses to 19 Qxg6+ Kh8 20 Qg7, mate. 3 a) 19...fxg6 loses to 20 Qxg6+ Kh8 21 Qg7, mate; b) 19...Bb6 20 Rxe8+ Qxe8 21 Bh7+ Kh8 22 Be4 nets White two pawns; c) 19...Qd5 loses to 20 Bx7+ Kh8 (20...Kxf7 21 Qg6 is mate) 21 Kg7+ Kxg7 22 Qg6+ Kf8 (22...Kh8 23 Qh6, mate) 23 Qg8, mate. 4 20 Bh7+ also wins, e.g., 20...Kxf7 21 Qh7+ Kf6 22 Qg7+ Kg5 23 Re1 (1-0).
297. Visualize the position after the moves 13 N×h7 K×h7 14 Qh5+ Kg8 15 N×g6 fxg6 16 Q×g6+ Ng7 17 Qh7+ Kf7 18 Bg6+ Kf6 19 Qh6. How does White mate in two?

1. 14...Kg7 loses to 15 N×g6, e.g., 15...fxg6 16 Q×g6+ Kh8 17 Qh7+, mate, or 15...f5 16 Qh6+ Kf8 18 Bh5+ Kg8 19 Ne5, threatening 20 Qg6+ Kf4 21 Qh7, mate or 20...Kh4 21 Nf3, mate. White's threat is 16 Qh8, mate. 2. 15...f5 loses to 16 Qh8+ Kf7 17 Ne5, mate (1-0).

298. Visualize the position after the moves 19 N×g6 fxg6 20 B×g6 hxg6 21 Q×g6+ Kf8 22 Rad1 Qe7 23 Bh6+ Bg7 24 Rxe6 Qc7 25 B×g7+ Qxg7. What is the material balance?

1. After 19...cx4 20 Ne5 Black's Kingside position has been compromised and White will win Black's h-pawn. 2. 20...Rxf8 loses to 21 Rxe6 (see exercise 281). 3. For 21...Bg7 and 21...Kh8, see exercises 281 and 291, respectively. 4. 22...Bb3 23 d×c5 Qe7 24 Bb6 wins Black's Queen.

299. Visualize the position after the moves 20 N×h7 K×h7 21 Qh5+ Kg8 22 B×g6 fxg6 23 Q×g6+ Kh8 24 Re3 Rf3 25 R×f3 Bxf3 26 Qh6+ Kg8 27 Qxe6+ Kf8 28 gxf3. What is the material balance?

1. 20...Rh8 21 Ng5 concedes the pawn. 2. 24...Bxe3 loses to 25 Rg3. 3. While after 24...Bf3 25 Qh6+ (25 gxf3 loses to 25...Rg8) Kg8 26 Qxe6+ Kh8 (26...Rf7 drops the Bf3) 27 Qxe7 White has four pawns for his piece and will soon win Black's Bf3, e.g., 27...N×f6 28 Qh4+ Qg7 29 Q×g7+ Kf6 30 Rxf3. 2. 24...Bxe3 loses to 25 Qh6+ Kg8 26 B×g6 transposes. 3. 24 Qh6+ is also possible (1-0, 31), but 24 Qh5+ Kg8 25 Bh6 gives Black the advantage after 25...Be5 26 B×f8 R×f8 27 R×g7 28 Qf7 29 Q×h7, mate. 4. Alternatives: a) 24...Bh4 loses to 25 R×h4+ Q×h7 26 Q×f7, mate; b) 24...Bd8 25 Qh6+ Kg8 (25...Q×h7 drops the Rf8) 26 Q×g4+ Kf7 27 Qh7+ Ke7 28 Qg7+ Qf7 29 Qf7, mate; and c) 24...Bb6 25 exf6 Rf7 loses to 26 Rh4+ Rh7 27 B×f4 Q×f7 28 B×g5 with 29 f7, mate, since blocking the pawn with 28...Q×f7 simply drops the Queen to 29 Q×f7, since Black's Rh7 is pinned.

300. Visualize the position after the moves 20 N×h7 K×h7 21 Qh5+ Kg8 22 B×g6 fxg6 23 Q×g6+ Kh8 24 Rd4 Bg7 25 B×g5 Qg7 26 Qxe6. What is the material balance and how does White win after 26...Q×g5?

1. 20...Rfd8 nets White a pawn. 2. 21...Kg7 22 Qh6+ Kg8 23 B×g6 transposes. 3. 24 Qh6+ is also possible (1-0, 31), but 24 Qh5+ Kg8 25 Bh6 gives Black the advantage after 25...Be5 26 B×f8 R×f8 27 R×g7 28 Q×h7, mate. 4. Alternatives: a) 24...Bh4 loses to 25 R×h4+ Q×h7 26 Q×f7, mate; b) 24...Bd8 25 Qh6+ Kg8 (25...Q×h7 drops the Rf8) 26 Q×g4+ Kf7 27 Qh7+ Ke7 28 Qg7+ Qf7 29 Qf7, mate; and c) 24...Bb6 25 exf6 Rf7 loses to 26 Rh4+ Rh7 27 B×f4 Q×f7 28 B×g5 with 29 f7, mate, since blocking the pawn with 28...Q×f7 simply drops the Queen to 29 Q×f7, since Black's Rh7 is pinned.
301. Two of White's pieces are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nxg6 fxg6 20 Bxg6 hxg6 21 Qxg6+ Kh8 22 Re3 Bg5 23 Bxd6 Nd7 24 Rh3+ Bh4 25 Bg3 Qf6 26 Rxe4+ Qxe4 27 Bxh4. What is the material balance?

1 19...Re8 loses to 20 Nxe7+, e.g., 20...Rxe7 21 Qxh7+ Kf8 22 Qh8, mate. 2 20...Kh7 21 Qxh7+ Kf6 22 Qh6, mate. 3 Better is 22...Be4, although White can draw with 23 Rx e4 Nxe4 24 Qxe6; 22...Rf6 can be met by 23 Be5, threatening 24 Bxe7+ and if 23...Bc8 then 24 Rg3 wins, e.g., 24...Qf8 25 Qh5+, mating. 4 This threatens 23 Be5+ and clears the third rank for White's Re3. 5 This defends e5. 6 Black resigned here. 25 g3 drops the Queen to 25...Qf6 26 Rxh4+ Qxh4 27 gxh4 Rg8.

302. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nxg6 fxg6 21 Bxg6 hxg6 22 Qxg6+ Kh8 23 d5 Bxg5 24 Qh5+ Kg7 25 Bxg5 Nf6 26 Qh6+ Kf7 27 Re6 Kg8 28 Bxf6 Rxf6 29 Rxf6. What is the material balance?

1 20...Re8 loses to 21 Nxe7+ Rxe7 22 Qxh7+ Kf8 23 Qh8, mate. 2 White's threat is 24 Bb2+, mating. 3 24 Bb2+ is also good, when 24...Bf6 loses to 25 Re4 and 24...Rf6 25 Qh5+ Kg7 26 Qxg5+ Kf7 27 Re6 wins. Note that 24 Bxg5 can be met by 24...Qxg5 25 Qxg5 Rg8, when White has a Rook and two pawns for two pieces after 26 h4 Rg5+ 27 hxg5. 4 25...Rf6 allows 26 Re6, ganging up on Black's pinned Rook. 5 This gives White a 3-2 advantage on f6.

303. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Nxh7 Kxh7 22 Qh5+ Kg8 23 Bxg6 fxg6 24 Qxg6+ Kh8 25 Re3 Bf5 26 Qxf5 Bh4 27 Qh5+ Kg8 28 Qg4+ Kf7 29 Rf3+ Ke7. How does White mate in one?

1 After 21...Bb7 White gets his Knight out with 22 Ng5 Bxg5 23 Rxe8+ Qxe8 24 Bxg5, but that drops the d-pawn to 24...Qe5, but White defend his d-pawn with 22 Qf3 first, then play Ng5. 2 22...Kg7 23 Qh6+ Kg8 24 Bxg6 transposes. 3 24...Kf8 25 Bh6 is mate. 4 White's threat is 26 Rg3, mating. 5 25...Rg8 26 Qh6 is mate, while 25...Bh4 drops a Rook to 26 Rxe8+. 26...Bh5 adds an extra defender to the Re8. 6 27...Kg7 loses to 28 Rxe8 Qxe8 29 Qxh4, since after 29...Qe1+ 30 Kh2 White is threatening to win Black's Queen with 31 Bh6+, and if 30...Kg8 then 31 Qg5+ break the pin. 7 28...Kf7 29 Qh5+ Kg7 transposes to 27...Kg7.

304. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Nxh7 Kxh7 15 Qh5+ Kg8 16 Bxg6 fxg6 17 Qxg6+ Kh8 18 Re3 Bh4 19 Rh3 Qe7 20 Bg5 Qg7 21 Rxe4+ Kg8 22 Qxg7+ Kxg7 23 Bh6+ Kg8 24 Bxf6 Rxf6 25 Qxd6. What is the material balance and how does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 14...Rd8 can be met by 15 Qf3, when 15...Kxh7 loses to 16 Qxf7+ Kh8 17 Qxg6, when Black can't stop 18 Qh7, mate. 2 15...Kg7 16 Qh6+ Kg8 17 Bxg6 transposes. 3 18...e5 loses to 19 Qh5+ Kg7 20 Rh3+ when 20...Kf6 21 Qg6 is mate and 20...Bg5, creating an escape square on e7, drops the Queen to 21 Rxe5+ Kf6 22 Qh6+ Ke7 23 Rg7+ Rf7 24 Rxh7+ Kxg7 25 Qxd6. 4 Hint: White can win the exchange with 24 Bxf8, but look for something better.
CHESS VISUALIZATION COURSE
SECTION 3. SACRIFICES ON h7

This section contains exercises in which White sacrifices a piece for a Black pawn on h7. It includes the following chapters:

**CHAPTER 10. WHITE PLAYS 1 NxH7 (BLACK PAWN ON G6)**  
**CHAPTER 11. WHITE PLAYS 1 NxH7 (NO BLACK PAWN ON G6)**  
**CHAPTER 12. THE SEQUENCE 1 BxH7+ AND 2 NxF7**  
**CHAPTER 13. THE SEQUENCE 1 BxH7+ KxH7 2 Qh5+ Kg8 3 Qxf7+**  
**CHAPTER 14. THE SEQUENCE 1 BxH7+ KxH7 2 Qxf7**  
**CHAPTER 15. THE SEQUENCE 1 RxH7 KxH7 2 Qxf7**

**CHAPTER 10, WHITE PLAYS 1 NxH7 (BLACK PAWN ON G6),** contains exercises in which White plays 1 Nxh7 when Black has a pawn on g6.

**CHAPTER 11, WHITE PLAYS 1 NxH7 (NO BLACK PAWN ON G6),** contains exercises in which White plays Nxh7 when Black doesn’t have a pawn on g6.

**CHAPTER 12, THE SEQUENCE 1 BxH7+ AND 2 NxF7,** contains exercises involving the sequence 1 Bxh7+ followed by 2 Nxf7.

**CHAPTER 13, THE SEQUENCE 1 BxH7+ KxH7 2 Qh5+ Kg8 3 Qxf7+,** contains exercises involving the sequence 1 Bh7+ Kxh7 2 Qh5+ Kg8 3 Qxf7+, when White has sacrificed a piece for two pawns, but has obtained a dominant Queen on f7 that forces Black’s King to the open h-file.

**CHAPTER 14, THE SEQUENCE 1 BxH7+ KxH7 2 Qxf7,** contains exercises involving the sequence 1 Bh7+ Kxh7 2 Qxf7, when White has sacrificed a piece for two pawns, but has obtained a dominant Queen on f7 that opposes Black's King on h7.

**CHAPTER 15, THE SEQUENCE 1 RxH7 KxH7 2 Qxf7,** contains exercises involving the sequence 1 Rh7 Kxh7 2 Qxf7, when White has sacrificed a Rook for a pawn, but has obtained a dominant Queen on f7 that opposes Black's King on h7.
This chapter contains exercises in which White plays 1 Nxh7 when Black has a pawn on g6.

In Diagram 1, after the moves 1 Nxh7 Kxh7 (1...Bg7 drops a second pawn to 2 Qxg6), White wins with 2 Qxg6+ Kh8 3 Qh7, mate.

Diagram 2 shows the same idea but with an extra move, e.g., 1 Nxh7 Kxh7 (1...Rf7 Ng5 just concedes the pawn) 2 Qh5+ Kg7 3 Qxg6+ Kh8 4 Qh7, mate.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. The Idea of Qg7, Mate
2. The Idea of Qh7, Mate
3. Black Bg7 vs White Bg6 and Qh5
4. Black Bg7 vs White Bg6
5. King Hunts
6. Miscellaneous Mates
7. Miscellaneous Tactics
8. Black Refuses to Take the Nh7

These themes are illustrated using ninety-three preparatory positions, which are followed by forty visualization exercises ranging in depth from five to twenty-three ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply:</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17+</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. The Idea of Qg7, Mate

563 [VX-322]. White wins with 23 Qg5+ Kf7/Kh7 24 Qg7, mate.

564 [VX-321]. White wins with 19 Bf6 Kf8 20 Qh8+ Ng8 21 Qg7, mate.

565 [VX-329]. White wins with 22 Bh6 Rf7 23 Re8+ Rf8 24 Qxg7, mate.

566 [VX-322]. White wins with 24 Bf7+ Kxf7 25 Qg7, mate.

567 [VX-322]. White wins with 24 Bh5+ Kh7 25 Qg7, mate.

568 [VX-322]. White wins with 24 Bh5+ Kxh7/Kf8 Qg7, mate. The double check is the strongest move, but 24 Bh5+ and Bf5/Be4/Bd3 etc also win.

2. The Idea of Qh7, Mate

569 [VX-306]. White wins with 22 Qxg6+ Kh8 23 Qh7, mate.

570 [VX-307]. White wins with 19 Qxg6+ Kh8 20 Qh7, mate.

571 [VX-334]. White wins with 20 Rh8+ Kxh8 21 Qh7, mate.
572 [VX-311]. White wins with 22 Qxg6+ Kh8 23 Qh7, mate.

573 [VX-309]. White wins with 21 Qh5+ Kg8 22 Qxg6+ Kh8 23 Qh7, mate.

574 [VX-334]. White wins with 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Qh7, mate.

575 [VX-342]. White wins with 18 Qh6+ Kg8 19 Qh7, mate.

576 [VX-312]. White wins with 20 Ng5+ Kg8 (20...Kh6 21 Qh3, mate) 21 Qh3 Nf6 22 exf6+ Bxf6 23 Qh7, mate.

577 [VX-313]. White wins with 14 Ng5+ Kg8 (14...Kh6 15 Qh4, mate) 15 Qh4 Nf6 16 exf6 Bxf6 17 Qh7, mate.

578 [VX-324]. White wins with 15 Qh5, threatening mate on h7, when the only way that Black can avoid mate is by giving up his Rf7 and Ne8, e.g., 15...Rf7 16 gxf7+ Kf8 17 fxe8=Q+ Qxe8.

579 [VX-318]. 17 Ng5 wins after 17... Nf6 18 exf6, e.g., 18...Bxf6 19 Qh7, mate; 18...e5 19 Qh7, mate; or 18...Rd8 19 fxg7 Nxd3 20 Qh8/Qh7, mate, but Black can prevent mate by clearing the 7th rank with 17... Bh6 18 Qxh6 f6 19 Qxg6+ Qg7, although Black is two pawns down after 20 exf6 Nxf6.
3. Black Bg7 vs White Bg6 and Qh5

580 [VX-325]. White wins with 18 Bf7+ Kf8 19 e6, e.g., 19...Bxe6 20 Bxe6 with 21 Qf7, mate, or 19...Qd6 20 Qh7 with 21 Qg8, mate.

581 [VX-326]. White wins with 18 Bf7+ Kf8 19 e6, e.g., 19...Bxe6 20 Bxe6 with 21 Qf7, mate or 19...Qd6 20 Qh7 Bxe6 21 Qg8, mate.

582 [VX-326]. White wins with 18 Bxf7+ Kf8 19 e6 Bxe6 20 Bxe6 Qe8 21 Qh7, threatening 22 Qg8, mate, which Black can avoid only by giving up his Queen with 21...Qf7.

4. Black Bg7 vs White Bg6

583 [VX-343]. 26 Qh8 is mate. Note that the e7 square is blocked.

584 [VX-332]. 23 Qh8 is mate. Note that the e7 square is blocked.

585 [VX-339]. White wins with 15 Qh7+ Kf8 16 Bh6, threatening both 17 Qxg7 and 17 Qh8, mate.

586 [VX-341]. White wins with 22 f6, threatening 23 Qxg7, mate, e.g., 22...Bxf6 23 Qf7/Bh6 is mate.

587 [VX-343]. White wins with 24 Bxc5+, e.g., 24...Qe7 25 Rxf6+ Bxf6 26 Qf7, mate.

588 [VX-328]. White wins with 19 Rxf6+ Ke7 20 Qxg7+ Kd6 21 Bf4, mate.
589 [VX-343]. White wins with either 26 Rae1, threatening 27 Qh8, mate, or 26 Rxf6+ Ke7 27 Qxg7+ Kd8 28 Rf8, mate.

590 [VX-343]. White wins with 24 Rxf6+, e.g., 24...Bxf6 25 Bh6+ Kg7 26 Qxg7, mate, or 24...Ke7 25 Qxg7+ Kd8 26 Rf8+ Ne8 27 Rxe8, mate.

591 [VX-332]. White wins with 23 Rxf6, e.g., 23...Rxf6 24 Qxg7, mate; 23...Bxh6 24 Qxf7, mate; or 23...Ke8 24 Rxf7, winning a Rook with multiple threats.

592 [VX-344]. White wins with 17 Bh6, threatening both 18 Qxg7 and 18 Qh8, mate, e.g., 17...Bxh6 18 Qf7, mate, or 17...e6 18 Qh8+ Ke7 19 Qxg7, mate.

593 [VX-328]. White wins with 17 Bh6, threatening both 18 Qxg7 and 18 Qh8, mate, when 17...e6 defends the Bg7, but loses to 18 Qh8+ Ke7 19 Qxg7, mate.

594 [VX-341]. 19 Bh6 can be met by 19...Qe6, but 19 f6 wins, for example, 19...Nxh6 20 Bxh6, threatening 21 Qxg7, mate, e.g., 20...Qe7/Re7 21 Qh8, mate, or 20...Qd7 21 Rxf6+ Ke7 22 Rf7+ wins Black's Queen.

595 [VX-319]. White wins with 21 Rfx6+ Ke7 22 Qxh7+ Ke8 23 Rg8, mate.

596 [VX-334]. White wins with 21 Qh7+ Kf7 22 Bg6+ Kg6 23 Ne4, mate.

597 [VX-337]. White wins with 20 Bh6 Re7 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Qh8+ Kf7 23 Qxg7+ Ke8 24 Qf8, mate.
598 [VX-342]. White can take Black's Qf8 or mate with 23 Qg6+ Ke5 24 Bf4+, e.g., 24...Kd4 25 0-0-0+ Ke4 26 Bd5, mate, or 24...Ke4 25 Bd5+ Kd4 26 0-0-0+, mate.

599 [VX-336]. White wins with 17 Qh7+ Kf7 18 Bg6+ Kf6 19 Qh6, threatening 20 Bg5/Qg5, mate, when 19...e5 loses to either 20 Bh7+ Kf7 21 Qg6, mate, or 20 Bh5+ Kf5 21 Qg6, mate.

600 [VX-335]. White wins with 17 Qxg6+ Bg7 18 Qh7+ Kf7 19 Bg6+ Ke7 (19...Kf6 20 Bg5 is mate) and either 20 Qxg7+ or 20 Bh5+, when White has three pawns and an attack.

6. Miscellaneous Mates

601 [VX-342]. White wins with 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Bh6/Qh8, mate.

602 [VX-330]. White wins with 22 Qh3+ Kf7 23 Qh7+ Kf8 24 Bh6/Qh8, mate.

603 [VX-320]. White wins with 18 Qxg6+ Kh8 19 Rf7 and 20 Qxh7/Qg7, mate.

604 [VX-317]. White wins with 17 Qd2 Rfc8 18 Qh6 and 19 Qh8, mate.

605 [VX-336]. White wins with 16 Qh8+ Kf7 17 Ne5, mate.

606 [VX-334]. White wins with 18 Qh5+ Kf6 19 Qxf5, mate.
607 [VX-335]. White wins with 18 Bh7+ Kh8 19 Bg6+ Kg8 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Qxf7, mate.

608 [VX-335]. White wins with 20 Qg6 Rg8 21 Nf7, mate. Note that 20 Nf7+ can be met by 20...Kh7.

609 [VX-338]. White wins with 20 Qh6+ Kg8 21 Nh5, threatening Qg7, mate, and if 21...gxh5 then 22 Qh7 is mate.

610 [VX-331]. White wins with 22 Qxg6+ Kh8 23 Qg7/Qh6/Qh5/ Rh5, mate.

611 [VX-331]. White wins with 20 Qxg6+ Kh8 21 Qg7/Qh6/Qh5/ Rh5, mate.

612 [VX-319]. White wins with 21 Rxg6+ fxg6 22 Qxg6+ Kh8 21 Qxh7/Rxh7, mate.

613 [VX-333]. White wins with 22 Bg5, threatening 23 Qh8, mate, and if 22...f6 then 23 Bh6 is mate.

614 [VX-314]. White wins with 21 Rxg6+ fxg6 22 Qxg6+ Kh8 23 Qxh7/Rxh7, mate.

615 [VX-320]. White wins with 17 Rh3, threatening 18 Qh8, mate, when 17...Nh5 loses to 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Qxf7, mate.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Diagram</th>
<th>Diagram</th>
<th>Diagram</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image2.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image3.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image4.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image5.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image6.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image7.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image8.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image9.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image10.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image11.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image12.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image13.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image14.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image15.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image16.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image17.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
<td><img src="image18.png" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

616 [VX-337]. White wins with 19 Qxg6+ Kg8 20 Qxf6+, e.g., 20...Ng8 21 Bh6 Re7 22 Qf8, mate, or 20...Kf7 21 Bh6+ Kg8 22 Qg7, mate.

617 [VX-327]. White wins with 20 Be5+, e.g., 20...Kf7 21 Qh7+ Kg8 22 Qxg7, mate, or 20...Kg8 21 Bh6+ Kg7 22 Qg7, mate.

618 [VX-333]. White wins with either 22 Qh8+ Ke7 23 Bg5+ f6 24 Qxf6, mate, or 22 Bg5, threatening Qh8, mate, when 22...f6 loses to 23 Bh6+ Qg7 24 Qxg7, mate.

619 [VX-315]. White wins with 23 Rc3, e.g., 23...Qf8 24 Rh3 Qh6 25 Qxh6+ Kg8 26 Qh8/Qg7, mate or 23...Ng8 24 Rh3+ Nh6 25 Qxh6+ Kg8 26 Qh8/Qg7, mate.

620 [VX-331]. White wins with 20 Qxg6+ Kf8 21 Bxf6, threatening both 22 Qg8, mate and 22 Bxd8 with 23 Qxf7, mate, and if 21...Rxh6 22 Qxf6+ Ke8 then 23 0-0 gives White a strong attack.

621 [VX-329]. White wins with 22 Bxf6 Qxf6 23 Re8+ Qf8 and either 24 Rxh8+ Kxh8 25 Re1 with 26 Re8, mate, or 24 Rae1, intending 25 Rxh8+ Kxh8 26 Re8, mate.

622 [VX-316]. White wins with 21 Rxf7, removing a defender of g6 and putting Black's Rook on f7, which will prevent Black's King from escaping. 21...Rxg7 22 Qxg6+ Kg8 23 Qh7+ Kf8 24 Qh8, mate.

623 [VX-342]. White wins with 17 Bh6+, e.g., 17...Kf6 18 Qg5, mate; 17...Kg8 18 Qg6+ Kh8 19 Qg7, mate; or 17...Kh7/Kh8 18 Bxf8+ Kg8 19 Qxf7+ Kh8 20 Qg7/Qg8/Qh5, mate.

624 [VX-330]. White wins with 22 Bxe8+ Kf8 23 Bxd7, when 23...Nxd7 drops the Qc7; 23...Qxd7 loses to 24 Bh6+ Ke8 25 Qg8+Bf8 26 Qxf8, mate; and not taking the Bd7 leaves Black down a Rook and a pawn.
625 [VX-335]. White wins with 17 Qh8+ Kf7 18 Ne5+ fxe5 (18...Ke8 19 Bg6 is mate) 19 Qh5+, e.g., 19...Kf6 20 Qg6, mate; 19...Kg8 20 Qh7, mate; or 19...Kg7 20 Qg6+ Kh8 21 Qh7, mate.

626 [VX-338]. White wins with 21 Qxg6+ Kh8 22 Nh5, threatening 23 Qg7, mate, when 22...Rg8 23 Qh6 is mate, and 22...Qe7 23 Rxf8+ Qxf8 loses to 24 Nf6, e.g., 24...Qg7 25 Qh5+ Qh7 26 Qxh7, mate.

627 [VX-336]. White wins with 16 Qh6+, e.g., a) 16...Kf6 17 Ne5, mate; b) 16...Kg8 17 Qh8+ Kf7 18 Ne5, mate, or c) 16...Kf7 17 Qh7+ Kf6 18 Bg5+ Kxg5 19 Ne5, threatening 20 Qg6+, e.g., 20...Kf4 21 Qg3, mate, or 20...Kh4 21 Nf3, mate.

7. Miscellaneous Tactics

628 [VX-335]. White wins with 16 Bxg6+, e.g., 16...fxg6 17 Qxg6+ Kh8 18 Qg7/Nf7, mate; 16...Kg8 17 Bxh7+ Kh8 18 Bg7+ Kxg7 19 Qg6+ Kh8 20 Qh6+ Nh7 21 Ng6, mate; or 16...Kh8 17 Nxf7+ Kg8 18 Bh7+ Kxh7 19 Ng5+ Kh8 20 Qg6 Rg8 21 Nf7, mate.

629 [VX-342]. White wins with 19 Qg6+ Kh8 (19...Kf8 20 Qxf7, mate) 20 Bxh7 (White's threat is 21 Qh6, mate) Qf8 21 Qh5+ Kg7 22 Bh6+, winning Black's Queen, unless White wants to mate in four -- 22...Kf6 23 Qg6+ Ke5 24 Bf4+ and now: 24...Ke4 25 Bd5+ Kd4 26 0-0-0, mate, or 24...Kd4 25 0-0-0+ Ke4 26 Bd5/f3, mate.

630 [VX-327]. White wins material with 19 Bxg6 (threatening 20 Qh7, mate) fxg6 20 Qxg6+, winning Black's Re8.

631 [VX-323]. White wins with 22 Qxg6+ Qg7 (22...Bg7 23 Qh7 is mate) 23 Rxh8+ Kxh8 24 Bh6, winning Black's Queen.

632 [VX-305]. White is down a piece for a pawn, but wins back the piece with 20 Qxg6+ Kf8 21 Rxf7, when White is up two pawns.
633 [VX-308]. White is down a piece for a pawn, but now wins two pieces with 14 Qxh5, when there's no way to save the Bh6, e.g., 14...Kg8/Kg7 15 Qxh6.

634 [VX-322]. White is down a piece for two pawns, but wins material with 24 Bxe8+ Qg7 (24...Kf8 25 Qxf6+) 25 Bxc6 bxc6 26 Qxf6, when White is up a Rook and two pawns.

635 [VX-340]. After 13 Bh6 Rxg6, White should avoid winning Black's Qd8 with 14 Qh8+ Kf7 15 Qxd8, since after 15...Rxh6 16 Qxc7 Rh8 White's Queen gets trapped after 17...Na6 and 18...Nxc7. Better is simply 14 Qxg6, when White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces.

8. Black Refuses to Take the Nh7

636 [VX-319]. 20 Nf6 is mate.

637 [VX-322]. White wins with 22 Qh6 with Qg7, mate.

638 [VX-317]. White wins with 16 Qxg6, intending 17 h6 and 18 Qxg7.

639 [VX-311]. White wins material with 21 Bxg6.

640 [VX-311]. White wins the exchange with 21 Bg5 Rf7 22 Bxg6.

641 [VX-320]. The count on f6 is 2-2, but White can add another attacker with 18 Nxf6+ Nxf6 19 Qxg6+ Qg7 20 Qxf6.
642 [VX-342]. White wins Black's Qd8 with 15 Ng5 Bxg5 16 Bxg5, since 16...Qc7 loses to 17 Bf6 and 18 Qg7/Qh8, mate.

643 [VX-307]. White wins with 19 Qxg6+ Kh8 20 Ng5, threatening 21 f7 and 22 Qh7, mate, e.g., 20...b6 21 f7 with 22 Qh7, mate, or 20...Nf7 21 Qh7, mate.

644 [VX-333]. White wins with 19 Nh5+ fxg5 20 Nxg5+, when Black has to give up his Queen on g5, since moving the King allows mate, e.g., 20...Ke7 21 Qg7, mate, or 20...Kg8 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Qf7, mate.

645 [VX-329]. White wins Black's Queen with 20 Nxf6+, e.g., 20...Qxf6 21 Re8+ Qf8 22 Rxf8+ or 20...Kf8 21 Qh8+ Kh7 22 Qxd8.

646 [VX-322]. White is up two pawns and now wins Black's Bc4 with 23 Nxf8 Rxf8 24 Qxg6+ Kh8 25 Qh5+ Kg8 26 Qg4+ Kh8 27 Qxe4.

647 [VX-306]. White wins with 22 Qxg6 Rg8 23 Qh6, threatening 24 Nf6/Ng5/Nf8, mate, and if 23...Rg2+ 24 Kxg2 Ne3+ 25 Kg1 Nf5, attacking White's Queen, then 26 Bxf5 exf5 27 Nf6 is mate.

648 [VX-321]. White wins with 18 Nxd5, e.g., 18...Bxd5 19 Nf6+ Kh8 20 Bf8, mate or 18...Qa5 19 Nhf6+ Kh8 20 Bf8, mate.

649 [VX-312]. White wins with 21 Rxd7, e.g., 21...Qxd7 22 Ne6+, winning Black's Queen or 21...Rxd7 22 Ne6+ Bxf6 23 Nxf6+ Kf8 24 Qh8+ Ke7 25 Qxe8, mate.

650 [VX-312]. White wins with 20 Rxd7, e.g., 20...Qxd7 21 Nhf6+ Bxf6 22 Nxf6+ Kg7 23 Nxd7 axb3, with a Queen for a Rook, or 20...Qb8 21 Nxf8 axb3 22 Nxf6 fxg6, with the exchange and a pawn.
651 [VX-310]. White wins material with 18 Bxg6, e.g., 18...Rg7 Bxe8 Rxe7, when White is up two pawns, or 18...Rhx7 19 Bxh7+ Kxh7 20 Qh5+ with 21 Qxe8, when White is up the exchange and two pawns.

652 [VX-323]. White wins with 21 Nf6+, when 21...Kf7 22 Nxd5+ wins Black's Queen; 21...Kh8 loses to 22 Qh3+ Kg7 23 Qh7, mate; and 21...Kg7 loses to 22 Bh6+ Kxh6 23 Qh3+, e.g., 23...Kg7 24 Qh7, mate, or 23...Kg5 24 Qe3+ Kh4 25 Qg3/Qf4, mate.

653 [VX-330]. White wins with 21 Nxe5 fxg5 22 Bxg5, e.g., 22...Rad8 23 Bf6+ Kf8 24 Qg7, mate; 22...Kh8 23 Qh4+ Kg7 24 Qh7, mate; or 22...Bxg5 23 Qxg5+, and now: 23...Khl 24 Qh6+ Kg8 25 Qh7, mate, or 23...Ng6 24 Qxg6+ Kh8 25 Qh7, mate.

654 [VX-311]. White wins with 21 Bxg6 Ng7 22 Nf6+ Kf8 (22...Kh8 23 Qd2 with 24 Qh6, mate) 23 Qf3, when 23...Ke7 drops the Queen to 24 Ne4+ and 23...Ne7 loses to 24 Nxd5+, e.g., 24...Nef5 25 Be7+, winning Black's Queen, or 24...Kg8 25 Nxe7+ Kh8 26 Qe3 with 27 Qh6, mate.

655 [VX-338]. White wins with 19 Nf6+ Kg7 (19...Kh8 loses to 20 Rxf5 gx5 21 Qh5+ Kg7 22 Qh7, mate) 20 Nxf5+, e.g., a) 20...gx5 21 Bh6+ and now: a1) 21...Kxh6 22 Qh5+ Kg7 23 Qh7, mate; a2) 21...Kg6 22 Qh5, mate; a3) 21...Kh8 22 Qh5 with 23 Bxf8, mate; or b) 20...Kh8 21 Qg4, threatening 22 Qh4, mate, when 21...gx5 loses to 22 Qh5+ Kg7 23 Qh7/Qh6, mate.
305. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nxh7 Nh7 20 Qxg6+\(^1\) Kh8 21 Rxh7. What is the material balance.

\(^1\) White has a 3-2 advantage on h7. Black resigned here.

306. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Nxh7\(^R\) Kxh7\(^1\) 22 Qxg6+ Kh8. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 21...Kh8 loses to 22 Qxg6 Rg8 23 Qh6, threatening 24 Nf6/Ng5/Nf8, mate, and if 23...Rxg2+ 24 Kxg2 Ne3+ 25 Kg1 Nf5 attacking White's Queen, then 26 Bxf5 exf5 27 Nf6 is mate.

307. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Nxh7\(^R\) Kxh7\(^1\). How does White win here?

\(^1\) 18...Nd6 loses to 19 Qxg6+ Kh8 20 Ng5, threatening 21 f7 and 22 Qh7, mate.

308. White gives up a piece to win two. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Nxh7 Kxh7\(^1\) 14 Qxh5\(^2\) Kg8 15 Qxh6. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) Refusing the sacrifice is better, e.g., 13...Bxc1 14 Rxc1 Qh4, defending the Nh5, when 15 g3 can be met by 15...Nxg3 16 fxg3 Qxh7, when material is even. \(^2\) There's no way to save the Bh6.
309. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nxa7 Kxa7 21 Qxa7+ Rxa7. How does White win here?

1 20...Rf7 21 Ng5 Rg7, when White is up a pawn.

310. Black has just played 16...f6, attacking White's Ng5. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxa7 Kxa7 18 Qxa7+ Kg7. How does White win here?

1 White is up two pawns after 17...Rf7 18 Bxg6, e.g., 18...Rf7 19 Bxe8 Rxe8. Worse is 18...Rxh7 19 Bxh7+ Kxh7 20 Qh5+ and 21 Qxe8, when White is up the exchange and two pawns.

311. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nxa7 Kxa7 21 Qxa7+ Rxa7. How does White win here?

1 20...Rf7 and 20...Rf8 21 Bxg6 drops the Nh5 or Rf7/e8, as does 20...Rf4 21 Bg5 Rf7 22 Bxg6, while 20...Rd8 21 Bxg6 Ng7 22 Nxf6+ gives White a strong attack, e.g., 22...Kh8 23 Qd2 with 24 Qh6, mate or 22...Kh8 23 Qf3 Ne7 24 Nxd5+ when 24...Nxf5 25 Be7+ wins Black's Queen and 24...Kg8 loses to 25 Nxc7+ Kh8 26 Qc3 with 27 Qh6, mate.

312. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nxa7 Kxa7 20 Qxa7+ Kg8. How does White win here?

1 19...Rf8 20 Qh3 Rf8 loses to 21 Rxd7, e.g., 21...Qxd7 22 Nxf6+ Bxh6 Nxf6+ wins Black's Queen or 21...Rxd7 22 Nxf6+ Bxh6 23 Nxf6+ Kg8 24 Qh8+ Ke7 25 Qxe8, mate; 19...bxa4 drops the exchange to 20 Rxd7 (1-0), e.g., 20...Rb8 20...Qxd7 drops the Queen to 21 Nhf6+ Bxf6 22 Nxf6+ with 23 Rxd7 21 Nxf8 axb3 22 Nxe6 fxe6, when White is up the exchange and a pawn. 2 20...Kh6 21 Qh3 is mate.
313. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Nxh7 Kxh7 14 Ng5+ Kg8 15 Qh4 Nf6 16 exf6 Bxf6. How does White win here?

1 Other moves just drops the exchange (1-0, 17). 2 14...Kh6 15 Qh4 is mate.

314. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nxh7 R Nh7 16 Qh5 Kg7 21 Rxg6+ fxg6. How does White win here?

1 Moving the Rook drops the Nf6. 2 20...Nf6 21 Qh8 is mate.

315. White is already up a piece. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Nxh7 Kxh7 23 Rc3 1 Ng8 24 Rh3+ Nh6. How does White win here?

1 Mate in unavoidable. 23 Qe3, intending 24 Qh6-g7, mate, can be met by 23...Qf8. 2 23...Qf8 loses to 24 Rh3+, e.g., 24...Qh6 25 Qxh6+ Kg8 26 Qh8/Qg7, mate.

316. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nxh7 R Nh7 21 Rxf7 Qxg6+ Kg8. How does White mate in two?

1 20...Rfd8 21 c3 White is up a pawn. 2 This removes a defender of g6 and puts Black's Rook on f7, where it will prevent Black's King from escaping.
317. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nxh7 Kxh7\(^1\) 16 hgx6+ Kg8 17 Qd2 Rfc8 18 Qh6 Bd8. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 15...Rfe8 loses to 16 Qxg6 with 17 h6, while other moves drop the exchange, e.g., 15...fxe5 16 Nxf8 Rxf8 (1-0, 19).

318. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nxh7 Kxh7\(^1\) 16 Qh4+ Kg8 17 Ng5 Nf6\(^2\) 18 exf6 Bxf6\(^3\). How does White win here?

\(^1\) Otherwise White is up the exchange and a pawn (1-0, 20). \(^2\) Black can prevent mate by clearing the 7th rank, e.g., 17...Bh6 18 Qxh6 f6 19 Qxf6+ Qg7, although Black is down two pawns after, for example, 20 exf6 Nxf6 21 Qxg7 Kxg7. \(^3\) White’s threat is 19 Qh7, mate, and if 18...Rd8 then 19 fxg7 with 20 Qh8 is mate.

319. White is down two pawns and his Rd1 and Bf1 are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nhx7 Nh7\(^1\) 20 hxg6 fxg6\(^2\) 21 Rxf6+ Kf7. How does White mate in two?

\(^1\) 19...Nf5 20 Nf6 is mate (1-0). \(^2\) 20...Rd7 loses to 21 gxh7+ Kh8 22 Qg7, mate.

320. Visualize the position after the moves 16 fxg6 fxg6\(^1\) 17 Nhx7 Nh7\(^2\) 18 Qxg6+ Kh8. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 16...hxg6 loses to 17 Rh3, e.g., 17...Nh5 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Qxf7, mate. \(^2\) 17...Qe7 (Re7) 18 Nxf6+ Nxf6 19 Qxg6+ Qg7 (Rg7) 20 Qxf6 gives White a piece and two pawns.
321. Black is up two pawns and has a strong center, but his kingside is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nnxh71 Kxh72 18 Bg5+ Kg8 19 Bf6 Kf8. How does White mate in two?

1 White’s threat is 18 Nf6+ Kh8 19 Bf8, mate. 2 17...f6 drops at least the exchange to 18 Nxf6+ (1-0, 22), while 17...Nd5 loses to 18 Nxd5 Bxd5 (moving the Queen loses to 19 Nhf6+ Kh8 20 Bf8, mate) 19 Nf6+ Kh8 20 Bf8, mate.

322. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Nnxh7 Kxh71 22 Bxg6+R Kg82 23 Qg5 Nxf63 24 Bxe8+ Qg7 25 Bxc6. What is the material balance?

1 21...Bf7, to defend the g-pawn, loses to 22 Qh6 with 23 Qg7, mate, while 21...Bc4 drops the Bishop to 22 Qh6 Nf8 23 Nxf8 Rxg8 24 Qxg6+ Kh8 25 Qh5+ Kg8 26 Qg5+ Kh8 27 Qxc4. 2 22...Kxg6 loses to 23 Qg5+ Kf7 24 Qg7, mate. 3 This allows Black’s Queen to come to the aid of Black’s King via the 7th rank. Other moves lose, e.g., 23...Rf8 24 Bh5+ Kh7 25 Qg7, mate; 23...Nf8 24 Bf7+ Kxf7 25 Qg7, mate; 23...Bf7 24 Bh7+ Kf8 (24...Kxh7 25 Qg7, mate) 25 Qg7, mate.

323. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nnxh7 Kxh71 21 Qh5+ Kg8 22 Qxg6+ Qg72 23 Rxg8+ Kxg8. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 20...cxd3 loses to 21 Nf6+ (1-0), e.g., a) 21...Kf7 22 Nxd5+ wins Black’s Queen; b) 21...Kh8 loses to 22 Qh3+ Kg7 23 Qh7, mate; c) 21...Kg7 22 Bh6+ Kxh6 23 Qh3+ and now: c1) 23...Kg7 24 Qh7, mate or c2) 23...Kg5 24 Qe3+ Kh4 25 Qg3/Qf4, mate. 2 22...Bg7 23 Qh7 is mate. 1 Hint: White can win Black’s Queen.

324. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Nnxh7 Kxh71 14 fxg6+ Kg8 15 Qh5 Rf7 16 gxh6+ Kh7 17 fxg7+ Kg8 18 Bg6. What is the material balance?

1 13...gx5 drops the Rf8 (1-0, 16).
325. Black has just played 14...f6, attacking White's Ng5. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nxh7 Kxh7 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17 Bxg62 Rd83 18 Bf7+ Kf8 19 e6 Rq6 20 Qh7 Bxe6. How does White win here?

1 White two pawns after 15...Rd8 16 Bxg6 and the attack continues. 2 White's threat is 18 Qh7, mate. 3 Black can defend h7 by giving up his Bg7 with 17...Bh6 18 Qxh6 e6, but then White is up two pawns and can bring his Rook into play with 19 Rf3.

326. Black has just played 14...f6, attacking White's Ng5. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nxh7 Kxh7 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17 Bxg6 Rf82 18 Bf7+ Kf8 19 e6 Qd6 20 Qh7 Bxe6. How does White win here?

1 16...Bh6 loses to 17 Qxg6+ Kh8 18 Qh7, mate. 2 17...Rf7 loses to 18 Bxf7+, e.g., 18...Kf8 19 e6 Bxe6 20 Bxe6 Qe8 21 Qh7, when the only way that Black can avoid 22 Qg8, mate, is by giving up his Queen with 21...Qf7. 3 18 Bxe8 gives White the exchange and two pawns, but the text move is better.

327. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nhx7 Kxh71 17 Qxh5+ Kg72 18 Nxg6 Nxg6 19 Bxg6 fxg6 20 Be5+ Kf73. How does White mate in two?

1 16...Bg7 concedes the pawn (1-0, 21). 2 17...Kg8 18 Nxg6 Nxg6 19 Bxg6 fxg6 20 Qxg6+ drops the Re8. 3 This secures e5 for White's Bishop and threatens 20 Qh7+ Kf6 21 Qxf7, mate. 4 20...Kg8 loses to 21 Qxg6+Bg7 22 Qxg7, mate.

328. Black has just played 12...f6, attacking White's Ng5. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Nhx7 Kxh71 14 Qh4+ Kg8 15 Bxg6 Rd8 16 Qh7+ Kf8 17 Bh6 e6. How does White mate in two?

1 13...Rd8 14 Bxg6 leaves Black down two pawns. 2 White's threat is 16 Qh7, mate. 3 White threatens both 18 Qxg7 and 18 Qh8, mate. 4 This defends the Bg7. 17...Bxb6 loses to 18 Qf7, mate.
329. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Nxh7 Kxh7 19 Qh6+ Kg8 20 Qxg6+ Bg7 21 Bg5 Rf6 22 Bxf6 Qxf6. How does White win here?

1 18...Rf7 19 Qh6 Rg7 saves the g-pawn, but drops the Queen to 20 Nx6, e.g., 20...Qxf6 21 Re8+ Qf8 22 Rxf8+ or 20...Kf8 21 Kh7 22 Qxg8. 2 21...Qa5 loses to 22 Bh6, e.g., 22...Rf7 23 Re8+ Rf8 24 Qxg7, mate.

1 18...Rf7 19 Qh6 Rg7 saves the g-pawn, but drops the Queen to 20 Nx6, e.g., 20...Qxf6 21 Re8+ Qf8 22 Rxf8+ or 20...Kf8 21 Kh7 22 Qxg8. 2 21...Qa5 loses to 22 Bh6, e.g., 22...Rf7 23 Re8+ Rf8 24 Qxg7, mate.

330. Black is up a pawn and has just played 19...f6, attacking White's Ng5. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nxh7 Kxh7 21 Bxg6+ Kg7 22 Bxc8+ Kf8 23 Bxd7 Qxd7 24 Bxf6+ Ke8. How does White mate in two?

1 20...g5 loses to 21 Nxg5 fxg5 22 Bxg5 (1-0), e.g., 22...Nxd3 23 Qxc7; 22...Rad8 23 Bf6+ Kf8 24 Qg7, mate; or 22...Bxg5 23 Qxg5+, and now: 23...Kh8 24 Qh6+ Kg8 25 Qh7, mate, or 23...Ng6 24 Qxg6+ Kh8 25 Qh7, mate. 2 21...Ng5 drops the Qc7, while 21...Kh8 loses to 22 Bh6+ Kg7 23 Kh7+ Kf8 24 Bh6, mate. 23...Nxd7 drops the Qc7.

331. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nxe7 Kxh7 17 Rh6+ Kg7 18 Be5+ f6 19 Rg5 Bf5 20 Qxf5 Qc1+ 21 Ke2 Qxh1. How does White win here?

1 16...Be8 drops the exchange to 17 Nf6+. 2 19...Be7 loses to 20 Qxg6+ Kh8 21 Rh5/Qg5/Qh5, mate, while 19...Re7 gives White a strong attack after 20 Qxg6+ Kf8 21 Bxf6 (White threatens both 22 Qg8, mate and 22 Bxd8 with 23 Qxf7, mate) Rxg6 22 Qxf6 Ke8 23 0-0, etc.

1 16...Be8 drops the exchange to 17 Nf6+. 2 19...Be7 loses to 20 Qxg6+ Kh8 21 Rh5/Qg5/Qh5, mate, while 19...Re7 gives White a strong attack after 20 Qxg6+ Kf8 21 Bxf6 (White threatens both 22 Qg8, mate and 22 Bxd8 with 23 Qxf7, mate) Rxg6 22 Qxf6 Ke8 23 0-0, etc.

332. Black has just played 17...f6. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Nxe7 Kxh7 19 Qh6+ Kg8 20 Bxg6 Rf7 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Bh6 e6 23 Rxf6+. How does White win after 23...Rxh6, 23...Be6, or 23...Ke8?

1 White's threat is 23 Qh8, mate. Black resigned here. 2 23...Bxh6 24 Qh8 is mate, while 23...Ke8 drops the Bh7 to 23 Qxg7. 3 This move creates multiple threats, e.g., 24 Qh8+/Qg7+ Ke7 25 Rxh7, mate or 24 Rxh7+ Ke8 25 Rxg7+ Kf8 26 Rd7, mate.
333. White is down the exchange. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxe7 Kxe7 18 Qh6+ Kg8 19 Ng5 Bf6 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Ne3 Qd7. How does White mate in three?

1 Other moves also lose, e.g., 17...f6 18 Qh6 Kf7 19 Ng5+ (1-0) Be5 20 Nxf6 wins Black's Queen since moving the King allows mate, e.g., 20...Ke7 21 Ne5 Bxe5 22 Bg5, mate. 2 White's threat is 22 Bxe6+ Ke7 23 Bg4+ winning Black's Queen. 3 21...Ke7 22 Bg5+ wins Black's Queen, as does 21...b5 22 Bh6+ Ke7 23 Bg5+, while 21...Qc8 22 Bg5 Qc8 loses to 23 Qh8, threatening 24 Qg8, mate, and if 22...f6 then 23 Bh6 is mate.

![Diagram C71](image)

334. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nxe7 Kxe7 17 hxg6+ Kg8 18 Rf8+ Bxh8 19 Qg5 Bxg6 20 Qxg6+ Bf7 21 Qh7+ Kf6. How does White mate in one?

1 Better is 16...Re8 17 hxg6, when White is up a pawn. 2 17...Kxg6 loses to 18 Qh5+ Kf6 19 Qxf5, mate. 3 18 Qh5 Bxg6 loses to 19 Qxg6 Rf6 20 Rh8+ (1-0) Kxe8 21 Qh7, mate, but 18...Re8 19 Bxg5 cxd5 is not as clear. 4 18...Qf6 loses to 19 Bxg5 Qf6 20 Rh8+ (1-0) Kxe8 21 Qh7, mate.

![Diagram B04](image)

335. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Nxf6 Kxf6 14 Qh7+ Kg8 15 Qxh6 Bf5 16 Nxe6 fxg6 17 Qxg6+ Bh7 18 Qh7+ Kf6. How does White win here?

1 13...Nf5 drops the Rf8 (1-0, 20), while 13...Re8 loses to 14 Bxh6, e.g., 14...Kxh6 15 Qh5 Ng6 16 Bxg6+ and now: a) 16...fxg6 17 fxg6 Nf5 18 Qg7/Nf7, mate, or b) 16...Kxg6 17 Qxg6+ Kh8 18 Qg7/Nf7, mate. 2 White's threat is 16 Nxe6+ fxg6 17 Qxg6+ Kh8 18 Qxh7, mate. 3 15...Bd7 loses to 16 Nxe6, e.g., a) 16...f5 17 Qxh6+ Kh8 18 Qxh7, mate, or b) 16...f6 17 Qxh6+ Kh7 18 Ne5+ Nf6 19 Qg7+ Ke6 (18...Kf6 19 Qg6 is mate) 19 Qxh7+ and now: b1) 19...Kf6 17 Qg6+, mate; b2) 19...Kg8 18 Qh7, mate; b3) 19...Ke7 18 Nf3, mate. 4 White's threat is 20 Bxg5/Qg5, mate.

![Diagram B17](image)

336. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Nxf6 Kxf6 14 Qh7+ Kg8 15 Nxe6 fxg6 16 Qxg6+ Bf7 17 Ne5+ Ke7 18 Qh8+ Kf7 19 Qg7 Kf6 20 Qh6+ Ke7. How does White mate in two?

1 14...Kf7 loses to 15 Nxe6, e.g., 15...fxg6 16 Qxg6+ Kh8 17 Qh7, mate, or 15...f5 16 Qh6+ and now: 16...Kf6 17 Ne5, mate; 16...Kg8 17 Qh8+ Kf7 18 Ne5, mate; or 16...Kf7 17 Qh7+ Kf6 18 Bg5+ Kxg5 19 Ne5, threatening 20 Qg6+ Kf4 21 Qg3, mate, or 20...Kh4 21 Ne3, mate. 2 White's threat is 16 Qh8, mate. 3 15...f5 loses to 16 Qh8+ Kf7 17 Ne5, mate (1-0). 4 White's threat is 20 Bg5/Qg5, mate.
337. Black has just played 15...g6, attacking White's Nh5. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nxf6+ Bxf6 17 Nhx7 Kxh7
18 Qh5+ Kg8 19 Qxg6+ Bg7 20 Bh6 Re7 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Qh8+ Kg7. How does White win here?

1 White is up two pawns after 17...Bg7 18 Bxg6. 2 18...Kg7 loses to 19 Qxg6+ Kf8 20 Qxf6+, e.g., 20...Kg8
21 Bh6 Re7 22 Qf8, mate, or 20...Nf7 21 Bh6+ Kg8 22 Qg7, mate. 3 19...Kh8 20 Qh7 is mate, while
19...Kf8 loses to 20 Qxf6+, e.g., 20...Nf7 21 Bh6+ Kg8 22 Qg7, mate, or 20...Kg8 21 Bh6 Re7 22 Qf8, mate. 4 21...Kf7 is similar to the game continuation after 21...Kf8 22 Qh8+ Kf7.

338. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Nhx7 Kxh7 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Bxg6 fxg6 21 Qxg6+ Kh8 22 Nh5 Qc7 23 Rxf8+ Qxf8 24 Nf6 Qg7. How does White win here?

1 18...Bxf5 loses to 19 Nf6+ Kg7 (19...Kh8 loses to 20 Rxf5, e.g., 20...gxf5 21 Qh5+ Kh7 22 Qh7, mate) 20 Nxf5+, e.g., a) 20...gxf5
21 Bh6+ (1-0) and now: a1) 21...Kxh6 22 Qh5+ Kg7 23 Qh7, mate; a2) 21...Kh8 22 Qh5+ Kg7 23 Qh7, mate; a3) 21...Kg6 22 Qh5 with 23 Bxh6, mate; or b) 20...Kh8 21 Qg4, threatening 22 Qb4, mate, when 21...gxf5 loses to 22 Qh5+ Kg7 23 Qh7/Qh6, mate. 18...gxf5 is similar to 18...Bxf5 after 19 Nf6+ Kg7 20 Bh6+, 2 19...Kg7 loses to 20 Qh6+ Kg8 21 Nh5, e.g., 21...gxf5 22 Qh7, mate or 21...gxh5 22 Qg7, mate. 3 22...Rg8 23 Qh6 is mate.

339. Black has just played 11...f6. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Nhx7 Nf4 13 Bxf4 Kxh7 14 Qh5+ Kg8 15 Bxg6 Qa5+ 16 c3 Rd8 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Bh6 Qxe5+ 19 Kf1 f5. How does White win here?

1 Other moves just drop the exchange, while 12...Kxh7 loses to 13 Qh5+ Kg8 14 Bxg6, threatening 15 Qh7, mate, e.g., a) 14...Re8 15 Qh7+ Kf8 16 Bh6 Bxh6 17 Qf7/Qh8, mate, or b) 14...Rf7 15 Bxh6+ Kf8 16 c6, when White is up the exchange and two pawns. 2 White is down a Rook after 13...fxe5 14 Nxf8, e.g., 14...exf4 15 Ne6 or 14...Kxf8 15 Bg5. 3 White can also play 15 Qxg6 Qa5+ 16 c3 but not 16 b4 (1-0), which lets Black defend after 16...Qxb4+ 17 Bd2 Qg4/ Qh4. 2 After 16 Bh6 17 Qxh6 Rf7 18 Bxh6+ Kxh6 White is up a Rook and two pawns. 4 18...Bxh6 loses to either 19 Qh8 or Qf7, mate.

340. Visualize the position after the moves 9 Nhx7 Kxh7 10 Qh5+ Kg8 11 Bxg6 Rf6 12 Qh7+ Kf8 13 Bh6 Rxg6 14 Qh8+ Kf7 15 Qxd8 Rxh6 16 Qxc7 Rh8 17 Na3. What is the material balance and how does Black win here?

1 Best. 2 Better is 14 Qxg6 Bxh6 15 Qxh6+ Ke8, when White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces (1-0, 18).
341. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Nxe7 Kxe7 15 Qh5+ Kg8 16 Bxf6 17 f5 18 Bxg6 19 f6 Nxf6 20 Bh6 3 Qd6. What is the material balance and how can White win Black’s Queen here?

1 White's threat is 17 Qh7+ Kg8 18 f5 with 19 f6, putting pressure on Black's pinned Bg7. The only way to support f6, since 16...Rf8 loses to 17 Qh7, mate. Taking on e8 net White only a Rook and two pawns for two pieces. 2 17...fxe5 loses to 18 Qh7+ Kg8 19 Bxh7, threatening 23 Qxg7, mate, and if 22...Bxe5 then 23 Bxh6 is mate. 3 White's main threat is 21 Qxg7, mate. Black resigned here. 4 20...Qe7 21 Qh8 is mate. 5 White's threat is 21 Qxg7, mate. Black resigned here. 6 20...Qe7 21 Qh8 is mate, as are 20...Re7 21 Qh8 and 20...d4 21 Qxg7.

342. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Nxe7 Kxe7 14 Qh6+ Kg8 15 Qxg6+ Kh8 16 Qh6+ Kg8 17 Be4 f5 18 Bxf7 19 Qg6+ Kh8 20 Bxf7 21 Qh5+ Kg7. How does White win here?

1 13...Re8 loses to 14 Qh6, e.g., 14...Ne5 15 Ng5 Bxg5 16 Bxg5 (1-0, 19), winning Black's Queen since 16...Qc7 loses to 17 Bf6 with 18 Qg7/Qh8, mate. 2 16...Kg7 loses to 17 Bh6+, e.g., a) 17...Kg8 18 Qg5, mate; b) 17...Kf6 18 Qg6+ Kg8 19 Qg7, mate; or c) 17...Kf6 18 Bxf8+ Kg8 19 Qf7, mate. 3 White's threat is 18 Qh7, mate. 4 17...Kg7 loses to 18 Qh6+ Kg8 19 Qh7, mate, while 17...Re8 loses to 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Bh6/Qh8, mate. 5 19...Kf8 20 Qxf7 is mate. 6 White's threat is 21 Qh6, mate.

343. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Nxe7 Kxe7 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Bxf6 21 Qh6+ Kf8 22 Be3 d4 23 fxe5 Nxe5 24 exf6 Nxf6 25 Bh6 3 Qd7 26 Rac1 2 Be4. How does White win here?

1 White's threat is 21 Qh7, mate. 2 This threatens 23 Bxe5+ and lets White connect his Rooks with tempo before playing e5. 3 Not only attacking White's Be3, but opening up d5 for the Queen. 22...Qe7 gives Black an overworked Queen, e.g., 23 fxe5 Qxe5 24 Bxe5+, when 24...Qe7 loses to 25 Rxf6+ Bxf6 26 Qh7, mate. 4 23...Qd5 loses to 24 Rxf6+ (1-0), e.g., 24...Bxf6 25 Bh6+ Kg7 26 Qxg7, mate, or 24...Ke7 25 Qxh6+ Kd8 26 Rf8+ Ne8 27 Rxe8, mate. 5 White's threat is 26 Qxg7, mate. 6 25...Qe7 26 Qh8 is mate, while 25...Qe7 loses to 26 Rxf6+ Ke7 27 Qxg7+ Kd8 28 Rf8, mate. 7 White threatens both 27 Qh8, mate, and 27 Rxf6+.

344. Black has just played 10...f6, attacking White's Ng5. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Nxe7 Kxe7 12 Qh5+ Kg8 13 Bxf6 Rf7 14 Bxf7+ Kf8 15 e5 f5 16 Qg6 Ne6 17 h5 Nc4 18 h6 Bh8 19 h7+Bg7. How does White win in three?

1 11...Rf7 drops a second pawn and the exchange to 12 Bxf6, while 11...f5 loses to 12 h5, e.g., 12...Kxh7 13 hgx6+ Kg8 14 Qh5 Nf6 15 exf6 Rxf6 16 Qh7+ Kf8 17 Qh8+ 18 Qh8+ (1-0). 2 12...Bxf6 loses to 13 Qxf6+ Kg8 14 Qh7, mate. 3 White's threat is 14 Qh7, mate. 4 White's threat is 16 Qh7-g8, mate. 5 Intending to meet 16 Qh7 with 16...Nf6. 6 White can also play 16 Qxh5 with a Rook and three pawns for a Knight, but this is better. White's threat is 17 h5-h6. 7 16...Ne7 loses to 17 Qh7 18 Qg8, mate. 8 What else? 9 The threat of 20 Qg8 is on again.
This chapter contains exercises in which White plays N\text{x}h7 when Black doesn’t have a pawn on g6.

In Diagram 1, note that White has a Rook on a3 that is ready to join the attack. After the moves 1 N\text{x}h7 K\text{x}h7 2 Qh5+ Kg8 (see Diagram 2), White wins with 3 Rh3, threatening 4 Qh7, mate. If Black creates an escape square on f7 with either 3...f6 or 3...f5, then 4 e6 controls f7, when Black can no longer prevent Qh7, mate.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. The Idea of Qg7, Mate
2. White Plays Qh5 and Ng5
3. Queen Sacrifices
4. Operations along the h-file
5. King Hunt
6. Miscellaneous Tactics
7. Miscellaneous Mates
8. Black Refuses to Take the Nh7

These themes are illustrated using forty-four preparatory positions, which are followed by sixteen visualization exercises ranging in depth from five to twenty-seven ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply:</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. The Idea of Qg7, Mate

656 [VX-357]. White wins with 20 Bh6, intending 21 Qg5-Qg7, mate.

657 [VX-355]. White wins with 19 Qxh6+ Kg8 20 exf6 with Qg7, mate.

658 [VX-348]. White wins with 16 Qg6 with 17 Qxg7, mate.

2. White Plays Qh5 and Ng5

659 [VX-353]. White wins with 19 Qh5 Rfd8 20 Qxf7+ Kh8 20 exf6 with Qg7, mate.

660 [VX-356]. White wins with 17 Ng5 Rd8 18 Qxf7+ Kh8 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Qh8+ Ke7 22 Qxg7+ Ke8 23 Qf7, mate.

661 [VX-353]. White is down a piece, but wins with 18 Ng5 Re8 19 Qxf7+ Kh8 20 f4, threatening Rf3-Rh3, mate, e.g., 20...Nf5 21 Rf3 Nh6 22 Rh3 Rf8, when White can choose between 23 Qg6 with 24 Qh7, mate and 23 Rxh6+ gxh6 24 Qh7, mate.

3. Queen Sacrifices

662 [VX-348]. White can mate in two by sacrificing his Queen to clear the h-file, e.g., 16 Qxg6+ fxg6 17 Bxf8, mate.

663 [VX-358]. White can win with 23 Qxf7+, e.g., 23...Kxf7 24 Ne7+ Kf8 25 Ng6, mate. Declining the Queen doesn’t help, e.g., 23...Kh7 24 Rh3, mate, or 23...Kh8 24 Rh3+ Bh6 25 Rxh6, mate.

664 [VX-360]. White wins with 23 Qxg6+, when 23...Kxg6 loses to 24 Bh5+ Kh7 25 Bf7, mate, while 23...Ke7 loses to 24 Bh5, intending 25 Qxe8, mate, e.g., if 24...Qd7 25 Qg5, mate, or 24...Qd8 25 Qf7, mate.
4. Operations along the h-file

665 [VX-348]. White wins with 16 Qxh6+ Kg8 17 Qh7/Qh8/Qg5/Qg6, mate.

666 [VX-349]. White wins with 21 Qh5+ Kg8 22 Rh3 f5/f6 23 e6 with 24 Qh7/Qh8, mate.

667 [VX-357]. White wins with 19 Rh3, when the threat of 20 Qh8, mate, forces Black to give up his Queen with 19...Qh6 20 Bxh6.

668 [VX-351]. White wins with 20 Qh5+ Kg8 21 Re4, threatening both 22 Rg4+ Ng6 23 Rxg6, mate, and 22 Rh4 with 23 Qh7/Qh8, mate. 21...f5 22 Rh4 Kg7 (the only move that avoids 23 Qh8, mate) 23 Qh6+ Kg8 24 Qh7/Qh8, mate.

669 [VX-358]. After 23 Rh3 Black can defend h7 with 23...Qe1+ 24 Rf1 Qe4, but then comes 25 Nf6+ and now: 25...Bxf6 26 Bxf6 Nxf6 27 Qh8, mate or 25...Nxf6 26 Bxf6 Bxf6 27 Rxf6, with mate to follow.

5. King Hunt

671 [VX-352]. White wins with 20 Rh7 Kf8 21 Qxg7+ Ke7 22 Qxf7+ Kd6/Kd8 23 Qxd7, mate.

672 [VX-352]. White wins with 20 Rh7Kf8 21 Qxg7+ Ke7 22 Qxf7+ Kd8/Kd6 23 Qxc7, mate.

673 [VX-350]. White wins with 19 Qh5+ Kg7/Kg8 20 Qxg6+ Kf8 (20...Kh8 21 Qh7, mate) 21 Bh6+ Ke7 22 Qg7/Qh7, mate.
6. Miscellaneous Tactics

674 [VX-346]. 16 Bg5 trapping Black's Queen.

675 [VX-347]. White wins Black's Ra8 with 16 Qe4+.

676 [VX-353]. After 20 Nxf7, Black can't play 20...Kxf7 because of 21 Qf3+, winning Black's Ra8.

677 [VX-352]. The open h-file lets White play 20 Bxf7+, since 20...Qxf7 21 Rh8+ wins Black's Queen and 20...Kf8 drops the exchange to 21 Bxe8 Rxe8.

678 [VX-357]. White wins with 19 Rh3 f6 20 Qe8+ Qf8 21 Bxe6+ Bxe6 22 Qxe6+ Qf7 23 Rh8+ Kxh8 24 Qxf7.

679 [VX-357]. White wins with 19 Rh3 f6 20 Qh8+ Kf7 21 fx e6+ Rxe6 (21... K g6 22 Qh5 is mate) 22 Qxa8, when White is up a Rook and will also win the exchange on e6.

7. Miscellaneous Mates

680 [VX-357]. White wins with 20 Rxf7+ Rxf7 21 Qxf7+ Kh8 22 Qg8, mate.

681 [VX-360]. White wins with 22 Qh7+ Kf7 23 Bh5+.

682 [VX-353]. White wins with either 23 Qg6 with 24 Qh7, mate or 23 Rxh6+ gxh6 24 Qh7, mate.
683 [VX-355]. White wins with 19 exf6+, e.g., 19...Kxf6 20 Qg5, mate or 19...Kg8 20 Be4, mating.

684 [VX-360]. White wins with 25 Qxg6+, e.g., 25...Kg8 26 Rh3 Qxd2 27 f7+ Rxf7 28 Qh7, mate.

685 [VX-355]. White wins with 21 Bxd5 exd5 22 Kh2 with 23 Rg1+, mating.

686 [VX-358]. White wins with 25 Rh3+ Nh7 with either 26 Qxe8+ Bf8 27 Qxf8, mate, or b) 26 Rxhr7+ Kxhr7 27 Qh5+ Bh6 28 Qxh6, mate.

687 [VX-357]. White wins with 19 fxg6, threatening 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Qh8, mate, e.g., 19...Rd7 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Qh8, mate, or 19...Re8 20 Qh7 Kf8 21 Qh8/Qxf7/Rxf7/g7, mate.

688 [VX-354]. White wins with 19 Bxf5, threatening 20 Qh7, mate, e.g., a) 19...f6 20 Bh7+ Kh8 21 Bg6+ Kg8 22 Bh7, mate, or b) 19...Rf8 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Bf6 Bxh6 22 Qh8, mate.

689 [VX-354]. White wins with 19 Nf6+ Bxf6 20 exf6, threatening 21 Qg5+ and 22 Qg7, mate, e.g., 20...Ne5 21 dxe5 with 22 Qg5+ or 21 Qg5+ Ng6 22 Qh6 and 23 Qg7, mate.

690 [VX-360]. White wins with 25 Qxg6+ Kg8 26 Rh3, e.g., a) 26...dxc2 27 f7+ Qxf7 28 Qh7, mate or b) 26...Be5 27 Qh7+ Kf8 (27...Kf7 28 Qxg7+ transposes) 28 Qh8+ Kf7 29 Qxg7+ Ke8 30 Rh8+ Bf8 31 Rxf8, mate.

691 [VX-355]. White wins with 19 exf6, attacking Black's Qc7, when 19...Qd7 loses to 20 Be4, threatening 21 Qh7, mate, e.g., 20... Bh6 21 Qxhr6 with 22 Qg7, mate, or 19...Qxf4 20 gxh4, when White has a Queen and two pawns for three pieces, but threatens 21 Be4, mating and 20...Nd5 loses to 21 Bxh5 22 Kh2 with 23 Rg1+, mating.
8. Black Refuses to Take the Nh7

692 [VX-360]. White wins with 19 Nf6+ Kh8 20 Qh4, mate.

693 [VX-350]. 19 Qh5 Rg8 20 Bxg6+ Rxg6 21 Ng5+ wins Black's Rg6, since trying to hold on to it with 21...Kg7 loses to 22 Qh7+ Kf8 23 Qf7, mate.

694 [VX-356]. 19 Qh6 threatens 20 Nf6, mate, when 19...f6/f5 loses to 20 Qg6+ Kh8 21 Nxf6 Qc7 22 Qh6+ Qh7 23 Qxh7, mate.

695 [VX-348]. White wins with 15 Nf6+, e.g., a) 15...gxf6 16 Qg6+ Kh8 17 Rxh6, mate, or b) 15...Kh8 16 Bxh6 and now: b1) 16...gxh6 17 Qxh6, mate; b2) 16...g6 17 Bxf8+ gxh6 18 Rxh5, mate; b3) 16...gxh6 17 Be3+/Bxf8/etc Kg7 18 Qh7/Qh8+.

696 [VX-359]. 16 Nxf6+ wins, e.g., 16...Kg7 17 Nxe8+ wins Black's Qc7; 16...Kh8 17 Qh5+ Kg7 18 Qh6, mate; 16...Kf8 17 Qh5, threatening 18 Nd5 Qd7/Qc6 19 Qh8, mate, e.g., 17...Be6 18 Bxe6 Rx6e 19 Nd5, when moving the Queen allows 20 Qh8, mate.

697 [VX-354]. White wins with 16 Nf6+ Bxf6 17 exf6 with 18 Qg4+, e.g., 17...Ncxd4 18 Qg4+, and now: 18...Kf8 19 Bh6+ Nhx6 20 Qg7+ Ke8 21 Qh8+ Ng8 22 Qxg8, mate, or 18...Kh8 19 Rxf5 Nxf5 20 Qh5+ Kg8 21 Bxf5 exf5 22 Qh6 with 23 Qg7, mate.

698 [VX-348]. 15 f6 wins: a) 15...Qe8/ Qd8 16 Qg6 with 17 Qxg7, mate, or b) 15...gxg6 16 Qg6+ Kh8 17 Qxh6 and now: b1) 17...Rd8 18 Nxf6, mate or b2) 17...Kg8 18 Ng5 with 19 Qh7/Qh8, mate; c) 15...Qd7 16 fxg7 and now: c1) 16...Kxg7 17 Qxh6+ Kg8 18 Nxf6/Qxf8, mate, or c2) 16...Re8 17 Nf6+ Kxg7 18 Qxh6, mate.

699 [VX-350]. 19 Qh5 wins, e.g., a) 19... Nf8 20 Bg5 wins Black's Queen, for example, 20...Qc7 21 Nf6+ Kg7 22 Nxe8+; b) 19...Ne5 20 Bg5 Re7 21 Nf6+ (21... Kg7 22 Qh7+ Kf8 23 Qg8, mate or 21... Kf8 22 Qh8+ Kf7 23 Qh7+ Kf8 24 Qg8, mate); c) 19...Kg7 20 Qh6+ Kf7 21 Bxf5 Bxf5 22 Rxf5+ Kg8 23 Qxg6+ Kh8 24 Nf6, threatening 25 Qh7/Rh5, mate.
345. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxh7 Kxh7 18 Qh5+ Kg8 19 Qxg6. What is the material balance?

1 Hint: White can trap Black’s Queen.

346. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Nxh7 Kxh7 15 Qh5+ Kg8. How does White win here? See the footnote for a hint.

1 Hint: White can win Black’s Rook.

347. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Nxh7 Nxh7 15 Bxh7+ Kxh7. How does White win here? See the footnote for a hint.

1 Two alternatives: a) 14...Qe7 loses to 15 f6, e.g., a1) 15...gx6 16 Qg6+ Kh8 17 Qxh6 Kg8 (17...Rd8 18 Nxf6, mate) 18 Ng5 with 19 Qh7/Qh8, mate; a2) 15...Qe8/Qd8 16 Qg6 with 17 Qxg7, mate, a3) 15...Qd7 16 fxg7 and now: 16...Kxg7 17 Qxh6+ Kg8 18 Nf6/Qxg8, mate or 16...Re8 17 Nf6+ Kxg7 18 Qxh6, mate; b) 14...Na5 loses to 15 Nf6+, e.g., b1) 15...gx6 16 Qg6+ Kh8 17 Rxf6, mate, or b2) 15...Kh8 16 Bxh6 gxf6 17 Be3+ Kg7 18 Qh7/Qh8+. 2 15...gxh6 loses to 16 Qxh6+ Kg8 17 Qh8/Qh7/Qg5/Qg6, mate, while 15...Kg8 loses to 16 Qg6 with 17 Qxg7, mate. 3 Hint: White can sacrifice his Queen.

348. White is down a pawn, but has a half-open h-file to work with. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Nxh7 Kxh7 15 Bxh6 g6. How does White mate in two? See the last footnote for a hint.
349. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nxh7 Kxh7 21 Qh5+ Kg8 22 Rh3 f5. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 20...Re7 loses to exchange to 21 Nxf8 Kxf8 22 f4 (1-0). 2 22...f6 doesn't change anything. 3 Hint: Black's last move created an escape square for his King, but White can shut it down.

350. Black is up a pawn and has just played 17...f6, attacking White's Ng5. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Nxf7 Exf7 19 Qh5+ Kg7 20 Qxg6+ Kf8 21 Bh6+ Ke7. How does White win here?

1 18...f5 19 Qh5 (1-0) gives White a winning attack (see the preparatory positions), while 18...Kf7 19 Qh5 Rg8 20 Bxg6+ Rg6 21 Ng5+ wins Black's Kg6, since trying to hold on to it with 21...Kg7 loses to 22 Qh7+ Kf8 23 Qf7, mate. 2 19...Kg8 20 Qxg6+ transposes. 3 20...Kh8 21 Qh7 is mate.

351. White's Ng5 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nxf7 Kxf7 20 Qh5+ Kg8 21 Re4 f5 22 Rh4 Kg7. How does White win here?

1 Other moves drop the exchange at least. 2 Black resigned here. White threatens both 22 Rg4+ Ng6 23 Rxg6, mate and 22 Rh4 with 23 Qh7/Qh8, mate. 3 This is the only move that avoids 23 Qh8, mate.

352. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nxh7 Nxh7 16 Rxf7 Kxh7 17 Qh5+ Kg8 18 Rh1 Re8 19 Qe6+ Qf6 20 Bxg7+ Qxg7. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 White's threat is 20 Qxf7, mate. 2 Other moves are worse, e.g., a) 19...Qd7 loses to 20 Rh7 Kf8 21 Qxg7+ Ke7 22 Qxf7+ Kd6 (22...Kd8 23 Qxd7, mate) 23 Qxd7, mate; b) 19...Qc7 loses to 20 Rh7, e.g., 20...Kf8 (the only move) 21 Qxg7+ Ke7 22 Qxf7+ Kd8 (22...Kd6 23 Qxc7, mate) 23 Qxc7, mate; c) 19...Qe7 loses a tempo to 20 Bg5. 3 Hint: White can win Black's Queen.
353. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nxh7 Kxh71 17 Qh5+ Kg8 18 Ng5 Re8 19 Qxf7+ Kh8 20 f4² Nf5 21 Rf3 Nh6 22 Rh3³ Rf8. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 16...Rd8 can be met by 17 Nd6 Qc7 18 Ng5 Rd8 20 Qxf5+ Kh8 21 Qh5+ Kg8 22 Qh7+ Kg8 23 Nxe5, mate or 18...Rd8 19 exf5 Qxf5 20 Qh5+ Kg8 21 Nxe5 Qxe5 22 Qh7+ Kg8 23 Qxf5, mate. ² White's threat is Rf3-Rh3, mate. ³ Hint: White has two ways to mate in two.

354. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nxh7 Kxh71 16 Rxf5² exf5 17 Qh5+ Kg8 18 Nd5³ fxe4⁴ 19 Nf6+ Bxf6 20 exf6⁵ Ne5. How does White win here?

¹ Rook moves such as 15...Rf8 or 15...Re8 lose to 16 Nf6+ Bxf6 17 Qh5+ Rf8 18 Qh7+ Kg8 19 Qg6+ Kg8 20 Qg7 mate; 18...Qd8 loses to 19 Be4, threatening 20 Qg7, mate, e.g., 18...Qd8 19 Bf5 Qe7 20 Qg6+ Kh8 21 Nb7, mate. ² Black's Qc7 is under attack. ³ Best. 19...Qd7 loses to 20 Be4, threatening 21 Qh7, mate, when 20...Bh6 21 Qh6 gives White a mate on g7. ⁴ Black has three pieces for a Queen and two pawns and threatens 21 Be4, mating. ⁵ Black wants to play 21...Nxf6, but this lets White clear the g-file with tempo.

355. Here the d1-h5 diagonal is blocked by White's Ng4, but that can easily be remedied. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nxh7 Kxh7 17 Nf6+ gxf6 18 Qh5+ Kg8 19 exf6² Qxf4³ 20 gxf4² Qf6² 21 Bxh6 exd5. How does White win here?

¹ 18...Kg7 loses to 19 exf6+, e.g., 19...Kxf6 (or 19...Kg8 20 Be4, mating) 20 Qg5, mate; 18...Bh6 loses to 19 Qxh6+ Kg8 20 exf6 with Qg7, mate. ² Black's Qc7 is under attack. ³ Best. 19...Qd7 loses to 20 Be4, threatening 21 Qh7, mate, when 20...Bh6 21 Qxh6 gives White a mate on g7. ⁴ Black has three pieces for a Queen and two pawns and threatens 21 Be4, mating. ⁵ Black wants to play 21...Nxf6, but this lets White clear the g-file with tempo.

356. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nxh7 Kxh71 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17 Ng5² Rd8 18 Qxf7+ Kh8 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Qh7+ Nf8 21 Qh8+ Ke7. How does White win here?

¹ 15...g6 drops the exchange to 16 Nxf8 (1-0, 21), while 15...Rd8 loses to 16 Qh5 Nxe5 17 Nxf6+ gxf6 18 Rxg5, e.g., 18...fxe5 19 Qh6 (White's threat is 20 Nf6, mate) f6 20 Qg6+ Kh8 21 Nxf6, winning, e.g., 21...Qc7 22 Qh6+ Qh7 23 Qxh7, mate. ² White has achieved a position that is typically reached by sacrificing a Bishop on h7.
357. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nxf6+ gxf6 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17 Bg5 Qd6 18 Re3\(^1\) Re6\(^2\) 19 Rh3 f6 20 Qe8+ Qf8 21 Bxe6+ Bxe6 22 Qxe6+ Qf7. How does White win here?

1 White's threat is 19 Rh3, mating. 18 f6 also wins, e.g., 18...Qe6 19 fxe6 Bxe6 20 Bh6, intending 21 Qg5, mate or 18...Ng6 19 Rh3 threatening 20 Qh8, mate, when the threat of 20 Qh8, mate, forces Black to give up his Queen with 19...Qe6 20 Bh6; 18...Ng6 loses to 19 Rh3, threatening 20 Qh8, mate, and if 19...f6 20 Qxe6 Rxe6 then 21 Rf1 threatens to take on f6, opening up the 7th rank so that Qh8+ Kf7 Rh7 is mate.

358. White is down two pawns and his Nd5 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Nxh7 Kxh7 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Bg5 Qa5 21 Rd3 Re8 22 Rxf5 exf5 23 Nf6+ Qxf6 24 Qxf7+ Kh8 25 Rh3+ Nh7. How does White win here?

1 21...exd5 loses to 22 Rh3, e.g., 22...Qb6+ 23 Kh1 Re8 24 Bxd5, threatening 25 Qxf7, mate, when 24...Nd8 25 Bxd8 threatens both 26 Qxf7, mate and 26 Bx6 and 24...Re6 25 Rxf5 Nf6 26 Bxf5 Rxf5 27 Rxf5 gives White a 3-1 advantage on f7. 2 22...Rf8 defends f7, but loses to 23 Rh3, when Black can defend h7 with 23...Qe1+, 24 Rf1 Qe4, but then comes 25 Nf6+ and now: 25...Bxf6 26 Bxf6 Nxf6 27 Qh8, mate, or 25...Nd8 26 Bxf6 Bxf6 27 Rx6, with mate to follow. 3 Black resigned here. 23...Kf8 24 Qxf7 is mate, while 23...Bxf6 loses to 24 Qxf7+ Kf8 25 Rh3, mate.

359. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Nxf6+ gxf6 15 Nxf7 Kxh7\(^1\) 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17 Qg6+ Kh8 18 Qh6+ Kg8 19 f4\(^2\) exf4 20 Qg6+ Kh8 21 Qxf6+ Kh7 22 Bxf4 Be6\(^4\) 23 Bxd6 Qxd6 24 Rd5. What is White's threat and how does White win after 24...Bxf5?

1 15...Re8 16 Nxf6+ Kf8 loses to 17 Qh5, threatening 18 Nd5 Qd7 19 Qh8, mate. 2 White threatens both 20 Rf3 and 20 f5 with 21 Rf3. 3 19...Re8 gives White the advantage after 20 f5 Bf8 21 Qg6+ Kh8 22 Qxf6+ Kg7 23 Qh4+ Kg8 24 f6. 4 22...Bxf4 23 Rx4 wins Black's Queen because of the threat of 24 Rh4+ Kg8 25 Qh8/Rh8, mate. 5 24 Rf4 Qxf4 25 Qxf4 gives White a Queen and two pawns for a Rook and Knight.

360. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Nxh7 Kxh7\(^1\) 19 Qh4+ Kg8 20 Rh3 f6\(^2\) 21 exf6 Ng6 22 Qh7+ Kf7 23 e5 cxd3 24 Rd3 Rd8\(^3\) 25 Qxg6+ Kg8 26 Rh3 Be5\(^4\) 27 Qh7+ Kf8 28 Qh8+ Kf7 29 Qxg7+ Ke8. How does White win in two?

1 18...exd3 and 18...Qb6 (1-0) lose to 19 Nh6+ Kh8 20 Qh4, mate. 2 20...f5 loses to 21 Be2, threatening 22 Qh7+ Kf7 23 Bh5+, and if 21...Ng6 or 21...Nc6 then 22 Qh7+ Kf7 gives White a winning Queen sacrifice with 23 Qxg6+, e.g., 23...Kxg6 24 Bh5+ Kh7 25 Bf7, mate, or 23...Kf7 24 Bh5 (intending 25 Qxe8, mate) Qd7 25 Qg5, mate or 24...Qd8 25 Qf7, mate. 3 24...Qxc2 loses to 25 Qxg6+, e.g., 25...Kg8 26 Rh3 Qxd2 27 f7+ Rxf7 28 Qh7, mate. 4 26...Qxc2 loses to 27 f7+ Qxf7 28 Qh7, mate. 5 27...Kf7 28 Qxg7+ transposes.
This chapter contains exercises involving the sequence 1 Bxh7+ followed by 2 Nxf7. Typically White has an extra attacker on h7, which is generally defended only by Black’s King.

In Diagram 1, not so good is 1 Qxh7+ Kf8 2 Qh8+, when Black’s King can escape to e7, but White wins quickly with 1 Bh7+, e.g., 1...Kf8 2 Qxf7, mate, or 1...Kh8 (see Diagram 2) 2 Nxf7, mate.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. Miscellaneous Tactics
2. Black’s King is on h8 – White Mates or Wins Black’s Queen
3. Black’s King is on h8 – White Wins Material
4. Black’s King is not on h8 -- White Plays Bh7 and Qg6

These themes are illustrated using forty-two preparatory positions, which are followed by twenty-eight visualization exercises ranging in depth from five to twenty-five ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply:</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>4 -</td>
<td>8 -</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2 -</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2 -</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6 -</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Miscellaneous Tactics

700 [VX-377]. White wins with 15 Qxh7+ Kf8 16 Qh8, mate.

701 [VX-364]. White wins with 21 Ngxf7 Nxf7 22 Ng6, mate.

702 [VX-362]. White mates in two with 14 Bh7+ Kh8 (14...Kf8 loses to 15 Qxf7, mate) 15 Nxf7, mate.

703 [VX-382]. White wins with 28 Qxe6+ Kf8 (or 28...Kd8 29 Qd6, mate) 29 Qg8, mate.

704 [VX-386]. White wins with 18 Qxh7+ Kf8 19 Qh8, mate.

705 [VX-378]. White wins with 21 Qg6+ Kf8 22 Ne6, mate.

706 [VX-378]. White wins with 23 Nd6 Qd8 24 Qf5+ Nf6 25 Qe6, when the only way to stop 26 Qf7, mate, is by giving up the Queen with 25...Qe8 26 Nxe8.

707 [VX-385]. White win with 21 Ng6+ Kf7 22 Nf5+ Kf6 23 Qd2 threatening 24 Qf4, mate (-1.0), which Black can avoid only by giving up his Queen with 23...Qxe5.

708 [VX-372]. White wins material with 17 Rxf7+ Ke8 (17...Bxf7 18 Qxf7 is mate) 18 Nxe6 Qd6 19 Nxc7+ Kd8 20 Nxa8.
2. Black’s King is on h8 – White Mates or Wins Black’s Queen

709 [VX-377]. White wins with 15 Nxf7, mate.

710 [VX-363]. White mates in two with 15 Nexf7+ Rxf7 16 Nxf7, mate.

711 [VX-373]. White wins with 15 Nexf7+ Rxf7 16 Nxf7, mate.

712 [VX-387]. White mates in two with 18 Nexf7+ Rxf7 19 Nxf7, mate.

713 [VX-371]. White wins with 18 Nxf7+ Rxf7 19 Re8+ Rf8 20 Rxf8, mate.

714 [VX-376]. White can win Black's Queen with 21 Nexf7+ Rxf7 22 Nxf7+ Kxh7 23 Nxd8 Rxd8, when White is up a Queen and Rook for three pieces.


716 [VX-375]. A discovered check wins Black's Queen -- 14 Nxf7+ Rxf7 15 Qxe5+.

717 [VX-366]. White wins Black's Queen with 17 Ngxf7+ Rxf7 18 Ng6+. 
3. Black’s King is on h8 – White Wins Material

718 [VX-368]. White wins the exchange with 18 Nxf7+ Rxf7 19 Qxf7 Kxh7 (after 19...Ne2+ 20 Kh1 Kxh7, White wins back a piece with 21 Rfe1) 20 Qxf4.

719 [VX-367]. White is up the exchange and a pawn after 18 Nxf7+ Rxf7 (18...Kxh7 drops the Qd6) 19 Qxf7 Kxh7 20 Rxe7, when White threatens both 21 Qxg7, mate, and 21 Re6 with 22 Rxh6, mate, although Black can parry both threats with 20...Qg6.

720 [VX-383]. Black is threatening both ...Qxh5 and ...Ba6, but after 18 Nxf7+ Rxf7 (18...Kxh7 drops the Queen to 19 Nxh6) 19 Qxf7 Qxh7 20 Rxe7 Ba6 21 Qxc7 Bxf1 22 Rxf1 (22 Kxf1 drops the h-pawn) Qe4 23 Qxb6, White is up four pawns.

721 [VX-372]. White wins with 17 Nxf7+, when 17...Kxh7 18 Qc2+ wins Black’s Queen and 17...Bxf7 18 Qxf7 Kxh7 (otherwise White plays 19 Qh5 with 20 Bg6+ Kg8 21 Qh7, mate) loses to 19 Qxf5, threatening 20 Rh5, mate.

722 [VX-373]. White is up the exchange and two pawns after 15 Nxf7+ Rxf7 16 Bg6 Qf8 17 Nxf7+ Kg8 18 Ng5 and threatens to win a third pawn with 19 Nxe6.

723 [VX-365]. White wins with 13 Ngf7+ Rxf7 14 Bg6 Qb5 15 Bxf7, threatening a Queen sac mate, e.g., 15...Bd6 16 Ng6+ Kh7 17 Nf8+ Kh8 18 Qh7+ Nhx7 19 Ng6, mate, and if 15...g5 16 Qg6 Bf8 17 Qxf6+Bg7, then 18 Qd8+ Kh7 19 Bg6 is mate.

724 [VX-375]. White wins another pawn with 11 Nxf7+ Rxf7 12 Bxd6 (12 Ng5 Nxf4 allows Black to get rid of his weak Nh5) Qxd6 13 Ng5 (two of Black’s pieces are under attack) Rf8 14 Qxh5.

725 [VX-369]. White wins the exchange with 14 Bg8 Nf6 (this prevents 15 Qh7, mate. 14...Rf5 drops the Queen to 15 Nf7+, since 15...Rxf7 allows 16 Qh7, mate) 15 Nf7+ Rxh7 16 Bxf7.

726 [VX-373]. White wins the exchange and two pawns with 16 Bg8 f5 (worse is 16...g6 17 Nxf7 Rxf7 18 Bxf7, attacking both e6 and g6) 17 Nxe6 Qd7 18 Nxf8 Rxf8 19 Bxd5 cxd5.
4. Black’s King is not on h8 -- White Plays Bh7 and Qg6

727 [VX-385]. White win with 19 Ne5, when Black can’t stop 20 Qf7, mate.

728 [VX-380]. White can either win Black’s Queen with 24 Bh4+ or play 24 Rfe1+ Kd7 25 Qxd6+ Kc8 26 Bf5+, mating.

729 [VX-377]. White wins with 17 Re1+, e.g., a) 17...Kd6 18 Bf4+ Kd5 19 Qf7, mate or b) 17...Kd5 18 Qf7+ Kd6 19 Bf4+ Ne5 20 Bxe5+ Kd7 21 Bf5, mate.

730 [VX-370]. White wins with 16 Qg6+ Ke7 17 Bd6, mate.

731 [VX-387]. White wins with 22 Bg6 Bf6 23 exf6 Qxf6 24 Bd6+ Re7 (24...Kg8 25 Qh7 is mate) 25 Qh8, mate.

732 [VX-380]. White wins with 24 Bxd6+ Re7 25 Qe6 (White's threat is 26 Qg8, mate) Nf6 26 Rae1 Nh7 27 Bxe7+ Ke8 28 Bd6+ Qe7 29 Qxe7, mate.

733 [VX-377]. White wins with 17 Bxh6 (White's threat is 18 Qxg7, mate) Nh5 (17...gxh6 loses to 18 Qxh6+ Kf7 19 Ng5, mate) 18 Qxh5 Bf6 (18...gxh6 loses to 19 Qxh6+ Kf7 20 Qg6+ Kg8 21 Qf4, when White is up two pawns).

734 [VX-386]. White wins with 20 Bxh6 gxh6 (better is 20...Nh5 21 Qxh5 Bf6, when White is only up two pawns) 21 Qxh6+ Kf7 22 Bg6+ Kg8 23 Ne4 (this drives Black’s Nf6 away from the defense of h7) Nxe4 (23...Ncxd5 24 cxd5 doesn't change anything) 24 Qh7+ Kf8 25 Qf7, mate.

735 [VX-387]. White wins with 21 Bxh6, with a mating attack, for example, a) 21...gxh6 22 Qxh6+ Kf7 23 Bg6+ Kg8 24 exf6 Bxf6 25 Qh7+ Kh8 26 Qf7 is mate, or b) 21...Nh5 22 Qxh5, when White is up two pawns and threatens 23 Bxg7+ Kxg7 24 Qg6+ Kh8 (24...Kf8 25 Qg8 is mate) 25 Bg8 Rxg8 26 Qh6, mate.
736 [VX-379]. White wins with 24 Qe6 (1-0), threatening 25 Qg8, mate, when 24...Nf6 loses to 25 Bg6, threatening 26 Qf7, mate, and 24...Bf6 loses to 25 Bd6+ Be7 26 Qg8, mate.

737 [VX-384]. White wins with 19 Qxe6 (1-0), threatening 20 Qg8, mate, and if 19...Nf6, covering g8, then 20 Bg6 Ne5, defends f7. White has three ways to take on d5, but only 21 Rxe5 prevents ...Bd5, e.g., 21...Bd5 22 Rxd5 Rxd5 23 Qf7 is mate.

738 [VX-382]. White wins with 28 Qxe6, opening up the e-file and threatens 29 Qg8, mate. Now 28...Qf6 loses to 29 Qg8+ Ke7 26 Re1+ Kd7 27 Bf5+ Kd8 28 Qxe8, mate, and 24...Bf6 loses to 25 Qg8+ Ke7 26 Re1+, when mates in four: 27 Bg6+ Kf8 28 Rxe8, mate.

739 [VX-381]. White wins with 24 Qxe6, threatening 25 Qg8, mate, when 24...Bd6 loses to 25 Qg8+ Ke7 26 Re1+ Kd7 27 Bf5+ Kd8 28 Qxe8, mate, and 24...Bf6 25 Qg8+ Ke7 26 Re1+ wins, e.g., a) 26...Kd6 drops the Re8; b) after 26...Be5 27 Qe4 Kf6 28 dxes5+, White is up a piece and a pawn; or c) 26...Kd7 27 Bf5+ wins: c1) 27...Kd6 28 Rxe8; c2) 27...Kd8 28 Qxe8, mate; or c3) 27...Re6 28 Qxe6+ Kd8 29 Qe8, mate.

740 [VX-388]. White wins with 21 Qxe6 (the threat is 22 Qg8, mate) Bf6 22 Qg8+ Ke7 23 Re1+ Qe5 (23...Kd7 loses to 24 Qe6, mate; 23...Be5 loses to 24 Qxg7+ Kd6 (24...Ke6 drops the Queen) 25 Qxe5+ Kd7 26 Bf5, mate) 24 dxes5 (1-0) Rxg8, when the Queens are off the board, but White still has a mate. Continued on the next diagram.

741 [VX-388]. (Continued from the previous diagram.) After 25 exf6+ Kxf6 26 Rd6+ Kf7, when mates in four: 27 Bg6+ Kf8 28 Rde6, when Black can't prevent 29 Re8+ Rxe8 30 Rxg8, mate.
361. Black has just played Nh5, attacking White's Bf4, but Black's Queen remains in jeopardy. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bh7+ Kh8. How does White win here?

362. White is down the exchange, but has a forced mate. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Qh5 Re8 14 Bh7+ Kh8. How does White win here?

1 After 13 Bh7+ Kh8 14 Qh5, Black can defend with 14...Bxg5, for example, 15 Bxg5 Qxg5 16 Qxg5 Kxh7, when Black has a Rook and two pieces for the Queen or 15 Bxg6+ Bh6 16 Bxh6 fxg6 17 Qxg6 Qf6. 2 The only practical way to prevent 14 Qh7, mate, but now f7 is weak. 3 14...Kf8 loses to 15 Qxf7, mate.

363. White's Ng5 is under attack, but Black's f7 turns out to be weak. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bh7+ Kh8. How does White win here?

364. Black's Re8 and Be7 form a wall that blocks in Black's King. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Bh7+ Kf8 21 Ngxf7 Nxf7. How does White win here?

1 White is up a piece and a pawn after 21...Nf6 22 Nxf8.
365. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bh7+ Kh8\(^1\) 13 Ngxf7+ Rxf7 14 Bg6 Qb5 15 Bxf7. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) 12...Nxf7 loses to 13 Qxh7, mate.

366. White's Ng5 is under attack, but Black's g6 turns out to be weak. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bh7+ Kh8\(^1\) 17 Ngxf7+ Rxf7. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 16...Nxf7 loses to 17 Qxh7, mate.

367. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bh7+ Kh8 18 Nxf7+ Rxf7\(^1\) 19 Qxf7 Kxh7 20 Rxe7. What is the material balance and what is White's threat?

\(^1\) Forced, as 18...Kxh7 drops the Qd6.

368. White's Ng5 is under attack, but Black's f7 turns out to be weak. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bh7+ Kh8 18 Nxf7+ Rxf7 19 Qxf7 Kxh7\(^1\) 20 Qxf4. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) 19...Ne2+ 20 Kh1 Kxh7 can be met by 21 Rfe1, winning one of Black Knights.
369. White’s Ng5 is under attack, but Black’s f7 turns out to be weak. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bh7+ Kh8 14 Bg8 Nf61 15 Nf7+ Rxf7 16 Bxf7. What is the material balance?  

1 14...Kxg8 loses to 15 Qh7, mate, while 14...Rf5 15 Nf7+ wins Black’s Queen, since 15...Rxf7 loses to 16 Qh7, mate.

370. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bh7+ Kg7 15 Nxf7 Rxf71. How does White win here?  

1 15...Qf6 can be met by 16 Be5 Nxe5 17 Nxe5 with 18 Bg6, winning Black’s trapped Na5.

371. Black’s back rank is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bh7+ Kh8 18 Nxf7+ Rxf7. How does White win here?  

372. White is down a pawn and his Qb3 is under attack, but after 16 Bxh7+ Kh81 17 Nxf7+ Kxh72, both players’ Queens are under attack. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.  

1 16...Kxf8 loses to 17 Rxf7+ Ke8 (17...Bxf7 18 Qxf7 is mate) 18 Nxe6 Qd6 19 Nxc7+ Kd8 20 Nxa8, when White is up a Rook, Bishop and two pawns. 2 17...Bxf7 loses to 18 Qxf7, when White is threatening 19 Qh5 with 20 Bg6+ Kg8 21 Qh7, mate, and if 18...Kxh7 then 19 Rf5 wins because of the threat of 20 Rh5, mate. 3 Hint: White can get out of the attack without losing a tempo.
373. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Ng5 Qe8\(^1\) 14 Bxh7+ Kh8 15 Nxf7+ Rxh7 16 Bg6\(^6\) Qf8 17 Nxf7+. What is the material balance?\(^1\)

\(^1\) 13...g6 is the only defense. Moves like 13...h6 or 13...c5 allow mate in three -- 14 Bh7+ Kh8 15 Nxf7+ Rxh7 16 Nxf7, mate, while 13...Nxe5 14 dx5 Nxd5 drops the exchange to 15 Bxh7+ Kh8 16 Bg8 f5 17 Nxe6 or 16...g6 17 Nxf7 Rxf7 18 Bxf7, attacking both e6 and g6.

374. White is up a piece for two pawns. White's King is slightly vulnerable, but Black's Qe5 is undefended. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kh8 13 Qh5\(^1\) g6\(^2\). How does White win here?\(^1\)

\(^1\) White's threat is 14 Bg6+ Kg8 15 Qh7, mate. Winning Black's Queen with 14 Nxf7+ Rxh7 15 Qxe5 is less of a threat because Black can win back the Queen with 15...Rf2+ 16 Kg1 Rf5+, although White is up a piece after 17 Qxc5 Rxc5. \(^2\) This nullifies the mate threat involving 14 Bg6+, but weakens the a1-h8 diagonal.

375. Black's Bf4 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxh7+ Kh8\(^1\) 11 Nxf7+ Rxh7 12 Bxd6\(^2\) Qxd6 13 Ng5\(^1\) Rf8 14 Qxh5. What is the material balance and what is White's threat?\(^1\)

\(^1\) 10...Kxh7 loses to 11 Ng5+, when 11...Kh6 loses to 12 Ngx7+ Kh7 13 Qxh5+ Kg8 14 Qh8, mate, and 11...Kg8 12 Qxh5 gives White a forced mate, e.g., 12...Rd8 13 Nxf7 Kf8 14 Nxd6 Rxd6 15 Bxh6+ Qxd6 16 Qf7, mate, or 12...Re8 13 Nxf7 Kf8 14 Nxd6 Qd7 (now White gains controls over e7) 15 Nxc8 (the threat is 16 Qh8, mate) Raxc8 16 Bd6+, with mate next move. \(^2\) Black resigned here. 12 Ng5 lets Black to get rid of his weak Nh5 with 12...Nxf4. \(^2\) Two of Black's pieces are under attack.

376. White is down a pawn and his Bc2 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Ng5 h6 20 Bh7+ Kh8. How does White win here?
377. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bh7+ Kf8¹ 15 Nxf7 Kxf7 16 Qg6+ Kg8² 17 Bxh6 Nh5³ 18 Qxh5 Bf6⁴ 19 Bf4. What is the material balance?

¹ 14...Kh8 15 Nxf7 is mate, as is 14...Nh5 15 Qxh5 Bf6 16 Qg6+, mate. ² 16...Ke6 loses to 17 Rc1+, e.g., a) 17...Kd6 18 Bd4+ Kg8 19 Qf7, mate, or b) 17...Kd5 18 Qf7+ Kd6 19 Bd4+ Ne5 20 Bxe5+ Kd7 21 Bf5, mate. ³ 18...gxh6 loses to 18 Qxh6+ Kh7 19 Ng5, mate. ⁴ Now 18...gxh6 loses to 19 Qxh6+ Kg7 20 Qg6+ Kh8 21 Qg8, mate.

378. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Bxh7+ Kf8 20 Nxf7² Qd7 21 Qg6 Bd8 22 Nxf5 Bxg5 23 Qg8+ Ke7 24 Qxg5+. What is the material balance?

¹ 19...Nxf7 20 Nxf7 Kxf7 loses to 21 Qg6+ Kf8 22 Ne6, mate, but better is 19...Kh8 20 Nxf7+ Nxf7 21 Ne6 Qd6 22 Qg6 Rg8 23 Bxg8 Rxg8 24 Qxf7, when White has a Rook and three pawns for two pieces.

379. White's Ne3 is under attack, but Black never has time to take it. Visualize the position after the moves 20 gxh7+ Rxh7¹ 21 Bh7+ Kf8 22 Nxf7 Kxf7² 23 Qg6+ Kf8 24 Qe6³ Bf6. How does White win here?

¹ 20...Kh8 loses to 21 Ng6+ Kh7 22 Be2, when Black can't stop mate, e.g., 22...Rxh7 23 Nf8+ Kxh8 24 Qxh8+ Kxf6 25 Qh8, mate. ² 22...Qe7 isn't possible and 22...Qe8 loses to 23 Nd6, e.g., 23...Qe7 24 Qf8+ Kf6 25 Qe6, when Black has to give up his Queen to stop 25 Qf7, mate. ³ White's main threat is 25 Qg8, mate. Black resigned here. ⁴ 24...Nf6 loses to 25 Bg6, when the only way that Black can stop 25 Qf7, mate, is by giving up his Queen with 26...Qe8.

380. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Bh7+ Kf8 22 Nxf7² Kxf7 23 Qg6+¹ Kf8² 24 Bxg6+ Re7 25 Qe6³ Nf6 26 Rae1 Nxf7 27 Bxe7 Ke8. How does White mate in two?

¹ This attacks both Black's Kf7 and Bd6. ² 23...Ke7 defends the Be7, but drops the Queen to 24 Bh4+. ³ White's threat is 26 Qg8, mate.
381. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Bh7+ Kf8 22 Nxf7 Kxf7 23 Qg6+ Be6 24 Qxe6 Bf6 25 Qg8+ Ke7 26 Re1+ Kd6 27 Qc4 with 28 dxe5+. What is the material balance?

1 Black should decline the Knight with 22...Bf6, threatening to 23...Qxf7 and keeping White's Queen from playing Qg6-e6-g8. 2 White's threat is 25 Qg8, mate. 3 24...Bd6 loses to 25 Qg8+ Ke7 26 Re1+ Kd7 27 Bf5+ Kd6 28 Qxe8, mate. 4 26...Kd6 drops the Re8, while 26...Kd7 loses to 27 Bf5+, e.g., a) 27...Kd8 28 Qxe8, mate; b) 27...Kd6 28 Re8; or c) 27...Re6 28 Qxe6+ Kd8 29 Qe8, mate.

382. White's pawn on d4 is weak, but so are the light squares around Black's King. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Ne5 Qxd4 25 Bh7+ Kf8 26 Nxf7 Kxf7 27 Qg6+ Kf8 28 Qxe6 Ne5 29 fxe3 Qf8. How does White win here?

1 25...Kh8 26 Nxf7 is mate. 2 Best is 26...Nf4, threatening 27...Nh3+ 28 Kg2 Qxf7, mate. After 27 gxf4 Qxf4 Black is threatening mate with 28...Qg4+ 29 Kf1 Bg2+ 30 Kg1 Bf3+ 31 Kf1 Qg2, mate and after 28 Qd1 Black will be up a pawn after he takes White's Nf7. 3 27...Ke7 loses to 28 Qxe6+, with mate next move. 4 This opens the c-file and threatens 29 Qg8, mate. 5 This closes the c-file. 28...Qf6, as played in the game, allows 29 Qg8, mate. 6 29...Qc4 Rf1+ creates a mate threat that forces Black to play 30...Qxc1.

383. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nxf6+ Qxf6 16 Bxh7+ Kh8 17 Qh5 Qh6 18 Nxf7+ Rxh7 19 Qxf7 Qxh7 20 Qxe7 Ba6 21 Qxc7 Bxf1 22 Rxf1+ Qe4 23 Qxb6. What is the material balance?

1 18...Kxh7 drops the Queen to 19 Nxf6 (1-0). 2 22 Kxf1 drops the h-pawn.

384. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Neg5 h6 16 Bh7+ Kf8 17 Nxf7 Kxf7 18 Qg6+ Kf8 19 Qxe6 Nf6 20 Bg6 Ne5. How does White mate in three? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 15...g6 was the better choice. 2 16...Kh8 loses to 17 Nxf7, mate. 3 White's threat is 20 Qg8, mate. Black resigned here. 4 This covers g8, but f7 is weak. 5 Hint: There are three ways to capture Black's Ne5, but only one of them leads to mate.
385. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bh7+ Kf8 17 Nxf7 Qc7 18 N7e5 Nxf4 19 g3 Nh3+ 20 Kg2 Ng5 21 Ng6+ Kf7 22 Nf5+ Kf6. How can White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 17...Kxf7 loses to 18 Qg6+ Kf8 19 Ne5, when Black can’t stop 20 Qf7, mate. 2 To drive Black’s Nf4 away from the defense of g6. White gets nothing after 19 Ng6+ Nxf6 20 Qxf6. 3 Hint: Black’s King is in a mating net, so all White has to do is bring another piece into the attack to check Black’s King.

386. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Ng5 h6 17 Bh7+ Kf8 18 Nxf7 Kxf7 19 Qg6+ Kf8 20 Bxh6 gxh6 21 Qxh6+ Kf7 22 Bg6+ Kg8 23 Ne4 Nxe4. How does win here?

1 16...g6 is better. White now has a forced mate. 2 17...Nhx7 loses to 18 Qxh7+ Kf8 19 Qh8, mate. 3 The only way to stop the mate is with 20...Nh5 21 Qxh5 Bf6, although White is still up two pawns. 4 This drives Black’s Nf6 away from the defense of h7. 5 23...Nxd5 24 cxd5, as played in the game, doesn’t change anything.

387. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Ng5 Nxe5 17 dxe5 Nh5 18 Bxh7+ Kf8 19 Nxf7 Kxf7 20 Qg6+ Kf8 21 Qxh5 Bc6 22 Bg6 Bf6 23 exf6 Qxf6. How does White mate in two?

1 This attacks the f-pawn, when 16...Rf8 loses to 17 Bxh7+ Kh8 18 Nxf7, mating. 2 17...h6 loses to 18 Bh7+ Kf8 19 Nxf7 Kxf7 (19...Qb6 drops a Rook to 20 exf6 Bxf6 21 Nde6) 20 Qg6+ Kf8 21 Bxh6, with a winning attack. 3 White’s threat is 22 Bg6 and 23 Qh8, mate. 4 Two alternatives: a) 21...Qb6 22 Bg6 Bf6 23 exf6 gx6 loses to 24 Qh7, e.g., 24...Re7 25 Qh8, mate, while b) 21...Bf6 22 exf6 Qxf6 allows either 23 Bd6+ Re7 24 Bg6 and 25 Qh8, mate or 23 Bg5 Qf7 24 Bg6 Qg8 25 Qf3+ Qf7 26 Qxf7, mate. 5 The actual game continued 22...Qc7 23 Qh8, mate.

388. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bh7+ Kf8 19 Nxf7 Kxf7 20 Qg6+ Kf8 21 Qxe6 Bf6 22 Qg8+ Ke7 23 Re1+ Qe5 24 dxe5 Rxe5 25 exf6+ Kxf6 26 Rd6+ Ke7. How does White mate in four? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 White’s threat is 22 Qg8, mate. 2 23...Kd7 loses to 24 Qe6, mate, while 23...Be5 loses to 24 Qxg7+ Kd6 (24...Kd6 drops the Queen) 25 Qxe5+ Kd7 26 Bd5, mate. 3 The Queens are off the board, but White still has a mate. 4 25...Kf7 loses to 26 Rd7+, while 25...Kf8 loses to 26 f7 Kxf7 27 Rd7+ and now: a) 27...Kf8 28 Bg6 (White’s threat is 29 Rf7, mate) Rh8 29 Rde7 with 30 Re8+, mating or b) 27...Kf6 28 Rd6+ Kg5 (28...Kf7 29 Bg6+ transposes to the game) 29 Re5+ Kg4 30 Rg6, mate. 5 Hint: White can focus all his pieces on e8.
CHESS VISUALIZATION COURSE
CHAPTER 13. THE SEQUENCE 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Qh5+ Kg8 3 Qxf7+

This chapter contains exercises involving the sequence 1 Bh7+ Kxh7 2 Qh5+ Kg8 3 Qxf7+, when White has sacrificed a piece for two pawns, but has obtained a dominant Queen on f7 that forces Black’s King to the open h-file. In these exercises, Black’s pawns on f7 and h7 are usually defended only by Black’s King.

In Diagram 1, after the moves 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Qh5+ Kh8 3 Qxf7+ (see Diagram 2), Black is forced to play 3...Kh7 or 3...Kh8, when 4 Rh4 is mate.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. White Wins a Piece
2. White Mates Along the h-file
3. With Black’s King on h8, White plays Ng6, Mate
4. Black Responds to Rh3 with ...Nh7
5. Black Responds to Rh3 with ...Bh4
6. Black Responds to Rh3 with ...Bh6
7. The Idea of Qg6, Mate
8. The Idea of Qh5, Mate
9. The Idea of Qg7, Mate
10. Miscellaneous Ideas
11. Black Refuses to Take White’s Bh7 and Plays 1...Kh8 Instead
12. White Answers 1...Kh8 with 2 Qh5
13. Black Refuses to Take White’s Bh7 and Plays 1...Kf8 Instead

These themes are illustrated using eighty-eight preparatory positions, which are followed by thirty-two visualization exercises ranging in depth from seven to twenty-one ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply:</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. White Wins a Piece

742 [VX-392]. White has sacrificed a piece for two pawns, but now wins back his piece with 24 Qxb7, leaving White up two pawns.

743 [VX-390]. White has given up a piece for three pawns, but now wins back his piece with 25 Rxb7, leaving White up three pawns.

744 [VX-403]. White can win back his piece with 21 Rxd6, e.g., a) 21...Qxd6 22 Qxb7, when White is up two pawns or b) 21...Bxe5 22 Qh5+ Kg8 23 Qxe5, when White is up the exchange and two pawns (1-0).

745 [VX-389]. White wins back his piece with 17 Nxd7, when 17...Re7 loses to 18 Ng6+ Kh6/Kh8 19 Qh5, mate

746 [VX-410]. White wins back his piece with 20 Nxd7, e.g., 20...Re7 21 Qh5+ (21 Nf6 loses because it doesn't come with check) Kg8 22 Ne5.

747 [VX-393]. White is down a piece for two pawns, and can win Black's Re8 immediately, but better is the finesse 20 Qh5+ (1-0) Kg8 21 Qxe8+, when White is up the exchange and two pawns.

2. White Mates Along the h-file

748 [VX-391]. 32 Rh4 is mate.


750 [VX-394]. White wins with 24 Rd3 (1-0), e.g., 24...Re7 25 Rh3, mate or 24...Nf6 25 Rh3+ Nh5 26 Rxh5, mate.
751 [VX-407]. White wins with 20 Rd3 (1-0), e.g., 20...Rf8 21 Rh3+ Bh4 22 Rxh4, mate or 20...Oxe5 21 Rh3+ Bh4 22 Rxh4+ Qh5 23 Rxh5, mate.

752 [VX-409]. White wins with 18 Rf3, e.g., 18...Bxe3+ 19 Kh1 (1-0) Bxf4 20 Rh3+ Bh6 21 Rxh6, mate.

753 [VX-394]. After 24 Rd3 Nf6 White wins with either 25 Rxf6 gxf6 26 Rh3, mate, or 25 Rh3+ Nh7 26 Qg6 with 27 Qxh7, mate.

754 [VX-396]. White wins with 28 Re3, when the threat of 29 Rh3+ wins Black's Queen, e.g., 28...Qh4 29 Rh3 Qxh3 30 gxh3.

755 [VX-419]. White wins with 21 Re3, when the threat of 22 Rh3+ wins Black's Queen, e.g., 21...Bg3 22 Rxg3 Qxg3 23 hxg3.

756 [VX-414]. White wins with 16 Rd3, when the threat of 17 Rh3+ wins Black's Queen, e.g., 16...Nxe5 17 dxe5 Qxd3 18 exd3 (1-0, 1). Note that 17 Rh3+ Bh4 18 Qh5+ Kg8 19 Rxh4 Ng6 20 Rg4 Ne7 21 Bh6 looks great, but Black can secure g7 with 21...Nf5.

757 [VX-401]. White wins with 22 Bf4, clearing the third rank for White's Rook, e.g., 22...Bd6 (22...Be7 23 Rd3 doesn't change anything) 23 Rd3 (1-0) Be7 24 Rh3+ Bh4 25 Rxh4, mate.

758 [VX-408]. White wins with 19 Rf4 Re4 20 Raf1 (White's threat is 21 Qh5+ Kg8 22 Rf8, mate) 20...Nd7 21 Rxe4 dxe4 22 Rf4, with the threat of 23 Rh5, mate.

759 [VX-404]. White wins with 22 Rf5 Re6 23 Bf6 Rx6 24 Rx6 (White's threat is 25 Rf5-h5, e.g., 24...Be6 25 Rf5 wins Black's Queen) Qg4 25 Qxb7 (25 Rf5 can be met by 25...Qd1+), when White up the exchange and two pawns.
3. With Black’s King on h8, White plays Ng6, Mate

760 [VX-413]. White wins with 21 Qxf7+ (1-0) Kh8 22 Ng6, mate.

761 [VX-405]. White wins with 21 Rd3 Bg5 22 Rh3+ Bh6 23 Rxd6+ gxh6 24 Ng6, mate.

762 [VX-398]. White wins with 23 Rf3 Bh4 24 Rh3 g5 25 Nh6, mate.

763 [VX-400]. White wins with 19 Rd3 Bh4 20 Rh3 g5 21 Ng6, mate.

764 [VX-395]. White wins with 22 Rxf6 (1-0), e.g., 22...gxh6 23 Ng6, mate, or 22...Rc7 23 Rh6+ gxh6 24 Ng6, mate.

4. Black Responds to Rh3 with ...Nh7

765 [VX-402]. White wins with 22 Re3 (1-0) Nf6 23 Rh3+(this is better than 23 Qxc7 Rd7 24 Qxb6) Nh7 24 Qg6 and 25 Qxh7, mate.

766 [VX-419]. White wins with 21 Re3 Nf6 22 Rh3+ Nh7 23 Qg6, threatening mate on h7, which Black can only delay with 23...Bxg2+ 24 Kg2 (1-0) Qc6+ 25 Ne4 Qxc2+ 26 Bd2, when mate is unavoidable.

767 [VX-418]. White wins with 21 Rf3 Nf6 22 Rh3+ Nh7 23 Qg6 Kg7 (23...Bxh2+ 24 Kxh2 Qc7+ 25 Kg1 doesn't change anything) 24 Qxh7+ Kf8 25 Rf3+ Bf4 (25...Ke7 26 Qxg7, mate) 26 Rxf4+ Ke7 27 Qxg7+, when White is up two pieces.
5. Black Responds to Rh3 with ...Bh4

768 [VX-414]. White wins with 16 Ng6+ (16 Rd3 Nxe6 17 dxe5 Qxd3 is also good) Kh7 17 Rd3, e.g., 17...Bh4 18 Rh3 Qf6 19 Rxh4+ Qxh4 20 Nxh4.

769 [VX-412]. White wins with either a) 20 Qh5+ Kg8 21 Rxh4 Qxh4 22 Qxh4 or b) 20 Ng6 Bxg2 21 Rxh4+ Qxh4 22 Nxh4.

770 [VX-416]. White wins with 19 Re3 Bh4 20 Rh3 Qc4 21 Ng6+ Kh7 22 Nxh4 Qg4 23 Nf5+ Qxh3 24 Qxg7, mate.

771 [VX-417]. White wins with 21 Rd3 Bh4 (21...Qd8 22 Rh3+ Bh4 23 Qh5+ Kh7 24 Nxh4 is similar) 22 Rh3 Qxd4 23 Ng6+ Kh7 24 Rxh4 Qg4 25 Nf5+ Kh6 26 Nh6 is mate.

6. Black Responds to Rh3 with ...Bh6

774 [VX-420]. White wins with 24 Rh3+ Bh6 25 Rxe6+ Kxe6 26 Rh4+ Kg5 27 Rh5+ Kg4 28 Qf5/Qf3, mate. Note that Black’s g-pawn is not pinned.

775 [VX-420]. Here Black’s g-pawn is not pinned, so 24 Rh3+ Bh6 25 Rxe6+ gxh6 26 Qxc7 exf4 gives Black two Rooks for a Queen and two pawns and threatens 27...Re1, mate. See next diagram.

776 [VX-420]. Better than giving up the exchange with 24 Rh3+ Bh6 25 Rxe6+ is taking Black’s Queen with 24 Rh3+ Bh6 25 Qxc7 exf4, when White has a Queen and two pawns for a Rook and Bishop.
7. The Idea of Qg6, Mate

777 [VX-410]. White wins with 23 Rg4, e.g., 23...Rxd7 24 Qg6, mate, or 23...g5 24 Bxg5, mate.

778 [VX-416]. White wins with 19 Rd3 Bg5 20 Rh3+ Bh6 21 Rxh6+ (1-0) Kxh6 22 Qg6, mate.

779 [VX-405]. White wins with 21 Rd3 Bg5 22 Rh3+ (1-0) Bh6 23 Rxh6+ Kxh6 24 Qg6, mate.

780 [VX-398]. White wins with 23 Rf3 Bxg5 24 Rh3+ Bh6 25 Rxh6+ Kxh6 26 Qg6, mate.

8. The Idea of Qh5, Mate

781 [VX-395]. White wins with 22 Rx6, with the threat of 23 Rh6+ Kxh6 24 Qg6, mate.

782 [VX-420]. White wins with 24 Rh3+ Qh6 25 Rg4 Rxg8 26 Rxh6+ Kxh6 27 Qg6, mate.

783 [VX-406]. White wins with 19 Rh3+ (1-0) Bh6 20 Rxh6+ Kxh6 21 Qh5/Qg6, mate.

784 [VX-410]. White wins with 23 Bg5+ Kh7 24 Nf6+ Kh8 25 Qh5, mate.

785 [VX-415]. 26 Bxh6 wins the Knight for free, since 26...Kxh6 loses to 27 Qh5, mate. Note that 26...a6 27 Re5 also gives White a mate on h5, e.g., 27...axb5 28 Be3 Nf6 29 Rh5+ Nhx5 30 Qxh5, mate, while 26...Nf6 covers h5, but drops a second piece to 27 Bg5 Qc2 28 Bxf6. Relatively best for Black is 26...Qc2 with ...Qg6.
9. The Idea of Qg7, Mate

786 [VX-420]. White wins with 22 Rh4+ Bxh4 23 Qxg7, mate.

787 [VX-399]. White wins with 23 Ng6+ Kh7 24 Qxg7, mate.

788 [VX-416]. White wins with 23 Nf5+ Qxh3 24 Qxg7, mate.

789 [VX-404]. White wins with 22 Rf5 (1-0), threatening 23 Rh5, mate, and if 22...g6 then 23 Bf6+Bg7 24 Qxg7 is mate.

790 [VX-397]. White wins with 20 Nxc6 bxc6 21 Bxf6, threatening mate on g7, when 21...Rg8 loses to 22 Qh5, mate.

791 [VX-397]. White wins with 20 Ng6+ Kh7 21 Bxf6 Rg8 22 Nf8+, e.g., 22...Raxf8 23 Qh5, mate, or 22...Kh6 23 Qg6, mate.

792 [VX-408]. White wins with 19 Rf4 Re4 20 Qf8+ Kh7 21 Rf7, e.g., 21...Kg6 22 Rxe7+ Kh5 23 Qh8+ Kg4 24 Qh3, mate.

793 [VX-415]. 21 Bh6 wins, e.g., a) 21...gx6f 22 Ng6, mate; b) 21...Bf6 22 Bxg7+Bxg7 23 Re4, e.g., 23...Nf6 24 Rh4+ Nh7 25 Ng6, mate or c) 21...Rg8 22 Ng6+ Kh7 23 Nxe7 Ncxe7 24 Bg5 (White's threat is 25 Qh5, mate) Nf5 25 g4 Nh6 26 Bxh6, winning a piece, since 26...Kxh6 27 Qh5 is mate.

794 [VX-415]. 21 Bh6 wins, e.g., a) 21...Kxh6 22 Qg6, mate; b) 21...Rg8 22 Qg6+ Kh8 23 Nf7, mate; c) 21...Bf6 22 Bxg7 Bxg7 23 Re4-h4, mate; or d) 21...Bf6 22 Bxg7 Nxe5 (22...Bxg7 loses to 23 Re4, e.g., 23...Nf6 24 Rh4+ Nh5 25 Rxe5, mate) 23 Rxe5 Bxe5 24 Bf6+ (1-0) Kh6 25 Qg7+ Kh5 26 Qg5, mate.
10. Miscellaneous Ideas

795 [VX-407]. White wins with 17 Bxe7, attacking Black’s Rd8, when 17...Re8 drops another piece to 18 Rxd7, defending White’s Be7 and attacking Black’s Qc7.

796 [VX-400]. White wins with 19 Rd3, when Black can't stop 20 Rh4+, e.g., 19...Bh4 20 Rh3 Kh6 21 Rxh4+ Kg5 22 Qf4/Nf3/Rh5, mate, or 19...Bg5 20 Rh3+ Bh6 21 Rxh6+ Kxh6 22 Qg6, mate.

797 [VX-414]. 17 Nf7 allows 17...Nf8, defending, but 17 Qxe6+ wins, e.g., a) 17...Kxf8 18 Nf7+ wins Black’s Queen; b) 17...Kg8 18 Qxf7 or Ng6, mate; and c) 17...Kh7 18 Nf7 Nf8 19 Qf5+ Kg8 20 Nxd8.

798 [VX-411]. White wins with 21 Rd3 Rxd3 22 Qxe8+ Kh7 23 Qh5+ (a finesse; White doesn't want to take back on d3 until his Queen is on f7, attacking Black’s Bb7) 23...Kg8 24 Qf7+ Kh8 25 Nxd3, when White is up the exchange and two pawns and threatens both 26 Qxb7 and 26 Nxc5.

799 [VX-410]. White wins with 21 Bh4, threatening 22 Bg5+ Kh7 23 Nf6+ Kh8 24 Qh5, mate, e.g., a) 21...Be7 22 Bxe7 Rxe7 23 Qxe7, when White is up a Rook and two pawns (1-0) or b) 21...Bxf4 22 Rxf4 Rcd8 23 Rg4 Rxh7 24 Qg6, mate.

11. Black Refuses to Take White’s Bh7 and Plays 1...Kh8 Instead

800 [VX-394]. White wins with 22 Rf8+ Kxh7 23 Qh5, mate.

801 [VX-398]. White wins with 21 Nxf7+ Kxh7 22 Qh5+ Kg8 23 Qh8, mate.

802 [VX-393]. White wins with 19 Ng6+ fxg6 20 Bxg6, threatening 21 Qh5, which Black can prevent with 20...Qh4, but that drops the Re8 to 21 Bxe8.
12. White Answers 1...Kh8 with 2 Qh5

803 [VX-401]. White wins with 20 Qh5, threatening 21 Nx f7, mate, when a) 20...Be8 loses to 21 Bg6+ Kg8 22 Qh7, mate and b) 20...g6 loses to 21 Nx f7+ Kg7 22 Qxg6, mate.

804 [VX-399]. White wins with 21 Qh5, threatening 22 Nx f7, mate, when a) 21...Rf8 loses to 22 Bg6+ Kg8 23 Qh7, mate and b) 21...Nxe5 loses to 22 Bg6+ Kg8 23 Qh7+ Kf8 24 Qh8, mate.

805 [VX-391]. White wins with 29 Qh5, threatening 30 Bg6+ Kg8 31 Qh7, mate, e.g., a) 29...g6 30 Bxg6+ Kg7 31 Qh7, mate or b) 29...Be7 30 Bxg6+ Kg7 31 Qh7 Kf8 32 Qh8, mate.

806 [VX-404]. White wins with 20 Qh5, threatening not so much 21 Bf5+, winning Black's Queen, but 21 Bg6+ Kg8 22 Qh7, mate, e.g., a) 20...g6 21 Bxg6+ Kg8 22 Qh7, mate or b) 20...Bd6 21 Bg6+ Kg8 22 Qh7+ Kf8 23 Qh8, mate.

807 [VX-390]. White wins with 24 Qh5, threatening not so much 25 Be4+, winning Black's Queen, but 25 Bg6+ Kg8 26 Qh7, mate, e.g., a) 24...g6 25 Bxg6+ Kg8 26 Qh7, mate or b) 24...Be7 25 Bxg6+ Kg8 26 Qh7+ Kf8 27 Qh8, mate.

808 [VX-402]. White wins with 20 Qh5, e.g., a) 20...g6 21 Bxg6+ Kg8 22 Qh7+ Kf8 23 Qxf7/Rxf7, mate; b) 20...f6 21 Bg6+ Kg8 22 Qh7+ Kf8 23 Qh8+ Ke7 24 Qxg7, mate; or c) 20...Ng8 21 Rxf7 Qc8 (21...Nxh7 loses to 22 g6 with 23 Rxh6+ gxh6 24 Qg6, mate, or 22...Kf8 23 Qh8+ Ke7 24 Qxf6, mate.

809 [VX-395]. White wins with 21 Bg6+ Kg8 22 Bxf7+, e.g., a) 22...Rxf7 23 Qxf7+ Kh7 24 Rxf6, when White is up a Rook and two pawns and threatens 23 Rxh6+ gxh6 24 Qg6, mate, or b) 22...Kf8 23 Qh8+ Ke7 24 Qxe8+ Kd6 25 Qxe6, mate.

810 [VX-395]. White wins with 21 Bg6+ Kg8 22 Bxf7+ Nxf7 (22...Kf8 drops the Queen to 23 Nd7+) 23 Qxf7+, e.g., a) 23...Kh8 24 Ng6+ Kh7 25 Rf5, threatening 26 Rh5, mate and b) 23...Kh7 24 Nd7 Qe6 25 Nxf6+, when Black has to give up his Queen to stop 26 Qh5, mate.

811 [VX-418]. White wins with 20 Rxf6 Qxf6 21 Bg6+ Kg8 22 Nf3, threatening 23 Bg5 Qf8 24 Qh7, mate, when 22...e5 23 Bg5 Qe6 saves the Queen but loses to 24 Qh7+ Kf8 25 Rf1 Be7 26 Qh8+ Qg8 27 Nxe5+ Bf6 28 Rxf6+ gxf6 29 Qxf6+ Qf7 30 Qxf7, mate.
13. Black Refuses to Take White’s Bh7 and Plays 1...Kf8 Instead

812 [VX-410]. 18 Qh5 wins, e.g., a) 18... Nf6 19 Nxf7+ Qxf7 20 Qxf7; b) 18... Rf8 18 Bg6+ Kg8 20 Qh7, mate; or c) 18... Bxe5 19 Bg6+ Kg8 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 fxe5, e.g., 21...Ke7 22 Rxf7+ Kd8 23 Bh4+ Re7 24 Bxe7+ Ke8 25 Rxg7, mate.

813 [VX-405]. 19 Qh5 wins, e.g., a) 19...Rf8 20 Bg6+ Kg8 21 Qh7, mate; b) 19...Qe7 20 Bg6+ Kg8 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Qh8, mate; and c) 19...Bxe5 20 Bg6+ Kg8 21 Bxf7+ Kf8 22 Rxe5 wins the exchange on e8, since 22...Red8 23 Bxe6 Ke7 loses to 24 d6+ Rxd6 25 Qf7+ Kd8 26 Qf8, mate.

814 [VX-416]. 17 Qh5 can be met by 17...Be8, defending, although White remains up a pawn.

815 [VX-417]. White wins Black’s Queen with 19 Nd7+.

816 [VX-403]. White wins the exchange with 19 Nd7+ Rxd7 20 Rxd7.

817 [VX-415]. White wins with 20 Bc2, threatening both 21 Qh8, mate, and 21 Bxa4, winning Black’s Queen.

818 [VX-411]. White can win another pawn with 20 Nxf7, since 20...Kxf7 loses to 21 Qxe6+ Kf8 22 Qg8, mate.

819 [VX-399]. White can another pawn with 21 Nxf7, since 21...Kxf7 loses to 22 Qxe6+ Kf8 23 Qxe7, mate.

820 [VX-413]. Black’s Nf6 is pinned, allowing White to win with 21 Bh6 gxh6 22 Rg8+ Nxg8 23 Qxf7, mate.
821 [VX-402]. White wins with 20 Qh5, threatening 21 Rxh7, mate, e.g., 20...Re7 21 Bg6, threatening 22 Qh8, mate or 20...Nb8 21 Bg6 wins, e.g., Rd7 22 Rxe5 Rxe5 (22...dxe5 23 Bb4+) 23 Qh8+ Ke7 24 Rxf7, mate.

822 [VX-408]. White wins with 17 Rxf7+ Kxf7 18 Qh5+ (1-0), e.g., a) 18...Kf8 19 Rf1+ Bf5 20 Bg6 (White's threat is 21 Qh8, mate) Kg8 21 Qh7+ Kh8 22 Qh8, mate, or b) 18...Ke6 19 Qh7 Rf8 (19...fxe5 20 Qxf7+ wins Black's Re8 after 20...Kd6 21 dxe5+) 20 Nxf7 gives White an attack.

823 [VX-389]. White wins with 15 Qh5, e.g., a) 15...g6 16 Bxg6 fxg6 17 Qh7+, threatening Qf7, mate, and if 17...Re7, then 18 Qh8 is mate, or b) 15...Ke7 16 Qh7 Rf8 (19...fxe5 20 Qxf7+ wins Black's Re8 after 20...Kd6 21 dxe5+) 20 Nxf7 gives White an attack.

824 [VX-409]. White gets an attack with 16 Qh5 Bxe3+ 17 Kh1 Ng6 18 Bxg6, e.g., a) 18...fxg6 19 Qh7 19...fxe5 (19...Qe7 20 Qh8, mate) 20 fxe5+ creates a mating net or b) 18...Ke7 19 Qh7 Rf8 (19...fxe5 20 Qxf7+ wins Black's Re8 after 20...Kd6 21 dxe5+) 20 Nxf7 gives White an attack.

825 [VX-409]. White wins with 15 Nxb7+ Kg8 16 Nf6+ fxg6 17 Qh5, threatening 18 Qxf7+ Kh8 19 Qh7, mate, and if 17...Bxe3+ 18 Kh1 Ng6, then 19 Bxg6 wins, e.g., a) 19...fxe6 20 Qxg6+ Kh8 21 Nf7, mate, or b) 19...Kf8 20 Qh7 Ke7 21 Qxb7+ Kd6 22 Ne4+, winning both the Be3 and the Re8.

826 [VX-396]. White wins with 26 Ng6+ Kf7 27 Qh5, threatening 28 Ne5+ and 29 Qf7, mate and if Black covers f7 with 27...Qf6 then 28 Ne7+ wins, e.g., a) 28...Kf8 29 Bg6 threatens 30 Qh8, mate or b) 28...g6 29 Bxg6+ Kf8, when Black's Queen defends h8, but White wins material with 30 Qh6+ Qg7 31 Qxg7+ Kxg7 32 Bxe8.

827 [VX-415]. White's strong minor pieces allow White to play the Queen sacrifice 20 Qxg6 fxg6 21 Bh6+ Ke8 22 Bxg6, mate.

828 [VX-410]. White threatens Qxf7, mate, but 18...Nf6 defends f7 and attacks White's Qh5, although White remains up a pawn after 19 Qh4.

829 [VX-419]. White has no attack, e.g., a) 19 Bg6 loses to 19...Nf6, when two of White's pieces are under attack; b) 19 Qh5 Nf6 20 Qxe5 Qxe5 21 Rxe5 Nxf7; or c) 19 Rxf7+ Kxf7 20 Qg6+ Ke7 21 Kg5+ Kf8 22 Rf1+ Nf6.
389. White it up a pawn and has a target in Black’s weak Bd7. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bxh7+ Kxh7 15 Qh5+ Kg8 16 Qxf7+ Kh7 17 Nxd7. What is the material balance?  

\[ 14...Kf8 \text{ loses to 15 Qh5, e.g., a) 15...g6 16 Bxg6 fxg6 17 Qh7, threatening Qf7, mate, and if 17...Re7, then 18 Qh8 is mate, or b) 15...Ke7 16 Qxf7+ Kd6 17 Qxg7, when White is up four pawns.} \]

390. White is up a pawn, but Black is threatening mate on g2. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Bxh7+ Kxh7 23 Qh5+ Kg8 24 Qxf7+ Kh8. What is the material balance and what’s the best way for White to prevent mate on g2?  

\[ 22...Kh8 \text{ loses to 23 Rxh7 Qxb7 24 Qh5, threatening 25 Bg6+ Kg8 26 Qh7, mate, e.g., 24...g6 25 Bxg6+ Kg8 26 Qh7, mate, or 24...Be7 25 Bxg6+ Kg8 26 Qh7+ Kh8 27 Qh8, mate.} \]

391. Visualize the position after the moves 28 Bxh7+ Kxh7 29 Qh5+ Kg8 30 Rxe5 Rxe5 31 Qxf7+ Kh7. How does White win here?  

\[ 28...Kh8 \text{ loses to 29 Qh5, e.g., 29...g6 30 Bxg6+ Kg7 31 Qh7, mate.} \]

392. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Bxf6 Bxf6 21 Bxh7+ Kxh7 22 Qh5+ Kg8 23 Qxf7+ Kh8. How can White win material here?  

\[ 21...Kxh8 \text{ drops the Queen to 22 Nxf7+, while 21...Kf8 22 Bd3 just drops a pawn.} \]
393. Black's Re8 is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxh7+ Kxh7 18 Qh5+ Kg8 19 Qxf7+ Kh7. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 Best is 17...Kh8 18 Bxe7 Rxe7 (18...Qxe7 allows 19 Ng6+ fxg6 20 Bxg6, threatening 21 Qh5, and if 20...Qh4 drops the Re8 to 21 Bxe8) 19 Qh5 Qh6 20 Qxh6 gxh6 21 Bf5, when White is up a pawn. 2 Hint: White has a better move than 20 Qxe8.

394. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Bxh7+ Kxh7 22 Qh5+ Kg8 23 Qf7+ Kh8 24 Rd3 Nf6. How does White win here? There are two solutions.

1 21...Kh8 loses to 22 Rf8+ Kxh7 23 Qh5, mate. 2 23...Kh7 loses to 24 Rd3 (1-0), e.g., 24...Re7 25 Rh3, mate, or 24...Nf6 25 Rh3+ Nh5 26 Rfx5, mate.

395. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Bxh7+ Kxh7 20 Qh5+ Kg8 21 Qxf7+ Kh8 22 Rxf6#. What is White's threat and how does White win after either 23...gx6f or 23...Re7?

1 19...Kh8 loses to 20 Qh5, threatening 21 Nxf7, mate, when a) 20...Re7 loses to 21 Bg6+ Kg8 22 Bxf7+, e.g., 22...Kf8 (after 22...Rx7 23 Qxf7+ Kh7 24 Rx6, White is up a Rook and two pawns and threatens 25 Rfx6+ Kxh6 26 Qg6, mate) 23 Qh8+ Ke7 24 Qxe8+ Kd6 25 Qxe6, mate, and b) 20...Ne5 loses to 21 Bg6+ Kg8 22 Bxf7+ Nxf7 (22...Kf8 drops the Queen to 23 Nd7+, 23 Qxf7+ and now: b1) 23...Kh8 24 Ng6+ Kh7 25 Rf5, threatening 26 Rh5, mate and b2) 23...Kh7 24 Nd7 Qc6 loses to 25 Nx6f+, when Black has to give up his Queen to stop 26 Qh5, mate. 2 21...Kh7 drops the Bishop to 22 Rxf6, when White threatens 23 Rh6+ Kxh6 24 Qg6, mate.

396. White is up a piece, but his Ne5 is under attack and his Rb7 is out of play. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Bxh7+ Kxh7 26 Qh5+ Kg8 27 Qf7+ Kh7. How does White win here?

1 25...Kh8 drops the Queen to 26 Nf7+, while after 25...Kf8 26 Ng6+ Kf7 27 Qh5, White threatens mate in two with 28 Ne5+ and 29 Qf7, mate and if Black covers f7 with 27...Qf6 then 28 Ne7+ wins, e.g., 28...Kf8 29 Bg6 threatens 30 Qh8, mate, or if Black plays 28...Qg6 to defend h8 with his Qf6, then White wins material with 29 Bxg6+ Kg8 30 Qh6+ Qg7 31 Qxg7+ Kxg7 32 Bxe8 Rxe8 33 Nf5+ Kf8 24 Rxe8+ Kxe8 25 Nxd6+ cxd6 36 Rxb6.
397. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxh7+ Kxh7 18 Qh5+ Kg8 19 Qxf7+ Kh8 20 Ng6+ Kh7 21 Bxf6 Rg8. How does White in this position?

1 19...Kh7 loses to 20 Nxc6 (1-0), e.g., 20...bxc6 21 Bxf6, threatening 22 Qxg7, when 21...Rg8 loses to 22 Qh5, mate, or b) 20...Bxb2 21 Qh5+ Kg8 22 Ne7+ with 23 Rxc7, winning Black’s Queen.

398. Two of White’s pieces are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Bxh7+ Kxh7 21 Qh5+ Kg8 22 Qxf7+ Kh7 23 Rf3 Bxg5 24 Rh3+ Bh6. How does White win here?

1 20...Kf8 loses to 21 Nxf7, e.g., 21...Kxf7 (21...Re8 22 Qxe6) 22 Qxe6+ Kf8 23 Qxe7, mate, or b1) 21...Nxe5 22 Bg6+ Kg8 23 Qh7+ Kh8 24 Kh8, mate, or b2) 21...Rf8 22 Bg6+ Kg8 23 Qh7, mate. 2 22...Kh8 loses to 23 Ng6+ Kh7 24 Qxg7, mate.

399. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Bxh7+ Kxh7 21 Qh5+ Kg8 22 Qxf7+ Kh7 23 Re3 Rg5 24 Rh3+ Bh6. How does White win here?

1 20...Kf8 loses to 21 Nxf7, e.g., 21...Kxf7 (21...Re8 22 Qxe6) 22 Qxe6+ Kf8 23 Qxe7, mate, while 20...Kh8 loses to 21 Qh5, threatening 22 Nxf7, mate, e.g., b1) 21...Nxe5 22 Bg6+ Kg8 23 Qh7+ Kh8 24 Qh8, mate, or b2) 21...Rf8 22 Bg6+ Kg8 23 Qh7, mate. 2 22...Kh8 loses to 23 Ng6+ Kh7 24 Qxg7, mate.

400. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxh7+ Kxh7 16 Bxf6 Bxf6 17 Qh5+ Kg8 18 Qxf7+ Kh8 19 Rd3 Bh4 20 Rh3 g5. How does White win here?

1 15 Bxf6 Bxf6 16 Bxh7 Kxh7 transposes. 2 a) 15...Nxe5 16 Qxe7 wins the exchange, since 16...Re8 17 Rxd7 drops a piece; b) 15...Kf8 concedes the pawn; c) 15...Kh8 gives White a lot of options, such as continuing the attack with 16 Bxf6 Bxf6 17 Qh5 or entering an ending with 16 Nxd7 Rxd7 17 Rxd7 Qxd7 18 Bxf6 Bxf6 19 Rd1. 3 Other moves lose to 21 Rh4, mate.
401. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Bxh7+ Kxh7 20 Qh5+ Kg8 21 Qxf7+ Kh7 22 Bf4 Bd6 23 Rd3 Be7. How does White win here?

1 19...Kh8 loses to 20 Qh5 threatening 21 Nxf7, mate, when 20...Be8 loses to 21 Bg6+ Kg8 22 Qh7, mate, and 20...g6 loses to 21 Nxf7+ Kg7 22 Qxg6, mate. 2 21...Kh8 22 Bf4 is similar to the game. 3 This clears the third rank for White's Rook. 4 Moving the Bd7 or the Nc3 drops the Queen. 22...Be7 23 Rd3 doesn't change anything.

402. Black has just undefended his f-pawn with Rfe8. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Bxh7+ Kxh7 20 Qh5+ Kg8 21 Qxf7+ Kh7 22 Re3 R. What is White's threat and how does White mate in three after 22...Nf6?

1 a) 19...Kh8 loses to 20 Qh5, e.g., a1) 20...g6 loses to 21 Bxg6+ Kg8 22 Qh7+ Kh8 23 Rxf7/Qxf7, mate; a2) 20...f6 loses to 21 Bg6+ Kg8 22 Qh7+ Kh8 23 Qh8+ Kh7 24 Qxg7, mate; a3) 20...Nf8 loses to 21 Rxf7 Kh7 22 g6 with 23 Qxh7, mate; b) 19...Kf8 loses to 20 Qh5, with the threat of 21 Rh3, mate, e.g., 20...Re7 21 Bg6, threatening 22 Qh8, mate, or 20...Nb8 21 Bg6 Rd7 22 Rxe5 Rxe5 (22...dxe5 23 Bb4+) 23 Qh8+ Kh7 24 Rxf7, mate. 2 21...Kh7 loses to 22 Rf3/Re3 with 23 Rh3, mate.

403. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxf6 Bxf6 18 Bxh7+ Kxh7 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Qxf7+ Kh7 21 Rxd6 Qxd6 22 Qxb7 Re8 23 Qe4+. What is the material balance?

1 Moving the King drops the exchange, e.g., 18...Kh8 19 Nxf7+ Kxh7 20 Nx6 or 18...Kf8 19 Nd7+ Rxd7 20 Rxd7. 2 21 Qxb7 immediately looks dangerous because of 21...Rxd1, attacking both the Re1 and the Ne5, but White can defend with 22 Qe4+ Kg8 23 Rxd1, when Black's attack on White's Ne5 is mitigated by White's attack on Black's Ra8. 3 After 21...Bxe5 22 Qh5+ Kg8 23 Qxe5 White is up the exchange and two pawns (1-0).

404. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Bxh7+ Kxh7 20 Qh5+ Kg8 21 Qxf7+ Kh7 22 Rf5 Re6 23 Bf6 Rxf6 24 Rxf6 Qg4 25 Qxb7. What is the material balance?

1 19...Kh8 loses to 20 Qh5, threatening 21 Bg6+ Kg8 22 Qh7, mate, when 20...g6 loses to 21 Bxg6+ Kg8 22 Qh7, mate, and 20...Bd6 loses to 21 Bg6+ Kg8 22 Bxf7+ Kf8 23 Qh8, mate. 2 Worse is 21...Kh8 22 Rf5 (1-0). 3 22 Rf5 doesn't work because Rh3 isn't a check. 4 White's threat is 25 Rf5-h5. 5 After 24...Be6 25 Rf5, the only way that Black can stop Rh5, mate, is by giving up his Queen. 6 25 Rf5 Qd1+ is less straightforward.
405. Black has just undefended his f-pawn with Re8. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxf6 Bxf6 18 Bxh7+ Kxh7 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Qxf7+ Kh7 21 Rd3Bg5 22 Rh3+Bh6. How does White win here?

1 18...Kf8 drops the Queen to 19 Nd7+, while 18...Kh8 loses to 19 Qh5, threatening 20 Nxf7, mate, when 19...Qe7 loses to 20 Bg6+ Kg8 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Qh8, mate; and 19...Bxe5 20 Bg6+ Kg8 21 Bxf7+ Kf8 22 Rxh5 wins the exchange on e8, since 22...Rd8 23 Bxe6 threatens mate on f7, when 23...Kxe7 loses to 24 d6+ Rxd6 25 Qf7+ Kd8 26 Qf8, mate. 2 20...Kh8 loses to 21 Rd3 Bg5 22 Rh3+ Bh6 23 Rxh6+ gxf6 24 Ng6, mate.

406. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bxh7+ Kxh7 15 Qh5+ Kg8 16 Qxf7+ Kh7 17 Re3 Rd4 18 g4 Bg5 19 Rh7, mate. How does White win here?

1 17...Qxe3 18 fxe3 Bxe5 loses to 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Qxe5, when White is up a Queen and two pawns for a Rook and Bishop. 2 18...Rxg4+ 19 Nxg4 Bh4 loses to 20 Re5, but Black can prevent mate with 18...Bh4 19 Rh3 Rg4+ 20 Nxg4 Qg5, although White is still winning after 21 Kh1, e.g., a) 21...Qxg4 loses to 22 Rg1 22...Qd4 23 Rxh4+ Qxh4 24 Qxg7 is mate, or 22...Qe4+ 23 f3, when Black can't stop both 24 Qg7 and 24 Rxh4+); or b) 21...e5 22 Rg1 Bxg4 23 Qxb7 Rd8 24 Qe4+, winning both of Black's Bishops.

407. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxh7+ Kxh7 17 Bxf6 Bxf6 18 Qh5+ Kg8 19 Qxf7+ Kh7. How does White win here?

1 16...Kf8 concedes the pawn, while after 16...Nxf7 17 Bxc7, White is attacking Black's Rd8, when 17...Re8 18 Rxd7 defends the Be7 and attacks Black's Qc7.

408. Black has just taken White's pawn on e5, attacking White's Bg5. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxh7+ Kxh7 17 Qh5+ Kg8 18 Qxf7+ Kh7 19 Rf4 Re4 20 Ra1. How does White win here?

1 16...Kf8 loses to 17 Rxf7+ Kxf7 18 Qh5+ (1-0), e.g., a) 18...Kg8 19 Qe8+ Kd6 20 Qxe5+ Kd7 21 Bf5, mate, or b) 18...Kf8 19 Rf1+ Bf5 20 Bg6 (White's threat is 21 Qh8, mate) Kg8 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Qh8, mate. 2 18...Kxh8 19 Rf4 Re4 loses to 20 Qf8+ Kh7 21 Rf7, e.g., 21...Kg6 22 Rxg7+ Kh5 23 Qh8+ Kg4 24 Kh7, mate. 3 White's threat is 21 Qh5+ Kg8 22 Rf8, mate.
409. Black has just taken White's Bd2. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Nxf6+ gxf6\(^1\) 15 Bxh7+ Kxh7\(^2\) 16 Qh5+ Kg7 17 Qxf7+ Kh8 18 Rf3 Bxe3+ 19 Kh1\(^R\) Bxf4. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 14...Kh8 loses to 15 Nxf7, mate, while after 14...Kf8 15 Nxh7+ Kg8 16 Qd2, White is up a piece and a pawn. \(^2\) This gives White a mate in six. Black can avoid mate with either 15...Kf8 or 15...Kg7. See the answer key for details.

410. Black has just undefended his f-pawn with Rfe8 and his Nd7 is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxh7+ Kxh7\(^1\) 18 Qh5+ Kg8 19 Qxf7+ Kh7\(^2\) 20 Nxd7\(^3\) Kh6 21 Bh4\(^4\) Bxf4\(^5\) 22 Rxf4 Rcd8. How White can mate in two?

\(^1\) 17...Kf8 concedes the pawn, while 17...Kh8 loses to 18 Qh5, threatening 19 Nxf7, mate, and if 18...Bxe5 then 19 Bg6+ Kg8 20 Qh7+ Kh8 21 fxe5 wins, e.g., 21...Ke7 22 Rxf7+ Kd8 23 Bb4+ Re7 24 Bxe7+ Ke8 25 Rxe7, mate. \(^2\) Better is 19...Kh8, although White wins back his piece with 20 Nxd7 Re7 21 Qh5+ Kg8 22 Ne5. \(^3\) White's threat is 21 Nf6+ Kh6/Kh8 22 Qh5, mate. \(^4\) White's main threat is 22 Bg5+ Kh7 23 Nf6+ Kh8 24 Qh5, mate. \(^5\) After 21...Be7 22 Bxe7, White threatens 23 Bg5+, so Black has to give up the exchange with 22...Rxe7 23 Qxe7, when White is up a Rook and two pawns (1-0).

411. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxf6 Bxf6 18 Bxh7+ Kxh7\(^1\) 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Qxf7+ Kh8\(^2\) 21 Rd3 Rxd3 22 Qxe8+ Kh7 23 Qh5+\(^3\) Kg8 24 Qf7+ Kh8 25 Nxd3. What is the material balance and what are White's two main threats?

\(^1\) 18...Kf8 19 Rxd8 Rxd8 20 Nxf7 gives White two pawns since 20...Kxf7 loses to 21 Qxe6+ Kf8 22 Qg8, mate. \(^2\) 20...Kh7 21 Rd3 Rxd3 loses to 22 Qh5+ Kg8 23 Qxe8+. \(^3\) A finesse. White doesn't want to take on d3 until his Queen is on f7, attacking Black's Bb7.

412. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bxf6 Bxf6 15 Bxh7+ Kxh7\(^1\) 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17 Qxf7+\(^R\) Kh7 18 Rd3 Qd8\(^2\) 19 Rh3+ Bh4 20 Qh5+ Kg8. How does White win here?

\(^1\) White is up a pawn after 15...Kf8 16 dxc5 Bxe5 (16...bxc5 17 Nd7+ Ke7 18 Nxf6) 17 Qxe5 bxc5. \(^2\) To be able to play ...Bh4.
413. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Bxh7+ Kxh7 21 Bxf6 Bxf6 22 Qh5+ Kg8 23 Qxf7+ Kh8 24 Rh3+ Bh4. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 The alternatives are also bad, e.g., a) 20...Kh8 drops the Queen to 21 Nxf7+; b) 20...Nxh7 loses to 21 Qxf7+ (1-0) Kh8 22 Ng6, mate; and c) 20...Kf8 21 Bh6 gxh6 loses to 22 Rg8+ Nhx8 23 Qxf7, mate. 2 Hint: White can win Black's Queen with 25 Rxh4+ Qxh4 26 Ng6+, but has a better move.

414. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Nh5 Nhx5 13 Bxh7+ Kxh7 14 Qxh5+ Kg8 15 Qxf7+ Kh8 16 Qg6+ Kg7 17 Qxe6+ Kh7. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 15...Kh8 loses to 16 Ng6+ Kh7 17 Rd3. 2 Black has a Rook and Bishop for a Queen and two pawns after 16 Rd3 Nxe5 17 dxe5 Qxd3 18 cxd3 (1-0, 21). 3 17 Nf7 Nh8 lets Black equalize. 4 17...Kh8 drops the Queen to 18 Nf7+. 5 Hint: White is up three pawns after 19 Nxd8 Nxe6 20 Nxe6, but can do better.

415. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bxf6 Bxf6 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Qxf7+ Kh8 21 Re3 Bh4 22 Rh3 Qc4 21 Ng6+ Kh7 22 Nxh4 Qg4. How does White mate in three? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 16...Kh8/Kf8 17 Bd3 concedes the pawn, but after 16...Kh8 White can also play 17 Qh5, threatening 18 Nxf7 mate, and if 17...Be8 then 18 Rxd8 Rxd8 19 Ng6+ fxg6 20 Bxg6+ Kg8 21 Bxe8 Rxb2 nets White a pawn. 2 18...Kh7 loses to 19 Rd3 Bg5 20 Rh3+ Bh6 21 Rxh6+ (1-0) Kxh6 22 Qg6, mate.

416. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxf6 Bxf6 16 Bxh7+ Kxh7 17 Qh5+ Kg8 18 Qxf7+ Kh8 19 Re3 Bh4 20 Rh3 Qc4 21 Ng6+ Kh7 22 Nxh4 Qg4. How does White mate in two?

1 16...Kh8/Kf8 17 Bd3 concedes the pawn, but after 16...Kh8 White can also play 17 Qh5, threatening 18 Nxf7 mate, and if 17...Be8 then 18 Rxd8 Rxd8 19 Ng6+ fxg6 20 Bxg6+ Kg8 21 Bxe8 Rxb2 nets White a pawn. 2 18...Kh7 loses to 19 Rd3 Bg5 20 Rh3+ Bh6 21 Rxh6+ (1-0) Kxh6 22 Qg6, mate.
417. Black has just undefended his f-pawn with Rfe8. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxf6 Nxf6 17 Nxf6+ Bxf6 18 Bxh7+ Kxh7 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Qxf7+ Kh7 21 Rd3 Bh4 22 Rh3 Qxd4. How does White win here?

1 18...Kf8 drops the Queen to 19 Nd7+, while 18...Kh8 loses to 19 Qh5, threatening 20 Nxf7, mate, and if 19...Bxe5 then 20 Bg6+ Kg8 21 Bxh7+ Kh8 22 dxe5, when White is up a couple of pawns and has an attack. 2 20...Kh8 loses to 21 Rd3, e.g., 21...Qd8 22 Rh3+ Bh4 23 Ng6+ Kh7 24 Nxe4 or 21...Bxe5 22 Kxg2 Bb4 23 Rh3 Qd4 24 Ng6+ Kh7 25 Rhx4+, winning Black's Queen. 3 19...Qd8 22 Rh3+ Bh4 23 Qh5+ Kg8 24 Rxh4 is similar to the game.

418. Black has just undefended his f-pawn with Rfe8. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxh7 Nxf6 18 Bxh7+ Kxh7 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Qf7+ Kh8 21 Rd3 Bh4 22 Rh3 Qxd4. What is the material balance and what is Black's only legal move in this position?

1 18...Kh8 19 Qh5 Nf6 loses to 20 Rxf6 Qxf6 21 Bg6+ Kg8 22 Nf3, threatening to trap Black's Queen with 23 Bg5, since 23...Qf8 loses to 24 Qh7+, mate, and if 22...e5 23 Bg5 Qe6, then White mates with 24 Qh7+ Kh8 25 Rf1 Be7 26 Qh8+ Qg8 27 Nxe5+ Bf6 28 Rxf6+ gxf6 29 Qxf6+ Qf7 30 Qxf7, mate. 2 21...Qh4 22 Rh3 wins Black's Queen. 3 23...Bxh2+ 24 Kxh2 Qc7+ 25 Kg1 doesn't change anything. 4 25...Ke7 loses to 26 Qxg7, mate (1-0).

419. Visualize the position after the moves 16 e5 dxe5 17 fxe5 Bxe5 18 Bxh7+ Kxh7 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Qxf7+ Kh8 21 Re3 Nf6 22 Rh3+ Nh7 23 Qg6 Bxg2+ 24 Kxg2 Qc6+ 25 Ne4 Qxe2+. Should White be concerned about Black's attack 25...Qxc2?

1 16...Be7 is also possible. 2 17...Nxe5 18 Qg3 pins Black's Ne5. 3 Black can defend with 18...Kf8, e.g., 19 Qh5 (after 19Bg6 can be met by 19...Nf6, two of White's pieces are under attack) Nf6 20 Qxe5 Qxe5 21 Rxe5 Nxf7, when the Queens are off the board and material is even. 4 After 20...Kh7 21 Re3, Black can only prevent mate by giving up his Queen for a Rook, e.g., 21...Bg3 22 Rxg3 Qxg3 23 hxg3.

420. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bxh7+ Kxh7 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Qxf7+ Kh7 21 Bd4 Ne5 22 Bxe5 dxe5 23 Ra3 Bg5 24 Rh3+ Bh6 25 Qxc7 (the point to 20...Kh8 is that after 25 Rxe6+ Black can play 25...gxh6 26 Qxc7 exf4, with two Rooks for a Queen and two pawns) 25...exf4, when White has a Queen and two pawns for a Rook and Bishop. 3 21...Bf6 loses to 22 Rh4+ Bxh4 23 Qxh7, mate. 4 22 Rh4+ Bxh4 23 Qxc7 gives White a Queen and two pawns for a Rook and Knight. 5 23...Qd6 24 Rh3+ Qh6 25 Rg4 Rg8 26 Rxf6+ Kxh6 27 Qg6 is mate.
CHAPTER 14. THE SEQUENCE 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Qxf7

This chapter contains exercises involving the sequence 1 Bh7+ Kxh7 2 Qxf7, when White has sacrificed a piece for two pawns, but has obtained a dominant Queen on f7 that opposes Black's King on h7.

In Diagram 1, after the moves 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Qxf7 (see Diagram 2), White threatens 3 Rh3, mate, when 2...Kh6 loses to 3 Rh3+ Kg5 4 Rh5+ Kg4 with either 5 Qf3, 5 f3, or 5 h3, mate.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. Mate Threats Along the h-file
2. Mate Threats Involving g7
3. Mate Threats with a White Pawn on g6
4. Miscellaneous Mates
5. White Wins Material

These themes are illustrated using forty-three preparatory positions, which are followed by sixteen visualization exercises ranging in depth from seven to twenty-seven ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply:</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Mate Threats Along the h-file

830 [VX-421]. 22 Rh5 is mate.

831 [VX-428]. 28 Rh3+ Qh6 29 Rxh6 is mate.

832 [VX-422]. The threat of 24 Rh4, mate, wins Black's Queen, e.g., 23...Nf5 24 Qxc7.

833 [VX-432]. White wins with 23 Re4-h4, taking advantage of Black's pinned Nf6.

834 [VX-432]. White wins with 23 Rd4, threatening 24 Rh4, mating, although Black can stop the mate by giving up his Queen with 23...Qxd4.

835 [VX-425]. White wins with 22 Ra4 Qd8 24 Rxd7 Qg5 25 Rh4+, e.g., 25...Qxh4 26 Qxg7, mate, or 25...Qh6 26 Qxg7, mate.

836 [VX-424]. White wins with 23 Re4 Qd8 24 Rxd7 Qg5 25 Rh4+, e.g., 25...Qxh4 26 Qxg7, mate.

837 [VX-431]. White wins with 26 Re1, e.g., 26...Rd8 27 Re3 Kh6 28 Bc1 Nxe5 29 Rh3, mate.

838 [VX-431]. Here 28 Rh3+ loses to 28...Qxh3, when White can't take back because his g-pawn is pinned, but 28 e6 closes off the c8-h3 diagonal and threatens both 29 Rh3 and 29 Qxg7, mate.
2. Mate Threats Involving g7

839 [VX-436]. White wins with 26 Qg7+ Ke6 27 Nf4+ Kf5 28 g4/Qg6, mate.

840 [VX-432]. White wins with 26 Qg6 Bf8 27 Rxe8.

841 [VX-432]. White wins with 24 Rg5 (24 Rh5+ Nh5 defends g7), e.g., 24...Bf8 25 Bxf6 with 26 Rh5, mate.

842 [VX-427]. White wins with 18 Nh5 (1-0) Rg8 19 Nxf6+ Kh8 20 Qxg6 (White's threat is 21 Qh7, mate) gxf6 21 Qh6, mate.

843 [VX-427]. White wins with 18 Nh5 threatening 19 Qxg7, mate, e.g., a) 18...Nf5 19 Rxe8 Qxe8 20 Nf6+ wins Black's Queen; b) 18...Rg8 19 Nf6+ Kh6/Kh8 20 Qh5, mate.

844 [VX-428]. White can mate in three different ways: a) 26 Rd7 Bxd7 27 Rxd7 Rg8 28 Qh5, mate; b) 26 Qh5+ (1-0) Kg8 27 Qxe8+ Kh7 28 Qh5+ Kg8 29 Rd8+ Qxd8 30 Rxd8, mate; or c) 26 g4 cxd3 27 Rxd3 e5 28 Rh3+ Qh6 29 Rxh6, mate.

845 [VX-426]. 25 Qg4 wins, e.g., a) 25...f6 26 Bg6 (White's threat is 27 Qh5-h8, mate) fx5 27 dxe5 Qc7 28 Qh5, mating, e.g., 28...Bc5 29 Qh8+ Ke7 30 Qxg7, mate; b) 25...g6 26 Bxg6 fxg6 27 Qxg6 Bd8 (this stops the mate on g7, but allows mate in three) 28 Qh6+ Kg8 29 Qh8+ Kf7 30 Qg7, mate.

846 [VX-426]. Black to play has no defense, e.g., 25...Bf6 drops the Qd7, 25...Rg8 26 Qh5 is mate, and 25...Kh6 loses to 26 Bxg7+, e.g., 26...Kh7 27 Bf8+ Kh8 28 Qg7, mate, or 26...Kh5 27 Re5+ Kg4 (27...Kh4 28 Qh5/Kf4, mate) and now: a) 28 h3/Qf3+ Kh4 29 Qh5, mate; b) 28 Qh5+ Kf4 29 g3/Qf3, mate; c) 28 Qf3+ Kh4 29 Rh5/Qh5/Qh3/Qg3/Qg4/Qf4/Qe4, mate.
3. Mate Threats with a White Pawn on g6

847 [VX-429]. White wins with 27 Qh7+ Kf8 28 Qh8, mate.

848 [VX-435]. White wins with 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Qh8+ Ke7 19 Qxg7, mate.

849 [VX-434]. White mates in four with 28 Qh7+ Kf8 29 Qh8+ Ke7 30 Qxg7+ Ke8 31 Qf7, mate.

850 [VX-433]. Here 23 Qh7+ Kf8 24 Qh8+ can be met by 24...Bg8, but White can win with 23 Nxe6 and 24 Qh7, mate.

851 [VX-435]. White wins with 19 Qh4, e.g., a) 19...Kg8 20 Rf3, mates, b) 19...Be7 20 Qh8, mate; or c) 19...Qd7 20 Rf3+ Qf7 21 Rxf7+ Kg8 22 Qh7, mate.

852 [VX-435]. White wins with 19 Rf3 Qxf3 20 Qxf3, when White has a Queen and two pawns for a Rook and Bishop.

853 [VX-429]. White can either win Black's Queen with 27 Qh7+ Kf8 28 Ne6+ or mate with 27 Rde1, threatening 28 Qh7+ Kf8 29 Qh8, mate.

854 [VX-435]. White wins with 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Qh8+ Ke7 19 Qh4+ Kf8 20 Rg1, when Black can't stop 21 Rg3-f3.

855 [VX-429]. White wins with 25 Qh5+ Kg8 26 g6, threatening 27 Qh7+ Kf8 28 Qh8, mate, and if 26...Bf6 then 27 Rde1 covers e7 and wins.
856 [VX-434]. Here 25 Qh5+ Kg7 26 g6 can be met by 26...Nf6, but White wins with 25 Rc3 Nxc3 26 Qh5+ Kg8 27 g6 (1-0) Bd6, with mate in four with 28 Qh7+ Kf8 29 Qh8+ Ke7 30 Qxg7+ Ke6 31 Qf7, mate.

857 [VX-435]. After 14 Qh5+ Kg8 15 dxe5 Bc5 16 g6, White's threat is 17 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Qh8+ Ke7 20 Qxg7, mate, when 16...Qd7 loses to 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Qh8+ Ke7 19 Qh4+ Kf8 20 Rg1, when Black can't stop 21 Rg3-f3.

858 [VX-434]. After 25 Qh5+ Kg8 26 g6 Black can defend with 26...Nf6, when White is down two pieces for two pawns.

4. Miscellaneous Mates

859 [VX-428]. White can sacrifice his Queen with 25 Qxf7+ Kxf7 26 Rf3+ Ke7 27 Bg5, mate.

860 [VX-427]. White wins with 17 Qxf6, when White is up two pawn and threatens 18 Nh5. Black can't play 17...gxf6 because 18 Bh6 is mate.

861 [VX-436]. White wins with 27 Qd6+ Kf7 28 Qf6+ Kg8 29 Qh8+ Kf7 30 Qg7+ Ke6 31 Nh4+ Kf5 32 g4/Qf6/Qg4, mate.

862 [VX-434]. White wins with 26 Bg6+ Kg8 27 Qh7+ Kf8 28 Qh8, mate.

863 [VX-434]. White wins with 26 Bg6+ Kg8 27 Qh7+ Kf8 28 Qh8+ Ke7 29 Qxg7, mate.

864 [VX-434]. White wins with 26 Bg6+ Kg8 27 Qxe6+ Kh8 28 Qh3+ Kg8 29 Qh7+ Kf8 30 Qh8, mate.
865 [VX-434]. White wins with 24 Nxe6 (this gives White’s Bishop access to g6 and clears the 7th rank for White’s Queen, which will soon be on g7) 24...fxe6 25 Qh3, e.g., a) 25...Be7 26 Bg6+ Kg8 27 Qh7+ Kf8 28 Qh8, mate; b) 25...Bd6 26 Bg6+ Kg8 27 Qh7+ Kf8 28 Qh8+ Ke7 29 Qxg7, mate; c) 25...Bb4 26 Bg6+ Kg8 27 Qh7+ Kf8 28 Qh8, mate.

5. White Wins Material

867 [VX-431]. White can win Black’s Ne5 with 26 Qh5+ Kg8 27 Bxe5.

868 [VX-433]. White can win Black’s Queen with 24 Qh8+Bg8 25 Ne6+Ke8 26 Nxc7+.

869 [VX-432]. Black has defended against the mate on g7, but after 25 Qh5+ Kg8 26 Rxe6, White is up two pawns.

870 [VX-424]. White wins with 23 b4 (1-0), e.g., 23...Qxb4 24 Qh5+ Kg8 25 Rxd8, mate or 23...Rf8 24 Qh5+ Kg8 25 bxa5.

871 [VX-423]. White is up a pawn, but can win another pawn with 19 Qg6+ Kh8 (19...Kg8 drops both the e- and h-pawns to 20 Nxe6 Bf8 21 Bxh6) 20 Nxe6 Bf8, when White is up two pawns.

872 [VX-423]. White wins with 19 Qg6+ Kh8/Kg8 20 Nxe6 (1-0), when 20...Rd7 21 Ne5 gives White a N-fork, while 20...Rg8 21 Bxh6 threatens 22 Bxg7, mating, e.g., 21...Bf6 22 exf6 gxf6 23 Bg7+ Rxe7 24 Qxg7, mate.
**Visualization Exercises**

**Chapter 14. The Sequence 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Qxf7**

---

**421.** White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Bxh7+ Kxh7 21 Qxf7. 2 Be5 22 Rxe5 Rxe5 23 dxe5. What is the material balance?

1 White's threat is 22 Rh5, mate. 2 The only other option is to play 21...Qxb5 22 axb5 Re7, when White has a Queen and pawn for Rook and Knight.

---

**422.** Visualize the position after the moves 22 Bxh7+ Kxh7 23 Qxf7 Nf5 24 Qxc7 Nxd4 25 cxd4. What is the material balance?

1 22...Kf8 leaves White up a pawn. 2 The threat of 24 Rh4, mate, wins Black's Queen. Black resigned here.

---

**423.** Black's Be7 is undefended. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxh7+ Kxh7 18 Qxh7 Rd7 19 Qg6+ Kh8 20 Nxe6 Bf8. What is the material balance?

1 The actual game continued 18...Bh4 19 Qg6+ Kh8 20 Nxe6 (1-0), when 20...Rd7 loses to 21 Nc5 with a N-fork and 20...Rg8 allows 21 Bxh6, threatening 22 Bxg7 Rxg7 23 Qxg7 mate, and if 21...Bf6 then 22 exf6 gxf6 23 Bg7+ Rxg7 24 Qxg7 is mate. 2 19...Kg8 drops the h-pawn to 20 Nxe6 Bf8 21 Bxh6.

---

**424.** Visualize the position after the moves 21 Bxh7+ Kxh7 22 Qxf7 Rd8 23 b4 Rf8. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 22...Bd7 loses to 23 Re4, mating, e.g., 23...Qd8 24 Rxd7 Qg5 25 Rh4+ Qxh4 26 Qxg5, mate. 2 Black's Queen can't move, as it is tied to the defense of the Rd8. Black resigned here. 3 23...Qxb4 loses to 24 Qh5+ Kgl 25 Rxd8, mate. 4 Hint: White has a better move than 24 Qxf8 Qxb4, when White is up the exchange and two pawns.
425. White is up a piece, but he's about to lose his Nd2. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Bxh7+ Kxh7\(^1\) 21 Qxf7 Rx\(d2\) 22 Ra4 Qg5 23 g3 e5. How does White win here?

\(^1\) White is up a pawn after 20...Kf8 21 Qa4 Rxd2 and two pawns after 20...Kh8 21 Qxf7.

426. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Bxh7+ Kxh7\(^1\) 25 Qxf7\(^2\) Kh6\(^3\) 26 Bxg7\(^+\) Kg5\(^4\) 27 Re5+ Kg4\(^5\). How does White mate in two?

\(^1\) 24...Kf8 drops a second pawn to 25 Qxf7, when 25...Kxh7 loses to 26 Qxg7, mate, while 24...Kh8 can be met by 25 Qg4, with an attack, e.g., a) 25...g6 26 Bxg6 fxg6 27 Qxg6, for example, 27...Red8 28 Bg7+ Kg8 29 Bh6+ Kh7 30 Qg7, mate or 27...Bd8 28 Qh6+ Kg8 29 Qh8+ Kh7 30 Qg7, mate; or b) 25...f6 26 Bg6, threatening Qh5-h8, mate, and if 26...fxg6 27 dxe5 Qc7 then 28 Qh5 forces mate, e.g., 28...Bc5 29 Qh8+ Ke7 30 Qxg7, mate. \(^2\) This clears e5 for the Rook, but 26 Qxg7+ also wins, e.g., 26...Kh5 27 Re3, intending Rh3 and g4, mate, and if 27...Bg5 to gain access to g4, then 28 Rh3+ Kg4 29 f3+ Kf4 30 g4 is mate. \(^3\) 26...Kh7 loses to 27 Bf8+ Kh8 28 Qg7, mate. \(^4\) 27...Kf4 loses to 28 Qh5/f4, mate.

427. White's Qe6 and Bg5 are both under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxh7+ Kxh7\(^1\) 17 Qxf7 Ng6\(^2\) 18 Nh5\(^3\) Rg8 19 Nxf6+ Kh8 20 Qxg6. What is White's threat and how does White win after 20...gxg6, winning a Knight and attacking White's Qg6?

\(^1\) 16...Kf8 can be met by 17 Qxf6, when White is up two pawns and threatens 18 Nh5. \(^2\) 17...fxg5 loses to 18 Nh5, threatening 19 Qxg7, mate, and if a) 18...Rg8 then 19 Nf6+ Kh6/Kh8 20 Qh5 is mate or b) 18...Nf5 19 Rxe8 Qxe8 20 Nf6+ wins Black's Queen. Relatively best is to give back the piece with 17...Rf8 18 Qxe7 fxg5, when Black is down a pawn.

428. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Bxh7+ Kxh7\(^1\) 25 Qxf7\(^2\) bxc4. Each side has a Rook under attack, but White can win here. How? See the last footnote for a hint.

\(^1\) 24...Kf8 loses to the Queen sacrifice 25 Qxf7+ Kxf7 26 Rf3+ Ke7 27 Bg5, mate. \(^2\) 25...Bb7 loses to 26 Rd7 Rg8 27 Qh5, mate. \(^3\) Hint: There are three solutions, all of which are better than 26 Qxe8 cxd3. One of the solutions gives mate in three, another mate in four, and another mate in five.
429. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Bxh7+ Kxh7 24 Qxf71 Rc82 25 Qh5+ Kg8 26 g63 Bf6. How does White win here?

1 White's threat is 25 Qh5+ Kg8 26 g6. 2 White is up a pawn after 24... Nxd5 25 Qxd5 (1-0, 29), when 25... Ra5 26 Qe4+ Kh8 can be met by either 27 Ne6, winning the exchange, or 27 Ne6 with an attack on g7 (1-0, 29); 24... b3 can be met by 25 cxb3, keeping everything closed up (bad is 25 axb3 axb2, opening up the a-file for Black's Rook, when 26 Kxb2 Ne4+ 27 Kc3 Ne5+ wins White's Queen). 3 White threatens mate in two.

430. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bxh7+ Kxh7 19 Qxf7+ Kh6 20 Rd3 e5 21 Qxh6+ Ng6 22 Qh5 Bf8. How does White win here?

1 19... Kh8 20 Qg7 is mate. 2 20 Qxf6+ Ng6 21 Rd3 transposes. 3 21... Kh7 loses to 22 h4, when Black can't stop 23 Qg5, mate, while 21... Kh5 22 Rg3 Nf5 loses to 23 Qg6+ Kh8 24 Qg8, mate. 4 White's threat is 23 Rh3, mate.

431. Both players are threatening to win the exchange and a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Bxh7+1 Kxh7 23 Qxh7 Bxe3+ 24 Kh1 Bxc1 25 Rxc1 d42 26 Bxd4 Ne53 27 Re3 Qc8. Why can't White play 28 Rh3+ and how does White win instead?

1 Also good is 22 Rf1, e.g., 22... Bxe3+ 23 Kh1 Bxc1 24 Qxf7+ Kh8 25 Rxe1, when White is up a piece, or 22... Rd1 23 Rxf7 Rxh7 24 Rf1 Bxe3+ (24... Qf8 25 Bxh7+ 25 Kh1 Qh8 26 Nd6, winning Black's pinned Rf7. 2 25... Nxe5 drops the Knight to 26 Qh5+ Kg8 27 Bxe5, while 25... Rc8 loses to 26 Re1 Rd8 27 Re3 Kh6 28 Bc1 Nxe5 29 Rh3, mate. 3 26... Nxe5 can be met by 27 Qh5+.

432. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Bxh7+ Kxh7 21 Qxf7 Nf61 22 Qh5+ Kh6 23 Re6+ Qg7 24 Qxh6+ Kg8 25 Qxg7+ Kf8. How does White win here?

1 Black anticipates 22 d5, attacking on g7. Inserting the moves 21... b4 22 Bh2 doesn't change anything. 2 White's threat is 23 Rd4-h4, mating. 22 Re6 gives White three pawns for the piece (0-1, 29). 3 22... e5 loses to 23 Re4, taking advantage of Black's pinned Nf6, while 22... Be5 23 Bxf6 Bxf2+ 24 Kh1 Qc7 can be met by 25 Qh5+ Kg8 26 Rxe6, when White is up two pawns. 4 Now White's threat is 24 Rg5. 5 24... Bd6 loses to 25 Rh4+ Nh5 26 Rxe5, mate.
433. White's Qd5 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bxh7+ Kxh7 19 Qxf7 Be6 20 Qh5+ Kg8 21 g6 Ne4 22 Nd4 Bd5 23 Qh7+ Kf8 24 Qh8+Bg8. How does White win here?

1 Not taking leaves Black down two pawns. 2 White threatens to 32 Nxc5. 3 21...Nxb3 can be met by 22 f5 Bd5 23 f6, e.g., 23...gxf6 24 Qh7+ Kf8 25 g7+ Ke8 (25...Kf7 26 g8=Q is mate) 26 Qh5+ Kd7 (26...Bf7 loses to 27 g8=Q+) 27 Qxd5+ Bd6 28 cxb3, when White is up two pawns with an attack. 4 22...Nxf2 loses to 23 Nxe6, e.g., 23...Qxc2 24 Qh7, mate, but better is 22...Qc8, overprotecting e6, e.g., 23 Qh7+ Kf8 24 Qh8+Bg8, when e6 is now defended by the Queen, and if 25 f5 Nxf2 26 Ne6+, then 26...Qxf2 27 fxe6 Nd1 gives Black a Rook and two pieces for a Queen and three pawns.

434. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Bxh7+ Kxh7 24 Qxf7 Bg5 21 Rh3+ Bh6 22 Qh5+ Kg8 23 Rxe6 gxh6 24 Qg6+ Kf8 25 Qh6+ Ke7 26 f3 Nd2 27 Qd6+ Kf7 28 Qf6+ Kg8 29 Qh8+Kf7 30 Kg7+ Ke6. How does White mate in four moves?

1 23...Kh8 loses to 24 Nxc5. 2 24...fxe6 25 Qh3, e.g., a) 25 Be7 26 Bg6+ Kg8 27 Qh7+ Kf8 28 Qh8, mate; b) 25 Bd6 26 Bg6+ Kg8 27 Qh7+ Kf8 28 Qh8+ Ke7 29 Qxg7, mate; c) 25 Bd4 26 Bg6+ Kg8 27 Qxe6+ Kh8 28 Qh3+ Kg8 29 Qh7+ Kf8 30 Qh8, mate. 2 25 Qh5+ Kg8 26 g6 loses to 26...Nf6, when White is down two pieces for two pawns.

435. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Qxf7 Nxe5 14 Qh5+ Kg8 15 dxe5 Bc5 16 g6 Qd7 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Qh8+ Ke7 19 Qh4+ Kf8 20 Rg1 Qb5 21 Rg3 Qxb2. How does White win here?

1 White's threat was Qxg7, mate and 13...Rg8 loses to 14 Qh5, mate. 2 14 dxe5 allows 14...Rf8 or 14...Bxg5. 3 15...Bxg5 16 Rg1 Be7 (16...Bb4 17 Ne5) loses to 17 Rg7+ Kg8 18 0-0-0 with 19 Rg1+, e.g., 18...Rg8 19 Rg1+ Kf8 20 Qh6+ Kg7 21 Qh7+ Ke8 22 Rxe8+ Kd7 23 Rxd8 Kxd8, with a Queen and two pawns for a Rook and Bishop. 4 The threat is 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Qh8+ Ke7 19 Qxg7, mate. 5 17 Rg1 (1-0, 20) can be met by 17...Qc6 18 Rg3 d4 19 Rf3 Qxf3 20 Qxf3, when Black has a Rook and Bishop for a Queen and two pawns. 6 20...Rd8 loses to 21 Qh8+ Ke7 22 Qxg7+ Ke8 23 Qh8+, e.g., 23...BR 24 g7 Qe7 25 g8=Q or 23...Ke7 24 Qf6+ Ke8 25 g7.

436. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Bxh7+ Kxh7 20 Qxh7 Bg5 21 Rh3+ Bh6 22 Qf5+ Kg8 23 Rxe6 gxh6 24 Qg6+ Kf8 25 Qh6+ Ke7 26 f3 Nd2 27 Qd6+ Kf7 28 Qf6+ Kg8 29 Qh8+ Kf7 30 Kg7+ Ke6. How does White win?

1 20...Rg8 loses to 21 Qh5, mate. 2 25 Nf4 Rxe5 26 dxe5 breaks White’s attack and gives Black a piece for two pawns, although White will Black’s h-pawn as well. 3 25...Kf7 loses to 26 Qg7+ Ke6 27 Nf4+ Kf5 28 Qg6+ Qxe6, mate, while 25...Ke8 26 Qh8+ Kf7 27 Qg7+ transposes to 25...Kf7. 4 Better is 26...Rf8 27 fxe4 Qd7 28 Nf4, when White has three pawns for the exchange and an attack.
CHAPTER 15. THE SEQUENCE 1 Rxh7 Kxh7 2 Qxf7

This chapter contains exercises involving the sequence 1 Rh7 Kxh7 2 Qxf7, when White has sacrificed a Rook for a pawn, but has obtained a dominant Queen on f7 that opposes Black's King on h7.

White's Qf3 is under attack in Diagram 1, but after the moves 1 Rxh7+ Kxh7 2 Qf7+ (see Diagram 2), Black has to play 2...Kh8, when White mates in two with 3 Rh1+ Qh4 4 Rxh4, mate.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. The Move Rh1+
2. Black Interposes a Piece or Two on the h-file
3. White Needs an Extra Move to Bring his Rook to the h-file
4. White Covers the Escape Square g5 with a Piece
5. White Covers the Escape Square g5 with a Pawn on f4
6. Black Is Able To Play ...Kg5
7. Quick Mates by Capturing Black's Pawn on g6
8. Attacking g6 with the Move Nf4
9. Miscellaneous Mates

These themes are illustrated using forty-five preparatory positions, which are followed by twenty-eight visualization exercises ranging in depth from nine to twenty-five ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply:</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. The Move Rh1+

873 [VX-444]. 28 Rh1 is mate.

874 [VX-439]. 23 Rh1 is mate.

875 [VX-459]. 24 Rh1 is mate.

876 [VX-453]. 29 Rh1 is mate.

877 [VX-443]. 28 Rh3 is mate.

878 [VX-438]. White wins with 29 Qxf7+ (1-0) and Rh1, mate, e.g., 29... Kh8 30 Rh1+ or 29...Kh6 30 Rh1, mate.

2. Black Interposes a Piece or Two on the h-file

879 [VX-441]. White wins with 22 Rh1+ Qh4 23 Rxh4 is mate.

880 [VX-437]. White wins with either 28 Rh1+ Bh2 29 Rxh2+ Bh3 30 Rxh3, mate or 28 g6+ Kh8 29 Rh1+. 
3. White Needs an Extra Move to Bring his Rook to the h-file

881 [VX-446]. White wins with 26 0-0-0 (1-0), when Black can't stop 27 Rh1, mate.

882 [VX-450]. White wins with 21 Kf2, when Black can't stop 22 Rh1, mate.

883 [VX-454]. White wins with 22 e5 (1-0), when Black can't stop 24 Rh4, mate, e.g., 22...Rc4 23 Bxc4 Nf6 24 exf6 Nxc4 25 Rh4/Qg7, mate.

4. White Covers the Escape Square g5 with a Piece

884 [VX-440]. White's Ne4 covers g5.

White wins with 21 Rh1+ Qh4 22 Rxh4, mate.

885 [VX-445]. White's Be7 covers g5.

White wins with 28 Rh1+, mating, e.g., 28...Nh2 29 Rxh2+ Qh4 30 Rxh4, mate.

5. White Covers the Escape Square g5 with a Pawn on f4

886 [VX-462]. White wins with 29 Rd1 Kh6 30 f4, when Black can't stop Rh1, mate, e.g., 30...Bf6 31 Rh1+ Bh4 32 Rxh4, mate.

887 [VX-453]. White wins with 28 f4 R8c5 29 Rh1+ Rh5 30 gxf5, threatening 31 Qxg6, mate, and if 30...gxh5 then 31 Rxh5 is mate.

888 [VX-453]. Here 30 f5 threatens mate on g6, but loses to 30...Rg8, when White lacks compensation for the Rook, but White can mate in two with 30 Rxh4+ gxf4 31 g5, mate.
6. Black Is Able To Play ...Kg5

889 [VX-441]. White wins with 22 Rh1+ Kg5 23 Rg1+ (1-0), e.g., 23...Kh4/Kh5 24 Qh7, mate, or 23...Kh6 24 Qxg6, mate.

890 [VX-442]. White win with 26 Rh1+ Kg5 27 Rg1+ (1-0), e.g., 27...Kh5/Kh4 Qh7, mate, or 27...Kh6 28 Qxg6, mate.

891 [VX-443]. White wins with 29 Rh3+ Kg5 30 Rg3+, e.g., 30...Kh6 31 Qh8+ Qh7 32 Qh7, mate. 29 Qh8+ also wins.

892 [VX-452]. Black’s Nf8 controls both h7 and g6, but White wins with 23 Rh1+ (1-0) Kg5 24 Qf4, mate.

893 [VX-443]. Black’s Rook controls g6, but White wins with 28 Rh3+ Kg5 29 Qh7, threatening both 30 Qh4 and 30 Rg3, mate.

894 [VX-447]. White’s g-file is temporarily blocked, but White wins with 25 Rh1+ Kg5 26 Nh4+ Kh6 27 Qh7, mate.

895 [VX-449]. White’s g-file is blocked, but White wins with 24 Rh1+ Kg5 25 Qe7+ Qf6 26 Qe3, mate.

896 [VX-451]. White’s g-file is blocked and Black is threatening mate on c2, but White wins with 25 Rh1+ Kg5 26 Qxe7+ (1-0) Kf4/Kg4 27 Rh4, mate.

897 [VX-457]. White’s g-file is blocked, but White wins with 25 Rh1+, e.g., 25...Kg5 26 Qf4, mate, or 25...Qh4 26 Rxh4+ Kg5 27 Qf4, mate.
7. Quick Mates by Capturing Black’s Pawn on g6

898 [VX-452]. Black can't play 21...Nxh7 because of 22 Qxg6+ Kf8/Kh8 23 Qg7, mate.

899 [VX-464]. White wins with 21 Qxg6+ Kg8 (21...Kh8 22 Qh7, mate) 22 Be4+ Kh8 23 Qh5+ Bh6 24 Qxh6, mate.

900 [VX-452]. White wins with 21 Rxg6+ Nxg6 22 Qxg6+, when 22...Qg7 23 Qxe8+ Qf8 drops the Queen to 24 Rg1+ and 22...Kf8 loses to 23 Rh8+ Ke7 24 Qf6, mate.

8. Attacking g6 with the Move Nf4

901 [VX-458]. White is down a Rook for three pawns, but after 24 Nf4 Qg5 25 Nhxg6+ Qxg6 26 Qxg6, White has a Queen and four pawns for a Rook and Knight.

902 [VX-464]. 21 Qxg6 loses to 21... Qh4, but 21 Nf4 wins (1-0), e.g., a) 21... Qf6 22 Nhxg6+ Qxg6 23 Qxg6, when White has a Queen and pawn for two Rooks and threatens 24 Qh7, mate, or b) 21...Bg7 22 Nhxg6+ Kh7 23 Ne7+ Kh8 24 Qh5+ Bh6 25 Qxh6, mate.

9. Miscellaneous Mates

903 [VX-446]. White wins with 23 Qh4 with 24 Qh8, mate, and if 23...f5/f6 then 24 Qh8+ Kf7 25 Rh7 is mate.

904 [VX-448]. White wins with 27 g5+ (1-0) Kh5 28 Qh7, mate.

905 [VX-450]. After 21 Kf2 (1-0) Kh5 (21...Qc8 22 Rh1+ wins), White can win with either 22 Rh1+ Kg4 23 Qxg6, mate, or 22 Qh7+ Kg4 23 Qh3, mate.
906 [VX-463]. White wins with 23 Kd2 Qh2 24 Bd3 (1-0) Qh5 25 Rh1, e.g., 25...Nb6 26 Rxh5+ Kxh5 27 Qxg6+, Kh4 28 Be2, with either 29 Qh6 or 29 Qg3, mate.

907 [VX-455]. White wins with 22 Qxg6, e.g., 22...Re7 23 Rxh5+ Rh7 24 Qxh7/Rxh7, mate, although Black can avoid mate with 22...Nh4 23 RXh4 Qxh4 24 gxh4, when White has a Queen and two pawns for a Rook.

908 [VX-455]. White wins with 20 g3, taking h4 away from Black’s Queen and Rook and if 20...Nf6 then 21 Rh1+ Nh5 22 Qxg6 wins (see the previous diagram for the continuation).

909 [VX-456]. White wins with 23 Bf6 Rg8 24 Be6 (1-0) Qe2 (24...Qxh8 loses to 25 Qxg6 with 26 Qh6, mate) 25 Qxg6+ Kh8 26 Qh6, mate.

910 [VX-448]. White wins with 25 Bf6+ Kf7 (25...Kg8 26 Qxg6 threatens mate on g7) 26 Rxh7+ Kg8 27 Rg7+ (27 Qxd7 drops the Rh7 to 27...Qg1+) Kh8 28 Qh2, mate.

911 [VX-460]. 27 Bxg6 wins, e.g., a) 27...Nf6 28 Rd3 (1-0), threatening 29 Rh3+ Nh7 30 Qxh7, mate; or b) 27...Nh4 28 Bf4 (simplest) and now: b1) 28...Kh5 29 Bg5+ Kg6 30 Kg7+ Be6 31 Bh4, mate or b2) 28...Kg7 29 Bg5+ Kh6 30 Kg7+ Bg8 31 Kh6, mate.

912 [VX-456]. After 21 Rxe8+ Kxe8 White wins with either 22 Qxf7 and 23 Bh6 or 22 Qe6+, e.g., 22...Kg8 23 Bh6 with 24 Qg7, mate, or 22...Kh7 23 Qxf7+ Kh8 24 Bf6, mate.

913 [VX-458]. 25 g5+ wins, e.g., a) 25...Kxg5 26 Qf4+ Kh5 27 Ng6, mate, or b) 25...Kh5 26 Qf3+ (simplest) and now: b1) 26...Kh4 27 Qg3+ Kh5 28 Nf4, mate or b2) 26...Kxg5 27 Qf4+ Kh5 28 Ng3, mate.

914 [VX-459]. White wins with 24 f4, e.g., a) 24...Bd4 25 Rh1 g5 26 f5 with 28 Qf6, mate; b) 24...Be5 25 g4 Bh4 26 Rh1 g5 27 f5 with 28 Qg6, mate; c) 24...Kh5 25 Rh1+ Kg4 (25...Bh4 26 Qh7+ Kg4 27 Qxh4 (1-0) is mate) 26 Qxg6+ Kxf4 27 Qf5+ Ke3 28 Qf3/Re1, mate.
915 [VX-464]. White wins with 24 Qh5+, e.g., a) 24...Rh7 25 Qxh7, mate; b) 24...Kg7 25 Qh7+ Kg6 26 Qg6, mate; c) 24...Kg8 25 Be4+ Kg7 26 Qh6, mate; d) 24...Bh6 25 Qxh6+ Kg8 26 Be4+ Rh7 27 Qg6+ Kh8 (27...Kh8 28 Qxf7, mate) 28 Bxf7 Nf6 29 Qxf6+ Kh7 30 Qh6, mate.

916 [VX-461]. Black has pressure on c2 and b2, but White wins with 24 f4 threatening 25 Rh1+, e.g., a) 24...Re5 25 g4 Bh4 26 Rh1 g5 27 f5 threatens Qg6, mate or b) 24...Kh5 25 Qh7+ Kg4 26 Qxg6+ Kxf4 (26...Kh4 27 Rh1 is mate) 27 Qf5+ (also good is 27 Rh1+) Kg3 (27...Kg3 28 Qf3/Re1, mate) 28 Qf3+ Kh4 29 Rh1+ Kg5 30 Qg3/Qf5, mate (1-0).

917 [VX-462]. White is up the exchange for two pawns, but Black is threatening Qb2, mate. Nevertheless, White wins with 26 Rxh7+, e.g., a) 26...Kf6 27 Qxf7+ Kg5 (27...Kg5 28 Qh8/Qb8 is mate) 28 Qxe7+ Bf6 (28...Kh6 29 Rh7 is mate) 29 Qxf6+ Kh6 30 Rh7, mate, or 26...Kxh7 27 Qxh7+ Bg7 (27...Kh8 28 Rd8 is mate and 27...Kh6 28 Qf4+ g5 29 Qc1 defends b2 when White is up the exchange and a pawn) 28 e3, etc.
437. White is down a piece for two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 26 Rxa7 Kxh7\(^1\) 27 Qf7+ Ng7. How does White win here?

\(^1\) After 26...Re7 27 Rh6, White is up the exchange and two pawns.

438. Visualize the position after the moves 26 Nxd5 Kxd5 27 hxg5 hxg5\(^1\) 28 Rh7+ Kxh7. How does White win here?

\(^1\) This gives White a forced mate. White is up two pawns after either 27...h5 28 gxh5/Rxh5 or 27...Rg6 28 gxh6+ Kg8.

439. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nxd5 Rxh4\(^1\) 20 Rxa7 g5\(^2\) 21 Rh7+ Kxd4 22 Qxf7+ Kh6\(^3\). How does White win here?

\(^1\) 19...Bxh4 isn’t possible because of 20 g5, trapping the Bishop. \(^2\) Now 20...Bxh4 drops the Bishop to 21 Qh6+ Kg8 22 g5, when 22...Bxh2 loses to 23 Rh1 with mate to follow (22...Qf8 stops the mate, but drops the Bishop). \(^3\) 22...Kh8 loses to 23 Rh1, mate.

440. White’s Ne4 covers g5. Visualize the position after the moves 18 hxg6 hxg6\(^1\) 19 Rh7+ Kxd4 20 Qxf7+ Kh6. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 18...Rf8 loses to 19 Qxf7, mate, while 18...Rf8 loses to 19 Rxf7+ Kg8 20 Qh5, etc. \(^2\) Other moves lose to 20 Qxf7, mate.
441. White is up a piece for two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rxh7+ Kxh7 21 Qf7+ Kh6 22 Rh1+ Kg5 23 Rg1+ R. How does White win here? Consider all three valid moves by Black.

1 20...Kg8 21 Qf7 is mate. 2 21...Kh8 22 Rh1+ Qh4 23 Rxh4 is mate.

442. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Rxh7+ Kxh7 25 Qf7+ Kh6. How does White win here?

443. White's Qe6 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 26 Rxh7+ Kxh7 27 Qf7+ Kh6 28 Rh3+ Kg5. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a Hint.

1 27...Rg7 28 Rh3 is mate. 2 Also good is 28 Qxg8 (1-0), when 28... Nc5 loses to either a) 29 Rh3+ Kg5 30 Rg3+, mating, or b) 29 Qh8+ Kg5 (29...Qh7 drops the Queen to 30 Rh3+) 30 Rg3, mate. 3 Hint: White has something stronger than 29 Qxg8, after which White is up a pawn.

444. Visualize the position after the moves 24 hxg6 fxg6 25 Qd5+ Rf7 26 Rxh7 Kxh7 27 Qxf7+ Kh8. How does White win here?

1 24...hxg6 loses to 25 Qh8, mate, while after 24...e5 25 gxh7+ Kg7/ Kh8 26 fxe5, White is up three pawns with an attack. 2 25...Kh8 can be met by 26 f5, when 26...gxh5 27 g6 gives White an attack. 3 26...Ra8 27 Rdh1 threatens 28 Rh8+ Kg7 29 Rhl7, mate, and if 27...Qa1+ 28 Kd2 Qxb2, defending h8, then 29 e5 wins.
445. White’s Be7 controls g5. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Nxg7 Kxg7 1 26 Rh7+ Kxh7 27 Qxf7+ R Kh6. How does White win here?

1 Better is 25...Rxe7 26 Nf5 Re5 (26...gxf5 loses to 27 Qg5+ Kf8 28 Rh8, mate) 27 Qxg4 Rxf5, although White has an attack after 28 Qh3.

446. Visualize the position after the moves 22 hxg6 fxg6 1 23 Qxe6+ Kg7 24 Rxh7+ Kxh7 25 Qf7+ Kh8. How does White mate in two?

1 22...hxg6 loses to 23 Qh4 2 a) 23...Kf8 loses to 24 Rxh7, threatening 25 Qf7, mate, and if 24...Bd8, covering f7 and attacking White's Qe6, then 25 Rh8+ wins Black's Re8, while 24...Bxg5 can be met by either 25 Nxe5 or 25 Qxg6, attacking both the Bg5 and the Qc7; b) 23...Kh8 24 Rxh7+ doesn't change anything.

447. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Rh7+ Kxh7 24 Qf7+ Kh6 25 Rh1+ Kg5 26 Nge4+ Kxg4. How does White win here?

448. White is up a pawn, but his Be7 is under attack. Black’s King is weak along the h-file and the a2-g8 diagonal. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Bc4+ Nxc4 24 Qd5+ Kg7 25 Rxh7+ Kxh7 26 Qf7+ Kh6. How does White win here?

1 Moving off the light squares with 23...Kg7 allows White to play on the dark squares with 24 Qxd6, e.g., 24...Nxc4 25 Bd6+ Kf7 (25...Kg8 26 Qxd7 threatens mate on g7) 26 Rxd7+ Kg8 27 Kg7+ Kh8 28 Qh2, mate. 2 24...Kh8 25 Bf6 is mate.
449. White is down a piece for a pawn and his Queen is under attack, but Black’s 7th rank is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Qe7+ Rf7 22 Rh7+ Kxh7 23 Qxf7+ Kh6 24 Rh1+ Kg5 25 Qe7+ Qf6. How does White mate in one here?

450. White is down a pawn, but can occupy the 7th rank. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Qd7+ Rf7 19 Rxh7+ Kxh7 20 Qxf7+ Kh6 21 Kf2. How does White mate in two?

1 18...Kg8 loses to 19 Qxh7, mate. 2 20...Kh8 loses to 21 Kf2 and 22 Rh1, mate. 3 21...Qc8 gives up the Queen, but doesn’t prevent mate, e.g., 22 Rh1+ Qh3 23 Rxh3.

451. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Bxg7 Kxg7 23 Rh7+ Kxh7 24 Qxf7+ 1 Kh6 25 Rhl+ Kg5. How does White mate in two? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 Black is threatening mate on c2. 2 Hint: Look for something stronger than 26 f4+ Kg4 27 Qxg6+, which drops the f-pawn to 27...Kxf4, although White still wins with 28 Qf5+, e.g., 28...Kg3 29 Qf3, mate or 28...Kxe3 29 Qf3+ Kd4 30 Rd1+ Kc5 31 Qe3+ Kb4 32 Qa3+ Ke4 33 Qc3, mate.

452. White is down a pawn and his Bc4 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Qxf5 g6 1 20 Rdg1 Kg7 2 21 Rh7+ Kxh7 3 22 Qf7+ Kh6 2 23 Rh1+ Kg5. How does White mate in one?

1 19...bxc4 loses to 20 Qh5, threatening 21 Rdf1 and 22 Qh8, mate, and if 20...g6, then White wins with 21 Qh8+ Kf7 22 Rd1+ Ke7 23 Qg7, mate. 2 20...Re7 loses to 21 Qf6, while 20...Qd7 loses to 21 Rxg6+ Nxg6 22 Qxg6+, e.g., 22...Qg7 23 Qxe8+ Qf8 drops the Queen to 24 Rg1+ or 22...Kf8 23 Rh8+ Ke7 24 Qf6, mate. 3 21...Nxe7 undefends g6 and loses to 22 Qxg6+ Kf8/Kh8 23 Qg7, mate.
**453.** Black's King is weak along the h-file and the a2-g8 diagonal. Visualize the position after the moves 26 Rxh7+ 1 Kxh7 27 Qf7+ Kh6 2 28 f4 Bh4 3 29 Rh1 g5. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 The actual game continued 26 g5 Be5 27 Rxh7+ Kxh7 28 Qf7+(1-0)Bg7 29 Rh1, mate, but Black can avoid mate by giving up the Bf6 with 26...Rh8. 2 27...Bg7 loses to 28 Rh1, mate. 3 28...Rc5 loses to 29 Rh1+ Rh5 30 g6, when White threatens 31 Qxg6, mate, and if 30...gxh5 then 31 Rxf5 is mate. 4 Hint: Look for something stronger than 30 f5, which can be met by 30...Rg8, when White lacks compensation for the Rook.

**454.** Visualize the position after the moves 19 fxg6 fxg6 1 20 Rh7+ Kxh7 21 Qf7+ Kh8 22 e5 Rc4. How does White win here?

1 Better is 19...Ne5, defending f7 and attacking White's Queen.

**455.** Here White's Be3 prevents ...Kh6, but Black has two pieces covering h4. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Rxh7+ Kxh7 19 Qf7+ Kh8 20 Qh1+ 21 Nh5 22 Qxg6 Re7 3. How does White win here?

1 This takes h4 away from Black's Rook and Queen. 2 20...Qf6/Qe8 loses to 21 Rh1+. 3 The game continued 21 Bh4 Be7 22 Qh1+ Nh5, when White's Bh4 is hanging (1-0, 29), although White still won after 23 Qxg6 Bxg5+ 24 Bh4 25 Qxh5+ Kg7 26 g6 Qe8 27 Qxg6+ Kh8. 4 22...Rxh4 Qxh4 24 g6 leaves Black down a Queen and two pawns for a Rook.

**456.** White is down a pawn and each side has a piece under attack, but the overriding feature of this position is Black's weak King. Visualize the position after the moves 20 hxg6 fxg6 1 21 Rh7+ Kxh7 22 Qf7+ Bh7 23 Kg6 Rxg6+ Kh8. How does White mate in one?

1 20...Qxh8 loses to 21 Qxf7, mate, while 20...hxg6 loses to 21Rxh8+ Kxg6 22 Qxg6, intending 23 Bf6, mate, and if 22...Rh8 then 23 Kh7 mates. 2 Black's Rook is now tied down to the defense of the Kg7, which weakens Black's back rank and the pawn on g6. 3 24...Kh8 loses to 25 Qxg6, as in the main line.
457. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Bxg7 Kxg7 22 hgx6 hxg6 23 Rh7+ Kxh7 24 Qxf7+ Kh6 25 Rh1+. How does White win here? Consider both 25...Qh4 and 25...Kg5.

1 22...fxg6 23 Rxh7+ doesn't change anything.

458. Black has just played 21...Nf6-g8, defending the dark squares (e.g., preventing 22 Qh6), but now White wins on the light squares. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Rxh7+ Kxh7 23 Qxf7+ Kh6 24 e5+ Ne7 25 g5+ Kh5. How does White win here?

1 23...Kh8 (1-0) 24 Nf4 Qg5 25 Nxe6+ Qxe6 26 Qxg6 gives White a Queen and four pawns for a Rook and Knight. 2 This threatens 25 Qxg6, mate, as well as 25 g5+. After 24 Qxe8 White is up three pawns, but White can do better than this. 3 Black has to defend the g-pawn. 24...Rf8 loses to 25 Qxg6, mate. 4 25...Kxg5 loses to 26 Qf4+ Kh5 27 Ng3, mate.

459. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Rxh7+ Kxh7 23 Qf7+ Kh6 24 f4 Kh5 25 Rh1+ Kg4 26 Qxg6+ Kxh4. How does White mate in two?

1 23...Bg7 loses to 24 Rh1, mate. 2 24...Bh4 25 Rh1 g5 loses to 26 f5 and 27 Qg6, mate, while 24...Re5 loses to 25 g4 Bh4 26 Rh1 g5 27 f5 with 28 Qg6, mate. 3 See 461 for 25 Qh7+. 4 25...Bh4 loses to 26 Qh7+ Kg4 27 Qxh4, mate (1-0).

460. White's Rh4 is under attack, but Black's King is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Rxe6 Kxh7 26 Qxf7+ Kh8 27 Bgx6 Nf6 28 Bh6+ Bf6 29 Rd3+ Rc7. White's Queen is under attack, but has a forced mate. How? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 27...Nf6 loses to 28 Rd3 (1-0), when Black can't stop 29 Rh3+ Nh7 30 Qxh7, mate. 2 This threatens 29 Qg7, mate, and is better than 28 Rd3 Bh4 29 Rh3 Qxd4 30 g3, etc. 3 29 Bxf6 sells out too cheaply, e.g., 29...Rc7 30 Qxe8 Qxe8 31 Bxe8 Rc8 32 Bxc6, when White is up four pawns. 4 Hint: White can add another attacker on h7 by opening up the h-file for his Rook.
461. Black has pressure on c2 and b2. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Rxh7+ Khxh7 23 Qf7+ Kh6 24 f4 Kh5 25 Qh7+ Kg4 26 Qxg6+ Kxf4 27 Qf5+ Kg3 28 Qf3+ Kh4. How does White win here?

1. 23...Bg7 loses to 24 Rh1, mate. 2. 24...Bh4 25 Rh1 g5 loses to 26 f5 and 27 Qg6, mate. 3. See 459 for 25 Qh7+. 4. Also good is 27 Rh1+ Ke3 (27...Ke5 28 Qf5, mate) 28 Qf5 with 29 Qf3, mate. 5. 27...Kh4 28 Rh1 is mate. 6. White also wins with 29 b4 Qa3 30 Rd2 (1-0) Kh6 31 f4.

462. Black is threatening ...Qa3 and ...Qb2, mate. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Qb8+ Kg7 25 Qe8 Qa3 26 Rxh7+ Kxh7 27 Qxf7+ Bg7 28 c3 Qa5 29 Rd1 Kh6 30 f4 Bf6. How does White win here?

1. 24...Rf8 25 Qxa7 is good for White. 2. 26...Kf6 loses to 27 Rxf7+, e.g., a) 27...Ke5 28 Qh8/Qb8, mate or b) 27...Kg5 28 Qxe7+ Bf6 (28...Kh6 29 Rh7, mate) 29 Qxf6+ Kh6 30 Rh7, mate. 3. 27...Qh2 drops the Queen to 26 Qh7+, while 25...Qxg6 loses to 26 Rh1+, Kg5 27 Rg1+ 26 f4 Qg2+. 4. White threatens 29 Qxe7 and 30 Qxg7, mate. Note that after 29 Rxh7 Kh6, White can’t play 30 Qh4, mate. 5. 28...c4 loses to 29 Rd1-h1, mate. 6. White also wins with 29 b4 Qa3 30 Rd2 (1-0) Kh6 31 f4.

463. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Qxe7+ Rf7 21 Rh7+ Kxh7 22 Qxh7+ Kh6 23 Kd2 Qh2 24 Bd3 Nb6 25 Rh5+ Kxh5 27 Qxg6+ Kh4. How does White win here?

1. 20...Kg8 loses to 21 Rh7, threatening 22 Qg7, mate. 2. 25 Bxg6 Qg5+ 25...Qh2 drops the Queen to 26 Qh7+, while 25...Qxg6 loses to 26 Rh1+ Kg5 27 Rg1+ 26 f4 Qg2+. 3. At this point White has a Queen and pawn for two Rooks and threatens 24 Qh7, mate. 4. 24...Kg8 loses to 25 Bh6, mate. 5. 25...Qh1 26 Qxg6 is mate.
SECTION 4. THE CLASSIC BISHOP SACRIFICE ON H7

This section contains exercises in which White sacrifices a Bishop on h7 via the sequence 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+, when Black typically plays either 2...Kg8 or 2...Kg6. If Black plays 2...Kg8 then White usually follows up with 3 Qh5.

There are three types of positions in which this sacrifice occurs, depending on the status of e7. In Chapters 18 and 19, the square e7 is always occupied by a Black Knight, while in Chapter 20 the square e7 is always occupied by a Black Bishop. In Chapters 16 and 17, the e7 square is either vacant or is occupied by a piece other than a Black Bishop or Knight.

This section contains two sets of chapters that are paired together. Chapters 16 and 17 contain the same source games and feature the same first three moves (1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+), but Chapter 16 covers the reply 2...Kg8, while Chapter 17 covers the reply 2...Kg6. Chapters 18 and 19 also contain the same source games and feature the same first three moves (1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+), but Chapter 18 covers the reply 2...Kg8, while Chapter 19 covers the reply 2...Kg6.

The section includes the following five chapters:

CHAPTER 16. THE SEQUENCE 1 BXH7+ KXH7 2 NG5+ KG8 3 QH5
CHAPTER 17. THE SEQUENCE 1 BXH7+ KXH7 2 NG5+ KG6
CHAPTER 18. THE SEQUENCE 1 BXH7+ KXH7 2 NG5+ KG8 3 QH5 (BLACK NE7)
CHAPTER 19. THE SEQUENCE 1 BXH7+ KXH7 2 NG5+ KG6 (BLACK NE7)
CHAPTER 20. THE SEQUENCE 1 BXH7+ KXH7 2 NG5+ (BLACK BE7)

CHAPTER 16, THE SEQUENCE 1 BXH7+ KXH7 2 NG5+ KG8 3 QH5, contains exercises involving the sequence 1 Bxh7 Kxh7 2 Ng5+ Kg8 3 Qh5, when White has sacrificed his Bishop for a pawn on h7, but has obtained an active Queen on h5 and Knight on g5.

CHAPTER 17, THE SEQUENCE 1 BXH7+ KXH7 2 NG5+ KG6, contains exercises involving the sequence 1 Bxh7 Kxh7 2 Ng5+ Kg6, when White has sacrificed his Bishop for a pawn on h7, but Black's King is exposed on g6.

CHAPTER 18, THE SEQUENCE 1 BXH7+ KXH7 2 NG5+ KG8 3 QH5 (BLACK NE7), contains exercises in which Black has a Knight on e7 and involves the sequence 1 Bxh7 Kxh7 2 Ng5+ Kg8 3 Qh5, when White has sacrificed his Bishop for a pawn on h7, but has obtained an active Queen on h5 and Knight on g5.

CHAPTER 19, THE SEQUENCE 1 BXH7+ KXH7 2 NG5+ KG6 (BLACK NE7), contains exercises in which Black has a Knight on e7 and involves the sequence 1 Bxh7 Kxh7 2 Ng5 Kg6, when White has sacrificed his Bishop for a pawn on h7, but Black's King is exposed on g6.

CHAPTER 20, THE SEQUENCE 1 BXH7+ KXH7 2 NG5+ (BLACK BE7), contains exercises in which Black has a Bishop on e7 and involves the sequence 1 Bxh7 Kxh7 2 Ng5+, when White has sacrificed his Bishop for a pawn on h7, but has obtained an attack on Black's weakened kingside.
This chapter contains exercises involving the sequence 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+ Kg8 3 Qh5, when White has sacrificed his Bishop for a pawn on h7, but has obtained an active Queen on h5 and Knight on g5.

In Diagram 1, after the moves 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+ (see Diagram 2), Black has four legal moves, two to the h-file (2...Kh6 and 2...Kh8) and two to the g-file (2...Kg6 and 2...Kg8). Moving to the h-file loses quickly, e.g., 2...Kh6 drops the Queen to 3 Nxe6 or 3 Nxf7+, while 2...Kh8 loses to 3 Qh5+ Kg8 4 Qh7, mate. So Black has to move to the g-file. 2...Kg8 is covered here in this chapter; 2...Kg6 is covered in the next chapter.

From Diagram 2, after 2...Kg8 3 Qh5, White threatens 4 Qh7, mate, when the only way that Black can prevent mate is with 3...Re8, but this weakens f7 and allows a mate in five moves (see Diagram 3) – 4 Qxf7+ Kh8 5 Qh5+ Kg8 (see Diagram 4) 6 Qh7+ Kh8 7 Qh8+ Ke7 8 Qxg7, mate. This is the main line of the classic Bishop sacrifice and runs 15 ply.

Note that in the original position (see Diagram 1) f7 is solidly defended, but after the moves 2 Ng5, 3 Qh5, and 3...Re8 (see Diagram 3) White has gained a 2-1 advantage on f7 and can play 4 Qxf7+. But if f7 is defended a third time in the original position, for example, by a Black Queen on e7 or a Bishop on e6, then the entire idea behind the sacrifice is unsound, since after 3 Qh5 Re8 White won’t be able to play 4 Qxf7+ because f7 will be defended by that extra piece.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. Black Plays ...Re8
2. Black Plays ...Rd8
3. Black Plays ...Rc8
4. Miscellaneous Mates
5. Black Defends h7 with ...Nf6
6. Black Defends h7 with ...Bf5 or Be4
7. Black Defends h7 with ...Qd3
8. Black Defends h7 with ...Nf8
9. Black Plays ...Qxg5

These themes are illustrated using forty preparatory positions, which are followed by thirty-two visualization exercises ranging in depth from seven to eighteen ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply: 5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Black Plays ...Re8

918 [VX-474]. White wins with 16 Qh8+ Ke7 17 Qxg7, mate.

919 [VX-487]. White wins with 16 Qh7+ Kf8 17 Qh8+ Ke7 18 Qxg7, mate.

920 [VX-488]. White wins with 15 Qh5+ Kg8 16 Qh7+ Kf8 17 Qh8+ Ke7 18 Qxg7, mate.

921 [VX-489]. White threatens 15 Qh7, mate, when 14...Re8 loses to 15 Qxf7+ Kh8 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Qh8+ Ke7 19 Qxg7, mate.

922 [VX-490]. After 12 Qh5, White threatens 13 Qh7, mate, when 12...Re8 loses to 13 Qxf7+ Kh8 14 Qh5+ Kg8 15 Qh7+ Kf8 16 Qh8+ Ke7 17 Qxg7, mate.

923 [VX-491]. After 14 Qh5, White threatens 15 Qh7, mate, when 14...Re8 loses to 15 Qxf7+ Kh8 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Qh8+ Ke7 19 Qxg7, mate.

2. Black Plays ...Rd8

924 [VX-475]. White has already played 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg8 14 Qh5, threatening 15 Qh7, mate, when 14...Rd8 gives White a mate in six: 15 Qxf7+ Kh8 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Qh8+ Ke7 19 Qxg7+ Ke8 20 Qf7, mate.

925 [VX-476]. White has already played 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg8 13 Qh5, threatening 14 Qh7, mate, when 13...Rd8 gives White a mate in six: 14 Qxf7+ Kh8 15 Qh5+ Kg8 16 Qh7+ Kf8 17 Qh8+ Ke7 18 Qxg7+ Ke8 19 Qf7, mate.

926 [VX-494]. White has already played 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg8 13 Qh5, threatening 14 Qh7, mate, when 13...Rd8 gives White a mate in six: 14 Qxf7+ Kh8 15 Qh5+ Kg8 16 Qh7+ Kf8 17 Qh8+ Ke7 18 Qxg7+ Ke8 19 Qf7, mate.
3. Black Plays ...Rc8

927 [VX-471]. Here Black has an escape square on d8, but White wins with 17 Qh8+ Ke7 18 Bg5+ f6 19 exf6+ gxf6 20 Bxf6+ Kf7 21 Qg7+ Ke8 22 Qg8+ Bf8 23 Qg6/Nd6, mate.

928 [VX-471]. Here d8 is open, but Black’s Bd7 is undefended. White wins with 15 Qxf7+ Kh8 16 Qxd7 Nxe5 17 Qxe6, when White is up two pawns and threatens 18 Qh3+ Qh6 19 Nf7+ with 20 Bxh6, forcing Black to trade Queens when down material.

4. Miscellaneous Mates

929 [VX-473]. White wins with 12 Qxf7+ Kh8 13 Rf3, when Black can’t stop 15 Rh3, mate. The basic matting pattern with 13 Qh5+ Kg8 14 Qh7+ etc also wins.

930 [VX-471]. Black has an escape square on d8, but Black can’t get to it after 17 Qh8+ Ke7 18 Bg5+ f6 19 Bxf6+ gxf6 20 Qxf6, mate.

931 [VX-471]. Here both d8 and d7 are open. White wins with 17 Bg5, threatening 18 Qh8, mate, e.g., 17...f6 18 exf6 gxf6 19 Bh6, mate, or 17...Ne7 18 Bf6 gxf6 19 Qh6+ Kg8 20 Nxf6, mate.
5. Black Defends h7 with ...Nf6

932 [VX-489]. White threatens mate on h7 and if Black defends with 14...Nf6, then 15 exf6 renews the threat, when 15...Re8 loses to either 16 Qxh7+ Kh8 17 Qxg7/Qh8, mate or 16 Qxf7+ Kh8 17 fxg7/Qxg7, mate.

933 [VX-491]. White threatens mate on h7 and if Black defends with 14...Nf6, then 15 exf6 renews the threat, when 15...Re8 loses to either 16 Qxf7+ Kh8 17 fxg7/Qxg7, mate, or 16 Qh7+ Kh8 17 Qxg7/Qh8, mate.

934 [VX-487]. White threatens mate on h7 and if Black defends with 13...Nf6, then 14 exf6 renews the threat, when 14...Re8 loses to either 15 Qh7+ Kh8 16 Qxg7/Qh8, mate, or 15 Qxf7+ Kh8 16 Qxg7/fxg7, mate.

935 [VX-494]. If Black defends h7 with 13...Nf6, then after 14 exf6 Bxd2+ 15 Nxd2 Rd8 White wins with either 16 Qxf7+ Kh8 17 fxg7/Qxg7, mate, or 16 Qh7+ Kh8 17 Qh8, mate.

936 [VX-468]. Here Black is defending f6 with two Knights, which allows him to defend with 15...Nf6 16 exf6 Nxf6, when material is even. White's attack is broken and Black has the better pawn structure.

937 [VX-493]. Here 15...Nf6 loses to 16 Qxf7+ Kh8 17 Re4, e.g., 17...Nxe4 loses to 18 Qh5+ Kg8 19 Qh7+ Kh8 20 Qh8+ Ke7 21 Qxg7, mate, or 17...Ng4 18 hxg4, when White is up two pawns and has an attack, e.g., 18...Ne7 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 e6, threatening 21 Qh7+ Kh8 22 Rf4 Nf6 23 Qh8+ Ke7 24 Nd5, mate, when 20...d5 loses to 21 Qf7+ Kh8 22 Re3 Ngs 23 Rh3+ Nh5 24 Rxh6+ gxh6 25 Qh7, mate.
6. Black Defends h7 with ...Bf5 or Be4

938 [VX-470]. White is down two pieces, allowing Black to defend with 19...Be4, e.g., 20 Nxe4 Nxe4 21 exd6 b5, when White is down a piece.

939 [VX-472]. White is down a piece for a pawn and threatens mate on h7, but Black can give back the piece in order to stop the mate with 12...Be4 13 Nxe4 f6, when White is up a pawn.

7. Black Defends h7 with ...Qd3

942 [VX-479]. Black can defend h7 with 14...Nf6 15 exf6 Qd3 but White wins with 16 Nce4, e.g., 16..Qxe4 17 Nxe4 Nd7 18 Qg5 g6 (18..Nxf6 19 Nxf6+ Kh8 20 Qh5 is mate) 19 Qh6 Nxf6 20 Nxf6, mate, or 16..Rd8 17 Qxf7+ Kh8 18 Qxg7/fxg7, mate, or 17 Qh7+ Kh8 18 Qh8, mate.

943 [VX-486]. Black can defend h7 with 18...Qd3, but White wins after 19 Rxf7 Rd8 (19..Rxf7 20 Qxf7+ Kh8 21 Qf8, mate) 20 Rf1, threatening 21 Qf7+ Kh8 22 Qf8+, and if 20...N8d7 then White wins with 21 Qf7+ Kh8 22 e6 Nf6 23 e7 Rg8 24 Rxf6, when Black can't play 24..gx6 because of 25 Qxf6+ Rg7 26 e8=Q, mate.

944 [VX-492]. Black can defend h7 with 14...Nf6 15 exf6 Qd3 and 15..Qg6, although White is up a pawn after 16 Rd1, e.g., 16..Qg6 17 Qxg6 fxg6 18 f7+ Kh8. Similar are 16..Qc2 17 Rd2 Qg6 18 Qxg6 fxg6 19 f7+ Kh8 and 16..Qf5 17 g4 Qc2 18 Rd2 Qg6 19 Qxg6 fxg6 20 f7+ Kh8.
945 [VX-480]. Black can defend h7 with 15...Nf6 16 exf6 Qd3, but White then wins with 17 Nce4 (also good is 17 fxg7 Kxg7 18 Nce4) Rd8, when White can choose between 18 Qxh7+ Kh8 19 Qh8, mate, and 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Qh8, mate.

946 [VX-477]. Black can defend h7 with 15...Nf6 16 exf6 Qd3, threatening 17...Qxc3+, e.g., 17 fxg7 Qxc3+, when 18 Bd2 loses to 18...Qxa1+ 19 Ke2 Bxc4+ 20 Kf3 Qxg7, when white is down a Rook and a pawn and 18 Kf1 Bxc4+ forces White to play 19 Qe2, since 19 Kg1 Qe1 is mate, but better is 17 Qf3 Qxf3 18 Nxf3 gxf6, when Black has the better position, e.g., 19 Bh6 Rd8 20 Nd2 Rd3 21 0-0 Rad8, etc.

947 [VX-495]. Black can defend h7 with 14...Qd3, threatening 15...Nxe5 and 16...Nf6, when 15 Rd1 can be met by 15...Qf5 16 g4 Qg6 or 15...Qg6 16 Qf3 Bd7, while after 15 Re1 Qg6 16 Qh4 Ba6 17 Rd3, when after 19 Re4 Nf6 20 Rg4 f5, White lacks compensation for the piece, e.g., 21 exf6 Nxf6 22 Rf4 e5 23 Rf3 Rf3 24 Nxf3 Qc2 or 21 Rf4 Nb7 (Black defends e6 before playing Qh6) 22 Re1 Qh6 23 Qxh6 gxh6 24 Nf3 Nxe4 25 Bc1 Rd8, with a dominant position.

948 [VX-496]. Black can defend h7 with 15...Nf6 16 exf6 Qd3, but White wins after 17 fxg7 Kxg7 18 Nxe6+ fx6 (other moves drop the exchange on f8) 19 Bh6+ and now: 19...Kh7 20 Rad1 Qf5 loses to 21 Rd7+ Kg8 22 Rg7+ Kh8 23 Rg5, when Black's Queen, Rook, and King are all under attack; 19...Kg8 (19...Kf6 20 Qg5+ Kg8 transposes) 20 Qg5+ Kf7 21 Qg7+ Kg8 loses to either 22 Qxf8+ (or 22 Rad1 Qf5 23 Qd7, mate) 22...Kd7 23 Qf7+ Kc8 24 Rad1, hitting both d3 and d7; or 19...Kf8 (best) 20 Bxf8+ Qh7 21 Qxh7+ Kh8, when White is up the exchange and two pawns.

949 [VX-484]. Black can defend h7 with 12...Bxc3+ 13 bxc3 Nf6 14 exf6 Qd3, when material is even after 15 fxg7 Qxc3+ 16 Kf1 Qxg7. Play might continue 17 Bh2 and now: 17...f6 18 Nxe6 Qxg2+ (after 18...Bxg2+ 19 Kg1, Black's Queen is still under attack and has nowhere to move on the g-file) 19 Ke2 Qe4+ 20 Kd2 Qxe6, when White mates with 21 Rh1+ Qg4 22 Rxe4, mate, or 17...e5 18 Bxe5 f6 19 Ne6 Qxg2+ 20 Ke2 fxe5 (White is up the exchange after 20...Bf3+ 21 Qxf3 Qxf3+ 22 Kxf3 fxe5+ 23 Nxf8 Kxg8) 21 Rag1 Rxg2+ 22 Ke1 Ng7 23 Rxf2+ Rxg2, when White can play either 24 Ng5 or 24 Rf1, intending 25 Qf7+ Kh8 25 Rf5.
8. Black Defends h7 with ...Nf8

950 [VX-493]. Black can defend h7 with 15...Nf8, when play might continue 16 Qxf7+ Kh8 17 Re4 Re6 18 d5 Rh6 19 dxc6 bxc6 (after 19...dxe5 20 Rxe5, White threatens 21 Re8) 20 exd6 Bxd6 21 ...Nf6 22 Qxg7. Black can defend g7 with either 21...Rg6 or 21...Bd4, but both lose more material, e.g., 21...Rg6 22 Qf4, threatening both 23 Qxd6 and 23 Nf7+, or 21...Bd4 22 Qf4 Nxf6 23 Nf7+ Kh7 24 Nxd8 Rxd8, when White is up the exchange and two pawns.

9. Black Plays ...Qxg5

952 [VX-466]. The only way that Black can avoid mate is by giving up his Queen with 10...Qxg5, when after 11 Bxg5 Bxc4, White has a Queen for two pieces.

953 [VX-467]. The only way that Black can avoid mate is by giving up his Queen with 12...Qxg5, when after 13 Bxg5 Nxd4, when White has a Queen for two pieces.

954 [VX-487]. The only way that Black can avoid mate is by giving up his Queen with 13...Qxg5, when after 14 Bxg5 Nxc3 15 bxc3 Bxc3, White has a Queen for two pieces.
955 [VX-481]. The only way that Black can avoid mate is with 14...Qxg5, e.g., 15 Bxg5 Nxc3 16 bxc3 Bxc3 17 Qg4 when 17...Bxd4 loses to 18 Bf6 g6 19 Qh4, with mate on h8, but Black can defend against the mate with 17...Nxd4 18 Bf6 Nf5, defending g7, but White has a Queen for two pieces and a pawn and can win Black's c-pawn with 19 Rac1.

956 [VX-483]. The only way that Black can avoid mate is with 10...Qxg5, e.g., 11 fxg5 cxd4 12 a3 Ba5 (best, as Black wins White's e-pawn and get his own pawn to c3) 13 b4 dxct 14 bxa5 Nxe5, when White has a Queen for two pieces and a pawn, but Black's position is solid, e.g., 15 Qh3 d4, etc.

957 [VX-482]. The only way that Black can avoid mate is with 11...Qxg5, but Black gets the better position after 12 Bxg5 Nxc3 13 a3 Ba5 14 b4 Bb6, although White can draw with 15 Bf6, e.g., 15...Nxd4 (15...gxf6 loses to 16 exf6) 16 Bxg7 Kxg7 17 Qg5+ Kh7 18 Qh5+ Kg7 19 Kh5+, with a perpetual check, while 16 Qg5 can be met by 16...Nf5, defending g7, and if White tries to drive the Knight away with 17 g4, then 17...Ne4 wins, e.g., 18 Qf4 Nxf2 (threatening to win Black's Queen with 19...Nd3+) 19 Ke2 Be3 20 Qc4 b5 21 Qxc7 Nxc7, when saving the Bishop with 22 Be7 drops another piece to 22...Bb6 23 Qc3 Nxe7, giving Black four pieces and a pawn for the Queen.
465. Black can play ...Be4, temporarily stalling White’s attack. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg8 14 Qh5 Be4 15 Nxe4. What is the material balance?

1 For 13...Kg6, see exercise 521. 2 14...Re8 gives White a typical mate with 15 Qxf7+ Kh8 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Qh8+ Ke7 19 Qxg7, mate.

466. Here Black’s Rf8 can’t move, which hems in Black's King. Visualize the position after the moves 8 Bxh7+ Kxh7 9 Ng5+ Kg8 10 Qh5 Qxg5 11 Bxg5 Bxc4. What is the material balance?

1 For 9...Kg6, see exercise 513. 2 Black doesn’t have any choice. Adding the moves 10...Bxc3+ 11 bxc3 doesn’t change anything and 10...Nf6 11 exf6 Re8 loses to 12 Qxf7+ Kh8 13 Qh7+ Kf8 14 Qh8+ Ke7 15 Qxg7, mate.

467. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxh7+ Kxh7 11 Ng5+ Kg8 12 Qh5 Qxg5 13 Bxg5 Nxd4. What is the material balance?

1 For 11...Kg6, see exercise 517. 2 The only move to avoid mate. 12...Re8 gives White a typical mate: 13 Qxf7+ Kh8 14 Qh5+ Kg8 15 Qh7+ Kf8 16 Qh8+ Ke7 17 Qxg7, mate.

468. Black can defend h7 by getting a Knight to f6. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxh7+ Kxh7 14 Ng5+ Kg8 15 Qh5 Nf6 16 exf6 Nxf6. What is the material balance?

1 For 14...Kg6, see exercise 503. 2 Slightly better is the game continuation 15 Qe4 g6 16 Qh4 (1-0) Nf6 17 exf6 Nxf6, when the dark squares around Black’s King are a little weaker and White’s Queen is not under attack (compared to the main line).
469. White's Nd6 give White another attacker on f7. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxh7+ Kxh7 16 Ng5+ Kg8 17 Qh5 Nf8 18 Ndxf7 Ng6 19 Qxg6. What is the material balance? What is White's threat in this position?

1 16...Kg6 loses to 17 Qd3+ f5 18 exd6+, e.g., 18...Kxf6 19 Nh7, mate or 18...Kh5 19 Qh7+ Kg4 20 Qh5+ Kf3, mate. See exercise 511. 2 White's threat is 18 Qh8, mate. Black resigned here. 3 18...Rxf7 loses to 19 Qxf7+, Kh8 20 Qh8+, mate.

470. White is currently down a piece and a pawn. Black will be able to defend h7 with ...Be4. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxh7+ Kxh7 18 Ng5+ Kg8 19 Qh5 Be4 20 Nxe4 Nxe4 21 exd6. What is the material balance?

1 Black is up a pawn after both 17 exd6 Bd5 or 17 Qxd6 Qxd6 18 exd6 Bd5, e.g., 19 Ne5 b5 20 b3 Bxd7 21 Bxe4 Nxe5 22 Bxe5 (22 cxd5 drops the exchange to 22...Ned3) Bxc4. 2 For 18...Kg6, see exercise 520. 3 19...Bd5 loses to 20 Qh7, mate (1-0).

471. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg8 14 Qh5 Rfc8 15 Qxf7+ Kh8 16 Qxd7. What is the material balance?

1 For 13...Kg6, see exercise 507. 2 Best. 14...Rfd8 loses to 15 Qxf7+ Kh8 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17 Qh7+ Kh8 18 Qxg7+ Ke8 20 Qf7, mate, while 14...Rfe8 loses to 15 Qf7+ Kh8 16 Ne4, e.g., a) 16...Bxe4 17 Qh8+ Ke7 18 Bg5+ f6 19 Bxf6+ gxf6 20 Qxf6, mate; b) 16...Bc8 17 Bg5 (threatening 18 Qh8, mate) and now: b1) 17...f6 18 exf6 gxf6 19 Bh6, mate, or b2) 17...Ne7 18 Bf6 gxf6 19 Qh6+ Kg8 20 Nf6, mate; or c) 16...Rc8 17 Qh8+ Ke7 18 Bg5+ f6 19 exf6+ gxf6 20 Bxf6+ Kf7 21 Qg7+ Ke8 22 Qg6+ Bf8 23 Qg6/Nf6, mate.

472. Visualize the position after the moves 9 Bxh7+ Kxh7 10 Ng5+ Kg8 11 Qh5 Bxc3+ 12 Bxc3 Be4 13 Nxe4 f6. What is the material balance?

1 For 10...Kg6, see exercise 235. 2...f6 immediately loses to 12 Qh7, mate (1-0).
473. A Rook lift becomes possible with White’s pawn on f4. Visualize the position after the moves 9 Bxh7+ Kxh7 10 Ng5+ Kg8 11 Qh5 Re8 12 Qxf7+ Kh8. How does White mate in three?

1 Better is 10...Kg6 — see exercise 510. 2 This allows mate. Black’s only move is to give up his Queen with 11...Qxg5 12 fxg5, when White has a Queen and pawn for two pieces.

474. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxh7+ Kxh7 11 Ng5+ Kg8 12 Qh5 Nf6 13 exf6 Re8. How does White mate in two? There is more than one solution.

1 For 11...Kg6, see exercise 508. 2 This only delays the inevitable. 12...Re8 immediately loses to 13 Qxf7+ Kh8 14 Qh5+ Kg8 15 Qh7+ Kg8 16 Qh8+ Ke7 17 Qxe7, mate. The only way to avoid mate is by playing 12...Qxg5.

475. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg8 14 Qh5 Nf6 15 exf6 Rd8. How does White mate in two? There is only one solution.

1 For 13...Kg6, see exercise 523. 2 This opens up the 7th rank for Black’s Qc7 and defends the f-pawn. 14...Rd8 loses to 15 Qxf7+ Kh8 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Qh8+ Ke7 19 Qxg7+ Ke8 20 Qf7, mate.

476. Black’s Queen has moved off of d8. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg8 13 Qh5 Re8 14 Qxf7+ Kh8 15 Qxe8+ Nf8 16 Nxe6. What is the material balance?

1 For 12...Kg6, see exercise 528. 2 This opens up an escape square on d8 for the King (see footnote to move 15). 13...Rd8 loses to 14 Qxf7+ Kh8 15 Qh5+ Kg8 16 Qh7+ Kf8 17 Qh8+ Ke7 18 Qxg7+ Ke8 19 Qf7+, mate, while 13...Nf6 loses to 14 exf6, e.g., 14...Bxd2+ 15 Nxd2 Rd8 with either 16 Qh7+ Kf8 17 Qh8, mate or 16 Qxf7+ Kh8 17 fxg7/Qxg7, mate. 3 White has three pawns for the piece after 15 Qh5+ Kg8 16 Qh7+ Kf8 17 Qh8+ (better is 17 Qf7+, returning to the main line) Ke7 18 Qxg7+ Kd8 18 Nf7+ Ke7 19 Be3.
477. Black will be able to defend h7 by playing ...Nf6 and ...Qd3. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxh7+ Kxh7 14 Ng5+ Kg8 15 Qh5 Nf6 16 exf6 Qd3 17 Qf3 Qxf3 18 Nxf3 gxf6. What is the material balance?

1 In the game Black conceding the pawn with 13...Kh8 (1-0, 28). 2 For 14...Kg6, see exercise 505. 3 This defends h7 and threatens 17...Qxc3+. 4 17 fxg7 loses to 17...Qxc3+, when 18 Kf1 loses to 18...Bc4+ 19 Kg1 Qe1 is mate and 18 Bd2 drops the Rook to 18...Qxa1+ 19 Ke2 Bxc4+ 20 Kf3 Qxg7, when Black is defending.

478. White has a typical mate. Visualize the position after the moves 9 e5 Nd5 10 Bxh7+ Kxh7 11 Ng5+ Kg8 12 Qh5 Nf6 13 exf6 Re8. How does White mate in two?

1 For 11...Kg6, see exercise 524. 2 This threatens the typical mate, which Black can avoid only by giving up his Queen on g5. 3 12...Re8 loses to 13 Qxf7+. 4 13...gxh6 loses to 14 Qh7, mate.

479. Black will be able to defend h7 by playing ...Nf6 and ...Qd3. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg8 14 Qh5 Nf6 15 exf6 Qd3 16 Nce4 Rd8. How does White win here?

1 For 13...Kg6 14 Qd3+ f5 15 exf6+ Kxf6 16 Nce4+, see exercise 519. 2 The actual game continue 14...Re8 15 Qxf7+ Kh8 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17 Qh7+ Kh8 18 Qh8+ Ke7 19 Qxg7, mate (1-0). 3 Black defends f7, but it's not enough. 4 16...Qxe4 17 Nxe4 temporarily stops the mate.

480. Black will be able to defend h7 by playing ...Nf6 and ...Qd3, but it's not enough. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxh7+ Kxh7 14 Ng5+ Kg8 15 Qh5 Nf6 16 exf6 Qd3 17 Nce4 Rd8. How does White win here?

1 For 14...Kg6, see exercise 501 (1-0, 16). 2 15...Re8 loses to 16 Qxf7+ Kh8 17 Qh5+ Kg8 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Qh8+ Ke7 20 Qxg7, mate. 3 Also good is 17 fxg7 Kxg7 18 Nce4, threatening to play 19 Qh7, mate, and if 18...Rd8 then White wins with either 19 Qh7+ Kf8 20 Qxf7, mate or 19 Qxf7+ Kh6/Kh8 20 Qh7, mate.
481. Black has pressure on c3. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg8 14 Qh5 Qxg5 15 Bxg5 Nxc3 16 bxc3 Bxc3 17 Qg4 Nxd4 18 Bf6 Nf5. What is the material balance?

1 Best. 13...Kg6 loses to 14 Qe4+ (see exercise 502). 2 The only move to avoid mate. The actual game continued 14...Re8 15 Qxf7+ Kh8 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Qh8+ Ke7 19 Qxg7, mate. 3 The Knight is headed to f5, where it will defend g7. 17...Bxd4 loses to 18 Bf6 g6 19 Qh4, with mate on h8.

482. Black has pressure on c3. Visualize the position after the moves 9 Bxh7+ Kxh7 10 Ng5+ Kg8 11 Qh5 Qxg5 12 Bxg5 Nxc3 13 bxc3 Bxc3+ 14 Ke2 Bxa1 15 Rxa1 Nxd4+. What is the material balance?

1 10...Kg6 See exercise 525. 2 11...Re8 loses to 12 Qxf7+. 3 Relatively best is 13 a3, when White can meet 13...Ba5 with either a) 14 b4 Bb6 15 Bf6 with a draw, e.g., 15...Nxd4 16 Bxg7 (16 Qg5 can be met by 16...Nf5, e.g., 17 g4 Ne4, etc) Kxg7 17 Qg5+ Kh7 18 Qh5+, with a perpetual check, or b) 14 Bd2 Nb5 15 Bxa5 Nxa5 16 Rd1 Nc6 17 Rd3, giving up the d-pawn for some kingside counterplay, although Black can defend with 17...Nbxd4 18 Rh3 f5, creating an escape square on f7.

483. Black can get pressure on c3. Visualize the position after the moves 8 Bxh7+ Kxh7 9 Ng5+ Kg8 10 Qh5 Qxg5 11 fxg5 cxd4 12 a3 Ba5 13 b4 dxc3 14 bxa5 Nxe5. What is the material balance?

1 For 9...Kg6, see exercise 500. 2 10...Re8 loses to 11 Qxf7+ Kh8 12 Qh5+ Kg8 13 Qh7+ Kf8 14 Qh8+ Ke7 15 Qxg7, mate, while 10...Bxc3+ loses to 11 bxc3 Re8 12 Qxf7+ Kh8 13 Qh5+ Kg8 14 Qh7+ Kf8 15 Qh8+ (1-0) Ke7 16 Qxg7, mate. 3 Best. This allows Black to win White's e-pawn and get his own pawn to c3.

484. Black will be able to defend h7 by playing ...Nf6 and ...Qd3. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxh7+ Kxh7 11 Ng5+ Kg8 12 Qh5 Bxc3+ 13 bxc3 Nf6 14 exf6 Qd3 15 fxg7 Qxc3+ 16 Kf1 Qxg7. What is the material balance?

1 For 11...Kg6 12 h4, see exercise 516. 2 12...Re8 loses to 13 Qxf7+ Kh8 14 Qh5+ Kg8 15 Qh7+ (1-0) Kf8 16 Qh8+ Ke7 17 Qxg7, mate.
485. Black will be able to defend h7 by playing ...Bf5. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg8 14 Qh5 Bf5 15 e6 fxe6 16 g4 Nf6 17 Qh4 Bg6 18 Nxe6 Nxd4. What is the material balance?

1 For 13...Kg6, see exercise 527 (1-0, 16). 2 This defends h7 and threatens to win White's d-pawn. 3 15 g4 drops the d-pawn to 15...Bg6 16 Qh4 Bxd4, while after 15 Ng5 Bg6, White is down a piece for a pawn and doesn't have compensation.

486. Black will be able to defend h7 with ...Qd3, but then his P7 will be weak after Ba3. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxh7+ Kxh7 17 Ng5+ Kg8 18 Qh5 Qd3 19 Ba3 Bf5 20 Rxh5 Qxf5 21 Bxh8 Kxh8. How can White win Black's Queen? There are two solutions.

1 For 17...Kg6, see exercise 526. 2 19...Rd8 loses to 20 Qxf7+ Kh8 21 Qf8+, while 19...Nf6 20 exf6 Re8 loses to either 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Qxg7/Qh8, mate or 21 Qxf7+ Kh8 22 Qxg7/fxg7, mate. 3 21...Nc6 22 e6 Rxf8 loses to 23 Rf1, e.g., 23...Qg6 drops the Queen to 24 exf7+ Rxf7 25 Qxg6 and 23...Qe5+ 24 Kh1 wins.

487. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg8 13 Qh5 Re8 14 Qxf7+ Kh8 15 Qh5+ Kg8 16 Qh7+ Kf8. How does White mate in two?

1 For 12...Kg6, see exercise 506. 2 13...Nf6 14 exf6 Re8 loses to either 15 Qh7+ Kh8 16 Qxg7/Qh8, mate or 15 Qxf7+ Kh8 16 Qxg7/ fxg7, mate. The only move to avoid mate is to give up the Queen with 13...Qxg5, e.g., 14 Bxg5 Nxc3 15 bxc3 Bxc3, but then White wins with 16 Rad1, intending 17 Rd3-h3.

488. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg8 13 Qh5 Re8 14 Qxf7+ Kh8 15 Qh5+ Kg8 16 Qh7+ Kf8. How does White mate in two?

1 The actual game continued 11...Kh8 12 Ng5 Nf6 13 exf6 Qxf6 14 Qh5 (1-0), threatening 15 Bg6+ Kg8 16 Qh7, mate, when 14...Qh6 drops the Queen to 15 Nxf7+ and 14...Re8 15 Nxf7+ creates a mating net that wins Black's Queen. 2 For 12...Kg6, see exercise 515. 3 13...Nf6 14 exf6 Re8 loses to either 15 Qh7+ Kh8 16 Qxg7/Qh8, mate or 15 Qxf7+ Kh8 16 Qxg7/ fxg7, mate. The only move to avoid mate is to give up the Queen with 13...Qxg5.
489. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg8\(^\dagger\) 14 Qh5 Re8\(^\ddagger\) 15 Qxf7+ Kh8 16 Qh5+ Kg8. How does White mate in three?

\(^1\) For 13...Kg6, see exercise 499. \(^\ddagger\) After 14...Nf6 15 exf6 Re8, White wins with either 16 Qh7+ Kf8 17 Qxg7/Qh8, mate or 16 Qxf7+ Kh8 17 Qxg7/fxg7, mate. The only way that Black can avoid mate is to give up his Queen with 14...Qxg5.

490. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxh7+ Kxh7 11 Ng5+ Kg8\(^\dagger\) 12 Qh5 Re8\(^\ddagger\) 13 Qxf7+ Kh8 14 Qh5+ Kg8. How does White mate in three?

\(^1\) 11...Kh6 loses to 12 Qd3, when 12...Rh8 drops the Queen to 13 Nxf7+ and 12...g6 loses to 13 Qh3+ Kg7 14 Qh7, mate. For 11...Kg6, see exercise 518. \(^\ddagger\) 12...Nf6 13 exf6 Re8 loses to either 16 Qh7+ Kf8 17 Qxg7/Qh8, mate or 16 Qxf7+ Kh8 15 Qxg7/fxg7, mate. 12...Qxg5 is the only way to stop the mate. 12...Bf2+ 13 Kf1 doesn’t change anything.

491. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg8\(^\dagger\) 14 Qh5\(^\ddagger\) Re8\(^\dagger\) 15 Qxf7+ Kh8. How does White mate in four?

\(^\dagger\) This loses. For 13...Kg6 -- see exercise 522. \(^\ddagger\) The threat of mate wins Black’s Queen. \(^\dagger\) 14...Nf6 15 exf6 Re8 loses to either 16 Qh7+ Kf8 17 Qxg7/Qh8, mate or 16 Qxf7+ Kh8 17 Qxg7/fxg7, mate. The only move to avoid mate is to give up the Queen with 14...Qxg5.

492. Black will be able to defend h7 by playing ...Nf6 and ...Qd3. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7\(^\dagger\) 13 Ng5+ Kg8\(^\ddagger\) 14 Qh5 Nf6\(^\dagger\) 15 exf6 Qd3 16 Rd1 Qc2\(^\ddagger\) 17 Rd2 Qg6 18 Qxg6 fxg6 19 f7+ Kh8. What is the material balance?

\(^\dagger\) Black is down a pawn after 12...Kh8 13 Be4. \(^\ddagger\) For 13...Kg6, see exercise 512. \(^\dagger\) This clears the d-file for Black’s Queen. \(^\ddagger\) Both 16...Qg6 17 Qxg6 fxg6 18 f7+ and 16...Qf5 17 g4 Qc2 18 Rd2 Qg6 19 Qxg6 fxg6 20 f7+ are similar to the main line.
Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxh7+ Kxh7 14 Ng5+ Kg8\(^1\) 15 Qh5 Nf8\(^2\) 16 Qxf7+ Kh8 17 Re4 Re6 18 d5 Rh6 19 dxe6 bxc6\(^3\) 20 exd6 Bd7\(^4\) 21 Re7. What is the material balance and what is White's threat?

1 For 14...Kg6, see exercise 498. 2 15...Nf6 loses to 16 Qxf7+ Kh8 17 Qh5+ Kg8 21 Qxg7, mate. Black can avoid mate by giving up a piece with 17...Ne5 18 hxg4, but White is up two pawns and threatens 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Qxh6+ Kh7 22 Qxg7+, mate, when 18...Ne7 loses to 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Qxh6+ Nxe7 21 Qxg7+, mate. After 19...dxe5 20 Rxe5, White threatens 21 Re8. 4 This prevents 21 Re8.

Black will be able to defend h7 by playing ...Qd3. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg8\(^1\) 14 Qh5 Qd3\(^2\) 15 Re1\(^3\) Qg6 16 Qh4 Ba6 17 Re3\(^4\) Rd8 18 Bb2 Rd3 19 Re4 Na5 20 Rg4\(^5\) f5. What is the material balance?

1 For 13...Kg6, see exercise 509. 2 Black defends h7 and threatens 15...Nxe5 and 16...Nf6. 3 After 15 Rd1 Black can defend with either 15...Qg6 16 Qf3 Bb7 or 15...Qf5 16 g4 Qg6. 4 White wants to play 18 Rh3, but Black can stop this threat. 5 White has no useful discovered attacks with his Ng5.

Black will be able to defend h7 by playing ...Nf6 and ...Qd3. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxh7+ Kxh7 14 Ng5+ Kg8\(^1\) 15 Qh5 Nf6 16 exf6 Qd3 17 fxg7 Kxg7 18 Nxe6+ fxe6 19 Rh6+ Kg8 20 Bxf8+ Qh7 21 Qxh7+ Kxh7. What is the material balance?

1 14...Kg6 loses to 15 Qe4+ (see exercise 497). 2 Other moves drop the exchange on f8. 3 Best. a) 19...Kf7 20 Rd1 Qf5 loses to 21 Rd7+ Kg8 22 Kg7+ Kh8 23 Kg5, when all of Black's pieces are under attack; b) 19...Kg8 20 Qg5+ Kf7 21 Qf7+ Kc8 loses to 22 Rad1 Qf5 23 Qd7, mate; c) 19...Kf6 20 Qg5+ Kf7 transposes to line b).
CHAPTER 17. THE SEQUENCE 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+ Kg6

This chapter contains exercises involving the sequence 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+ Kg6, when White has sacrificed his Bishop for a pawn on h7, but has a target in Black's exposed King on g6.

In Diagram 1, after the moves 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+ Kg6 (see Diagram 2), White can continue the attack by either checking along the b1-h7 diagonal with 3 Qc2+ or Qd3+, playing 3 Qg4 (threatening to win Black's Queen with either 4 Nxe6 or Nxf7+), or playing 3 h4 with the threat of playing 5 h5+.

Each of these ideas is illustrated in the preparatory positions below (see items 6 through 9).

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. Tactics Involving the Move Qxa8
2. Tactics Involving the Move Nd5
3. Black Plays ...Kh6
4. Black Plays ...Kh5
5. Mating on e6
6. Ideas after Qc2+/Qd3+/Qe4+
7. Ideas after Qg4
8. Ideas after h4-h5+
9. Other Ideas Involving the Move h4
10. Miscellaneous

These themes are illustrated using one hundred ten preparatory positions, which are followed by thirty-two visualization exercises ranging in depth from nine to twenty-five ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply:</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Tactics Involving the Move Qxa8

958 [VX-499]. White can’t play 18 Qxa8 because of 18...Bc6, trapping White’s Queen.

959 [VX-523]. White’s Queen is trapped after 16 Qf3+ Ke7 17 Qxa8 Nc6, with ...Bb7 to follow.

960 [VX-523]. White wins with 18 Qf3+, when 18...Bb7 can be met by 19 Qxa7.

961 [VX-512]. White wins with 17 Qxc6, when the threat of 18 Qxe6, mate wins Black’s Rook.

962 [VX-523]. White’s Queen is trapped after 19 Qxa8 Nec6, with ...Bb7 to follow. Note that 19...Nbc6 isn’t good because then Black’s Bc8 can’t move because it’s pinned against Black’s King.

2. Tactics Involving the Move Nd5

964 [VX-527]. White wins with 17 f4+ Kf6 18 Nd5, mate.

965 [VX-517]. White can play 14 Nxd5, since 14...Qxd5 drops the Queen to 15 Nf4+.

966 [VX-524]. White wins with 14 Nxe6+ wins Black’s Nd5, e.g., 14...Kf7 15 Ng5+ Ke8 16 Nxd5 or 14...Kh7 15 Ng5+ Kg8 16 Nxd5.
3. Black Plays ...Kh6

967 [VX-518]. White wins with 13 Qh3+ Kg7 14 Qh7, mate.

968 [VX-499]. 18 Nf7 is mate.

969 [VX-499]. White can win Black’s Queen with 15 Nxf7+, but 15 Qh7, mate.

970 [VX-504]. Here Black can play 12...Kh6, since his Queen is not on d8 and White's Bd2 is under attack, e.g., 13 Nxe6+ Bxd2+ 14 Qxd2+ Kh7 15 Nxf8+ Nxf8, although White has a Rook and two pawns for two pieces.

4. Black Plays ...Kh5

971 [VX-513]. White wins with 12 Qd3, with the dual threat of 13 Qh7, mate and 13 Nxf7, mate, e.g., 12...g6 13 Nxf7+ Kg7 14 Qxg6, mate, or 12...f5 13 exf6 and now 12...Rh8 13 Nxf7, mate or 13...Nxf6 14 Nf7, mate.

972 [VX-518]. White wins with 12 Qd3, threatening 13 Qh7, mate, when 12...Rh8 drops the Queen to 13 Nxf7+, 12...g6 loses to 13 Qh3+ Kg7 14 Qh7, mate, and 12...Nc6 loses to 13 exf6, e.g., 13...g6 14 Qh3, mate, or 13...Rh8 14 Nxf7+.

973 [VX-504]. White wins with 14 Qh7+ Kg4 15 Qh3/h3/f3, mate.

974 [VX-501]. White wins with 17 Qh7+ Kg4 18 Qh3/h3, mate.

975 [VX-500]. White wins with 11 Qh7+ Kg4 12 Qh3, mate.
976 [VX-516]. White wins with 13 Qh7+ Kg4 14 Qh3/h3, mate (or 14 f3+ Bxf3 15 gxf3, mate).

977 [VX-506]. White wins with 17 Qh7+ Kg4 18 Rf4+ Kg3 19 Nce4/ Nge4/Ne2, mate.

978 [VX-503]. White wins with 15 Qd3+ f5 16 exf6+ Kh5 (16...Kxf6 17 Rxe6, mate) 17 Qh7+ Kg4 18 Qh3/h3/f3, mate.

5. Mating on e6

979 [VX-497]. 17 Qxe6 is mate.

980 [VX-502]. 16 Qxe6 is mate.

981 [VX-503]. 17 Rxe6 is mate.

6. Ideas after Qc2+/Qd3+/Qe4+

982 [VX-497]. White wins with 15 Qe4+, e.g., 15...Kh5 16 Qh7+ Kg4 17 Qh3/h3/f3, mate or 15...f5 16 exf6+ Kxf6 17 Qxe6, mate.

983 [VX-512]. White wins with 14 Qd3+ f5 15 exf6+, e.g., 15...Kxh5 16 Qh7+ Kg4 17 Qh3/h3/f3, mate or 15... Kxf6 16 Qf3+ Ke7 17 Qxe6 Rb8 18 Qxe6, mate.

984 [VX-503]. White wins with 15 Qd3+ (or 15 Qe4+), e.g., 15...Kh5 17 Qh7+ Kg4 18 Qh3/h3/f3, mate or 15...f5 16 exf6+ Kxf6 17 Rxe6, mate.
985 [VX-527]. After 14 Qd3+ f5 (14...Kh5 15 Qh7 is mate) 15 exf6+, Black can defend with 15...Bf5, but not 15...Kxf6 16 Nd5, mate.

986 [VX-498]. White wins with 15 Qd3+, e.g., 15...Kh5 16 Qh7, mate, or 15...f5 16 exf6+, and now: 16...Kxf6 17 Nd5, mate or 16...Kh5/Kh6 17 Qh7, mate.

987 [VX-502]. White wins with 14 Qe4+ f5 (14...Kh5 loses to 15 Qh7+ Kg4 16 Qh3/h3/f3, mate) 15 exf6+, e.g., a) 15...Kh6 16 Qh7, mate; b) 15...Kh5 16 Qh7+ Kg4 17 Qh3/h3/f3, mate; or c) 15...Kxf6 16 Qxe6, mate.

988 [VX-499]. After 14 Qc2+ f5 15 exf6+ Kxf6 16 Qxc5 White is up a pawn and threatens 17 Nh7+, 17 Qd4+, and 17 Ne3-e4+.

989 [VX-501]. After 15 Qc2+ f5 16 exf6+ (this move secures e4 for White's Knight) Kxf6 (16...Kh5 loses to 17 Qh7+ Kg4 18 Qh3/h3, mate) 17 Nce4+ Ke7 18 Qxc5+, when White is up a pawn and has an attack.

990 [VX-519]. After 14 Qc2+ f5 15 exf6+ (this move secures e4 for White's Knight) Kxf6 (15...Kh5 loses to 16 Qh7+ Kg4 17 Qh3/h3, mate) 16 Nce4+ Ke7 17 Qxc5+, White is up a pawn and has the better position.

991 [VX-498]. White wins with 15 Qd3+ f5 (15...Kh5 16 Qh7 is mate) 16 exf6+ Kxf6 17 Nd5, mate.

992 [VX-511]. White wins with 17 Qd3+ f5 18 exf6+, e.g., 18...Kxf6 19 Nh7, mate, or 18...Kh5 19 Qh7+ Kg4 20 Qh3+ Kxf4 21 Qg3, mate.

993 [VX-505]. After 15 Qd3+ f5 16 exf6+ Kxf6 17 Qf3+ Ke7 18 Qxc6 Bxc4, material is even (see miscellaneous).
994 [VX-513]. After 10 Qd3+ f5 11 exf6+ Kxf6 12 Nh7+ Ke7 13 Nxf8 Kxf8, White can win Black's Ra8 with 14 Qf3+ Qf6 15 Qxa8 Qxd4, when White is up two exchanges.

995 [VX-499]. White wins with 14 Qe4+ f5 15 exf6+ Kxf6 (15...Kh5 loses to 16 Qh7+ Kg4 17 Qh3/h3, mate) 16 Nh7+ Kg7, when 17 Nxf8 Qxf8 gives White a Rook and pawn for two Bishops, while 17 Bg5 can be met by Nf6 (17...Qb6 is also good), when White can't play 18 Qxa8 because 18...Bc6 traps White's Queen.

996 [VX-523]. White wins with 14 Qd3+ f5 15 exf6+ Kxf6 16 Nh7+ Kf7, when 17 Nxf8 Ne5 (here 17...Nxf8 18 Qf3+ Kg8 19 Qxa8 Nc6 20 Bf4 is good for White) 18 Qe4 Kxf8 19 Bf4 (19 Qxa8 loses to Nec6 with ...Bb7) Bb7 20 Bxe5, when White is up the exchange and a pawn.

997 [VX-507]. After 14 Qd3+ f5 15 exf6+ Kxf6 16 Nh7+ Kf7 17 Nxf8 Rxf8 White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces.

998 [VX-525]. After 11 Qd3+ f5 12 exf6+ Kxf6 13 Nh7+ Kf7 14Bg5 Nf6 15 Nxf8 Kxf8, White a Rook and pawn for two pieces.

999 [VX-509]. After 14 Qc2+ f5 15 exf6+ Kxf6 16 Rd1 Qe7 17 Nh7+ Kf7 18Bg5 Nf6 19 Nxf8 Kxf8, White a Rook and pawn for two pieces.

1000 [VX-506]. After 13 Qd3+ f5 14 exf6+ Kxf6 (14...Kh5 loses to 15 Qh7+ Kg4 16 Qh3/h3, mate) 15 Nh7+ Ke7 16 Nxf8 Kxf8, White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces.

1001 [VX-526]. White can also play 18 Qe1, threatening 19 Qh4 and 20 Qh7, mate. Now after 18...Bf5 19 Qg3 threatens 20 Ne6+ and 21 Qxg7, mate, while 18...f6 19 exf6 gxf6 20 Qg3 fxg5 21 Rxf8 gives White a Rook and pawn for two pieces.

1002 [VX-526]. Here 18 Qc2+ can be met by 18...f5 19 exf6 Bf5, defending, e.g., 20 Qf2 Nd7 to defend the Nb6 (20...gx6 21 Nf3 threatens both 22 Qxb6 and 22 Nh4+, winning a piece) 21 Qg3 gx6 22 Ne6+ Kf7 23 Ne7 with 24 Nxa8 gives White a Rook and pawn for two pieces.
1003 [VX-500]. After 10 Qd3+ f5 (the only move, as 10...Kh5 loses to 11 Qh7+ Kg4 12 Qh3, mate) 11 Nxe6 Qa5 12 Nxf8+ Nxf8, White has a Rook and two pawns for two pieces.

7. Ideas after Qg4

1006 [VX-516]. 12 Qg4 drops the e-pawn to 12...Nxe5, e.g., 13 Qg3 Bxc3+ 14 bxc3 Nd3+, etc.

1009 [VX-506]. 13 Qg4 is not possible because 13...Nxe3 undermines the support of White’s Ng5, e.g., 14 fxe3 Qxg5, when White is down two pieces for a pawn.

1010 [VX-515]. White gets nothing after 13 Qg4 f5 14 exf6 Nxf6, e.g., 15 Qh4 Rh8 or 15 Qg3 Nh5, driving White's Queen off the g-file, since 16 Qg4 Nf6 repeats the position.
1012 [VX-518]. After 12 Qg4 f5 13 Qg3 Qa5 14 Nxe6+ Kf7 15 Nxf8 Kxf8 White has a Rook and two pawns for two pieces.

1013 [VX-509]. After 14 Qg4 f5 15 Qg3 (15 exf6 Nxf6 16 Qg3 Nh5) Qe7 16 Nxe6+ Kf7 17 Nxf8 Kxf8 White has a Rook and two pawns for two pieces.

1014 [VX-509]. After 14 Qg4 f5 15 Qg3 best is 15...Qe7 16 Nxe6+ Kf7 17 Nxf8 Kxf8, when White a Rook and two pawns for two pieces, since 15...f4 16 Bxf4 Qe7 (16...Rxf4 drops the Queen to 17 Nxe6+) drops the exchange after 17 Qd3+ Rf5 18 g4.

1015 [VX-508]. After 12 Qg4 Ndxe5 13 Qg3, Black can choose between a) 13...Kf6 14 Ne4+ Ke7 15 Nxc5 material is even and b) 13...Kf5 14 Qf4+ Kg6 15 Qg3, repeating the position.

1016 [VX-505]. After 15 Qg4 Ndxe5 16 Qg3 Qd3 17 Nxe6+ Qxg3 18 Nxf8+ Rxf8 19 hxg3 Bxc4, White has only a Rook for two pieces and his pieces are less active than Black's pieces.

1017 [VX-507]. 14 Qg4 Nxe5 15 Qg3, when Black can choose between a) 15...f6 16 Nxe6+ Kf7 17 Nxf8 Kxf8, when Black has two pieces for a Rook and pawn or b) 15...Kf6 16 Ne4+ Ke7 17 Nxc5 Qxe5 (17...f6 drops the g-pawn to 18 Nxd7 Nxd7 19 Qxg7+) 18 Qxe5, when material is even.

1018 [VX-514]. After 11 Qg4 f5 (Black can also include the moves ...Bxc3 at any time) 12 Qh4 Nf6 13 exf6 Rh8 14 Qg3 Kxf6 breaks White's attack.

1019 [VX-519]. After 14 Qg4 f5 15 Qg3 (15 Qh4 Rh8) Qe7 16 Qh4 Nf6 17 exf6 gxf6, material is even, Black's Queen is defending h7 and his Pf6 is attacking White's Ng5.

1020 [VX-525]. After 11 Qg4 f5 12 Qg3 Qe7 13 Qh4 (White's threat is 14 Qh7, mate) Nf6 14 exf6 gxf6, material is even, Black's Queen is defending h7 and his Pf6 is attacking White's Ng5.
1021 [VX-517]. After 12 Qg4 f5 13 Qg3 Qe7 14 Ne2, White threatens 15 Nf4+ Kh6 16 Qh4, mate, and if 14...f4 15 Nxf4+ Rxf4 16 Bxf4, then White threatens 17 Qd3+ Kh6 18 Qh3+ Kg6 19 Qh7+, mate, and Black has to give back some material, e.g., 16...Nf6 17 exf6 Kxf6, when White is up the exchange and a pawn.

1022 [VX-513]. After 10 Qg4 f5 11 Qh4 Nf6 12 exf6 Rh8 13 Qg3 and now: a) 13...gxf6 drops the Queen to 14 Nxe6+; b) 13...Kxf6 loses to 14 Nxe6, e.g., 14...dx6 15 Bg5+ wins Black's Queen or 14...Kxe6 15 Qe5+ Kf7 16 Qd5+ wins Black's Ra8; or c) 13...Bd6 14 Qf3 Nc6 15 fxg7 Rg8 nets White two pawns.

1023 [VX-500]. 10 Qg4 doesn't give White an advantage, e.g., 10...f5 and now: 11 exf6 Nxf6 12 Qg3 Nh5 or 11 Qg3 Qa5 12 Qh3 Nf6 13 exf6 exd4 14 fxg7 Kxg7 15 Qh7+ Kf6 16 Qh6+ Ke7 17 Qg7+ Ke8 18 Qxd4 Nc6 19 Qg7 d4 20 Nh7 dxc3 21 b3, when White will have a Rook and pawn for two pieces after 22 Nx8 Bxf8.

1024 [VX-502]. 14. White gets the advantage after 14 Qg4 f5 15 Qg3 Qd7 16 Nxe6+ Kf7 17 Qxg7+ Kxe6 18 Qg6+ Ke7 19 Bg5+, e.g., 19...Nf6 20 Bxf6+ Rxf6 21 Qxf6+ Ke8, when White a Rook and three pawns for two pieces and an outside passed pawn.

1025 [VX-520]. 19 exd6 is not so good because of 19...e5 20 Be3 f5, preventing Qg4 and threatening 21...f4, but better is 19 Qg4 (threatening 20 Nxe6+ and 21 Qxg7, mate) f5 20 Qg3 Qe8 21 exd6 Nbd7 22 Nxe6+ Kf7 23 Nc7 Qd8 24 Nxa8 Bx8, when White has a Rook and two pawns for two pieces.

1026 [VX-510]. White wins the exchange. 11 Qg4 f5 12 Qg3 Qe8 (Black's Queen has to stay on the back rank since 12...Qe7 loses to 13 Qh3, threatening 14 Qh7, mate) 13 Nxe6+ Kf7 14 Nxf8 (White can also win the other Rook with 14 Nc7 Qe7 15 Nxa8 Nxa8) 14...Kx8 White has a Rook and two pawns for two pieces.
1027 [VX-524]. After 12 Qg4 f5 13 Qg3 (White's threat is 14 Nxe6+, winning Black's Queen) f4 (13...Qe7 14 Nxe6+Kf7 15 Ng5+ wins Black's Nd5) 14 Bxf4 and now: 14...Nxf4 15 Nxe6+ wins the Queen; 14...Qd7 15 Nxe6+ Kf7 16 Nxc7 Qb7 17 d5 gives White four pawns for the piece and a dominant position; 14...Kf5 15 Qh3+ (15 Qd3+ is also good) Kxf4 (15...Kg6 16 Qh7 is mate) 16 Nce4, when Black can't stop 17 Qf3, mate.

1028 [VX-522]. After 14 Qg4 f5 15 Qg3 (15 exf6 Nxf6 gives White nothing) Qe8 (15...Qe7 16 Nxe6+ Kh7 17 Nc7 Rd8 18 Bg5 Qf7 19 Qh4+ Kg8 20 e6 Qg6 21 Rae1 White's passed e-pawn gives White the advantage) 16 Nxe6+ Kf7 17 Qh3+ (17 Qd3+ is also good) Qd8 18 e6+ Ke7 19 Bg5+ Nf6 20 Rfe1, when White has three pawns for the piece and threatens 21 Nxf5+ and 22 e7.

1029 [VX-528]. White wins with 13 Qg4 f5 14 Qg3 Re8 15 Nxe6+ Kf7 (the only move) 16 Nxf7 and now: a) 16...Rg8 17 e6+ gives White three pawns for the piece and an attack after, e.g., 17...Ke7 18 Nxf5+ Kf6 19 Bh6+ or 17...Kf8 18 Bh6 Nf6 (to protect the Rg8) 19 Qg6 Ke7 20 Qf7+ Kd8 (20...Kd6 21 Nxf5 is mate) 21 Bg5, etc; or b) 16...Nxd4 17 Nxf5+ Nxf5 18 Qg6+, when White has a Rook and two pawns for two pieces; or c) 16 Ng5+ Kf8 17 Qf3 Qe8 (17...Nh6 18 Qh5 g6 19 Qxg6+ Qxg6 nets White three pawns) 18 Qxd5+ White has three pawns for the piece.

1030 [VX-515]. White wins with 13 Qg4 f5 14 Qg3 (14 exf6 Nxf6 15 Qg3 Nh5) Qe7 15 Nxe6+ Kh7 (15...Kf7 allows 16 Ne7, intending either 17 Bg5 Nf6 18 exf6 or 18 e6+), when White can decide among the following possibilities: a) 16 Ne7 Nh6 17 e6, with the threat of 18Bg5; b) 16 Nf4 Nc6 17 Qg6+ Kg8 18 Nxd5, with three pawns for the piece and a strong center; c) 16 Nf8+ Nxf8 with a Rook and two pawns for two pieces; or d) 16 Ng5+ Kg8 17 Qf3 Qe8 (17...Nh6 18 Qh5 g6 19 Qxg6+ Qxg6 nets White three pawns) 18 Qxd5+ White has three pawns for the piece.

1031 [VX-521]. Even material, but White has the better position. 14 Qg4 f5 15 Qg3 and now: a) 17...Qe8 loses to 18 e6+, e.g., a1) 18...Kf6 19 Qg5, mate; a2) 18...Kg8 19 Bh6, mating; or a3) 18...Ke7 19 Ba3+, winning; b) 15...Qe8 16 Nxe6+ Kf7 17 Nxc7 Qe7 gives White an extra tempo compared to 15...Qe7; or c) 15...Qe7 16 Nxe6+ (16 Qh4 Nf6 17 exf6 gxf6) Kh7 (16...Kf7 17 Nc7 threatens 18 Bg5 with 19 e6+) 17 Nxc7 Nc6 18Bg5 Qa3 (18...Qf7 drops the Nd7 to 19 e6) 19 e6 Nf6 20 d5, when White has three pawns for the piece and a dominant position in the center.
8. Ideas after h4-h5+

1032 [VX-514]. White wins Blacks Queen with 12 h5+ Kh6 13 Nxe6+ Kh7 14 Nxd8.

1033 [VX-527]. White wins Black's Queen with 16 h5+ Kh6 17 Nf7/+Ne6+.

1034 [VX-527]. White wins with 17 h5+, e.g., 17...Rxh5 18 Ne6+ (18 Qe4+ Qf5) Kh7 19 Qxh5+ Kg8 20 Ng5, etc.

1035 [VX-500]. After 12 h5+ Kh6 13 Nxe6 Qa5 14 Nxf8 Nxf8 15 Bd2, White has a Rook and two pawns for two pieces.

1036 [VX-527]. White wins with 17 h5+ Kh6 18 Ne6+ Kh7 19 Qxf5+ Kg8 20 Qf8+ Kh7 21 Ng5+ Kh6 22 Qxh8, mate.

1037 [VX-525]. After 15 h5+ Kh6 16 Nxe6+ Kh7 17 Nxd4 Bxa1 18 Nxc6 bxc6, White has a Queen for a Rook and Bishop.

1038 [VX-519]. White's Queen is under attack, but wins with 15 h5+ Kh6 16 Nxf7+/Nxe6+, when 16...Kh7 17 Qc2+ wins Black's Queen and 16...g5 loses to 17 hxg6+ Kxg6 18 Qg4+ Kh7 19 Qg7, mate.

1039 [VX-499]. White wins with 16 Qd3+ f5 17 exf6+ Kxf6 (17...Kh6 18 Nf7 is mate) 18 Qf3+ Kg6 (18...Ke7 19 Qxh5) 19 Qf7+ Kh6 20 Nxe6+, e.g., 20...Rg5 (20...Kh7 21 Qxg7 is mate) 21 Qxg7+ Kh5 22 Qh7+ Kg4 23 Qh3, mate.

1040 [VX-524]. White wins with 14 Qd3+ f5 15 exf6+ Kxf6 (15...Kh6 16 Nf7 is mate) 16 Qf3+ Kg6 (16...Ke7 17 Qxh5) 17 Qf7+ Kh6 18 Nxe6+, e.g., 18...Rg5 (18...Kh7 19 Qxg7 is mate) 19 Qxg7+ Kh5 20 Qh7+ Kg4 21 Qh3, mate.
1041 [VX-527]. White wins with 20 Nf4+ Kh6 and either 21 Nxe5 Bxe5 22 Nf4, when White has a Rook for three pawns, or 21 Nf3 (White’s threat is 22 Qg6+, mate) Kh7 22 Qg6+ with 23 Qxh5, when White has a Rook for two pawns.

1042 [VX-525]. White wins with 14 h5+ Kh6 15 Nxf7+ Kh7 16 Nxd8, when 16...Bxa1 17 Nxe6 bxc6 18 Ba3 Rf4 19 Qa1 gives White a Queen for a Rook and 16...Rx8 17 Qc2+ Kg8 18 Bb2 gives White a Queen for two pieces.

1043 [VX-513]. White wins with 11 h5+ Kh6 12 Qd3, threatening both 13 Qh7, mate and 13 Nxf7, mate, and now:
- 12...g6 13 Nxf7+ Kg7 14 Qxg6, mate, or
- 12...f6 13 exf6 and now 12...Rh8 13 Nxf7, mate or 13...Nxf6 14 Nf7, mate.

1044 [VX-514]. White wins with 12 h5+, e.g., 12...Kf5 13 g4 or 13 Qf3, mate, or 12...Kh6 13 Nxf7+, winning Black’s Queen, although also good is 13 Qd3+, e.g., 13...f5 14 exf6, threatening both 15 Qh7, mate and 15 Nf7, mate.

1045 [VX-516]. White wins with 14 h5+, e.g., 14...Kf5 15 g4, mate or 14...Kh6 15 Qd3, threatening both 16 Qh7, mate and 16 Nxf7, mate, when 15...g6 loses to 16 Nxf7+ Kg7 17 Qxg6, mate, and 15...f5 16 exf6 threatens 17 Qh7 mate, 17 Qg6 mate, and 17 Nf7 mate.

1046 [VX-513]. White wins with 11 h5+ Kh6 12 Qd3, with the dual threat of 13 Qh7, mate and 13 Nxf7, mate, when 12...g6 loses to 13 Nxf7+ Kg7 14 Qxg6, mate, and 12...f5 13 exf6, when White threatens 14 Qg6 mate, 14 Qh7 mate, and Nf7 mate.

1047 [VX-516]. 14 h5+ wins, e.g., a) 14...Kf5 15 Qd3+ and now: a1) 15...Kxe5 16 Qd4+ Kf5 17 Qf4, mate, or a2) 15...Kg4 16 Qg3+ Kf5 17 Qf4, mate; or b) 14...Kh6 15 Qg4, threatening 16 Nxe6+, e.g., b1) 15...Qe7 16 Nxe6+ Kh7 (16...g5 17 hxg6, mate) 17 Qxg7, mate, or b2) 15...Bxh1 16 Nxe6+ g5 (16...Kh7 17 Qxg7, mate) 17 hxg6+.

1048 [VX-525]. After 14 h5+ Kh6 (14...Kf5 15 Qf3/g4, mate), not so good is 15 Nxf7+ Kh7 16 Nxd8 Rx8, when Black a Rook and two pieces for a Queen and pawn, but 15 Qd3 threatens both 16 Qh7, mate and 16 Nxf7, mate and wins, e.g., 15...g6 16 Nxf7+ Kg7 17 Qxg6, mate or 15...f5 16 exf6, when Black can't stop both 17 Qh7 and 17 Qg6, mate.

1049 [VX-514]. White wins with 12 h5+ Kh6 (12...Kf5 13 g4, mate) 13 Qd3 (the threat is 14 Qh7 or 14 Nxf7, mate) Qxg5 (13...f5 14 exf6 doesn’t change anything) 14 Bxg5+ Kxg5 win three pieces for a Queen and pawn, but loses to 15 Qe3+, e.g., 15...Kg4 (15...Kf5 16 Rh4 with 17 Qf4, mate, is similar) 16 Qg3+ Kf5 17 Rh4 with 18 Rf4/ Qf4/Qg4, mate.
9. Other Ideas Involving the Move h4

1050 [VX-506]. 13 h4 can be met by 13...Nxe3 14 fxe3 f5, e.g., 15 exf6 gxf6 16 Qd3+ f5.

1051 [VX-520]. Here 19 h4 loses to 19...Bxe5, when White is down two pieces and Black's King gains access to f6.

1052 [VX-515]. After 16 Nxe6+ Kh7 17 Nc7 Ra7 18 Bg5 Qf8 19 Qf4 Nc6 20 e6 Nf6 21 Qxf5+ Kg8 22 Nxd5, White has four pawns for the piece.

1053 [VX-505]. After 15 h4 Ndxe5 16 h5+ Kf6 (16...Kf5 17 g4+ Ke6 18 Nh7+ is similar) 17 Nh7+ Ke7 18 Bg5+ f6 19 Nxf8 Qxf8 20 Be3 Bxc4, White has only a Rook for two pieces and a pawn.

1054 [VX-518]. 12 h4 gives White little, after 12...f5, e.g., 13 Nxe6 Nd4 14 Nxf8+ Nxf8 with a Rook and two pawns for two pieces or 13 h5+ Kh6 14 Nxe6 Nd4 15 Nxd8 Nxe2 16 Ne6 (16 Kxe2 Rxh8) Nxc3 17 Nxf8 Nxf8 18 bxc3, when White has a Rook and two pawns for two pieces.

1055 [VX-528]. After 13 h4 Ndxe5 14 dxe5 Nxe5, Black is up a pawn, but then comes 15 h5+ Kf6 16 Be3 Qc7, when White can pin and win Black's Ne5 with 17 Qd4 Bd6 18 Rac1 Qb8 19 f4 Ke7 20 fx5 Bxe5 21 Qb4+, when White is up a piece for two pawns.

10. Miscellaneous

1056 [VX-517]. White wins with 15 Nf4+ Kh6 16 Qh4, mate.

1057 [VX-526]. White wins with 20 Ne6+, e.g., 20...Kh7 21 Qxg7, mate, or 20...Kh5 21 Qg5, mate.

1058 [VX-522]. After 18 Nxe8 Rxg3 19 Nd6+ Ke6 20 fxg3, White is up the exchange and three pawns.
1059 [VX-526]. Both players have a Knight under attack, but after 21 Nf3 White threatens both 22 Qxb6 and 22 Nh4+, winning a piece.

1060 [VX-527]. White wins with 20 Ne6+ Kh7 and either 21 Qxg7+ Nxg7 22 Nf6, mate or 21 Nf6+ Nxf6 (21...gxf6 22 Qg6, mate) 22 Qxg7, mate.

1061 [VX-524]. White wins with 15 Qh3+ Kxf4 (15...Kg6 16 Qh7, mate) 16 Nce4, when Black can't stop 17 Qf3, mate.

1063 [VX-516]. White's Rh1 is under attack, but White wins with 16 h5+ Kf5 17 Qd3+, and now: 17...Rf5, but White wins with 15 Nxd5+ exd5 16 Qf3+ Kg6 17 h5+ Kh6 18 Qd3, threatening 19 Qg6/Qh7, mate.

1064 [VX-505]. White gets an attack with 19 Qe4 Bd5 20 Qg6, winning the g-pawn, since 20...Rg8 21 Qf7+ Kd6 22 Bf4+ Kc6 gives White an attack after 23 c4, e.g., 23...Bxc4 24 0-0-0 Qe8 25 Rd6+.

1066 [VX-501]. White wins with 18 Qh3+ Kxf4 19 Qh5 (White's threat is 20 Nh3, mate), when 19...Kxe5 drops the Queen to 20 Nf7+ and after 19...Qxg5 20 Ne2+ Kf5 21 g4+ Kxe5 22 Qxg5+ Kd6 23 Qxg7 White has a Queen and two pawns for three pieces.

1067 [VX-519]. White wins with 16 Qd3+ Kxe5 17 Qg3+ Kf6 18 Nh7+ Kf5 19 Re1, threatening 20 Re5, mate, e.g., 19...Ne3 (19...Be3 20 Bxe3 Nxe3 21 Rxe3 is similar) 20 Bxe3 (the threat is 21 Qf4, mate) Bxe3 21 Rxe3 e5 22 Qh3+ Kf4 23 Qf3, mate (or four other moves that mate in one).
497. White's Queen is on e2. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxh7+ Kxh7 14 Ng5+ Kg6 1 15 Qe4+ f5 2 16 exf6+ Kxf6. How does White win here?

1 For 14...Kg8 15 Qh5 Nf6 16 exf6 Qd3, see exercise 496. 2 15...Kh5 loses to 16 Qh7+ Kg4 17 Qh3/h3, mate.

498. Black's Rook is already on e8, but d5 is weak due to the lack of a pawn on e6. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxh7+ Kxh7 14 Ng5+ Kg6 1 15 Qd3+ f5 2 16 exf6+ Kxf6. How does White mate in this position?

1 The actual game continued 14...Kg8 (see exercise 493). 2 15...Kh5 16 Qh7 is mate.

499. Black's Bc5 is hanging. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg6 1 14 Qc2+ 2 f5 15 exf6+ Kxf6 16 Qxc5. What is the material balance?

1 13...Kg8 loses to 14 Qh5 -- see exercise 489. 2 Also good is 13 Ng5+ Kg6, e.g., 14 h4 Rh8 15 h5+ Rhx5 16 Qd3+ f5 17 exf6+ Kxf6 18 Qf3+, when 18...Kc7 19 Qxh5 gives White the exchange and 18...Kg6 loses to 19 Qf7+ Kh6 20 Nxe6+ Kg5 (20...Kh7 21 Qxg7, mate) 21 Qxg7+ Kh5 22 Qh7+ Kg4 23 Qh3, mate. 14 Qe4+ gives White little after 14...f5 15 exf6+ Kxf6 (15...Kh5 loses to 16 Qh7+ (1-0) Kg4 17 Qh3/h3, mate) 16 Nh7+ Kf7, e.g., 17 Nxf8 Qxf8 gives White a Rook and pawn for two Bishops, or 17 Bg5 Nf6 (or 17...Qb6), when 18 Qxa8 Bc6 traps White's Queen.

500. Visualize the position after the moves 8 Bxh7+ Kxh7 9 Ng5+ Kg6 1 10 Qd3+ f5 2 11 Nxe6 Qa5 12 Nxf8+ Nxf8. What is the material balance?

1 9...Kh6 loses to 10 Qd3, e.g., a) 10...Rh8 11 Nxf7+ wins Black's Queen at least; b) 10...f5 11 Qh3+ Kg6 12 Qh7, mate; or c) 10...g6 11 Qh3+ Kg7 12 Qh7, mate. For 9...Kg8, see exercise 483. 2 Black's position is okay after either 10 Qd4 f5 11 Qg3 (White lacks compensation for the piece after 11 exf6 Nxf6 12 Qg3 Nh5) Qa5, e.g., 12 Qh3 Nf6 13 exf6 cxd4 14 fxg7 Kxg7 or 10 h4 Bxc3+ 11 bxc3 f5 12 h5+ Kh6 13 Nxe6 Qa5 14 Nxf8 Nxf8 15 Bd2, when White has a Rook and two pawns for two pieces. 3 The only move. 10...Kh5 loses to 11 Qh7+ Kg4 12 Qh3, mate.
**501.** Black's Bc5 is undefended. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxh7+ Kxh7 14 Ng5+ Kg6 15 Qc2+ f5 16 exf6+ Kxf6 17 Nce4+ Ke7 18 Qxc5+. What is the material balance?

1 14...Kg8 15 Qh5 creates a mate threat that wins Black's Queen -- see exercise 238. 2 This discovered check puts Black's King on f6 and secures e4 for White's Knight. Black resigned here. 3 16...Kh5 loses to 17 Qh7+ Kg4 18 Qh3/h3/f3, mate.

**502.** Black's e-pawn will become weak. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg6 14 Qe4+ f5 15 exf6+. How does White win here? Consider all three of Black's legal moves -- Kxf6, Kh6, and Kh5.

1 This gives White a forced mate, but 13...Kg8 also loses -- see exercise 481 (1-0, 19). 2 It's best to stay on the e-file, in order to attack Black's pawn on e6, which is weak after 14...f5 15 exf6. 3 14...Kh5 loses to 15 Qh7+ Kf6 16 Qh3/h3/f3, mate.

**503.** Black's e-pawn will become weak. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxh7+ Kxh7 14 Ng5+ Kg6 15 Qd3+ f5 16 exf6+ Kh5 17 Qh7+ Kg4. How does White win here?

1 Material is even after 14...Kg8 15 Qe4 g6 16 Qh4 (1-0) Nf6 17 exf6 Nxf6 -- see exercise 468. 2 15 Qe4+ is similar. 3 15...Kh5 17 Qh7+ Kg4 18 Qh3/h3/f3, mate. 4 16...Kxf6 loses to 17 Rxe6, mate.

**504.** Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg6 13 Qc2+ f5 14 Nxe6 Re8 15 Nf4+ Kf7 16 Qxf5+. What is the material balance?

1 For 12...Kg8, see exercise 494; 12...Kh6 is possible, since his Queen is not on d8 and White's Bd2 is under attack. 2 a) 13 Qe4 can be met by 13...Bxd2+, e.g., 14 Nxd2 Qxd4 15 Qg3 Qxe5+ or 14 Kxd2 Nxe5, when 15 dxe5 Qxlf2+ 16 Kd1 Nxe5 nets Black two pawns and 15 Qg3 Nc4+ 16 Kc2 Kf6 Nh7+ Ke7 18 Nxf8 Kxh8 gives White only a Rook for two pieces; b) 13 h4 Bxd2+ 14 Nxd2 (14 Qxd2 Qb4) Qxd4 15 Qc2+ f5 16 exf6+ (16 Nxe6 Qxe5+ wins White's Ne6) Kxf6 17 0-0-0 Ke7 (17...Qc5 drops the Queen to 18 Nde4+ 1-0, 29), when White lacks compensation for the piece. 3 14...Kh5 loses to 15 Qh7+ Kg4 16 Qh3/h3/f3, mate. 4 Best, intending to answer 16 Qxf5+ with 16...Nf6, with a discovered attack on White's Queen.
505. Black’s Nc6 is hanging. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxh7+ Kxh7 14 Ng5+ Kg6 15 Qd3+ f5 16 exf6+ Kxf6 17 Qf3+ Ke7 18 Qxe6 Bxc4. What is the material balance?

1 13...Kh8 gives up a pawn (1-0, 28). 2 For 14...Kg8, see exercise 477. 3 Best. After 15 Qe4 Nxe5 16 Qd3 Qd8 17 Nxe6+ Qxe6 18 Nxf8+ Bxf8 19 h3 Bxc4 White is down a Rook for two pieces and is undeveloped, while after 15 h4 Nxe5 16 h5+ Kf6 (16...Kf5 17 g4+ Kf6 18 Nh7+ is similar) 17 Nh7+ Ke7 18 Bg5+ f6 19 Nxf8 Qxf8 20 Be3 Bxc4, White is down a Rook for two pieces and a pawn.

506. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg6 13 Qd3+ f5 14 exf6+ Kxf6 15 Nh7+ Ke7 16 Nxf8 Kxf8. What is the material balance?

1 12...Kg8 loses to 13 Qh5 (1-0, 28) -- see exercise 487. 2 Here 13 Qg4 reaches a similar position after Nxe5 15 Qd3 f6 16 Nxe6+ Kf7 17 Nxf8 Kxf8, except that Black has an f-pawn instead of an e-pawn, while 14 h4 can be met by 14...Nxe5, giving Black’s King access to f6.

507. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg6 14 Qd3+ f5 15 exf6+ Kxf6 16 Nh7+ Kf7 17 Nxf8 Rxf8. What is the material balance?

1 13...Kh8 gives up a pawn (1-0, 28). 2 For 14...Kg8, see exercise 471. 3 14 Qe4 reaches a similar position after Nxe5 15 Qd3 f6 16 Nxe6+ Kf7 17 Nxf8 Kxf8, except that Black has an f-pawn instead of an e-pawn, while 14 h4 can be met by 14...Nxe5, giving Black’s King access to f6.

508. White’s e-pawn is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxh7+ Kxh7 11 Ng5+ Kg6 12 Qd3+ f5 13 Qg3 Qe7 14 Nxe6+ Kh7 15 Nxf8 Qxf8. What is the material balance?

1 11...Kg8 loses to 12 Qh5 -- see exercise 474. 2 White’s Queen comes under attack first after 12 Qg4 Nxe5. 3 This wins an extra pawn compared to 13 exf6+ Kxf6 14 Nh7+ Kf7 15 Nxf8 Kxf8. 4 13...Nxe5 drops the Queen to 14 Nxe6+. 5 The actual game continued 14 Bf4 Nxe5 (better is 14...Rh8 15 Nxe6+ Kh7 16 Ne7 Rb8 17 e6 Nf6) 15 Nxe6+ Ng4 16 Nxf8+ Qxf8 17 h3 (1-0, 28). 6 White is up two pawns after 14...Kf7 15 Ne7 Rb8 16 e6+ Kg8 17 exd7 Bxd7 18 Nxd5.
509. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg6 14 Qg4 f5 15 Qg3 Qe7 16 Nxe6+ Kf7 17 Nxf8 Kxf8. What is the material balance?

1 Black can also play 13...Kg8 14 Qh5 Qd3, defending (see exercise 495). 2 14 Qc2+ f6 15 exf6+ Kxf6 16 Rd1 Qe7 17 Nh7+ produces the typical Rook and Pawn versus Bishop and Knight middlegame. 3 15 exf6 Nxf6 16 Qg3 Nh5 attacks White’s Queen. 4 15...f4 is senseless, as 16 Bxf4 Rxf4 17 Nxe6+ drops the Queen (1-0, 19) and after 16...Qe7 17 Qd3+ Kh6, when White is up the exchange.

510. Visualize the position after the moves 9 Bxh7+ Kxh7 10 Ng5+ Kg6 11 Qd3+ f5 12 Qg3 Qe8 13 Nxe6+ Kf7 14 Nxf8 Kxf8. What is the material balance?

1 Best. The actual game continued 10...Kg8 11 Qh5, when the only way to avoid mate is by playing 11...Qxg5 (see exercise 473). 2 14 Qg4 f5 12 Qg3 transposes, while 11...b4 can be met by 11...f5, e.g., 12 h5+ Kh6, when the c1-h6 diagonal is closed, or 12 exf6 gx6 13 Qd3+ f5 14 Qg3 Kh6, when White is down a piece without an attack. 3 11...Kh5 loses to 12 Qh7+ Kg4 13 Qh3, mate. 4 After 12 exf6+ Kxf6 13 Nh7+ Kf7 14 Nxf8 Kxf8 White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces. 5 The Queen has to stay on the back rank, as 12...Qe7 loses to 13 Qh7 with 14 Qh7, mate. 6 White can also win the other Rook with 14 Nc7 Qe7 15 Nxa8 Nxa8, but the game is still about even.

511. White’s Nd6 prevents ...Kf7. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxh7+ Kxh7 16 Ng5+ Kg6 17 Qd3+ f5 18 exf6+. How does White mate in this position? Consider both 18...Kxf6 and 18...Kh5.

1 The actual game continued 16...Kg8 17 Qh5 Nh8 18 Ndxf7 threatening 18 Qh8, mate (1-0) -- see exercise 469. 2 Here 17 Qd3+ is better than 17 Qg4, because it comes with check.

512. Black's Nc6 is hanging and Black's pawn on e6 is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg6 14 Qd3+ f5 15 exf6+ Kxf6 16 Qf3+ Ke7 17 Qxc6 Rb8. How does White mate in this position?

1 12...Kh8 13 Be4 nets White a pawn. 2 For 13...Kg8 14 Qh5 Nh8 15 exf6 Qd3, see exercise 492. 3 The only move as 15...Kh5 loses to 16 Qh7, mate, and 15...Kg4 loses to 16 Qh7+ Kg4 17 Qh3/f3, mate.
513. Black’s Ra8 is undefended, while White’s Rh1 supports h4-h5. Visualize the position after the moves 8 Bxh7+ Kxh7 9 Ng5+ Kg6 10 h4 Qc7 11 h5+ Kh6 12 Qd3 g6 13 Nx f7+ Kg7. How does White mate in this position?

1 9...Kg8 loses to 10 Qh5 (1-0, 17) — see exercise 466. 2 White’s threat is 11 h5+ Kh6 12 Qd3, intending both 12 Qh7, mate and 12 Nxf7, mate, but also good is 10 Qd3+ f5 11 exf6+ Kxf6 12 Nh7+ Ke7 13 Nxf8 Kxf8 14 Qf3+, winning Black’s Ra8. 3 10...Qc8 is similar, but moves like 10...f5 and 10...Bxc4 lose the Queen to 11 h5+ Kh6 12 Nxe6+. 4 1...Kf5 12 g4 is mate. 5 White threatens 13 Qh7 and 13 Nxf7, mate. 6 12...f5/f6 13 exf6 Nxf6 loses to 14 Nxf7, mate.

514. Visualize the position after the moves 9 Bxh7+ Kxh7 10 Ng5+ Kg6 11 h4 Qc7 12 h5+ Kh6 13 Qd3 f5 14 exf6. How does White threaten mate in three different ways?

1 For 10...Kg8 11 Qh5 Bxc3+ 12 bxc3 Be4, see exercise 472. 2 11 Qg4 f5 (or ...Bxc3 first) 12 Qh4 Nf6 13 exf6 Rh8 14 Qg3 Xxf6 breaks White’s attack, while 11 Qd3+ f5 12 Qh3 Nf6 13 exf6 Rh8 transposes to 11 Qg4. 3 11 Nc6 12 h5+ Kh6 (12...Kf5 13 Qf3/g4 is mate) 13 Nx f7+ drops the Queen, as does 11...f5 12 h5+ Kh6 13 Nxe6+. 4 13...Rh8 allows 14 Nxf7, mate, while 13 Qxf5 14 Bxf5+ Kg5 gives Black three pieces for the Queen, but White wins with 15 Qe3+, e.g., 15...Kf6 16 Rh4 and 17 Qf4, mate or 15...Kg4 16 Qg3+ Kf5 17 Rh4 with 18 Rf4/Qf4/Qg4, mate.

515. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg6 13 Qg4 f5 14 Qg3 Qe7 15 Nxe6+ Kh7 16 Ng5+ Kg8 17 Qf3 Qe8 18 Qxd5+. What is the material balance?

1 11...Kh8 12 Ng5 Nf6 13 exf6 Qxf6 loses to 14 Qh5 (1-0). 2 For 12...Kg8, see exercise 488. 3 White has compensation for his piece after 13 h4 Rh8 14 Qg4 f5 15 Qg3 Qe7. 4 14 exf6 Nxf6 15 Qg3 Nh5 drives White’s Queen off the g-file, since 16 Qd4 Nf6 repeats the position. 5 15...Kf7 allows 16 Nc7, with either 17 e6+ or 17 Bg5 Nf6 18 exf6. 6 Also good are 16 Nf4 Nc6 17 Qg6+ Kg8 18 Nxd5, with three pawns for the piece, and 16 Nc7 Nb6 17 e6 with 18Bg5. 7 17...Nb6 loses to 18 Qh5 g6 19 Qxg6+ and 20 Qxb6.

516. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxh7+ Kxh7 11 Ng5+ Kg6 12 h4 Bxc3+ 13 bxc3 Bxg2 14 h5+ Kf5 15 Qd3+ Kxe5. How does White win here?

1 For 11...Kg8, see exercise 484. 2 12 Qg4 drops the e-pawn, while 12 Qd3+ only gives White a Rook and two pawns for two pieces after 12...f5 13 Nxe6 with 14 Nxf8. 3 13...Qe7 loses to 14 h5+, e.g., 14...Kf5 15 g4, mate or 14...Kh6 15 Qd3, threatening both 16 Qh7, mate and 16 Nx f7, mate, when 15...g6 loses to 16 Nxf7+ Kg7 17 Qxg6, mate. 4 After 14...Kg6 White can either win Black’s Queen or mate with 15 Qg4, e.g., 15...Bxh1 16 Nxe6+ g5 (16...Kh7 17 Qxg7, mate) 17 hgx6+ Qxg5 18 Qxg5, mate. 5 15...Kg4 loses to 16 Qg3+ Kf5 17 Qf4, mate.
517. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxh7+ Kxh7 11 Ng5+ Kg6 12 h4 Nxe5 13 dxe5 Nxe5 14 h5+ Kf6 15 Qd4 Bd6 16 Nf3 Ke7 17 Nxe5. What is the material balance?

11...Kg8 loses to 12 Qh5 (see exercise 467). 2 Also good are 12 Qg4 f5 13 Qg3 Qe7 14 Ne2, threatening 15 Nf4+ Kh6 16 Qh4, mate, and 12 Qd3+ f5 13 Nxe6, e.g., 13...Qa5 14 Nxf7 wins Black's d-pawn, since 14...Qe7 drops the Queen to 15 Nf4+ or 13...Qe7 14 Qh4, threatening 14...Qe7 15 Qh4, mate, and 12 Qd3 f5 13 exf6 Qxf6 14 Nxe6, e.g., 14...Qe7 15 Nxe6+ Kf7 16 Qxf7, mate. 3 Better is 12...Qg6, e.g., 13 Bxf4 Qg5 14 Qf3+ Qxe5 15 Qxe5+ Qxe5 16 Bxe5 Bxe5 17 Qf3 with a Rook and two pawns for two pieces.

518. Visualize the position after 10 Bxh7+ Kxh7 11 Ng5+ Kg6 12 Qd3+ f5 13 Nxe6 Qa5 14 Nxf8 Nxf8 15 Qxd5 Be6 16 Qd1 Rd8 17 Bd2. What is the material balance?

11...Kh6 loses to 12 Qd3, e.g., 12...Rh8 13 Nxf7+, 12...g6 13 Qh3+ Kg7 14 Qh7, mate, or 12...Nc6 13 exf6 with 13...g6 14 Qh3, mate or 12...Rh8 13 Nxf7+. For 11...Kg8, see exercise 490. 2 This wins an extra pawn compared to 12 Qg4 f5 13 Qg3 Qa5 14 Nxe6+ Kf7 15 Nxf8 Kxf8. 12 h4 f5 gives little, e.g., 13 h5+ Kh6 14 Nxe6 Nf4 15 Nxf8 Nxe2 16 Nxe6 (16 Kxe2 Rxd8) Nxc3 17 Nfx8 Nxf8 18 Bxc3, with a Rook and two pawns for two pieces. 3 13 exf6+ Kh8 14 Nf7+ gets his material back. 4 This pin on White's Nc3 is better than 13...Qh4+ 14 g3 Qg4 15 Nxf8+ Bxf8 16 Nxd5 (1-0, 32), when White has a Rook and three pawns for two pieces, but Black's pieces are less coordinated than in the main line. 5 16 Qf3 Nb4 gives Black another tempo.

519. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg6 14 h4 Qc7 15 h5+ Kf5 16 Qd3+ Kxe5 17 Qg3+ Kf5 18 Nh7+ Kf6. How does White win here?

For 13...Kg8, see exercise 479. 2 14 Qd4 allows 14...f5 15 Qg3 Qe7 16 Qh4 Nf6 17 exf6 gxf6, defending h7 and attacking White's Ng5, but 14 Qh4 f5 15 exf6+ Kxf6 (15...Kh5 loses to 16 Qh7+ Kg4 17 Qh3/h3, mate) 16 Nce4+ Kc7 17 Qxc5+, gives White a pawn and the better position. 3 14...Nxc3 drops Black's Queen to 15 h5+ Kh6 16 Nxf7+/Nxe6+ Kh7 17 Qc2+ (or 16...g5 17 hxg6+ Kxg6 18 Qg4+ Kh7 19 Qg7, mate); b) 14...Nf4 loses to 15 Qf4, threatening both 16 Bxf4/Qxf4 and 16 Nxe6 Kh6 17 Qxg7 Kh5 18 Nxf4+ Kxh4 19 Qg3/g5, mate; while c) 14...Nc3 gives back the piece, but is difficult to find, e.g., c1) 15 fxe3 Qxd1 16 Nxd1, c2) 15 Qxd8 Rxd8 16 Bxe3 Bxe3 17 fxe3, or c3) 15 Qf3 Nbd5 16 fxe3 Nxc3 17 bxc3 nets White a pawn.

520. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxh7+1 Kxh7 18 Ng5+ Kg6 19 Qg4 f5 20 Qg3 Qe8 21 exd6 Nbd7 22 Nxe6+ Kf7 23 Nc7 Qd8 24 Nxa8 Bxa8. What is the material balance?

Taking on d6 leaves White down a pawn. 2 Better is 18...Kg8 19 Qh5 (1-0, 20) Be4 -- see exercise 470. 3 White's threat is 20 Nxe6+ and 21 Qxg7, mate. Two alternatives: a) 19 h4 Bxe5 leaves White down two pieces and gives Black's King access to f6, while b) 19 exd6 allows 19...e5 20 Be3 (20 Bxe5 drops the Ng5) f5, preventing Qg4 and threatening 21...f4. 4 Now White's threat is 21 Nxe6+, winning Black's Queen.
521. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg6 14 Qg4 f5 15 Qg3 Qe7 16 Nxe6+ Kh7 17 Nxc7 Nc5 18Bg5 Qa3 19 e6 Nf6 20 d5. What is the material balance?

1 For 13...Kg8, see exercise 465. 2 14 Qd3+ f5 15 Qg3 transposes, while after 14 h4 Qe7 15 Qd3+ f5 16 h5+ (16 exf6+ Kx6) Kh6 17 Nxe6+ Kh7 18 Nxf8 Nxf8 White has a Rook and two pawns for two pieces. 3 After 15...Qe8 16 Nxe6+ Kf7 17 Nxc7, 17...Qe7 loses a tempo compared to 15...Qe7, while 17...Qf6 18 e6+ Kg7 19 Bg5 Qa3 20 e6+ Ke7 19 Bg5 Qa3 20 e6+ Ke7 19 Bg5 Qa3 21 d5. What is the material balance?

522. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg6 14 Qg4 f5 15 Qg3 Qe7 16 Nxe6+ Kf7 17 Nxc7 Qd8 18 e6+ Ke7 19 Bg5+ Nf6 20 Rfe1. What is the material balance?

1 Best. For 13...Kg8 (1-0, 17), see exercise 491. 2 After 14 h4 Rh8 15 h5+ Rxh5 16 Qc2+ f5 17 Nxe6 Qh4 18 Nf4+ Kh7 19 Nxf8 Qh5 White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces. 3 After 15 exf6 Nxf6 16 Qg3 Nh5 17 Qh4 Qe7 18 Nf4+ Kh7 19 Nxf8 Qh5 White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces. 4 After 15...Qe7 16 Nxe6+ Kh7 17 Nc7 Rb8 18 Bg5 Qf7 19 Qh4+ Kg8 20 e6 Qg6 21 Rae1 White's passed e-pawn gives him the advantage. 5 17...Rg8 loses to 18 Nxe8 Rxg3 19 Nd6+ Ke6 20 fxg3.

523. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg6 14 Qd3+ f5 15 exf6 Kxf6 16 Nh7+ Kf7 17 Nxf8 Ne5 18 Qe4 Kxf8 19 Bf4 20 Bxe5. What is the material balance?

1 For 13...Kg8, see exercise 475. 2 14 h4 allows 14...Nxe5. 3 White's Queen is trapped after 16 Qf+ Ke7 17 Qxa8 Nc6, with ...Bb7 to follow. 4 17...Nxf8 drops the Ra8 to 18 Qf+, e.g., 18...Kg8 19 Qxa8 Nc6 20 Bf4, etc. 5 White's Queen is trapped after 19 Qxa8 Nc6, with ...Bb7 to follow.

524. Visualize the position after the moves 9 e5 Nd5 10 Bxh7+ Kxh7 11 Ng5+ Kg6 12 Qg4 f5 13 Qg3 f4 14 Bxf4 Kf5 15 Qh3+ Kxf4 16 Nce4. White has an irrefutable mate threat. What is it?

1 For 11...Kg8, see exercise 478. 2 12 Qd3+ f5 13 Qg3 f4 transposes, but 12...Kh5 13 Qh3+ Kg4 14 Qh3/3 is mate; 12 h4 wins after 12...Rh8 13 h5+ Rxh5 14 Qd3+ f5 15 exf6+ Kxf6 (15...Kh6 16 Nh7 is mate) 16 Qf3+, when 16...Ke7 17 Qxh5 nets the exchange and 16...Kg6 leads to mate after 17 Qf7+ Kh6 18 Nxe6+ Kg5 (18...Kh7 19 Qxg7, mate) 19 Qxg7+ Kh5 20 Qh7+ Kg4 21 Qh3, mate. 3 13...Qe7 14 Nxe6+ wins Black's Nd5, e.g., 14...Kf7 15 Ng5+ Ke8 16 Nxd5. 4 14...Nxf4 drops the Queen to 15 Nxe6+, while 14...Qd7 15 Nxe6+ Kf7 16 Nxd5 Qxd5 17 Nxc7 Qb7 18 d5 gives White four pawns for a piece and a dominant position. 5 15 Qd3+ is also good.
525. Visualize the position after the moves 9 Bxh7+ Kxh7 10 Ng5+ Kg6 11 h4 Nxc3 12 bxc3 Bxc3+ 13 Kf1 Bxa3 14 h5+ Kh6 15 Qd3 f5. How does White mate in two?

1 For 10...Kg8, see exercise 482. 2 11 Qd3 f5 12 exf6+ Kxf6 13 Nh7+ Kg6 14 Bg5 Nf6 15 Nxf8 Kxf8 nets a Rook and pawn for two pieces (1-0). Material is even after 11 Qg4 f5 12 exf6+ Kxf6 13 Nh7+ Kf7 14 Nxf8 Kxf8 15 Qxa6 Qe7 16 Bc4 Qd6 17 Nf3 Rh8 18 Nxe5 Bxe5 19 Qxb7 Qxe3 20 Bb5+ Kd7 21 Qc7 Kc6 22 Qc6+ Kb5 23 Qd6+ Ka4 24 Qe5+ Kb3 25 Qf5+ Kc3 26 Bxh7 Qe2+ 27 Qxe2 Nfx3 28 Qa7+ Kd4 29 Qd7#. 3 Other moves allow mate in one. 4 15...Bxf4 16 Bxf4 Qg5+ is not a threat. 5 Other moves also allow mate. 6 16...Qe7 17 Qc4 Qb4 18 Qxe4 Qxe4 19 dx5 keeps the Black Queen off h7, winning.

526. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxh7+ Kxh7 17 Ng5+ Kg6 18 Qel f6 19 exf6 gxf6 20 Qg3 N8d7 21 Ne6+ Kf7 22 Nxf8 Kxf8 23 Ba3+ Kf7 24 Ra1 Ne5. How does White win material here?

1 The actual game continued 17...Kg8 18 Qh5 Qd3 19 Ba3 (1-0) -- see exercise 486. 2 White's threat is 19 Qh4 and 20 Qh7, mate. 18 Qc2+ can be met by 18...f5 19 exf6 Bf5, defending. 3 One threat is 15 h5+ Kh6 16 Nxf7+, winning Black's Queen. 4 Now the threat is 17 h5+ Rxh5 18 Qe4+ f5 (18...Kh6 19 Nh7+ Kg6 20 Bg5 Bxd4 21 h5+ Kf6 22 Bf6+ Kg5 23 Qg6+ Kh4 24 Qxh4+ Kg4 25 Qg4 mate) 18...Rxh5 19 Nh7+ Kh6 20 Qxh5+ 21 Nxf8 mate.

527. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg6 14 h4 Rh8 15 g4 Bxg4 16 Qxg4 f5 17 Qg3 Qc8 18 Nd5 Bxd4 19 h5+. How does White win after 19...Kh6, 19...Rhx5, and 19...Kxh5?

1 For 10...Kg8, see exercise 485. 2 14 Qd3 f5 15 exf6+ Bf5 defends (but not 15...Kxf6 16 Nd5, mate, 1-0). 3 One threat is 15 h5+ Kh6 16 Nxf7+, winning Black's Queen. 4 Now the threat is 17 h5+ Rxh5 18 Qe4+ f5 (18...Kh6 19 Nh7 is mate) 19 exf6+, with mate next move, e.g., 19...Kh6 20 Nf7, mate, or 19...Kxf6 20 Nd5, mate. 5 16...Qc8 17 h5+ gives White a winning attack, e.g., 17...Rxh5 18 Nh6+ Kh7 19 Qxh6+ Kg8 20 Ng5, winning. 6 Other moves give White an extra tempo, e.g., 17...Qe7 18 Nd5 or 17...Qd7 18 e6. 7 White's threat is 19 Nh4+ Kh6 20 Nh7+ Kh7 21 Qg6+ Kg8 22 Ng5, winning. 8 18...Nxd4 loses to 19 Ne7+.

528. How does White win after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg6 13 Qd3+ f5 14 Qg3 Re8 15 Nx6+ Kf7 16 Nx5 Qxd4 17 Nxd4 Qxd4 18 Nxe8 Kxe8 19 Qg6+ Kd8 20 Bg5+ Ke7 21 Rac1+ Kb8 22 Qg8 Qb6.

1 For 12...Kg8, see exercise 476. 2 Black resigned here. 13 Qd4 f5 14 Qg3 transposes, while 13 h4 Ndx5 14 dxe5 Nxe5 15 h5+ Kf6 16 Be3 Qc7 17 Qd4 Bb6 18 Ra1+ Qb8 19 f4 Ke7 20 fx5 Bxe5 21 Qb4+ nets White a piece for two pawns. 3 14...f4 15 Bxf4 doesn't accomplish anything, since 15...Rxh5 16 Qxh5 Qxg5 is not a threat. 4 Other moves allow mate in one. 5 16...Qg8 17 e6+ gives White an attack. 6 White is up two pawns after 17...Rxh5 18 Ngf5. 7 19...Ke7 20 Bg5+ Kf8 21 e6 threatens 22 Qf7, mate, when 22...Ng5 loses to 22...e7+ Bxe7 23 Bh6, mate; 19...Kf8 20 Bh6+ Ke7 21 Bg5+ transposes to 19...Ke7. 8 22...Nh8 23 Qf7 Bc5 can be met by 24 Bc3.
CHAPTER 18. THE SEQUENCE 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+ Kg8 3 Qh5
(BLACK Ne7)

This chapter contains exercises involving the sequence (see Diagram 1) 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+ Kg8 3 Qh5 when Black has a Knight on e7. White has sacrificed a Bishop for a pawn, but has obtained an active Queen on h5 and Knight on g5 (see Diagram 2) and threatens 4 Qh7, mate.

Black can avoid mate with 3...Re8, creating an escape square on f8 for his King, but White now wins with 4 Qxf7+ Kh8 5 Nxe6, threatening both 6 Nxd8 and 6 Qxg7, mate.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. Miscellaneous Mates
2. White Plays Qxf7 and Nxe6
3. White Plays Qxf7+ and Rh3/Rh4+
4. White Plays Qh7+
5. White Plays Qh7+ and Bg5
6. Black Plays 2...Kh6
7. Black Plays 2...Kh8

These themes are illustrated using fifty-eight preparatory positions, which are followed by twenty-eight visualization exercises ranging in depth from nine to twenty-one ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply: 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises: - - - - 1 - 6 1 1 - 9 - 10 28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Miscellaneous Mates

1068 [VX-556]. 15 Qxg7 is mate.

1069 [VX-551]. White wins with 15 Qh5+ Kg8 16 Qh7+ Kf8 17 Qh8, mate.

1070 [VX-539]. White wins with 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17 Qxe8, mate.

1071 [VX-552]. White wins with 15 Qxf7+ Kh8 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17 Qxe8, mate.

1072 [VX-555]. White wins with 13 Qxf7+ Kh8 14 Qh5+ Kg8 15 Qxe8, mate.

1073 [VX-539]. White wins with 15 Nc7, e.g., 15...Qxc7 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17 Qxe8, mate, or 15...Rf8 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17 Qh7 is mate.

1074 [VX-554]. White wins with 18 Bxf6+ Kd7 19 Qxf7+ Ne7 20 Bxe7 Qxe7 21 Qxg8, when White is up a Rook and two pawns.

1075 [VX-554]. White wins with either 18 Bxf6 Ne7 19 Qxf7, when White is up a couple of pawns or 18 Nxh6+ Kc7 19 Nxe8+ Qxe8, when White is up the exchange and a pawn.
2. White Plays Qxf7 and Nxe6

1076 [VX-551]. White wins with 15 Qh7+ Kf8 16 Ne6+ Kf7 17 Qxg7, mate.

1077 [VX-532]. White wins with 14 Qxf7+ Kh8 15 Nxe6, threatening both 16 Qxg7, mate and 16 Nxd8.

1078 [VX-534]. White wins with 18 Qxf7+ Kh8 19 Nxe6, threatening both 20 Qxg7, mate, and 20 Nxd8, winning Black's Queen.

1079 [VX-535]. White wins with 14 Qxf7+ Kh8 15 Ne6, with the dual threat of 16 Qxg7, mate and 16 Nxd8, and if 15...Rg8 then 16 Qh5 is mate.

1080 [VX-546]. White wins with 18 Qxf7+ Kh8 19 Nxe6 (19 Rf3 Nf5 20 Rh3+ Nh6 21 Qg6 also wins) Bxe3+ 20 Kh1 Bxe6 21 Nxe6 (1-0), when White threatens both 22 Qxg7, mate and 22 Nxc7.

1081 [VX-533]. White wins with 17 Qxf7+ Kh8 18 Nxe6, threatening both 19 Qxg7 and 19 Nxd8, when after 18...Nf5 19 Nxd8 Raxd8 20 Nxc7 White is up a Queen and four pawns for a piece.

1082 [VX-531]. White wins with 14 Qxf7+ Kh8 15 Nxe6, with a double attack on g7 and the Qc7. Play might continue 15...Nf5 (15...Rg8 16 Qh5 is mate) 16 Nxc7 Rf8 17 Qh5+ Kg8 18 Nxa8, when White has a Queen, Rook and three pawns for piece.

1083 [VX-551]. White wins with 12 Qxf7+ Kh8 13 Re1, e.g., 13...Nbc6 14 Qh5+ Kg8 15 Qh7+ Kf8 16 Ne6+ Kf7 17 Qxg7, mate, or 13...Qd7 14 Rxe7 and now: 14...Rxh7 15 Qf8 is mate; 14...Qxe7 15 Qh5+ Kg8 16 Qh7+ Kf8 17 Qh8, mate; or 14...Bxe7 15 Qh5+ Kg8 16 Qh7+ Kf8 17 Qh8, mate.

1084 [VX-539]. White wins with 14 Qxf7+ Kh8 15 Nxc7, e.g., 15...Rf8 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17 Qh7, mate; 15...Qxc7 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17 Qx8, mate; or 15...Bd7 16 Ngxe6 Bxe6 17 Nxe6, when White threatens both 18 Qxg7, mate and 18 Nxd8, e.g., 17...Nf5 18 Nxd8 Raxd8 19 Qxf5, when White is up a Queen and two pawns.
3. White Plays Qxf7+ and Rh3/Rh4+

1085 [VX-530]. White wins with 20 Qxf7+ Kh8 21 Rh4, mate.

1086 [VX-555]. White wins with 15 Qxf6+ Kh8 16 Rh3+ Nh6 17 Rxh6+ gxh6 18 Qh7, mate.

1087 [VX-540]. White wins with 15 Qxf7+ Kh8 16 Rc3, threatening 17 Rh3+, mate, when 16...Nf5 loses to 17 Rh3+ Nh6 18 Rxh6+ gxh6 19 Qh7, mate.

1088 [VX-541]. White wins with 14 Qxf7+ Kh8 15 Re3 Ng8 16 Rh3+ Nh6 17 Rxh6+ gxh6 18 Qh7, mate.

1089 [VX-542]. White wins with 14 Qxf7+ Kh8 15 Ra3 Nf5 16 Rh3+ Nh6 17 Rxh6+ gxh6 18 Qh7, mate.

1090 [VX-543]. White wins with 13 Qxf7+ Kh8 14 Re3 (this is even better than 14 Nxe6) Nf5 15 Rh3+ Nh6 16 Rxh6+ gxh6 17 Qh7, mate.

1091 [VX-544]. White wins with 18 Qxf7+ Kh8 19 Bd2 (Whites threat is 20 Rh3, mate) Nf5 20 Rh3+ Nh6 21 Rxh6+ gxh6 22 Qh7, mate.

1092 [VX-555]. White wins with 16 Rh3+ Nh6 17 Qg6 (White's threat is 18 Qh7, mate) Kg8 18 Rxh6 cxd4 19 Rh8+ Kxh8 20 Qh7, mate.

1093 [VX-545]. White wins with 14 Qxf7+ Kh8 15 Re4 Ng6 16 Qxg6, threatening 17 Qh7, mate, when 16...Kg8 loses to 17 Qf7+ Kh8 18 Rh4, mate.
4. White Plays Qh7+

1094 [VX-545]. White wins with 14 Qxf7+ Kh8 15 Re4, threatening 16 Rh4, mate, e.g., 15...Ng6 16 Qxg6 Kg8 17 Qf7+ Kh8 18 Rh4, mate or 15...Nf5 16 Nxf5, threatening both 17 Rh4 and 17 Qxg7, mate, when after 16...Qf6 White can win in several ways: 17 Rh4+ Qh6 18 Qxg7/Qxe8, mate; 17 Qxe8+ Qf8 18 Qxf8, mate; or 17 Qh5+ Kg8 (17...Qh6 18 Qxe8, mate) 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Qh8, mate.

1095 [VX-555]. White wins with 13 Qxf7+ Kh8 14 f4 (14 Re1, intending 15 Rf3-Rh3, also wins, but it's more complex), and now: 14...Qb6 loses to 15 Rf3, e.g., 15...Nf5 16 Rh3+ Nh6 17 Rxh6+ gxh6 18 Qh7, mate; 14...Bd7 loses to 15 Rf3 Ng8 16 Rh3+ Nh6 17 Rxh6+ gxh6 18 Qh7, mate; and 14...Qd7 loses to 15 Rf3 Nf5 16 Rh3+ Nh6 17 Qg6 (White's threat is 18 Qh7, mate) Kg8 18 Rxh6 cxd4 19 Rh8+ Kxh8 20 Qh7, mate.

1096 [VX-529]. White wins with 14 Qh7+ Kf8 15 Qh8, mate, since Black's Ne7 is pinned.

1097 [VX-556]. Both Queens are under attack, but White wins with 17 Qxf7+ Qe7 18 Qxe7, mate.

1098 [VX-532]. White wins with 14 Rxe7 Qxe7 15 Qh5+ Kg8 16 Qh7+ Kf8 17 Qh8, mate.

1099 [VX-550]. White wins with 18 Qxf7+ Kh8 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Qh8+ Ng8 22 Nh7+ Ke7 23 Qxg7, mate.

1100 [VX-537]. White wins with either 12 Qh7+ Kf8 13 Ba3 with Qh8, mate or 12 Ba3 c5 13 Qh7+ Kf8 14 Bxc5 Nd7 15 Qh8, mate.

1101 [VX-553]. White gets nothing after 12 Qxf7+ Kh8 13 Qh5+ Kg8 14 Qh7+ Kf8 15 Qh8+ Ng8 16 Nh7+ Kf7, when Black's g-pawn is defended.
1102 [VX-538]. White wins with 14 Qh7+ Kf8 15 Qh8+ Ng8 16 Nh7+ Ke7 with either 17 Ba3+ Bb4 18 Bxb4, mate or 17 Bg5+ Nf6 (17...f6 18 Qxg7, mate) 18 Bxf6+ gxf6 19 Qxf6, mate.

1103 [VX-554]. White is down a piece for a pawn and his Queen is under attack, but wins Black's Nf6 and Rg8 with 18 Bxf6+ Kd7 19 Qxf7+ Ne7 20 Bxe7 Qxe7 21 Qxg8, when White is up a Rook and two pawns.

1104 [VX-556]. White wins with 16 Nxf6, threatening 17 Nxd5 or 17 Ng8, mate, and if Black moves the Nd7 to make room for his King, then 16...Nxf6 17 Bxf6+ wins Black's Queen or 16...Nb6 17 Nxe8+ Kxe8 18 Qg8+ Kf7 19 Qxd8, mate.

1105 [VX-552]. White gets nothing after 15 Qxf7+ Kh8 16 Qh5+ (White can try 16 Nxe6 Bxe6 17 Qxe6, with three pawns for his piece) Kg8 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Qh8+ Ng8 19 Nh7+ Ke7, when Black's g-pawn is defended.

5. White Plays Qh7+ and Bg5

1106 [VX-548]. White wins with 16 Bg5+, e.g., 16...f6 17 Qxf7, mate or 16...Nf6 17 Bxf6+ gxf6 18 Qxf6, mate.

1107 [VX-549]. White wins with 18 Bg5+, e.g., 18...f6 19 Qxf7, mate or 18...Nf6 19 Bxf6+ gxf6 20 Qxf6, mate.

1108 [VX-547]. White wins with 23 Bg5+ e.g., 23...Ke8 24 Qxg8, mate; 23...f6 24 Qxg7+ Ke8 25 Qf8, mate; or 23...Nf6 24 exf6+ gxf6 25 Bxf6, mate.
1109 [VX-549]. White wins with 15 Qh7+ Kf8 16 Qh8+ Ng8 17 Nh7+ Ke7 18 Bg5+ Nf6 (18...f6 19 Qxg7, mate) 19 Bxf6+ gxf6 20 Qxf6, mate.

1110 [VX-548]. White wins with 13 Qh7+ Kf8 14 Qh8+ Ng8 15 Nh7+ Ke7 16 Bg5+ and now: 16...f6 17 Qxg7, mate or 16...Nf6 17 Bxf6+ gxf6 18 Qxf6, mate.

1111 [VX-547]. White wins with 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Qh8+ Ng8 22 Nh7+ Ke7 23 Bg5+, e.g., 23...Ke8 24 Qxg8, mate; 23...f6 24 Qxg7+ Ke8 25 Qf8, mate; or 23...Nf6 24 exf6+ gxf6 25 Bxf6, mate.

1112 [VX-552]. Here d8 is occupied by a Rook instead of a Queen, so 18 Bg5+ Kd7, 19 Bxd8 Nxd8 gives White only a Rook and pawn for two pieces, while 18 Qxg7 can be met by either 18...b6 19 Bg5+ Kd7, e.g., 20 Bxd8 (20 Qxf7+ Nce7) Nxd8, threatening 21...Qxc3+, or 18...Re8 19 Bg5+ Kd7 20 Qxg7+ Nce7 (20...Nge7 loses to 21 Nf6+ Kd8 22 Qxe8, mate) 21-0-0, when White has three pawns for the piece.

1113 [VX-554]. White wins with 16 Bg5+ Nf6 (16...f6 17 Qxg7, mate; 16...Kd7 17 Bxd8) 17 Qxg7 and now: 17...Nxe5 18 Bxf6+ wins Black's Queen; 17...Rg8 18 Bxf6+ Kd7 19 Qxg7+ Ne7 20 Bxe7 Qxe7 21 Qxg8, nets White a Rook and two pawns; or 17...Kd7 with either 18 Bxf6 Ne7 19 Qxh7, when White is up a couple of pawns, or 18 Nxf6+ Kc7 19 Nxe8+ Qxe8, when White is up the exchange and a pawn.

1114 [VX-556]. White wins with 14 Bg5+ Nf6 (this attacks White's Qh8; 14...f6 loses to 15 Qxg7, mate, while 14...Kd7 drops the Qd8) 15 Qxg7 and now: 15...Rg8 16 Bxf6+ Kd7 17 Qxf7+ Qe7 18 Qxe7, mate, or 15...Nb7 16 Nxf6, threatening mate with 17 Nxd5 or 17 Ng8, when moving the Nd7 loses, e.g., 16...Nxf6 17 Bxf6+ wins Black's Queen or 16...Nb6 17 Nxe8+ Kxe8 18 Qg8+ Kd7 19 Qxd8, mate.

6. Black Plays 2...Kh6

1115 [VX-550]. White wins Black's Queen with 17 Ngxf7+.

1116 [VX-542]. White wins with 17 Qg4, e.g., 17...Nxd4 18 Qh4+ Kg6 19 Qh7, mate, or 17...g6 18 Qh4+ Kg7 19 Qh7, mate.
1117 [VX-540]. White wins with 14 Qg4, threatening 15 Qh4+ Kg6 16 Qh7+ Kxg5 17 f4 Kg4 18 Qh3, mate, when 14...Nf5 can be met by 15 Nd3, threatening 16 Qh3+ Kg6 17 f4 Kg4 18 Qh3, mate.

1118 [VX-543]. White wins with 12 Re3 g6 13 Rh3+, e.g., a) 13...Kxg5 14 Qd2+ and now: 14...Kg4 15 f3+ Kf5 16 g4, mate or b) 13...Kg7 14 Rh7+ Kg8 15 Qd3, mate; or b) 13...Kg7 14 Rh7+ Kg8 15 Qf3 (White's threat is 16 Qf6 and 17 Rh8, mate) Nf5 16 Qh3, with mate along the h-file.

1119 [VX-534]. White wins with 17 Qg4 Nf5 18 Nce4, when the threat of 19 Qh3+ Kg6 20 Qh7, mate, forces Black to give back the piece, e.g., 18...Nf6 (18...Rh8 drops the Queen to 19 Nxf7+) 19 exf6 Bxe4 20 fxg7 Nxg7 21 Nxe4, when White is up a pawn and has an attack.

1120 [VX-530]. 17...Kh8 concedes the pawn and gives White an attack after 18 Rh4.

1121 [VX-550]. White wins with 16 Ng5, threatening both 17 Nf7+, winning Black's Queen, and 17 Qh5.

1122 [VX-535]. White wins with 13 Bxg8 Kxg8 14 Qh5, when 14...Re8 leads to a typical mate.

1123 [VX-548]. White wins with 11 Ng5 g6 12 Qf3, threatens 13 Qf6, mate, e.g., 12...f5 13 Qh3 Kg7 14 Bg8 with 15 Qh7, or 12...Nf5 13 Bxg6 fxg6 14 Qh3+ Kg7 15 Qh7, mate.

1124 [VX-535]. White wins with 13 Qf3, threatening 14 Qf6, mate, e.g., 13...f5 14 Bxg6 Nxf6 15 Qh5+ Kg7 16 Qh7, mate or 13...Nf5 14 Bxg6 and now: 14...fxg6 15 Qh3+ Kg7 16 Qh7, mate or 14...Kg7 15 Bxf5, when White is up a piece and two pawns.

1125 [VX-533]. White wins with 15 Ng5, e.g., 15...g6 16 Bxg6 fxg6 17 Qg4, threatening 18 Qh4+ Kg7 19 Qh7, mate, when 17...Kg7 18 Nxe6+ wins Black's Queen and after 17...Kg8 18 Qxe6+ Kg7 19 Qh3, White threatens both 20 Qh7+ and 20 Ne6+, winning Black's Queen.
529. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg8 13 Qh5 Rd8. How does White win here?

1 For 12...Kg6, see exercise 571.

530. White's Queen is under attack, but his Rb4 is ready to join the attack. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxc3 Rxc3 17 Bxh7+ Kxh7 18 Ng5+ Kg8 19 Qh5 Rfc8. How does White win here?

1 17...Kh8 concedes the pawn and more after 18 Rh4. 2 For 18...Kg6, see exercise 575.

531. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg8 13 Qh5 Rd8 14 Qxf7+ Kh8. How does White win here?

1 For 12...Kg6, see exercise 579.

532. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg8 13 Qh5 Re8 14 Qxf7+ Kh8. How does White win here?

1 For 12...Kg6, see exercise 583. 2 14 Qh7+ Kf8 15 Qh8+ Ng8 16 Nh7+ Ke7 is slower because White's Nd2 prevents White from playing 17 Bg5+.
533. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bxh7+ Kxh7 15 Ng5+ Kg8 16 Qh5 Re8 17 Qxf7+ Kh8. How does White win here?

1 14...Kh8 loses to 15 Ng5, e.g., 15...g6 16 Bxg6 fxg6 17 Qg4, threatening 18 Qh4+ Kg7 19 Qh7, mate, when 17...Kg7 drops the Queen to 18 Nxe6+ and after 17...Kg8 18 Qxe6+ Kg7 19 Qh3, White threatens both 20 Qh7+ and 20 Ne6+, winning Black's Queen. 2 For 15...Kg6, see exercise 570.

534. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxh7+ Kxh7 16 Ng5+ Kg8 17 Qh5 Re8 18 Qxf7+ Kh8. How does White win here?

1 For 16...Kg6, see exercise 564. 16...Kh6 can be met by 17 Qg4, and if 17...Nf5 then 18 Nc4 threatens 19 Qh3+ Kg6 20 Qh7, mate and forces Black to give back the piece with 18...Nf6 (18...Rh8 19 Nxe7+ wins Black's Queen) 19 exf6 Bxe4 20 fxg7 Nxg7 21 Nxe4, when White is up a pawn and has an attack. 2 17...Nf6 18 exf6 Be4 can be met by 19 Ncxe4.

535. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg8 13 Qh5 Re8 14 Qxf7+ Kh8. How does White win here?

1 11...Kh8 12 Ng5 gives White an extra pawn and an attack, e.g., 12...Ng8 loses to 13 Bxg8 Kxg8 14 Qh5 Re8 15 Qxf7, mating, or 12...g6 13 Qf3, threatening 14 Qf6, mate, when 13...f5 14 Bxg6 Nxf6 loses to 15 Qh5+ Kg7 16 Qh7, mate, while 13...Nf5 14 Bxg6 Kg7 (14...fxg6 15 Qh3+ Kg7 16 Qh7, mate) 15 Bxf5 White is up a piece and two pawns. 2 12...Kg6 (1-0, 15), see exercise 559.

536. Visualize the position after the moves 7 Bxh7+ Kxh7 8 Ng5+ Kg8 9 Qh5 Re8 10 Qxf7+ Kh8 11 Nxe6+ Nf5 12 Nxd8 Rxd8. What is the material balance?

1 For ...Kg6, see exercise 573. 2 This is 4-ply shorter than 11 Qh5+ Kg8 12 Qh7+ (1-0) Kf8 13 Nxe6+ Kf7 14 Nxd8+ Rxd8. 3 11...Rf8 12 Qxg7 is mate.
537. Visualize the position after the moves 9 Bxh7+ Kxh7 10 Ng5+ Kg8\(^1\) 11 Qh5 Re8 12 Ba3\(^2\) c5 13 Qh7+ Kf8 14 Bxc5 Nd7. How does White win here?

\(^1\) For 10...Kg6 – see exercise 580. \(^2\) Black resigned here. 12 Qh7+ Kf8 12 Ba3 transposes.

538. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg8\(^3\) 13 Qh5 Re8 14 Qh7+ Kf8 15 Qh8+ Ng8 16 Nh7+ Ke7. How does White mate in two?

\(^1\) For 12...Kg6 see exercise 584.

539. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg8\(^4\) 13 Qh5 Re8 14 Qxf7+\(^2\) Kh8 15 Nxc7 Bd7\(^5\). How does White win here?

\(^1\) For 12...Kg6 see exercise 577. \(^2\) 14 Qh7+ Kf8 16 Qh8+ Ng8 17 Nh7+ Ke7 doesn't work because White can't follow up with Bg5+. \(^3\) 15...Rf8 loses to 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17 Qh7, mate, while 15...Qxc7 undefends the Re8 and loses to 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17 Qxe8, mate.

540. White’s Rc1 is ready to join the attack. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg8\(^6\) 14 Qh5 Re8 15 Qxf7+ Kh8 16 Rc3\(^2\) Nf5 17 Rh3+ Nh6. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 13...Kh6 loses to 14 Qg4, threatening 15 Qh4+ Kg6 16 Qh7+ Kxg5 17 f4 Kg4 18 Qh3, mate, when 14...Nf5 can be met by 15 Nd3, threatening 16 Qh3+ Kg6 17 Qh7, mate. For 13...Kg6, see exercise 562. \(^2\) White’s threat is 17 Rh3, mate.
541. White's Re1 is ready to join the attack. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg8 13 Qh5 Rfc8 14 Qxf7+2 Kh8 15 Re3 Ng88 16 Rh3+ Nh6. How does White win here?

1 For 12...Kg6, see exercise 576. 2 14 Qh7+ also wins, but it's more complex, e.g., 14 Qh7+ Kf8 15 Qh8+ Ng8 16 Nh7+ Ke7 17 Bh5+ Ng6 (17...Qxg8, mate) 18 Qxg7 wins, e.g., 18...Rf8 19 Bxf6+ Ke8 20 Qxf6+ Kd8 21 Qxc5, mate.

542. White’s Ra1 is ready to join the attack. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg8 13 Qh5 Re8 14 Qxf7+ Kh8 15 Ra3 Nh5 16 Rh3+ Nh6. How does White mate in two?

1 For 12...Kg6 (1-0, 20), see exercise 581. 12...Kh6 loses to 13 Re3, e.g., a) 13...Ng6 14 Rh3+ Kg8 15 Rh3+ Kh7 16 Qd4, mate; b) 13...Rh3 14 Rh3+ Kg6 15 Nh7 Kf5 (15...Rxh7 16 Qg4, mate) 16 Qf3+ Kg6 17 Qg4, mate; c) 13...g6 14 Qf3 Rh8 15 Qf6 Kh7 16 Rh3+ Kg4 17 f5, mate.

543. White’s Re1 is ready to join the attack. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxh7+ Kxh7 11 Ng5+ Kg8 12 Qh5 Re8 13 Qxf7+ Kh8 14 Re3 Nh5 15 Rh3+ Nh6. How does White win here?

1 For 11...Kg6, see exercise 568. 11...Kh6 loses to 12 Re3 g6 13 Rh3+ and now: a) 13...Kxg5 14 Qd4+ with either 14...Kg4 15 f3+ Kf5 16 g4, mate, or 14...Kf5 15 Rh4 g5 16 Qd3, mate; or b) 13...Kg7 14 Rh7+ Kg8 15 Qf3 (White's threat is 16 Qf6 and 17 Rh8, mate) Nf5 16 Qh3, with mate along the h-file. 2 14 Nxe6 wins Black's Queen, but 14 Re3 is better.

544. White’s Rc3 is ready to join the attack. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxh7+ Kxh7 16 Ng5+ Kg8 17 Qh5 Rfe8 18 Qxf7+ Kh8 19 Bd2 Nh5 20 Rh3+ Nh6. How does White win here?

1 For 16...Kg6 -- see exercise 560. 2 17...Rfd8 doesn't change anything. 3 This leads to mate. Not as good is 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Qh8+ Ng8 20 Nh7+ Ke7 21 Bh5+ f6 22 Nxf6, e.g., a) 22...gxf6 23 Bxf6+ mates after either 23...Nxf6 24 Qxf6, mate, or 23...Kf7 24 Qg7, mate; b) 22...Kd8 23 Nxe8+ gives White a Rook and two pawns for a piece, since taking the Knight with 23...Kxe8 loses to 24 Qxg8, mate. 4 White’s threat is 20 Rh3, mate.
545. Here White has no Pe5, but e4 is open to White's Rook. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg8 13 Qh5+ Re8 14 Qxf7+ Kh8 15 Re4 16 Nf5 Qf6. How does White win here?

1 11...Kh8 12 Be4 gives White a pawn and an attack on Black's King.
2 12...Kg6 loses to 13 Qh5+ Kf6 14 Nh7, mate (as in exercise 557).
3 White can also win with 14 Qh7+ Kg8 15 Qh8+ Nf5, when 16...Re7 loses to 17 Nh7+ Ke8 18 Qxg8+ Kd7 19 Nf7+ Ke8 20 Nxg7, mate.
4 White's threat is 16 Rh4, mate.
5 15...Ng6 loses to 16 Qxg6 Kg8 17 Qf7+ Kh8 18 Rh4, mate.
6 Now White threatens both 17 Rh4 and 17 Qxg7, mate.

546. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxh7+ Kxh7 16 Ng5+ Kg8 17 Qh5 Rd8 18 Qxf7+ Kh8 19 Ndx6 Bxe3+ 20 Kh1 Bxe6. How does White win here?

1 For 16...Kg6 see exercise 567; 16...Kh6 loses to 17 Qg4, e.g., 17...Nxd4 18 Qh4+ Kg5 19 Qh7, mate, or 17...g6 18 Qh4+ Kg7 19 Qh7, mate.
2 Driving Black's King to c7 with 18 Qh4+ Kg8 19 Qh8+ Ng8 20 Nh7+ Ke7 isn't as strong because White can't follow up with 21 Bg5+, 3 Also good is 19 Rf3 Nf5 20 Rh3+ Nh6 21 Qg6, threatening 22 Qh7, mate, e.g., 21...Kg8 22 Bxh6 with either 22...Nf7 23 Qf7, mate or 22...Bxd4 23 Rh8+ Khxh8 24 Qh7, mate.

547. White controls the d-file. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxh7+ Kxh7 18 Ng5+ Kg8 19 Qh5 Rd8 20 Qh7+ Kh8 21 Qh8+ Ng8 22 Nh7+ Ke7 23 Bg5+ Nf6. How does White mate in two?

1 For 18...Kg6, see exercise 558.
2 23...Ke8 24 Qxg8 is mate, while 23...f6 loses to 24 Qxg7+ Ke8 25 Qf8, mate.

548. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxh7+ Kxh7 11 Ng5+ Kg8 12 Qh5+ Re8 13 Qh7+ Kf8 14 Qh8+ Ng8 15 Nh7+ Ke7 16 Bg5+ Nf6. How does White win here?

1 10...Kh8 loses to 11 Ng5, e.g., 11...g6 12 Qf3, threatening 13 Qf6, mate, when 12...Ng6 loses to 13 Bxg6 fxg6 14 Qh3+ Kg7 15 Qh7, mate and 12...f5 loses to 13 Qh3 Kg7 14 Bg8 with 15 Qh7. 2 For 11...Kg6, see exercise 572.
3 16...f6 loses to 17 Qxg7, mate.
549. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg8 14 Qh3 Re8 15 Qh7+ Kf8 16 Qh8+ Ng8 17 Nh7+ Ke7 18 Bg5+ Nf6. How does White win here? 1 For 13...Kg6, see exercise 563.

550. Here White's Nd6 controls f7. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxh7+ Kxh7 16 Ng5+ Kg8 17 Qh5 Re8 18 Qxf7+ Kh8 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Qh8+ Ng8. How does White win here? 1 15...Kh8 loses to 16 Ng5, threatening both 17 Nh7+, winning Black's Queen, and 17 Qh5. 2 16...Kh6 drops the Queen to 17 Ngxf7+.

551. Visualize the position after the moves 9 Bxh7+ Kxh7 10 Ng5+ Kg8 11 Qxh5 Re8 12 Qxf7+ Kh8 13 Re1 Qd7 14 Rxe7 Qxe7 15 Qh5+ Kg8 16 Qh7+ Kf8. How does White win here? 1 For 10...Kg6, see exercise 565. 2 Also good is 12 Qh7+ Kf8 13 Qh8+ Ng8 14 Nh7+ Ke7 15 Bg5+. 3 After 13...Nb6 White can force Black's Queen to f8, then play 16 Ne6+, e.g., 14 Qh5+ Kg8 15 Qh7+ Kf8 16 Ne6+ Kf7 17 Qxg7, mate. 4 14...Rxe7 15 Qf8 is mate.

552. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg8 14 Qh5 Rd8 15 Qh7+ Kf8 16 Qh8+ Kg8 17 Nh7+ Ke7 18 Qxg7+ Re8 19 Bg5+ Kd7 20 Qxf7+ Nce7 21 0-0. What is the material balance? 1 For 13...Kg6 see exercise 566. 2 14...Re8 loses to 15 Qxf7+ Kh8 16 Qh5+ Kgs 17 Qxe8, mate. 3 15 Qxf7+ Kgs gets White nowhere, e.g., 16 Ne6 Bxe6 17 Qxe6, with three pawns for his piece or 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Qh8+ Ng8 19 Nh7+ Kf7, when Black's g-pawn is defended. 4 17...Ke8 drops the Ng8. 5 18 Bg5+ can be met by 18...Kd7, when after 19 Bxd8 Nxd8 Black has two pieces for a Rook and pawn and threatens 20...Qxc3+. 6 Also good is 18...b6 19 Bg5+ Kd7, e.g., 20 Bxd8 (or 20 Qxf7+ Nce7) Nxd8, threatening 21...Qxc3+. 7 20...Nge7 loses to 21 Nf6+ Kd8 22 Qxe8, mate.
553. Visualize the position after the moves 9 Bxh7+ Kxh7 10 Ng5+ Kg8 11 Qh5 Re8 12 Qh7+ Kf8 13 Qh8+ Ng8 14 Nh7+ Ke7 15 Bg5+ Nf6 16 Qxg7 Kd7 17 Nxf6+ Kc7 18 Nxe8+ Qxe8. What is the material balance?

1 For 10...Kg6 see exercise 578. 2 12 Qxf7+ gives White nothing after 12...Kh8 13 Qh5+ Kf8 14 Qh7+ Ng8 16 Nh7+ Kf7. 3 15...Kd7 drops the Queen to 16 Bxd8 (1-0), while 15...f6 loses to 16 Qxg7, mate. 4 Now Black's pinned Nf6 will also fall.

554. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxh7+ Kxh7 11 Ng5+ Kg8 12 Qh5 Re8 13 Qh7+ Kf8 14 Qh8+ Ng8 15 Nh7+ Ke7 16 Bg5+ Nf6 17 Qxg7 Kd7 18 Nxf6+ Kc7 19 Nxe8+ Qxe8. What is the material balance?

1 For 11...Kg6, see exercise 561. 2 16...f6 17 Qxg7, mate; 16...Kd7 drops the Queen. 3 Also good is 13 Qh7+ Kf8 14 Qh8+ Ng8 15 Nh7+ Kf7. 4 14 Re1, intending 15 Rf3-Rh3, also wins (1-0, 17), but it's more complex. 5 14...Qb6 loses to 15 Rf3, e.g., 15...Nf5 16 Rh3+ Nh6 17 Rxh6+ gxh6 18 Qh7, mate. 6 White's threat is 18 Qh7, mate.

555. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxh7+ Kxh7 11 Ng5+ Kg8 12 Qh5 Rd8 13 Qxf7+ Kh8 14 f4 Qd7 15 Rf3 Nf5 16 Rh3+ Nh6 17 Qg6+ Kg8 18 Rfx6 cxd4. How does White win here?

1 For 10...Kg6, see exercise 574. 2 12...Re8 loses to 13 Qxf7+ Kh8 14 Qh5+ Kg8 15 Qxe8, mate. 3 Also good is 13 Qh7+ Kf8 14 Qh8+ Ng8 15 Nh7+ Ke7 16 Qxg7 with 17 Bg5+. 4 14 Re1, intending 15 Rf3-Rh3, also wins (1-0, 17), but it's more complex. 5 14...Qb6 loses to 15 Rf3, e.g., 15...Nf5 16 Rh3+ Nh6 17 Rxh6+ gxh6 18 Qh7, mate, while 14...Bd7 loses to 15 Rf3 Ng8 16 Rh3+ Nh6 17 Rfx6+ gxh6 18 Qh7, mate. 6 White's threat is 18 Qh7, mate.

556. Visualize the position after the moves 8 Bxh7+ Kxh7 9 Ng5+ Kg8 10 Qh5 Re8 11 Qh7+ Kf8 12 Qh8+ Ng8 13 Nh7+ Ke7 14 Bg5+ Nf6 15 Qxg7 Rg8 16 Bxf6+ Kd7. How can White win here?

1 For 9...Kg6, see exercise 582. 2 14...Kd7 drop the Queen, while 14...f6 15 Qxg7 is mate. 3 After 15...Nbd7 16 Nxf6 White threatens mate with either 17 Nxd5 or 17 Ng8, when moving the Nd7 loses, e.g., 16...Nxf6 17 Bxf6+ wins Black's Queen and 16...Nb6 loses to 17 Nxe8+ Kxe8 18 Qg8+ Kd7 19 Qxd8, mate.
This chapter contains exercises involving the sequence 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+ Kg6 when Black has a Knight on e7. White has sacrificed a Bishop for a pawn, but has a target in Black's exposed King on g6.

In Diagram 1, after the moves 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5 Kg6, White has three ways to continue the attack – checking along the b1-h7 diagonal with either 3 Qc2+ or Qd3+, playing 3 Qg4, or playing 3 h4.

In Diagram 2 the move 3 Qg4 is the most effective. White is threatening to win Black’s Queen with 4 Nxe6+. If Black plays 3...Kh6, then White mates in two with 4 Nxe6+ Kh7 5 Qxg7, mate, and if 3...f5 then 4 exf6 wins, e.g., 4...gxf6 or 4...Rxf6 both drop the Queen to 5 Nxe6+, while 4...Kxf6 allows 5 Qxe6, mate. Black can also play 4...Qd7, defending f6 and getting the Queen out of the way of the discovered check, but now the weakness on g7 comes into play after 3 Nh7+, e.g., 3...Kxh7 Qxg7, mate, or 3...Kf7 4 Qxg7+ Ke8 5 Qxf8, mate.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. White Plays Qc2+ or Qd3+
2. White Plays Qg4
3. White Plays Qg3
4. White Plays Qh3/Qh4/Qh5
5. White Plays h4-h5
6. Black Plays ...Kh6 or ....Kh5
7. Miscellaneous Mates

These themes are illustrated using ninety preparatory positions, which are followed by twenty eight visualization exercises ranging in depth from seven to twenty-one ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply: 5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. White Plays Qc2+ or Qd3+

1126 [VX-568]. Here Qd3+ drops the Ng5.

1127 [VX-560]. Black has just played 17...f5. After 18 exf6+ Kxf6 19 Nh7+ Kf7 20 Nxf8 Kxf8, White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces.

1128 [VX-563]. Black has just played 14...f5. After 15 exf6+ Kxf6 16 Nh7+ Kf7 17 Nxf8 Kxf8, White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces.

1129 [VX-581]. After 13 Qd3+ Black can't play 13...Kxg5 because of 14 Bc1+, e.g., 14...Kg4 15 Qh3, mate, 14...Kh4 15 Qh3, mate, or 14...Kh5 15 Qh7+ Kg4 16 Qh3/h3/f3, mate, but Black can play 13...Nf5 when 14 g4 can be met by 14...Qxg5, pinning White's g-pawn to the Kg1.

1130 [VX-562]. After 14 Qc2+, Black can't play 14...Kxg5 because of 15 Qh7, threatening 16 f4 Kg4 17 Qh3, mate, but Black is okay after 14...f5, e.g., 15 exf6+ Kxg5 (this is better than 15...Kxf6 16 Nh7+ Kf7 17 Nxf8 Kxf8, when White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces) 16 fxe7 Nxe7, when White is down a piece for a pawn.

2. White Plays Qg4

1131 [VX-568]. 14 Rxe6 is mate.

1132 [VX-584]. White wins with 16 Rxe6+ Bxe6 17 Qxe6, mate.

1133 [VX-558]. White wins with 20 Nxe6+ Kh7 21 Qxg7, mate.
1134 [VX-568]. White wins Black's Queen with 14 Nxe6+.

1135 [VX-562]. After 14 Qg4 f5 15 exf6 Kxf6 16 Nh7+ Kf7 17 Nxf8 Qxf8, White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces.

1136 [VX-561]. White wins with 14 Nxe6+ Kh6 with either 15 Qxg7+ Kh5 16 Qg5, mate or 15 Qg5+ Kh7 16 Qxg7, mate.

1137 [VX-570]. White wins with 17 Nxe6+ Kh6 and either 18 Qg5+ Kh7 19 Qxg7, mate, or 18 Qxg7+ Kh5 19 Qg5, mate.

1138 [VX-581]. White wins with 14 Nxe6+, e.g., 14...Kh7 15 Qxg7, mate or 14...Kh6 with either 15 Qxg7+ Kh5 16 Qg5, mate, or 15 Qg5+ Kh7 16 Qxg7, mate.

1139 [VX-559]. Black has just played 13...f5, attacking White's Queen. White wins with 14 exf6, threatening N6e+, winning Black's Queen, when 14...Kxf6 allows 15 Qe6, mate.

1140 [VX-576]. Here 16 Qg4 gives White nothing after 16...Nh6, when 17 Qg3 Nf5 repeats the position.

1141 [VX-580]. Black to play can force White's Queen to leave the g-file with 14...Nh6, since 15 Qg3 Nf5 repeats the position.

1142 [VX-583]. White wins with 15 Nxe6+ Kh6 and either 16 Nf3+ Kh7 17 Qg7, mate or 16 Qg7+ Kh5 17 Qh7+ Kg4 18 h3, mate.
1143 [VX-571]. White gets an attack with 14 Nxe6+ Kf7 15 Qxg7+ Kxe6 16 exf6 Rxf6 17 Re1+ Kd7 18 Bxe7, when White has three pawns for a piece and the attack.

1144 [VX-569]. White wins with 20 Nxe6+, e.g., 20...Kh7 21 Qxg7, mate, or 20...Kh6, when White can choose between 21 Qxg7+ Kh7 22 Qxg7, mate and 21 Qxg7+ Kh5 22 Qg5, mate.

1145 [VX-561]. White wins with 15 Nh7+, e.g., a) 15...Kxh7 16 Qxg7, mate; b) 15...Kh5 16 Qg5, mate; c) 15...Kh6 16 Qg5+ Kxh7 17 Qxg7, mate or 16 Qxg7+ Kh5 17 Qg5, mate; or d) 15...Kf7 16 Qxg7+ Ke8 17 Qxf8, mate.

1146 [VX-576]. Here 16 Nxe6+ gives White nothing since his Ne6 is pinned, e.g., 16...Kf7 17 Nxc7 Bxg4 18 Nxa8 Rxa8, when White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces.

1147 [VX-580]. Black has just played 11...e5, attacking White's Queen, but White wins with 12 Ne6+, e.g., 12...Kf6 (12...Kh7 13 Qxg7, mate) 13 Bg5+ Kh6 14 Bf4+ Ke7 15 Bxe5, mate.

1148 [VX-564]. Black has just played 17...f5, attacking White's Qg4. Here 18 exf6 can be met by 18...Nxf6, and if 19 Qg3 then 19...Ng5 wins White's Ng5, since after 20 Nxe6+ Nxf3 21 Nxd8 Nxf3 22 Nxb7 Nd2 White is down a Rook for two pawns.

1149 [VX-568]. White wins with 14 Nxe6+, e.g., a) 14...Kh7 15 Qxg7, mate; b) 14...Kb7 15 Qxg7+ Kh5 16 Qg5, mate or 15 Qg5+ Kh7 16 Qxg7, mate; c) 14...Kxf6 15 Qxg7+ Kf5 16 Qg5/Re5/g4, mate; or d) 14...Kf7 15 Qxg7+ Ke8 16 Qxf8, mate.

1150 [VX-566]. Here 14 Qg4 can be met by 14...Nxe5, attacking White's Queen and creating an escape square on f6, e.g., a) 15 dxe5 Qxe5+ 16 Kf1 f5, when White's attack has been neutralized or b) 15 Qg5 Nh5 16 Qxe5 Qxe5+ 17 dxe5, when material is even.

1151 [VX-584]. Black has just played 14...e5, attacking White's Queen, but White wins with 15 Ne6+ Kxf6 16 dxe5+ Kxe5 (16...Kf7 drops the Queen to 17 Nxd8+ 17 Bf4+ with mate to follow, e.g., 17...Ke4 18 Ne5, mate; 17... Kf6 18 Qxg7+ Kxe6 19 Re1+ Kf5 20 Qg5, mate; or 17...Rx4 18 Qxf4+ Kxe6 19 Re1, mate.
3. White Plays Qg3

1152 [VX-574]. White wins Black's Queen with 14 Nxe6+.

1153 [VX-567]. White wins Black's Queen with 20 Ne4+.

1154 [VX-582]. White Queens is under attack, but after 13 Qd3, White threatens 14 g4, winning Black's Nf5.

1155 [VX-580]. White wins with 13 Nxe6+ Kf7 14 Nc7, e.g., 14...Qd8 15 Nxa8 Na6 16 Bf4 and the Na8 escapes.

1156 [VX-561]. After 14 Nxe6+ Kf7 15 Nxf8 Kxf8, White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces.

1157 [VX-564]. After 19 Nxe6+ Kf7 20 Nxf8 Rxf8, when Black has two pieces for a Rook and pawn.

1158 [VX-567]. White wins Black's Rf8 with 19 Ngxe6+ Kf7 20 Qxg7+ Ke8 21 Qxf8+.

1159 [VX-570]. White wins with 18 Nxe6+ Kf7 19 Nbxc7, threatening both 20 Nxe8 and 20 Qxg7, mate.

1160 [VX-569]. White wins with Nxe6+, winning Black's Queen and/or mating on g7.
1161 [VX-563]. After 15 Qg3 f4 16 Bxf4 Nf5 17 Qg4 Nxe5 18 Bxe5 Qxg5, White is down a piece for a pawn.

1162 [VX-584]. Here White's Queen is under attack and has to leave the g-file, since 16 Qg4 can be met by 16...Nh6 17 Qg3 Nf5, repeating the position.

1163 [VX-563]. Black is defending, e.g., 15 Qg4 drops the e-pawn and after 15 Qf4 Nxe5 16 Qxe5 f6 17 Qe2 fxg5, White is down a piece.

1164 [VX-569]. White wins with 19 Nxe6+, e.g., 19...Kh5 20 Qg5, mate, or 19...Kh6 with either 20 Qg5+ Kh7 21 Qxg7, mate or 20 Qxg7+ Kh5 21 Qg5, mate.

1165 [VX-583]. White wins with 15 Nxe6+ Kf7 (other moves allow 16 Qxg7) 16 Nxe7 Qd8 17 e6+ mating, e.g., 17...Kg8 18 Ne8+, with Qg7, mate, or 17...Kf6 18 Ne4+ dxe4 19 Qg5, mate.

1166 [VX-577]. White wins with 16 Ngxe6+, e.g., 16...Kf7 17 Qxg7, mate, or 16...Kh6 17 Qxg7+ Kh5 18 Qg5, mate.

1167 [VX-567]. White wins with 19 Ngxe6+, e.g., 19...Kh5 20 Qg5, mate; 19...Kh6 20 Qg5+ Kh7 21 Qxg7, mate; or 19...Kf7 20 Qxg7+ Ke8 21 Qxf8, mate.

1168 [VX-574]. White wins with 15 Nxe6+, e.g., 15...Kf7 16 Qxg7+ Kxe6 17 Qxf8, when White a Rook and four pawns for two pieces, or 15...Kf5 16 Nxg7+ Ke4 17 Qf3/Qe3/Rae1/Rf1/f3, mate.

1169 [VX-570]. White wins with 18 Nxe6+, e.g., 18...Kf7 19 Qxg7+ Kxe6 (19...Ke8 20 Qxf8 is mate) 20 Nd4, mate, or 18...Kh6 with either 19 Qg5+ Kh7 20 Qxg7, mate or 19 Qxg7+ Kh5 20 Qg5, mate.
1170 [VX-580]. White wins with 13 Nxe6+ Kf7/Kf6 14 Qxg7+, e.g., 14...
Kxe6 15 Re1+ and now: 15...Qe4 16 Rxe4+ fxe4 17 Qxf8, when White has a Queen and three pawns for two pieces or 14...Ke8 15 Qxf8+ Kg7 16 Nc5+ Kd6 17 Qe7+ Bd7 18 Bf4+, etc) 17 Bf4+, winning Black's Queen.

1171 [VX-580]. White's Queen is under attack and can't make progress, e.g., 14 Qd3 (14 Qg4 Nh6 15 Qg3 Nf5 repeats the position) e5 (the absence of White's Pe5 comes into play) 15 Bd2 exd4 16 g4 (16 cxd4 Qxd4 kills White's attack) dxc3 17 gxf5+ Bxf5 18 Qxc3, when material is even.

1172 [VX-576]. White's Qg3 is under attack and 16 Qd3, with the idea of 16 g4, can be met by 16...c4, when White's Queen has to leave the c2-g6 diagonal. After 16 Nxe6+ Nxc3 17 Nxc7 Nh5 (17...Rac8 18 Bxg3 Rxc7 drops a piece to 19 e6) 18 Nxa8 Nxf4 19 Nc7, White has a Rook and three pawns for two pieces, but Black will get at least a pawn back after 19...Rc8, e.g., 20 e6 Rxc7 21 exd7 Rxd7.

1173 [VX-564]. Here the idea of 19 Rf1 with Nxe6+, Nxf7, and e6 doesn't accomplish anything after 19...f4 20 Qg4 Nxc3 21 bxc3 Nd5 22 Nxe6+ Kf7, when White can't play 23 Nxf7 because his Ne6 is pinned.

1174 [VX-582]. White wins with 13 Re1, intending Nxe6+ with Nxe7 and e5-e6, e.g., 13...c5 14 Nxe6+ Kf7 (14...Kh7 15 Qxg7, mate; 14...Kh5 15 Nxe7, mate) 15 Nxf6 Qb5 16 e6+, when 16...Kg8 loses to 17 Nxf5+ with Qg7, mating. 16...Kf6 17 Qg5/Bf5 is mate, and 16...Bxe6 17 Nxe6 gives White an extra two pawns with the attack.

1175 [VX-583]. White wins with 15 Qd3+ Kxg5 16 Qh7, threatening 17 Nf3+ Kg4 18 Qh3, mate, when 16...g6 loses to 17 Nf3+ Kg5 18 Qh3+ Ke4 19 Ng5/Nd2, mate, but Black can give back one of his pieces with 16...Nxe5 17 dxe5 Ng6 (17...g6 loses to 18 Qh3 with 19 Nh3, mate) 18 Nf3+ Kg5 19 Qh3, mate) 19 Qh5+ Ke4, when White can choose between 20 Qxg6+ and 20 Nd2+.
4. White Plays Qh3/Qh4/Qh5

1176 [VX-558]. White wins with 20 Qh4, when Black can't stop 21 Qh7, mate.

1177 [VX-582]. White wins with 12 Qh4, threatening 13 Qh7, mate, and if 12...f4 then 13 g4 threatens 14 Qh5, mate.

1178 [VX-574]. White wins with 15 Qh3, threatening 16 Qh7, mate, and if 15...Nh6 then 16 g4 threatens Qh5, mate.

1179 [VX-567]. Here 18 Qb4 can be met by 18...Nxe5 19 fxe5 Qxe5, creating an escape square on f6.

1180 [VX-567]. Black has just played 19...Qd7, when after 20 Qh4, Black can't stop Qh7, mate.

1181 [VX-571]. White wins with 14 Qh4, threatening 15 Qh7+ Kxg5, 16 f4+ Kg4 17 Qh3, mate.

1182 [VX-574]. White wins with 13 Qh3, threatening 14 Qh7, mate, when 13...Nxe5 14 dx5 Qxe5 loses to 15 Qh7+ Kf6 16 Nf3 Qc7 17 Bg5, mate.

1183 [VX-558]. White wins with 20 Qh3, threatening 21 Qh7, mate, and if 20...Nh6 then 21 g4 threatens 22 Qh5, mate.

1184 [VX-574]. White wins with 14 Qh4, threatening 15 Qh7, mate, and if 14...f4 then 15 g4 threatens 16 Qh5, mate.
1185 [VX-574]. White wins with 15 Qh7+ Kf6 16 Qh5 (the threat is 17 Nh7, mate) Ng6 17 Nh7+ Kf7 18 Nxf8 Kxf8 19 Qxg6, when White is up a Rook for a pawn.

1186 [VX-571]. White wins with 14 Qh3 Kxg5 15 Qh7, threatening 16 f4+ Kg4 17 Qh3/h3, mate, when 15...Ng6 loses to 16 h4+ Nh4 17 f4+ Kg4 18 Qxg7+ Ng6 19 Qxg6+ Kh4 20 Qg5, mate.

1187 [VX-571]. White wins with 14 Qh3, threatening 15 Qh7+ Kxg5 16 f4+ Kg4 17 Qh3, mate, and if 14...Nxe5 then 15 Qh7+, when 15...Kxg5 loses to 16 f4+ Kf6 17 fxe5+ Kg5 18 Bc1+ Kg4 19 Qh3, mate, and 15...Kf6 16 dxe5+ Kxe5 17 Bxf8 gives White a Rook for a pawn.

1188 [VX-584]. White wins with 16 Qh5, threatening 17 Nh7, mate, e.g., 16...g6 17 Qh7 (now the threat is 18 Nh7 with 19 Bg5+, e.g., 18 Nh7 Rh8 19 Bg5+ Kf5 20 Re5+ Kg4 21 h3, mate) Nbc6 18 Nh3 Rh8 19 Bg5+ Kg4, when White has several ways to wins, e.g., 20 h3 Rxh7 21 g4, mate; 20 Qf7+ Kd4 21 Qf4+ Kh5 22 Qh4/g4, mate; or 20 g4+ Kxg4 21 h3+ Kxf3 22 Nd2, mate.

1189 [VX-579]. After 14 Qh4, Black has two ways to give back the piece, e.g., a) 14...Nxe5 15 Bf4 N7c6 16 dxe5 Nxe5 17 Rae1 Ba6 18 Rxe5, when a1) 18...Bxf1 loses to 19 Rxh6+ Kd6 20 Qh7, mate and after a2) 18...Qd7 19 Qh7+ Kf6 White wins with 20 Nxe6 (keeping the pressure on f5, but 20 Rxh6+ is also good) Bxf1 21 Qxh6+ Ke7 22 Nfx8+ Kd6 23 Qxh7, mate or b) 14...Nf6 15 exf6 Kxf6 16 Re1 (White's threat is 17 Nxe6+ Ng6 17 Nxe6+ Nhx4 18 Nxe7 Rb8 19 Nxd5+, when White is up two pawns.

1190 [VX-577]. Black's Queen is off of the 1st rank, allowing White to create threats along the h-file, since Black can no longer play ...Rh8, but 15 Qh4 immediately can be met by 15...Nxe5, creating an escape square on f6 and attacking White's Nb5, but White can win with 15 Nxe7, e.g., a) 15...Qxc7 16 Nxe6+ wins Black's Queen; b) 15...Rh8 loses to 16 Ngxe6+, e.g., 16...Kf7 17 Qxg7, mate, or 16...Kf6 17 Qxg7+ Kh5 18 Qf5, mate; or c) 15...Rg8 16 Qh4, threatening 17 Qh7, mate, and if 16...Nxe5 17 fxe5 f4, hoping to escape to f5, then 18 g4 threatens 19 Qh5, mate and 18...fxg3 loses to 19 Qh7, mate.
5. White Plays h4-h5

1191 [VX-573]. White wins with 10 h5+, when 10...Kh6 drops the Queen to 11 Nxe6+ and 10...Kf5 loses to 11 Qf3/g4, mate.

1192 [VX-566]. White wins with 15 h5+, when 15...Kh6 drops the Queen to 16 Nxe6+ and 15...Kf5 loses to 16 Qf3/g4, mate.

1193 [VX-566]. White wins with 15 h5+, e.g., 15...Kf5 16 Qf3/g4, mate, or 15...Kh6 16 Nxe6+, winning Black's Rf8.

1194 [VX-561]. White has just played 12 h4, threatening 13 h5, but 12...Rh8 stops the threat.

1195 [VX-570]. Here the threat of 16 h4 can be met by 16...Nf5, when 17 h5+ Kh6 is fine for Black.

1196 [VX-578]. White wins with 12 h5+, e.g., 12...Kh6 13 Nxf7+, winning Black's Queen, or 12...Kf5 13 Qf3/g4, mate.

1197 [VX-560]. Here 18 h5+ can be met by 18...Kh6, when after 19 Nxe6+ Nxe3 20 Qd2 Bxe6 21 Rxe3 Kh7, White is down two pieces for two pawns.

1198 [VX-577]. Here 14 h5+ can be met by 14...Kh6, when it's not clear how White can continue the attack since White's f-pawn is blocking the c1-h6 diagonal.

1199 [VX-578]. White wins with 12 h5+ Kh6 13 Nxe6+, e.g., 13...Kh7 14 Nxf8+ Kg8 15 Nxd7, when White has won both a Rook and a Queen, or 13...g5 14 hgx6+ Kxg6 15 Qg4/Qh5, mate.
1200 [VX-566]. White wins with 16 g4+, e.g., 16...Kf6 17 Nh7, mate, or 16...Nxg4 with either 17 Qf3+ Qf4 18 Qxf4, mate or 17 Qc2+ Kf6 18 Nh7, mate.

1201 [VX-573]. White wins with 11 h5+ Kh6 (11...Kf5 12 g4/Qf3, mate) 12 Nxe6+ (12 Qg4 threatens both 13 Nxe6 and 14 Qxg7/Nxe8, but can be met by 12...Rg8) and now: 12...g5 13 Bxg5+ Kh7 14 Nxc7 Qd8 15 Nxa8 gives White a Rook and four pawns for piece or 12...Kh7 13 Nxc7 Qd8 14 Nxa8, when White is up a Rook and three pawns for a Knight.

1202 [VX-578]. White wins with 14 Ne4+ Kh7 15 h6 (the threat is 16 hxg7+ Kg8 17 Nf6, mate) Rh8 (15...g6 16 Nf6+ wins Black’s Queen) 16 hxg7+ and now: 16...Kg8 17 Rxh8, mate or 16...Nh6 17 Qf6 is mate (White can also play 17 gxb8=Q+ Kxh8 18 Rxh6, mate or 17 Rxh6+ Kg8 18 Rxh8/gxh8=Q, mate.

6. Black Plays ...Kh6 or ...Kh5

1203 [VX-561]. White wins with 16 Nxe6 Bxe6 17 Qg5, mate.

1204 [VX-561]. White wins with 16 Qh3+ Kg6 17 Qh7, mate.

1205 [VX-569]. White wins with either 20 Qg5+ Kh7 21 Qxg7, mate or 20 Qxg7+ Kh5 21 Qg5, mate.

1206 [VX-571]. White wins with 14 Qh7+, e.g., 14...Kg4 15 Be1 with 16 Qh3/h3/f3, mate, or 14...Kxg5 15 Be1+ Kg4 16 Qh3/h3/f3, mate.

1207 [VX-568]. White wins with 13 Re3, threatening 14 Rh3+ Kg6 15 Nxe6, mate, when 13...g6 loses to 14 Qh4+ Kg7 15 Qh7, mate.

1208 [VX-562]. White wins with 14 Qg4 threatening 15 Qh4+ Kg6 16 Qh7+ Kxg5 17 f4 Kg4 18 Qh3, mate, and if 14...Nf5 then 15 Ndf3 threatens 16 Qh3+ Kg6 17 Qh7, mate.
7. Miscellaneous Mates

1209 [VX-569]. White wins with 19 Ng7, threatening 20 Qg5, mate, when 19...Ng6 covers g5, but loses to 20 Qf3+ Kh4 21 Qh3, mate and 19...Rxf7 loses to 20 Nxf7, threatening both 21 Nxe8 and 21 Qg5, mate.

1210 [VX-564]. White can win with either 18 Nce4, threatening 19 Qh4/Qh3+ Kg7 20 Qh7, mate, or 18 Qh4+ Kg6 19 Qh7+ Kxg5 20 h4+ Kg4 (20...Kf4 21 Ne2, mate) 21 f3+ Kf4 (21...Kg3 22 Ne2, mate) 22 Qe4+ Kg3 23 Ne2, mate.

1211 [VX-568]. White wins with 14 Qh4+ Kg6 15 Qh7+, e.g., 15...Kxf6 16 Rxg6+ Kxg6 17 Qxg6+ Kf5 18 g3, mate, or 18...Kg4 19 Nh5+ Kh4 20 Qg5/Rh5, mate.

1212 [VX-557]. White wins with 13 Qh5+ Kf6 14 Nh7, mate.

1213 [VX-572]. White wins with 13 Nf4+, e.g., 13...Kh6 14 Qh5, mate, or 13...Kxg5 14 Qh5, mate.

1214 [VX-575]. One way to win is with 19 Rh4, threatening 20 Qh5 Kf5 21 Nh7+ (this defends White's e-pawn) g5 22 Qxg5, mate, when 19...f5 20 Qh5 is mate and 19...f6 loses to 20 Qh5+ Kf5 21 Nh7+ g5 22 Rd4, when Black can't stop g4, mate, e.g., 22...Rxf7 23 f4 with 24 g4, mate.

1215 [VX-572]. White wins with 13 Nf4+ Kf5 (13...Kxg5 14 Qh5, mate) 14 Qd3+, e.g., 14...Ke4 15 Qh3+ Kxg5 16 Qh5, mate or 14...Kxg5 15 Nxe6+ Kh5 (15...Kg4/Kh4 16 Qh3, mate) and now: 16 Qh7+ Kg4 17 Qh3/f3/h3, mate; 16 Nxg7+ Kg4/Kh4 17 Qg3, mate; or 16 Qh3+ Kg6 17 Nh4+ Kg5 18 Qh5, mate.
557. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 \(^1\) 12 Ng5+ Kg6 \(^2\) 13 Qh5+ Kf6. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 11...Kh8 12 Be4 gives White an extra pawn and an attack on Black's King. \(^2\) For 12...Kg8, see exercise 545.

558. Black's Rooks are not connected, Rh8 is not possible. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxh7+ Kxh7 18 Ng5+ Kg6 \(^1\) 19 Qg4+ f5 \(^3\). How does White win here?

\(^1\) For 18...Kg8, see exercise 547. \(^2\) White's threat is 20 Nxe6+ Kh7 21 Qxg7, mate. \(^3\) 19...Nf5 20 Qh3 (White's threat is 21 Qh7, mate) Nh6 loses to 21 g4, when Black can't stop 22 Qh5, mate.

559. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 \(^1\) 12 Ng5+ Kg6 \(^2\) 13 Qg4+ f5 14 exf6 Kxf6. How does White win here?

\(^1\) For 11...Kh8 see exercise 535. \(^2\) For 12...Kg8, see exercise 535. This gives White's Queen access to e6. 13 Qd3+ f5 14 exf6+ Kxf6 gives White little. \(^3\) White's threat is Ne6+, winning Black's Queen.

560. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxh7+ Kxh7 16 Ng5+ Kg6 \(^1\) 17 Qd3+ f5 18 exf6+ Kxf6 \(^3\) 19 Nh7+ Kf7 20 Nxf8 Kxf8. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) For 16...Kg8, see exercise 544. \(^2\) a) 17 h4 can be met by 17...Nf5 18 h5+ Kh6, when after 19 Nxe6+ Nxe3 20 Qd2 Bxe6 21 Rxe3 Kh7, White is down two pieces for two pawns, while b) 17 Qg4 gives White little after 17...f5, e.g., b1) 18 exf6 Rxf6 19 Ne4+ Kf7 20 Nxf6 Qxb2 21 Rcl gxf6, when Black has two pieces for the Rook or b2) 18 Qg3 f4 19 Bxf4 Nf5 20 Qg4 Qxb2 21 Nxe6+ Kf7 22 Qxf5+ Kg8 23 Qe2 Qxc2 24 Rxc2 Bxe6, when Black has a piece for two pawns. \(^3\) 18...Nf5 19 g4 drops the Nf5.
561. Black is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxh7+ Kxh7 11 Ng5+ Kg6 12 Qg4 f5 13 Qg3 Qe8 14 Nxe6+ Kf7 15 Nxf8 Kxf8. What is the material balance?

1 For 11...Kg8, see exercise 554.  2 12 h4 can be met by 12...Rh8, stopping 13 h5, while 12 Qd3+ f5 13 Qg3 transposes to the main line.  3 12...Nxe5 loses to 13 Bxe5, e.g., 13...Qd7 14 Nxe6+ Kh5 15 Qxg7+ Kh4 16 Qxh7, mate, or 13...f5 14 Qg3 (threatening 15 Nxe6+) and now: 14...Qxe5 15 Nh7+ Kg8 16 Qf4, mate; 14...Qf5 15 Nh7+ Kg8 16 Qxe6+ Kh7 17 Qxh7, mate; or 14...Qe5 15 f4 (White’s threat is 16 Qxe6+ Kg8 17 Qxh7, mate; if 15 Nh7 was 1-0, 20) Rh8 16 Nxe6 Bxe6 17 Qg5, mate.

562. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg6 14 Qg4 f5 15 exf6 Kxf6 16 Nhx7+ Kf7 17 Nxf8 Qxf8. What is the material balance?

1 For 13...Kg8, see exercise 540; 13...Kh6 loses to 14 Qg4, threatening 15 Qh4+ Kg7 16 Qxh7+ Kxg5 17 f4 Kg4 18 Qh3, mate, and if 14...Nd5 then 15 Nh3 threatens 16 Qh3+ Kg6 17 Qh7, mate.  2 14 Qc2+ Ng7 wins to 15 Qh7, with the threat of 16 f4 Kg4 17 Qh3, mate, but better is 14...f5 15 exf6+ Kxf5 16 fxe7 Nxe7, when Black is up a piece for a pawn.

563. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg6 14 Qd3+ f5 15 exf6+ Kf5 16 Nhx7+ Kf7 17 Nxf8 Kxf8. What is the material balance?

1 For 13...Kg8, see exercise 549.  2 White has problems after 14 Qg3 f5, when 15 Qh3 drops the e-pawn and after 15 Qd2 Nxe5 16 Qxe5 f6 17 Qd2 fxg5 White is down a piece.  3 White’s threat is broken after 15 Qg3 f4 16 Bxh4 Nf5, e.g., 17 Qg4 Nxe5 18 Bxe5 Qxg5, when White is down a piece for a pawn.

564. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxh7+ Kxh7 16 Ng5+ Kg6 17 Qg4 f5 18 Qd7+ Kg7 19 Nxe6+ Kf7 20 Nxf8 Rxf8. How can White make a threat that wins Black’s Queen?

1 For 15...Kh6, see exercise 534.  2 17...Kh6 can be met by either 18 Nce4, threatening 19 Qh3/Qh4+ Kg7 20 Qh7, mate (1-0, 19) or 18 Qh4+ Kg6 19 Qh7+ Kxg5 20 h4+ Kg4 21 Nh3+ Qe8, mate.  3 Bad is 18 exf6 Nxf6 19 Qg3 Nf5, e.g., 20 Nxe6+ Nxe6 21 Nxd8 Nxf1 22 Nb7 Ne4, when White is down a Rook for two pawns.  4 18...Qh6 19 Nxe6+ doesn’t change much.  5 The idea of 19 Rf1 with Nxe6, Nhx7, and e6 doesn’t work because after 19...f4 20 Qg4 Nxc3 21 bxc3 Nd5 22 Nxe6+ Kf7, White can’t play 23 Nxf7 because his Ne6 is pinned.
565. Visualize the position after the moves 9 Bxh7+ Kxh7 10 Ng5+ Kg61 11 g4 Rh82 12 Qd3+ f5 13 Re13 Qd7 14 Re6+ Qxe6 15 Nxe6. What is the material balance?

1 For 10...Kg8, see exercise 551. 2 If f6 loses to 12 gxh5+, e.g., 12...Kh6 13 Ne6+, winning Black's Queen, or 12...Kf5 13 Qg4, mate, while after 11...Bxg4 12 Qxg4 White's threat is 13 Ne6+ Kf6 14 Bh5+. 3 White's threat is 14 Re6 is mate.

566. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Kg61 14 h4+ Nxe52 15 h5+ Kf5 16 g4+ Nxg4. How does White win here?

1 For 13...Kg8, see exercise 552. 2 14 Qg4 can be met by 14...Nxe5, attacking White's Queen and creating an escape square on f6, e.g., 15 dxe5 Qxe5+ 16 Kg1, when White's attack has been neutralized, or 15 Qg3 Nf5 16 Qxe5 Qxe5+ 17 dxe5, when material is even. 3 14...Bg7 loses to 15 h5+ Kh6 (15...Kf5 16 Qf3/g4 is mate) 16 Nxe6+, winning Black's Queen, while 14...Qb6 drops the Rf8 to 15 h5+ Kh6 (15...Kf5 16 Qf3/g4 is mate) 16 Nxe6+. 4 15...Kf6 drops the Queen to 16 Nxe6+ (1-0), while 15...Kf6 loses to 16 Nh7+ Kf5 17 g4+ Nxe4 18 Qc2, mate. 5 16...Kf6 17 Nh7 is mate.

567. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxh7+ Kxh7 16 Ng5+ Kg61 17 Qg42 f63 18 Qxg5+ Nxe54 19 cxd4 Qd75. How does White win here?

1 For 16...Kg8 and 16...Kh6, see exercise 546. 2 17 Qd3+ can be met by 17...Nf5 (17...f5 drops the e-pawn), e.g., 18 g4 Bh8 19 gxf5+ exf5, when material is even, or 18 Nxf5 exf5 19 Bxa7 Rxa7 20 Qg3 Qb6+ 21 Kh1 f6, when White has a Rook and two pawns for two pieces after 22 Ne6+ Kf7 23 Qxe6+ Kxe6 24 Qxf8 Qd8. 3 17...Nf5 drops the Queen to 18 Ngxe6+, 4 White's threat is Kg8, winning Black's Queen. 18 Qh4 can be met by 18...Nxd5 19 fxe5 Qxe5, creating an escape square on f6. 5 18...Qd8 drops the Rf8 to 19 Ngxe6+ Kf7 20 Qxg7 Ke8 21 Qxf8+, while 18...Qd7 loses to 19 Ngxe6+, e.g., 19...Kh5 20 Qg5, mate. 19...Kh6 20 Qxg5+ Kh7 21 Qg7, mate; or 19...Kh7 20 Qxg7+ Ke8 21 Qf8, mate. 6 19...Qc2 doesn't change anything, but 19...Qe3 drops the Queen to 20 Ne4+.

568. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxh7+ Kxh7 11 Ng5+ Kg61 12 Qg42 f53 13 exf6 Qd74 14 Nxe6+. How many legal moves does Black have and how does White mate in two after each one?

1 For 11...Kg8 and 11...Kh6, see exercise 273. 2 12 Qd3+ drops the Ng5. 3 12...Kh6 loses to 13 Re3, threatening 14 Rh3+ Kg6 15 Nxe6, mate, when 13...g6 loses to 14 Qh4+ Kg7 15 Qh7, mate (1-0). 4 White's main threat is 14 Nxe6, winning Black's Queen. 5 13...Kxf6 loses to 14 Rxg6, mate, while 13...Kh6 loses to 14 Qh4+ Kg6 15 Qh7+, e.g., a) 15...Kxf6 16 Rxg6+ Kxg5 17 Qxg7+ Kf5 18 Qf3 and now: 18...Kf5 19 Re5, mate, or 18...Kf3 19 Re3/Nd2, mate; b) 15...Kxg5 16 Qxg7+ Ng6 17 Re5+ and now: 17...Kf4 18 Qh6+ Kg4 19 f3, mate or 17...Kg4 18 Qxg6+ Kh4 19 Qg5/Rh5, mate.
569. Here White's Nd6 controls f7. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxh7+ Kxh7 16 Ng5+ Kg6 17 Qg4 f5 18 Qg3 Kh5 19 Nf6 Rxh7 20 Nxf7 Qh8. How does White win here?

1 For 15...Kh8, see exercise 550. 2 16...Kh6 drops the Queen to 17 Ngxf7+. For 16...Kg8, see exercise 550. 3 17 Qd3+ drops the Ng5. 4 White's threat is Nxe6+, winning Black's Queen and/or mating on g7. 5 18...Qb6 loses to 19 Nxe6+, e.g., 19...Kh5 20 Qg5, mate; or 18...Qb6 19 f4 doesn't change anything, e.g., 19...Qb6 20 Nxe6+, with the same variations as with 18...Qb6 19 Nxe6+. 6 Now White's threat is 20 Qg5, mate (1-0). 7 19...Ng6 loses to 20 Qg5+ Kh7 21 Qh3, mate.

570. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bxh7+ Kxh7 15 Ng5+ Kg6 16 Qg4 f5 17 Qg3 Qd7 18 Nxe6+ Kh5 19 Qxg7+ Kxe6. How does White mate in win here?

1 For 14...Kh8, see exercise 533. 2 For 15...Kg8, see exercise 533. 3 16 h4 gives White little after 16...Nf5 17 h5+ Kh6. 4 16...Qd7 loses to 17 Nxe6+ Kh6 with either 18 Qe5+ Kh7 19 Qg7, mate, or 18 Qxe7 Kh5 19 Qg5, mate. 5 This is even better than winning Black's Queen with 17 exf6 Rxh6 18 Nxe6+. 6 17...Qe8 loses to 18 Nxe6+ Kf7 19 Nbc7, threatening both 20 Nxe8 and 20 Qxg7, mate. 7 18...Kh6 loses to either 19 Qg5+ Kh7 20 Qxg7, mate, or 19 Qxe7+ Kh5 20 Qg5, mate. 8 19...Ke8 20 Qxf8 is mate.

571. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg6 13 Qd3+ Nf5 14 Qh3 Nxe5 15 Qh7+ Kf6 16 dxe5+ Kxe5 17 Bxf8. What is the material balance?

1 For 12...Kg8, see exercise 529. 2 Also good is 13 Qg4 f6 14 Nxe6+ Kf7 15 Qxf7+ Kxe6 16 exf6 Rxf6 17 Re1+ Kd7 18 Bc1, when White has three pawns for a piece and the attack. 3 Worse are 13...Kh5 14 Qh7+, e.g., 14...Kg4 15 Bc1+ Kf4 16 Qh3, mate, or 14...Kg5 15 Bc1+ Ke4 16 Qh3, mate; b) 13...Kxg5 14 Bc1+, e.g., 14...Kg4/Kh4 15 Qh3, mate or 14...Kh5 15 Qh7+ Kg4 16 Qh3, mate; or c) 13...f5 14 Qh3 Kxg5 15 Qh7, threatening 16 f4+ Kg4 17 Qh3, mate, e.g., 15...f4 16 h4+ Kg4 17 f3+ Kg3 18 Qxg7+ Kxf4 19 Qg4, mate, or 15...Ng5 16 h4+ Nxf4 17 f4+ Kg4 18 Qxg7+ Ng6 19 Qxg6+ Kh4 20 Qg5, mate. 4 14...Nfxd4 shows White's threat: 15 Qh7+ Kxg5 16 f4+ Kg4 17 Qh3, mate. 5 15...Kxg5 loses to 16 f4+ Kf6 17 Kxe5+ Kg5 18 Bc1+ Kg4 19 Qh3, mate.

572. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxh7+ Kxh7 11 Ng5+ Kg6 12 Ne2 Qb6 13 Nf4+ Kf5 14 Qd3+ Kxg5 15 Nxe6+ Kh5. How does White mate in two?

1 For 10...Kh8, see exercise 548. 2 For 11...Kg8, see exercise 548. 3 Occupying f5 with either 12...f5 or 12...Nf5 loses to 13 Nf4+, e.g., 13...Kxg5 14 Qh5, mate or 13...Kh6 14 Qh5, mate. 4 13...Kxg5 14 Qh5 is mate. 5 14...Kg4 loses to 15 Qh3+ Kxg5 16 Qh5, mate. 6 15...Kg4 and 15...Kh4 lose to 16 Qh3, mate.
573. Visualize the position after the moves 7 Bxh7+ Kxh7 8 Ng5+ Kg6 9 h4 Bxc3+ 10 bxc3 Qe8 11 h5 Kh6 12 Nxe6+ Kh7 13 Nxc7 Qd8 14 Nxa8. What is the material balance?

1 For 8...Kg8, see exercise 536. 2 White's main threat is 10 h5+ when 10...Kf8 drops the Queen to 11 Nxe6+ and 10...Kf5 loses to 11 Qf3 or 11 g4, mate. 3 10...Rh8 drops the Queen 11 h5+ Kf8 12 Nxe6+. 4 11...Kf5 12 g4/Qf3 is mate. 5 11 Qg4 threatens 13 Nxe6, but can be met by 11...Rg8. 6 After 12...g5 13 Bxg5+ Kh7 14 Nxc7 Qd8 15 Nxa8, White is up a Rook and four pawns for piece.

574. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxh7+ Kxh7 11 Ng5+ Kg6 12 Qd3+ f5 13 Qg3 f4 14 Bxf4 Qa5 15 Nxe6+ Kf5 16 Nxc7 Qd8 17 Bd4. How does White win here?

1 For 11...Kg8, see exercise 555. 2 12 Qd4 gives little, e.g., 12...f6 (12...f5 13 Qh4 threatens 14 Qh7, mate) 13 Nxe6+ Kf7, e.g., 14 Nxc7 Bxg4 15 Nxa8 Rxh8 16 exf6 Kxf6 17 dxc5 or 14 Qxg2+ Kxe6 15 Qxf8 fxe5, with a Rook and two or three pawns for two pieces. 3 12...Nf5 loses to 13 Qh3, e.g., 13...Nxe5 14 dxe5 Qxe5 15 Qh7+ Kf6 16 Nf3 Qc7 17 Bg5, mate. 4 This threatens 14 Nxe6+, but 13 Qh3 is also good, e.g., 13...Nxe5 14 dxe5 Qxe5 15 Qh7+ Kf6 16 Qh6 Ng6 17 Nh7+ Kg7 18 Qxh8 Rxh8 19 Qxg6, with a Rook for a pawn. 5 13...Qa5 loses to 14 Qd4, e.g., 14...f4 15 g4 with 16 Qh5, mate. 6 14...Nf5 15 Qh3 Nh6 16 g4 with Qh5 is mate. 7 15...Kf7 16 Qxg7+ Kxe6 17 Qxf8 gives White a Rook and four pawns for two pieces.

575. White's Queen is under attack, but White's Rook is ready to join in the attack. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxc3 Rxc3 17 Bxh7+ Kxh7 18 Ng5+ Kg6 19 Rh4 f6 20 Qh5+ Kf5 21 Nh7+ g5 22 Rd4+ Rxf7 23 f4 Bxc2. How does White win here?

1 17...Kh8 concedes the pawn and more after 18 Rh4. 2 For 18...Kg8, see exercise 530. 3 White's threat is 20 Qh5 f5 21 Nh7+ g5 22 Qxg5, mate. 19 Qg4 (1-0) is not as clear after 19...f6 20 Nxe6+ Kf7, etc. 4 19...f5 20 Qh5 is mate. 5 This defends White's e-pawn. 6 White's threat is 23 g4, mate. 7 White had to defend his e-pawn.

576. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg6 13 Qg4 f5 14 Qg3 f4 15 Bxf4 Nf5 16 Nxe6+ Nxe3 17 Nxc7 Nh5 18 Nxa8 Nxf4 19 Ne7. What is the material balance?

1 For 12...Kg8 -- see exercise 541. 2 Best. 14...Qb6 15 Rab1 just helps White, while 14...Qc8 15 Nxe6+ Kf7 16 Ng5+ Kg8 (16...Kg8 17 e6 traps Black's Bd7) 17 Qb4 Rd8 (17...Re8 18 e6 traps Black's Bd7) 18 e6 Be8 19 Qh7+ Kf8 20 Qh8+ Ng8 21 Bf4 (White's threat is 22 Nh7+ Ke7 23 Qxg7+ Bh7 24 Qxh7, mate) Bg6 22 e7+ Nxe7 23 Rxe7 Kxe7 24 Qxg7+ Ke8 25 Re1+, mating. 3 15 Qg4 cxd4 16 Nxe6+ gives White nothing since his Ne6 is pinned, e.g., 16...Kf7 17 Nxc7 Bxg4 18 Nxa8 Ra8, when White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces. 4 16 Qg4 Nh6 17 Qg3 Nxf5 repeats the position. 5 17 Rac8 18 Bxg3 Rxc7 drops a piece to 19 e6.
577. How does White win after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg6 13 Qg4 f5 14 Qg3 Qd7 15 Nxc7 16 Qh4+ Nxe5 17 fxe5 f4 18 g4 fxg3?

1 For 12...Kg8, see exercise 539. 2 13 Qd3+ f5 14 Qg3 transposes, while 14 exf6 Kxf6 15 Nh7+ Kf7 16 Nfx8 Kxf8 17 Nxd4 gives Black two pieces for a Rook and pawn and after 13 h4 f5 14 h5+ Kh6, Black's King is secure on h6. 3 Now that Black's Queen is off of the 1st rank, White can create threats along the h-file, since Black can no longer play ...Rh8. 4 15 Qh4 can be met by 15...Nxe5, creating an escape square on f6 and attacking White's Nb5. 5 15...Qxc7 drops the Queen to 16 Nxe6+, while 15...Rh8 loses to 16 Ngxe6+, e.g., 16...Kf7 17 Qxg7, mate. 6 White's threat is 17 Qh7, mate. 7 Black hopes to escape to f5. 8 Now the threat is 19 Qh5, mate. After 18 Qh7+, White's Ng5 is no longer defended.

578. Visualize the position after the moves 9 Bxh7+ Kxh7 10 Ng5+ Kd6 11 h4 Qe8 12 h5+ Kd6 13 Qg4 Ng5 14 Ne4+ Kh7 15 h6 Rh8 16 hxg7+ Nh6. How does White win here?

1 For 10...Kg8, see exercise 553. 2 White's threat is 12 h5+, e.g., 12...Kb6 13 Nf3, winning Black's Queen, or 12...Kf5 13 Qf4, mate. 3 11...Qa5 is also possible, but 11...Qd7 loses to 12 h5+ Kh6 13 Nxe6+ and now: 13...g5 14 hxg6+ Kxg6 15 Qg4/Qh5, mate, or 13...Kh7 14 Nxf8+ Kg8 15 Nxd7, when White has won both a Rook and a Queen. 4 12...Kf5 13 g4 is mate. 5 This puts pressure on the g-file and threatens 14 Nxe6+ Kh7 15 Qxg7, mate. 6 Black defends g7. 7 White's threat is 15 hxg7+ Kg8 16 Nh6, mate. 16...g6 loses to 16 Nh5+, winning Black's Queen. 8 16...Kg8 17 Rxh8 is mate.

579. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg6 13 Qg4 f5 14 Qh4 Nh5 15 exf6 Kxf6 16 Re1 Ng6 17 Nxe6+ Nxe4 18 Nxc7 Rh8 19 Nxd5+. What is the material balance?

1 For 12...Kg8, see exercise 531. 2 Best. After 13 Qd3+ f5 14 Qg3 f4, White is down a pawn after 15 Qh4 Nxe5 16 dxe5 Qxe5, while 15 Qe4 Qc6 16 Nxe6+ Kf7 17 Nx8 Nxf8 18 Qxf4+ nets White a Rook and three pawns for two pieces. 3 13...Nf5 drops the Queen to 14 Nxe6+. 4 14 Qg3 f4 15 Qg4 transposes to footnote 2 (13 Qd3+ f5 14 Qg3 f5 15 Qg4). 5 14...Nxe5 15 Bf4 Nf7 16 dxe5 Nxe5 17 Rae1 Ba6 18 Rxe5 (1-0), when 18...Bxf1 loses to 19 Rx6+ Kf6 20 Qh7, mate and after 18...Qd7 19 Qh7+ Kf6 White wins with 20 Nxe6 (keeping the pressure on f5, but 20 Rxe6+ is also good) Bxf1 21 Qxf5+ Ke7 22 Nfx8+ Kd6 23 Qxd7, mate. 6 White's threat is 17 Nxe6+, winning Black's Qc7.

580. White is missing his pawn on e5. Visualize the position after the moves 9 Bxh7+ Kxh7 10 Ng5+ Kg6 11 Qg4 f5 12 Qg3 f4 13 Bxf4 Ng5 14 Qd3+ e5 15 Bxd2 exd4 16 g4 dxc3 17 gxf5. What is the material balance?

1 For 10...Kg8, see exercise 537. 2 11...e5 loses to 12 Ne6+, e.g., 12...Kh7 13 Qxg7, mate, or 12...Kf6 13 Bg5+ Kg6 14 Bf4+ Kf6 15 Bxe5, mate. 4 The only move, but it's good enough. Worse are 12...Qe8 13 Nxe6+ Kf7 14 Nc7 Qd8 15 Nxa8 Na6 16 Bf4, when the Na8 escapes, and 12...Qd5 13 Nxe6+ Kf7/Kf6 14 Qxg7+ and now: a) 14...Ke8 15 Qxf8+ Kd7 16 Ne5+ with either 16...Kd6 17 Bf4+, winning Black's Queen, or 14...Kxe6 15 Re1+ Qe4 (15...Kd6 16 Qxc7 is mate) 16 Rxe4+ fx4 17 Qxf8, with a Queen and three pawns for two pieces. 5 14 Qg4 Nh6 15 Qc3 Nf5 repeats the position. 6 Here is where the absence of White's Pe5 comes into play. 7 16 exd4 Qxd4 kills White's attack.
581. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg6 13 Qg4 f5 14 exf6 e5 15 Ne6+ Kxf6 16 Bxe5+ Kxe5 17 Rfe1+ Kd6 18 Qg3+ Ke6 19 Qc3+. How does White win after each of Black's legal moves?

1 For 12...Kg8 and 12...Kh6, see exercise 542. 2 After 13 Qd3+ can be met by 13...Nf5 14 g4 Qxg5, when White's g-pawn is pinned. 3 13...Qc8 loses to 14 Nx e6+, e.g., 14...Kh7 15 Qxg7, mate or 15 Qxg7+ Kh5 16 Qe5, mate. 4 14 Qg4 f4 15 Qg3 Qc8 16 Nxe6+ Kf7 gives White nothing. 5 14...Nf5 drops the Queen to 15 Nxe6+. 6 16 Nxd8 Bxg4 just trades Queen, leaving White down a piece. 7 16...Kf7 loses to 17 Nxd8+.

582. What is the material balance after 8 Bxh7+ Kxh7 9 Ng5+ Kg6 10 Qg4 f5 11 Bf4 Na6 12 Re1+ Kf7 13 Ne6 Qb5 14 Ng6 15 Qh5 16 g6 17 Qh7 18 Nf3 Rh8 19 Bg5 Ke4 20 Qxg6+.

1 For 9...Kg8, see exercise 556. 2 10 Qd3+ f5 11 Ng3 transposes, while 11 exf6+ Kxf6 12 Nh7+ Kf7 13 Nxf8 Kxf8 settles for a Rook and pawn for two pieces. 3 11 exf6 Kxf6 12 Nh7+ Kf7 13 Nxf8 Qxf8 gives White a Rook and pawn for two pieces (0-1, 23). 4 11...Qd7 loses to 12 Qh4 (threatening 13 Qh7, mate), e.g., 12...f4 13 g4, threatening 14 Qh5, mate; 11...f4 12 Bxf4 Nf5 can be met by 13 Qd3, threatening to win Black's Nf6 with 14 g4. 5 Black's King can't move, so White prepares the sequence 14 Nxe6+ Kf7 15 Ng7 with 16 e6+. 6 Other moves allow mate in one. 7 16...Kf6 loses to 17 Qg5/Be5, mate, while 16...Kg8 loses to 17 Qg7+ with Qg7, mating.

583. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg6 13 Qg4 f5 14 exf6 e5 15 Ne6+ Kxf6 16 Qh5 17 Qf3 Rh8 19 Bg5 Ke4 20 Qxg6+.

1 For 12...Kg8, see exercise 532. 2 White's threat is 14 Nxe6+ Kh6 15 Qxg7+ Kh5 16 Qg5, mate. 3 13...Nf6 14 exf6 wins, e.g., 14...Kxf6 15 Nh7, mate, or 14...gx6 15 Nxe6+ Kh6 16 Nf3+ Kh7 17 Qg7, mate. 4 14...Qe8 loses to 15 Nxe6+ Kf7 (otherwise 16 Qxg7+ 16 Nxf7 Qd8 17 e6+, e.g., 17...Ke8 18 Ne8+, with Qg7, mate or 17...Kf6 18 Ne4+ dxe4 19 Qg5, mate. 5 15 Qg4 is also possible, e.g., 15...Qe8 when 16 Ndf3 Nf5 17 Bxh4, gives White two pawns for the piece and 16 Nxe6+ Kf7 17 Nf3 Ng6 18 Ng5+ Ke7 19 b3 threatens 20 b5+. 6 White threatens 17 Nf3+ Kg4 18 Qh3, mate. 7 16...g6 loses to 17 Nf3+ Kf5 18 Qh3+ Ke4 19 Ng5/Nd2, mate. 8 White's threat is still on. 17...g6 loses to 18 Qh3 with 19 Nf3, mate. 9 18...Kg4 19 Qh3 is mate.

584. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kg6 13 Qg4 f5 14 exf6 Kxf6 15 Rf1 Qc8 16 Qh5 g6 17 Qh7 Nb6 18 Nf3 Rh8 19 Bg5+ Kf5. How does White win here?

1 For 12...Kg8, see exercise 538. 2 13 Qd3+ f5 14 Qg3 f4 15 Bxf4 Nf5 drives White's Queen off the g-file, since 16 Qg4 can be met by 16...Nh6 17 Qg5 Ng5, repeating the position. 3 14 Qg4 transposes to 13 Qd3+ f5 14 Qg3. 4 14...e5 discovers an attack on White's Queen, but loses to 15 Ne6+ Kxf6 16 dxe6+ Kxe6 (16...Kf7 drops the Queen to 17 Nx6+ 17 Bf4+ (17 Re1+ was 1-0, 33), with mate to follow, e.g., 17...Kc4 18 Nc5, mate; 17...Kf6 18 Qg5+ Kxe6 19 Re1+ Kf5 20 Qe5, mate; or 17...Rxf4 18 Qxf4+ Kxe6 19 Re1, mate. 5 White's threat is 16 Rxe6+ Bxh6 17 Qxe6, mate. 6 Now White's threat is 17 Nh7, mate. 7 Now the threat is 18 Nf3 with 19 Bg5+, e.g., 18 Nf3 Rh8 19 Bg5+ Kf5 20 Re5+ Kg4 21 h3, mate.
CHESS VISUALIZATION COURSE
CHAPTER 20. THE SEQUENCE 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+ (BLACK Be7)

This chapter contains exercises involving the sequence 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+ when Black has a Bishop on e7. White has sacrificed a Bishop for a pawn, but has a strong attack against Black's exposed King on h7.

In Diagram 1, after the moves 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+ (see Diagram 2), Black has five legal moves, but three of them lose immediately -- 2...Kh6 drops the Queen to 3 Nxe6 or Nxf7+; 2...Kh8 loses to 3 Qh5+ Kg8 4 Qh7, mate; and 2...Kg6 3 h5+ Kf5 4 g4 is mate. Thus Black has two main choices in Diagram 2, 2...Kg8 and 2...Bxg5.

In Diagram 2, after 2...Kg8 3 Qh5 (see Diagram 3), White threatens 4 Qh7, mate, when 3...Re8 loses to 4 Qh7+ Kf8 5 Qh8, mate, and 3...Bxg5 4 hxg5 threatens both 5 Qh7 and 5 Qh8, mate. If Black creates an escape square on f7 with either 4...f6 or 4...f5, but then 5 g6 closes off that escape square, when Black can no longer prevent 6 Qh8, mate.

In Diagram 2, after 2...Bxg5 3 hxg5+ (see Diagram 4), 3...Kg6 loses to 4 Qh5+ Kf5 5 g4, mate, while 3...Kg8 4 Qh5 threatens both 5 Qh7 and 5 Qh8, mate, and if Black creates an escape square on f7 with either 4...f6 or 4...f5, then 5 g6 closes off that escape square, when Black can no longer prevent 6 Qh8, mate.

Note that after 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+ (see Diagram 2), the moves 2...Kg8 and 2...Bxg5 will transpose after the following sequences:

2...Kg8 3 Qh5 Bxg5 4 hxg5;
2...Bxg5 3 hxg5+ Kg8 4 Qh5.

In both cases White threatens Qh7/Qh8, mate, when 4...f5/f6 loses to 5 g6 with 6 Qh8, mate.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. Black Plays ...Bxg5 and ...Kg8
2. Black Plays ...Kg8 (without ...Bxg5)
3. Black Plays ...Bxg5 and ...Kg6
4. Black Plays ...Kg6 (without ...Bxg5)
5. Black Plays ...Kh6
6. Miscellaneous
7. Black Refuses to Take White’s Bh7

These themes are illustrated using forty preparatory positions, which are followed by sixteen visualization exercises ranging in depth from seven to twenty-one ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply:</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17+</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Black Plays ...Bxg5 and ...Kg8

1216 [VX-587]. After 11...Bxg5 12 hxg5+ Kg8 13 Qh5, White threatens both 19 Qh7 and Qh8, mate, when 13...f5 loses to 14 g6, e.g., 14...Re8 15 Qh8, mate.

1217 [VX-590]. After 15...Bxg5 16 hxg5+ Kg8, White wins with 17 Qh5 f6 18 g6, when Black can’t stop 19 Qh8, mate.

1218 [VX-597]. After 17...Bxg5 18 hxg5+ Kg8 White wins with 19 Qh5 f5 20 g6 (1-0), when Black can’t stop 21 Qh8, mate.

1219 [VX-593]. After 8...Bxg5 9 hxg5+ Kg8 White wins with 10 Qh5, e.g., 10...f5 11 g6 Re8 12 Qh8, mate.

1220 [VX-595]. After 16...Bxg5 17 hxg5+ Kg8 White wins with 18 Qh5, e.g., 17...f5 18 g6, when Black can’t stop 19 Qh8, mate

1221 [VX-591]. After 15...Bxg5 16 hxg5+ Kg8 White wins with 17 Qh5, e.g., 17...f5 18 g6 with 19 Qh8, mate.

1222 [VX-600]. After 12...Bxg5 13 hxg5+ Kg8 White wins with 14 Qh5, e.g., 14...f5 15 Qh8+ Kf7 16 g6+ Ke7 17 Qxg7, mate, or 14...Kf8 15 Qh8+ Ke7 16 Ng6+ fxg6 17 Qxg7, mate.

1223 [VX-594]. After 17...Bxg5 18 hxg5+ Kg8 White wins with 19 Qh5, e.g., 19...Ne7 20 g6 Nxe6 21 Qxg6, when material is even, but White threatens 22 Bg5 with Rf1 and Qh7. See “Miscellaneous” for the continuation.
2. Black Plays ...Kg8 (without ...Bxg5)

1224 [VX-588]. White wins with 12 Qh5, e.g., 12...Re8 13 Qh7+ Kf8 14 Qh8, mate, or 12...Bxg5 13 hxg5 f5 14 g6, when Black can’t stop 15 Qh8, mate.

1225 [VX-593]. White wins with 9 Qh5, e.g., 9...Re8 10 Qh7+ Kf8 11 Qh8, mate, or 9...Bxg5 10 hxg5 f5 11 g6 when Black can’t stop 12 Qh8, mate.

1227 [VX-591]. White wins with 16 Qh5, e.g., 16...Re8 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Qh8, mate, or 16...Bxg5 17 hxg5 Ne7 (17...f6 18 Qh7 is mate) 18 Qh8, when Black can’t stop 19 Qh8, mate.

1228 [VX-596]. After 17 Qh5 cxd2+ 18 Bxd2 Nf6 (18...Bxg5 19 hxg5 f5 20 g6 wins) 19 exf6 White wins with either 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Qh8/Qxg7/fxg7 mate, or 20 Qxf7+ Kh8 21 Qxg7/fxg7, mate.

1229 [VX-590]. After 16 Qh5 Nf6 (16...Bxg5 loses to 17 hxg5+, e.g., 17...Kg8 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Qh8/Qxg7/fxg7, mate, or 18 Qxf7+ Kh8 19 Qxg7/fxg7, mate.

1231 [VX-600]. Here Black has managed to play ...Nf8, preventing Qh7, mate, but White wins with 14 Qxh6+ Kh8 15 Nxe6+ Nxe6 16 Qxb6 threatening 17 Qxh6, mate, when 16...Kg8 loses to 17 Qxh6+ Kh8 18 Qh8, mate and 16...Bxg5 loses to 17 hxg5+, e.g., 17...Kg8 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Qh8+ Kf7 (19...Ke7 20 Qxg7 is mate) 20 g6+ Kxg6 (20...Ke7 21 Qxg7 is mate) 21 Qh5, mate.

1232 [VX-598]. 14 Qh5 can be met by 14...g6, e.g., 15 Qxg6+ Rh7, when a) 16 Qxh6+ Kg7 17 Nh6+ Kh7 18 Nxd8 Nxe5 19 Nxe5 Bxb7 gives White a Rook and two pawns for two pieces and b) 16 Qxe6+ Kf8 17 Qxd5 Ne5 18 Qxg8+ Bxd8 19 Nfd3 gives White four pawns for a piece, but better is 14 Nxe6 Qe8 15 Nxc7 Qd8 16 Nxa8, when White is up the exchange and three pawns and threatens 17 e6.
3. Black Plays ...Bxg5 and ...Kg6

1233 [VX-586]. After 11...Bxg5 12 hxg5+ Kg6 White wins with 13 Qh5+ Kf5 14 g4, mate.

1234 [VX-599]. After 17...Bxg5 18 hxg5+ Kg6 White wins with 19 Qh5+ Kf5 20 g4, mate.

1235 [VX-595]. After 16...Bxg5 17 hxg5+ Kg6 White wins with 18 Qh5+ Kf5 19 g6+ Kxf4 20 g3, mate.

1236 [VX-598]. After 13...Bxg5 14 hxg5+ Kg6 White wins with 15 Qh5+ Kf5 16 Qxg7+ Kd6 17 Rh8, etc.

1237 [VX-597]. After 17...Bxg5 18 hxg5+ Kg6 White wins with either 19 Qh5+ Kf5 20 g4+ Ke4 21 Qh3 with 22 Qe3, mate, or 19 f5+ Kxf5 (19...exf5 20 Qh3 is mate) 20 Qd3+ Kg4 21 Rh4, mate.

1238 [VX-593]. After 8...Bxg5 9 hxg5+ Kg6 10 Qh5+ Kf5 White wins with either 11 Qh7+ g6 12 Qh3+ Ke4 13 Qd3, mate, or 11 Qh3+ Ke4 11...Kg6 12 Qh7, mate. Note that White's Knight is not on c3, so 11 g4+ is not mate and only blocks White's Queen.

4. Black Plays ...Kg6 (without ...Bxg5)

1239 [VX-591]. 16 Qh5 is mate.

1240 [VX-599]. White mates in two with 18 h5+, e.g., 18...Kh6 19 Ng4, mate, or 18...Kf5 19 g4/Qg4/Qg3/Qc2, mate.

1241 [VX-585]. White wins with 12 h5+, when 12...Kh6 drops the Queen to 13 Nxf7+ or 13 Nxe6+ and 12...Kf5 loses to 13 g4, mate.
**PREPARATORY POSITIONS**

**CHAPTER 20. THE SEQUENCE 1 Bxh7+ Kxh7 2 Ng5+ (Black Be7) || 345**

1242 [VX-589]. White wins with 16 h5+, when 16...Kh6 drops the Queen to 17 Nxf7+ or 17 Nxe6+ and 16...Kf5 loses to 17 g4, mate.

1243 [VX-593]. White wins with 9 h5+, when 9...Kh6 drops the Queen to 10 Nxf7+ or 10 Nxe6+ and 9...Kf5 loses to 10 g4, mate.

1244 [VX-594]. White wins with 18 h5+, when 18...Kh6 drops the Queen to 19 Nxf7+ or 19 Nxe6+ and 18...Kf5 loses to 19 g4, mate.

1245 [VX-595]. White's Nd2 is under attack, so Black can avoid mate by giving up his Queen with 17 h5+ Kh6 18 Nxe6+ Kh7 19 Nxd8 cxd2+ 20 Qxd2 Rxd8, when Black has three pieces for a Queen and two pawns.

1246 [VX-592]. Here the c1-h6 diagonal is blocked, but White wins with 18 h5+ Kh6 (18...Kf5 19 g4 is mate) 19 Qd3 (threatening 20 Qh7, mate) f5 (19...Rh8 20 Nxf7 is mate) 20 exf6, when Black can't stop both 21 Qg6 and 21 Qh7, mate.

5. Black Plays ...Kh6

1247 [VX-591]. 16 Qh5 is mate.

1248 [VX-599]. 19 Ng4 is mate.

1249 [VX-597]. White wins with 19 Ne4+, e.g., 19...g5 20 hxg5+ Kg7 21 f6+ with 22 Qh5 or 19...Kh7 20 Qh5+ Kg8 21 Ng5 and now: 21...Rd8 22 Qh7+ Kf8 23 Qh8, mate, or 21...Bxg5 22 hxg5 f6 23 g6, when Black can't stop 24 Qh8, mate.
1250 [VX-599]. White wins with 20 g4, e.g., 20...Rf7 21 Qh8, mate; 20...Rf8 21 g6, with 22 Qh8, mate; or 20...Rxg2 21 Qh8+ Ke7 22 g6+ Ke6 23 Qxg7+ Ke5 24 Rh8+ Rf8 25 Rxf8, mate.

1251 [VX-594]. Material is even, but White threatens 22 Bg5 with Rf1 and Qh7, e.g., 21...Qe8 22 Qh7+ Kf7 23 Bg5 (White’s threat is 24 Rf1, mate) Qb5 24 Rf1+ Ke8 25 Rxf8+ Kxf8 26 Qh8+ Kf7 27 Rh7 mating, e.g., 27...Kg6 28 Rxg7+ Kf5 29 Qh8, mate.

1252 [VX-599]. Here the f-file is closed, but White wins with 22 Qh7+ Kf7 23 Bg5 (White’s threat is 24 Ng4 Qd7 25 0-0+ Ke8 26 Rxf8+ Kxf8 27 Rf1+ Ke8+ 28 Qh8, mate) and now: 23...Rg8 24 Ng4 (White’s main threat is 25 0-0, mate) Nd7 25 Nh6+ Kf8 26 Qxg8, mate, or 23...Qb5 24 Ne4 dxe4 25 0-0+ Ke8 26 Qh7, threatening both 27 Rxf8 and 27 Qe7, mate.

7. Black Refuses to Take White’s Bh7

1253 [VX-600]. White wins with 12 Qd2, preparing to play 13 Nxe6 fxe6 14 Qxf4+, e.g., 12...cxd4 13 Nxe6+ fxe6 14 Qf4+ Nf6 15 cxd4, when White has the advantage.

1254 [VX-591]. Black is defending, e.g., 15 Bd3 Nb4 16 cxb4 Qc3+ 17 Bd2 Qxd3, or 15 Ng5 g6 16 Qxb3 (16 Qg4 Nxe5 threatens both 17...Nxd4 and 17...Qxc3+) Kg7, when Black threatens 17...Bxg5 18 hxg5 Rh8.

1255 [VX-595]. Black has just played 15...Kh8. 16 bxc3 g6 can be met by 17 Ng5 Ng7 18 Qg4, when 18...Nf5 19 Bxg6 fxg6 20 Nxe6 Qd7 21 Nxf8 Rx8 gives White a Rook and three pawns for two pieces and 18...Nh5 19 Nxf7+ Rxf7 20 Bxg6 gives White three pawns for the piece.
585. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxh7+ Kxh7 11 Ng5+ Kg6\(^1\) 12 h5+ Kf5\(^2\). How does White mate in one?

\(^1\) 11...Kh6 drops the Queen to 12 Nxf7+ or 12 Nxe6+. 11...Kg8 is covered in exercise 588, while 11...Bxg5 is covered in exercises 586 and 587. \(^2\) 12...Kh6 drops the Queen to 13 Nxf7+/Nxe6+.

586. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxh7+ Kxh7 11 Ng5+ Bxg5\(^1\) 12 hxg5+ Kg6\(^2\) 13 Qh5+ Kf5. How does White mate in one?

\(^1\) 11...Kh6 drops the Queen to 12 Nxf7+ or 12 Nxe6+; 11...Kg6 and 11...Kg8 are covered in exercises 585 and 588, respectively. \(^2\) 12...Kg6 drops the Queen to 13 Nxf7+/Nxe6+.

587. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxh7+ Kxh7 11 Ng5+ Bxg5\(^1\) 12 hxg5+ Kg8\(^2\) 13 Qh5 f5. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 11...Kg6 loses to 12 h5+ Kf5 13 g4, mate (see exercises 585), while 11...Kg8 12 Qh5 Bxg5 13 hxg5 f5 loses to 14 g6, when Black has no defense against 15 Qh8, mate (see exercise 588). \(^2\) 12...Kg6 loses to 13 Qh5+ Kf5 14 g4, mate (see exercise 586).

588. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxh7+ Kxh7 11 Ng5+ Kg8\(^1\) 12 Qh5 Bxg5\(^2\) 13 hxg5 f5\(^3\) 14 g6 Re8. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 11...Kh6 drops the Queen to 12 Nxf7+ or 12 Nxe6+; 11...Kg6 loses to 12 h5+ Kf5 13 g4, mate (see exercise 585); 11...Bxg5 loses to 12 hxg5+, e.g., 12...Kg6 13 Qh5+ Kf5 14 g4, mate (see exercise 586) or 12...Kg8 13 Qh5 f5 14 g6, with mate to follow (see exercise 587). \(^2\) 12...Re8 loses to 13 Qh7+ Kf8 14 Qh8, mate. \(^3\) 13...Re8 14 Qh8 is mate.
589. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bxh7+ Kxh7 15 Ng5+ Bxg5\textsuperscript{1} 16 hxg5+ Kg8 17 Qh5 f6. How does White win here?

\textsuperscript{1} 15...Kg6 loses to 16 h5+, when 16...Kh6 drops the Queen to 17 Nxe6+ or 17 Nxf7+ and 16...Kf5 17 g4 is mate; 15...Kg8 16 Qh5 Nf6 is covered in exercise 590.

590. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bxh7+ Kxh7 15 Ng5+ Kg8\textsuperscript{1} 16 Qh5 f6\textsuperscript{2} 17 exf6 Re8. How does White mate in two?

\textsuperscript{1} For 15...Bxg5, see exercise 589. 15...Kg6 loses to 16 h5+, when 16...Kh6 drops the Queen to 17 Nxe6+ or 17 Nxf7+ and 16...Kf5 17 g4 is mate. \textsuperscript{2} 16...Bxg5 17 hxg5 f5 loses to 18 g6.

591. White is down a pawn and his c-pawn is weak. The c1-h6 diagonal is blocked, but White's Ng3 controls f5 and h5. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bxh7+ Kxh7\textsuperscript{1} 15 Ng5+ Kg8\textsuperscript{2} 16 Qh5 Bxg5\textsuperscript{3} 17 hxg5 f5. How does White mate in two?

\textsuperscript{1} This loses by force. Better is 14...Kh8, e.g., 15 Bd3 Nb4 16 cxb4 Qc3+ 17 Bd2 Qxd3, when Black wins either White's Ra1 or Bd3, or 15 Ng5 g6, and if 16 Qg4 then 16...Nxe5 (threatening both 17...Nxc4 and 17...Qxe3+) or if 16 Qxb3 then 16...Kg7, threatening 17...Bxg5 18 hxg5 Rh8. \textsuperscript{2} 15...Kg6/Kh6 loses to 16 Qh5, mate, while 15...Bxg5 16 hxg5+ Kg8 17 Qh5 f5 transposes to the main line. \textsuperscript{3} 16...Rd8 loses to 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Qh8, mate. \textsuperscript{4} 17...g6 18 Qh7 is mate.

592. Here the c1-h6 diagonal is blocked. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxh7+ Kxh7 17 Ng5+ Kg8\textsuperscript{1} 18 h5+ Kh6\textsuperscript{2} 19 Qd3 f5\textsuperscript{3} 20 exf6 Rxh6. How does White mate in one here?

\textsuperscript{1} 17...Kg8 loses to 18 Qh5, e.g., 18...Bxg5 19 hxg5 f5 20 g6, with mate on h7 or h8, while 17...Bxg5 loses to 18 hxg5+ Kg8 19 Qh5 f5 20 g6 (1-0), when Black can't avoid mate on h8. 17...Kg6 is covered in exercise 597. \textsuperscript{2} 18...Kh5 19 g4 is mate. \textsuperscript{3} White's threat is 20 Qh7, mate. \textsuperscript{4} 19...Rh8 loses to 20 Nxf7, mate. \textsuperscript{5} This opens up the b1-h7 diagonal and threatens mate in two different ways. Can you see what they are? The answer is in the answer key.
593. Here White’s Knight is on b1 instead of c3, leaving e4 open for Black King. Visualize the position after the moves 7 Bxh7+ Kxh7 8 Ng5+ Bxg5 9 hxg5+ Kf5 10 Qh5+ Ke4 11 Qh3+ Ke4. How does White mate in one after either 11...Ke4 or 11...Kg6?

1...Kh6 drops the Queen to 9 Nxf7+ or 9 Nxe6+, while 8...Kg8 loses to 9 Qh5. 8...Kg8 loses to 10 Qh5 f5 11 g6 Re8 12 Qh8, mate. Since White’s Knight is not on c3, 11 g4+ is not mate and only blocks White’s Queen. The actual game continued 11 Qh7+ g6 12 Qh3+ Ke4 13 Qd3, mate (1-0).

594. Here the square f7 is already open, which gives Black an extra tempo. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxh7+ Kxh7 17 Ng5+ Kg8 18 Qh5 Bxg5 19 hxg5 Ne7 20 g6 Nxf6 21 Qxg6. What is the material balance?

1...Kg6 loses to 18 h5+ Kf5 19 g4, mate, while 17...Bxg5 18 hxg5+ Kg8 19 Qh5 Ne7 transposes to the game. 2 White’s threat is 20 g6 and 21 Qh7/Qh8, mate. 3 The actual game continued 19...Rf5 20 g4 Ne7 (this prevents g6, but drops the Queen) 21 Qh8+ (1-0) Kf7 22 Qxf8.

595. White is down a pawn and his Nd2 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxh7+ Kxh7 16 Ng5+ Kg6 17 h5+ Kh6 18 Nxe6+ Kh7 19 Nxd8 cxd2+ 20 Qxd2 Rxd8. What is the material balance?

1 15...Kh8 16 bxc3 g6 17 Ng5 Ng7 18 Qg4, e.g., 18...Nh5 19 Nxf7+ Rxh7 20 Bxg6, when White has three pawns for the piece, or 18...Nf5 19 Bxg6 fxg6 20 Nxe6 Qd7 21 Nfx8 Rxh8, when White has a Rook and three pawns for two pieces. 2 Best. 16...Kg8 loses to 17 Qh5 (see exercise 596), while 16...Bxg5 loses to 17 hxg5+, when 17...Kg8 18 Qh5 threatens both 19 Qh7 and Qh8, mate and 17...Kg6 loses to 18 Qh5+ Kf5 19 g6+ Kxf4 20 g3, mate.

596. White is down a pawn and his Nd2 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxh7+ Kxh7 16 Ng5+ Kg6 17 Qh5 cxd2+ 18 Bxd2 Nf6 19 exf6 Re8. How does White mate in two?

1 15...Kh8 16 bxc3 g6 17 Ng5 and 18 Qg4, with 19 Nxf7+ Rxh7 20 Bxg6 gives White at least three pawns for the piece. 2 Better is 16...Kg6 (see exercise 595). 16...Bxg5 loses to 17 hxg5+, when 17...Kg8 18 Qh5 threatens both 19 Qh7 and Qh8, mate and 17...Kg6 loses to 18 Qh5+ Kf5 19 g6+ Kxf4 20 g3, mate. 3 18...Bxg5 19 hxg5 f5 20 g6 is our basic position.
597. Here the c1-h6 diagonal is blocked. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxh7+ Kxh7 17 Ng5+ Kh6 18 f5 Qc8 19 Ne4+ Kh7 20 Qh5+ Kg8 21 Ng5 Rd8. How does White mate in two?

1 17...Bxg5 loses to 18 hxg5+, e.g., 18...Kg8 19 Qh5 f5 20 g6 (1-0), when Black can't avoid mate on h8 or 18...Kg6 19 Qh5+ Ke6 20 g4+ Ke4 21 Kh3 with 22 Qe3, mate. For 17...Kg6 see exercise 592. 2 This opens up the c1-h6 diagonal and threatens 19 Nxf7/Nxe6+, winning Black's Queen. It also keeps Black's King out of g6. 3 18...Qb6 is similar. 4 19...g5 20 hxg5+ Kg7 loses to 21 f6+ with 22 Qh5.

598. Black's Rf7 and Pe6 are weak. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh7+ Kxh7 13 Ng5+ Bxg5 14 hxg5+ Kg8 2 15 Qh5 Kf8 16 g6 Rf5 17 Qh8+ Ke7 18 Qxg7+ Ke8 19 Rh8+ Nf8 20 g4 Rf4. How does White trap Black's Rf4? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 13...Kg8 14 Nxe6 Qe8 15 Nf7 Qd8 16 Nxa8 gives White a Rook and three pawns for a piece. 2 14...Kg6 loses to 15 Qh5+ Kf5 16 Qxg7+ Ke4 17 Qh8+, e.g., 16...Kxe5 17 Qxg7+ Kd6 18 Rh8, etc. 3 White is up the exchange after 16...Ke7 17 Qg7+ Kd6 and has an attack after 17...Qf8 18 Nf3 Qc7 19 Qg5+ Ke8 20 Rh7, winning the g-pawn. 4 Hint: Look for something other than a Knight move, which is needed to keep Black's Rook from going to f3.

599. Here the square f7 is already open, giving Black an extra tempo to defend. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxh7+ Kxh7 17 Ng5+ Bxg5 18 hxg5+ Kg8 19 Qh5 Ne7 20 g6 Nh6 21 Qxg6 Qe8 22 Qh7+ Kf8 23 Bg5 Rg8 24 Ng4 25 Nf6. How does White mate in two?

1 17...Bxg5 loses to 18 hxg5+, e.g., 18...Kf8 19 Qh5 f5 20 g6 (1-0), when Black can't avoid mate on h8 or 18...Kg6 19 Qh5+ Kg6 20 g4+ Kh6 21 Qe4 with 22 Qe3, mate. For 17...Kg6 see exercise 592. 2 This opens up the c1-h6 diagonal and threatens 19 Nxf7/Nxe6+, winning Black's Queen. It also keeps Black's King out of g6. 3 18...Qb6 is similar. 4 19...g5 20 hxg5+ Kg7 loses to 21 f6+ with 22 Qh5.

600. Here Black can keep White's Queen out of h7 with the move ...Nh8. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh7+ Kxh7 12 Ng5+ Kh8 13 Qh5 Nh8 14 Qxh8+ Kh7 15 Nh6+ Nxh6 16 Qxh6 Bxg5 17 hxg5+ Kg8 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Qh8+ Ke7 20 g6+. How does White win after either 20...Ke7 or 20...Kg8?

1 17...Kg8 loses to 18 h5+, e.g., 18...Kf8 19 Qg4, mate or 18...Kh6 19 Ng4, mate. 2 17...Kh6 19 Qh5+ Kg5 20 g4, mate. 3 17...Rf5 loses to 20 g4, e.g., 20...Rxh2 21 Qh8+ Kh7 22 g6+ Kh6 (22...Bxg6 23 Qh5, mate) 23 Qxh6+ Kh8 24 Rh8+ Rf8 25 Qxf8, mate. 4 20 Ng4 is also good. 5 White threatens both 22 Ng4, intending 23 Nh6+ Kh8 24 Nf7+ Kg8 25 Rh8, mate, and 22 Rh7 with either 22...Qd7 23 Qh5, threatening 24 Rh8, mate, or 22...Rf7 23 Qh5 Kf8 24 Rh8+ Ke7 25 Bg7+, winning Black's Queen. 6 23...Qb5 24 Ne4 dxe4 25 0-0-0 Ke8 26 Qxg7 threatens both 27 Rxf8 and 27 Qe7, mate. 7 Black resigned here. White's main threat is 25 0-0, mate.
SECTION 5. SACRIFICES ON THE DARK SQUARES (F6, G7, AND H6)

This section contains exercises in which White sacrifices a piece on one of the dark squares in front of Black's castled King -- f6, g7, or h6. The first three chapters involve a Rook sacrifice on g7; the next three chapters involve the sacrifice of a Bishop or Knight on h6; while the last two chapters involve a sacrifice on f6, as follows:

**CHAPTER 21. THE SEQUENCE 1 RXG7+ KXG7 2 QG5+**
**CHAPTER 22. THE SEQUENCE 1 RXG7+ KXG7 2 RG1+**
**CHAPTER 23. THE SEQUENCE 1 RXG7+ KXG7 2 MISCELLANEOUS**
**CHAPTER 24. THE SEQUENCE 1 BXH6 GXH6 2 QXH6**
**CHAPTER 25. THE SEQUENCE 1 BXH6 GXH6 2 QG6+ KH8 3 QXH6+**
**CHAPTER 26. WHITE PLAYS 1 NH6+**
**CHAPTER 27. WHITE PLAYS 1 NF6+**
**CHAPTER 28. WHITE PLAYS 1 RXN(F6)**

**CHAPTER 21, THE SEQUENCE 1 RXG7+ KXG7 2 QG5+,** contains exercises involving the sequence 1 Rxg7+ Kxg7 2 Qg5+ (or some other Queen move), when White has sacrificed a Rook for a pawn, but has obtained a dominant Queen and has weakened the squares around Black's King.

**CHAPTER 22, THE SEQUENCE 1 RXG7+ KXG7 2 RG1+,** contains exercises involving the sequence 1 Rxg7+ Kxg7 2 Rg1+ (or some other Rook check along the g-file), when White has sacrificed a Rook for a pawn, but has occupied the g-file with tempo and has weakened the squares around Black's King.

**CHAPTER 23, THE SEQUENCE 1 RXG7+ KXG7 2 MISCELLANEOUS,** contains exercises involving the sequence 1 Rxg7+ Kxg7 followed by a move other than an immediate check along the g-file, when White has sacrificed a Rook for a pawn, but has opened the g-file and has weakened the squares around Black's King.

**CHAPTER 24, THE SEQUENCE 1 BXH6 GXH6 2 QXH6,** contains exercises involving the sequence 1 Bxh6 gxh6 2 Qxh6, when White has sacrificed a piece for two pawns, but has opened up the g-file, weakened the squares around Black's King, and obtained a dominant Queen on h6.

**CHAPTER 25, THE SEQUENCE 1 BXH6 GXH6 2 QG6+ KH8 3 QXH6+,** contains exercises involving the sequence 1 Bxh6 gxh6 2 Qg6+ Kh8 3 Qxh6+, when White has sacrificed a piece for two pawns, but has opened up the g-file, weakened the squares around Black's King, and obtained a dominant Queen on h6.

**CHAPTER 26, WHITE PLAYS 1 NH6+,** contains exercises in which White plays the move 1 Nh6+, when capturing the Knight with 1...gxh6 opens up the g-file and weakens the squares around Black's King, while playing 1...Kh8 allows 2 Nxf7+, often forking Black's Kh8 and Qd8.

**CHAPTER 27, WHITE PLAYS 1 NF6+,** contains exercises in which White plays the move 1 Nf6+, when capturing the Knight with 1...gxh6 opens up the g-file and weakens the squares around Black's King, while playing 1...Kh8 gives White a strong Knight on f6, with pressure on the light squares.

**CHAPTER 28, WHITE PLAYS 1 RXN(F6),** contains exercises in which White plays 1 RxN(f6), when 1...gx(f6) opens the g-file and weakens the squares around Black's King, while 1...Bxf6 weakens the square h7.
CHAPTER 21. THE SEQUENCE 1 Rxg7+ Kxg7 2 Qg5+

This chapter contains exercises involving the sequence 1 Rxg7+ Kxg7 2 Qg5+ (or some other Queen move), when White has sacrificed a Rook for a pawn, but has obtained a dominant Queen and has weakened the squares around Black's King.

In Diagram 1, after the moves 1 Rxg7+ Kxg7 2 Qg5+ Kh8 (see Diagram 2), White mates in two with 3 Qf6+ Kg8 4 Rg1, mate. Note that declining the sacrifice with 1...Kg8 loses to 2 Qh6, when Black can't stop 3 Qxh7, mate.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. White Attacks Black’s Kg7 with Qh6+
2. White Attacks Black’s Kg7 with Qg6+
3. White Attacks Black’s Kg7 with Qf6+
4. White Attacks Black’s Kg7 with Qg5+
5. Black Interposes a Piece on the g-file
6. White Wins Back His Rook
7. Winning Black’s Queen with a Discovered Check
8. Attacking Black’s Kh8 with a Queen and Knight
9. Attacking Black’s Kh8 with a Queen and Rook on the g-file
10. Attacking Black’s Kh6
11. Attacking Black’s Kg7
12. Attacking Black’s Kf8
13. Attacking Black’s Kf6
14. Black Refuses to Take White’s Rg7 and Plays 1...Kf8
15. Black Refuses to Take White’s Rg7 and Plays 1...Kh8
16. Miscellaneous

These themes are illustrated using sixty-seven preparatory positions, which are followed by thirty-six visualization exercises ranging in depth from five to fifteen ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply:</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Diagram 1

Diagram 2
1. White Attacks Black’s Kg7 with Qh6+

1256 [VX-604]. White wins with 22 Qh6+ Kg8 23 Rg1+ Bg5 24 Rxg5, mate.

1257 [VX-622]. White wins with 19 Qxh6+ (1-0) Kg8 20 Qxg5+ Kh7 21 Rh6, mate.

1258 [VX-623]. White wins with 23 Qxh6+ Kg8 24 Rf6 Bxe3+ 25 Qxe3, when Black can’t stop 26 Qg5+ and 27 Rh6, mate.

2. White Attacks Black’s Kg7 with Qg6+

1259 [VX-601]. White wins with 26 Qg6+ Kh8 27 Qxh6, mate.

1260 [VX-608]. White wins with 22 Qg6+ Kh8 23 Qxh6, mate.

3. White Attacks Black’s Kg7 with Qf6+

1261 [VX-603]. White wins with 22 Qf6+ Kg8 23 Bh6/Ph6 and 24 Qg7, mate.

1262 [VX-627]. White wins with 25 Qf6+ (1-0) Kh7 (25...Kg8 26 Qh8, mate) 26 Qxh6+ Kg8 27 Qh8, mate.

1263 [VX-633]. White wins with 24 Qf6+ Kg8 25 Qg6+ (1-0) Kf8 (25...Kh8 26 Qh7 is mate) 26 Bxh6+ Ke7, when the quickest way to mate is with 27 Qf6+ Ke8 28 Qf8/Bg6, mate.
4. White Attacks Black’s Kg7 with Qg5+

1264 [VX-623]. White wins with 26 Qg5+ and 27 Rh6, mate.

1265 [VX-602]. White wins with 24 Qg5+ Kh8 25 Qe5+ Rf6 26 Qxf6, mate.

1266 [VX-607]. White wins with 25 Qg5+ Kh8 26 Qf6+ Kg8 27 Rg1, mate.

1267 [VX-613]. White wins with 24 Qg5+ Kh8 25 Qf6+ Kg8 26 Rg1, mate.

1268 [VX-615]. White wins with 24 Qg5+ Kh8 25 Qf6+ Kg8 26 Qg3+ Qg4 27 Rxg4, mate.

1269 [VX-605]. White wins with 25 Qg5+ Kh8 26 Qf6+ Kg8 26 Rg1, mate.

1270 [VX-624]. White wins Black’s Queen with 20 Qg5+ Kh8 21 Qf6+ Kg8 22 Rg1+ Bg4 23 Rxg4+ Qxg4 24 fxg4.

1271 [VX-628]. White wins with 19 Qg5+ Kh8 20 Qf6+ Kg8 21 h6 with 22 Qg7, mate or 21 Rg1+ Rg4 22 Rxg4, mate.

1272 [VX-625]. White wins with 19 Qg5+ Kf8 (19...Kh8 loses to 20 Qxf6+ Kg8 21 Bc4 Rf8 22 Rg1+) 20 Qxf6 Kg8 21 Bc4, threatening, 22 Rg1+ Kf8 23 Qh8, mate, when 21...Re6 loses to 22 Rg1+ Kf8 23 Qh8, mate.
5. Black Interposes a Piece on the g-file

1273 [VX-626]. White wins with 24 Rg1+ Ng4 25 Rxg4+ Kf6 26 Qh4, mate.

1274 [VX-630]. White wins with 19 Qxg4+ Bg5 (19...Kf8 20 Bh6, mate; 19...Kh8 20 Nxf7, mate) 20 Bxg5 Qc7 21 Be7+, with mate next move, e.g., 21...Kh8 22 Nxf7, mate or 21...Kh6 22 Nxf7/Qg5, mate.

1275 [VX-636]. White wins with 19 Qxg5+, e.g., 19...Kh8 20 Bxd5 threatens 21 Qf6+ and 22 Bh6, mating, or 19...Kf8 20 Ba3+ Rd6 21 Bxd5 exd5 22 Qf6 Be6 23 Qh8+ Ke7 24 Qxa8, when White is up a piece and a pawn and will win the exchange on d6 as well.

6. White Wins Back His Rook

1276 [VX-620]. White wins back his Rook with 22 Qh6+ Kg8 23 Qxe6+ Kh8 24 Qxf5, when White is up two pawns.

1277 [VX-616]. White wins his Rook back with 20 Qg6+ (20 Rg1+ Kh8 21 Qxh8+ is also good) Kf8 21 Qxf6+ Ke8 (21...Kg8 22 Rg1+ Kh7 23 Qg7+ is mate) 22 Qxh8+, when White is up a pawn.

1278 [VX-631]. White wins back his Rook with 19 Qg6+ Kh8 20 Bh6 Qc7 (20...Rg8 21 Nf7 is mate, while 20...Qe7 21 Bxf8 Qxf8 22 Nf7+ wins Black’s Queen) 21 Bxf8, when White is up a pawn after 21...Nxe5 (21...Bxf8 loses to 22 Nf7+) 22 Qxf6+ Kg8 23 Nxe5 Bxf8.
7. Winning Black’s Queen with a Discovered Check

1279 [VX-618]. White wins Black’s Queen with 23 Ng6+ hxg6 24 Rxe7.

1280 [VX-609]. White wins Black’s Queen with 22 Nf7+ and 23 Qxd6.

1281 [VX-609]. White wins Black’s Queen with 22 Ng6+ hxg6 23 Qxd6+.

1282 [VX-606]. White wins Black’s Queen with 22 Qg3+ Kh8 23 Ng6+.

1283 [VX-635]. White wins with 24 Qf4, threatening both 25 Qxh6+ Kg8 26 Qh7, mate, as well as 25 Ng6+, winning Black’s Queen.

1284 [VX-635]. Here 24 Qf4+ Ke7 25 Ng6+ Kd7 lets Black defend his King, but better is 24 Qh4+ Kg7 (the only move) 25 Qg3+ Kf6 25...Kh8 drops the Queen to 26 Ng6+) 26 Ng4+ Ke7 27 Qxc7+.

8. Attacking Black’s Kh8 with a Queen and Knight

1285 [VX-609]. 22 Nf7 is mate.

1286 [VX-630]. 19 Nxf7 is mate.

1287 [VX-636]. 19 Nxf7 is mate.
9. Attacking Black’s Kh8 with a Queen and Rook on the g-file

1288 [VX-614]. White wins with 20 Rg1 (1-0) Ne8 21 Nxf7+ Rxf7 22 Qg8, mate.

1289 [VX-634]. 18 Qh3 can be met by 18...f5, but White can win with 18 Rg1 Bf6 19 Qh3 Bxb2+ (in order to play 20...f5) 20 Kxb2 f5 21 Qg3 Rf7 22 Qg8, mate.

1290 [VX-629]. White wins with 22 Rg1, threatening 23 Qg7, mate and giving White a 4-3 advantage on g8, e.g., 22...Bf6 23 Qg8+ Rxg8 24 fxg8=Q+ Rxg8 25 Rxg8, mate.

10. Attacking Black’s Kh6

1291 [VX-626]. 23 Qg5 is mate.

1292 [VX-634]. White wins with 18 f5+ Kh5 19 Be2+ Qg4 20 Qxg4, mate.

1293 [VX-619]. White wins with 20 Ne4, freeing d2 for his Bishop, e.g., 20...Bxe4 21 Bd2+ Qg5 22 Qxg5, mate or 20...Rg8 21 Bd2+ Rg5 22 Bxg5+ Kg7 23 Bf6+ Kf8 24 Qg7+ Ke8 25 Qh8+ Kd7 26 Qxd8, mate.

11. Attacking Black’s Kg7

1294 [VX-616]. White wins with 20 Bh6+ Kh8 21 Bf8, mate.

1295 [VX-629]. White wins with 21 Bh6+ Kh8 22 Qg2, with the threat of 23 Qg7, mate.

1296 [VX-611]. White wins with 24 Qe7+ Kg8 25 Ne6, when the only way that Black can stop 26 Qg7, mate is by giving up his Queen with 25...Qf8 26 Nxf8 Rxf8.
12. Attacking Black’s Kf8

1297 [VX-630]. 19 Bh6 is mate.

1298 [VX-636]. White wins with 19 Bh6+ Ke8 20 Qg8+ Bf8 21 Qxf8, mate.

13. Attacking Black’s Kf6

1299 [VX-636]. 19 Qg5 is mate.

1300 [VX-618]. White can win Black’s Queen with 23 Qh4+ Ke6 24 Ng6+ Kd5 25 Qxe7, attacking Black’s Rf8 and threatening 26 Qc5, mate.

1301 [VX-619]. White can win Black’s Queen with 20 Qb4+ Kf5 (20...Kg6 21 Be7 is similar) 21 Be7, threatening 22 Qg5, mate, when White is up a Queen for a Rook and Bishop after 21...Qxe7 22 Qxe7.

14. Black Refuses to Take White’s Rg7 and Plays 1...Kf8

1302 [VX-604]. 22 Qh8 is mate.

1303 [VX-605]. White wins with 25 Qf4+ Kxg7 26 Qf6+ Kg8 27 Rg1, mate.

1304 [VX-630]. White wins with 18 Bh6 e.g., 18...Bb4 19 Rxf7+ Kg8 20 Qg3+ with Qg7, mate.
15. Black Refuses to Take White’s Rg7 and Plays 1...Kh8

1305 [VX-623]. 23 Qxh6 is mate.

1306 [VX-616]. White wins with 19 Qxh5+ Kxg7 20 Qh7, mate.

1307 [VX-611]. White wins with 24 Qe7 Qf8 25 Rxh7+ Nxh7 26 Qxh7, mate.

1308 [VX-605]. White wins with 25 Qh6 and 26 Qxh7, mate.

1309 [VX-609]. White wins with 21 Qh6 and 26 Qxh7, mate.

1310 [VX-602]. Here 24 Qh6 allows 24...Qxc1+ 25 Qxc1 Kxg7, but White can win with 24 Rec7 Be4 25 Qh6.

1311 [VX-631]. White wins with 19 Rh7+ Kg8 20 Qg6, mate.

1312 [VX-634]. White wins with 17 Rxh7+ Kg8 18 Rg1+Bg5 19 Rxg5, mate.

1313 [VX-629]. White wins with 22 Rxh7+ Kxh7 23 Rg1, threatening both 24 Qg7, mate and 24 Qh3+. 
1314 [VX-629]. White wins with 22 Rg1 with the threat of 23 Rxh7+ and 24 Qg7, mate.

1315 [VX-636]. White wins with 18 Rxh7+ Kxh7 19 Qh5+ Kg7 20 Qxf7+ Kh8 21 Ng6, mate.

1316 [VX-621]. 23 Rg5 threatens 24 Rxh5+ and if the Queen moves off of the h-file, then 24 Qxh5 is mate.

1317 [VX-602]. White wins with 25 Rg8+ Rxg8 26 Qc3+ Rg7 27 Qc8+ Rg8 28 Qxg8, mate.

1318 [VX-607]. White wins with 25 Rxh7+ Kxh7 26 Bf5+, e.g., 26...Kg8 27 Rg1+ Kh8 28 Qh6, mate; 26...Kh8 27 Qh6+ Kg8 28 Qh7Rg1, mate; or 26...Kg7 27 Qg5+ Kh8 28 Qf6+ Kg8 29 Rg1, mate.

1319 [VX-630]. 18 Bh6 threatens 19 Nxf7, mate, and if 18...Rf8 then 19 Qg3 threatens both 20 Rg8+ Rg8 21 Nx7, mate and 20 Rgxh7+ with 21 Qg7, mate. After 19...Ng4 20 Qxg4 Bg5 21 Rxf5 White threatens both 22 Rgxg8+ Rgxg8 23 Nx7, mate and 22 Bg7+ Kc8 23 Bf6, mate.

16. Miscellaneous

1320 [VX-621]. White wins with 23 Qg2+, e.g., a) 23...Kf8/Kh8 24 Ng6+ wins Black’s Queen; b) 23...Kh6 24 Qg6 is mate; c) 23...Kf6 24 Qg6+ Ke7 25 Qf7 is mate; d) Qg4 24 Nxe4 Bb7 25 Qh3 hxg4 26 Qxg4+, gives White a Queen and pawn for a Rook and Knight.

1321 [VX-610]. White wins with 17 Qxh6+ Kg8 18 Be5, threatening 19 Qg7, mate, e.g., 18...Qe7 19 Qg6+ Qg7 20 Qxg7, mate, and if 18...Rf7 then 19 Qh8 is mate. The only way to avoid mate is with 18...Qxe5 19 dxe5, when White has a Queen and pawn for a Rook and Bishop.

1322 [VX-610]. White wins with 17 Qxh6+ Kf7 18 Qh7+ Kf6 (18...Ke6 19 Re1+) 19 Be5+, e.g., a) 19...Kg5 20 h4+ Kg4 21 Qg7+ Kxb4 22 Qg6+ Kh5 23 Kf2, with 24 Rh1, mate to follow or b) 19...Ke6 20 Qh6+ and now: b1) 20...Kd7 21 Qd6, mate; b2) 20...Kf7 21 Qf6+ Kg8 22 Qg7, mate; or b3) 20...Ke7 21 Qd6+ Kf7 22 Qf6+ Kg8 23 Qg7, mate.
601. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Rxg7 R Kxg7 26 Qg6+ Kh8. How does White win in this position?

602. Black is weak along the a2-g8 and a1-h8 diagonals. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Rxg7 Kxg7 24 Qg5+ Kh8. How does White win in this position?

1 Refusing the Rook also loses, e.g., a) 23...Bxf3 24 Rcc7 Be4 25 Qh6; b) 23...Rxf3 24 Rcc7 (1-0); or c) 23...Rac8 24 Rxc8 Rxc8 25 Rg8+ Rxg8 26 Qc3+ Rg7 27 Qc8+ Rg8 28 Qxg8, mate.

603. White is down a pawn and his Be3 is under attack, but Black’s King is defenseless. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxg7+ Kxg7 22 Qf6+ Kg8. How does White win here?

1 21...Kh8 just concedes the pawn.

604. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxg7+ Kxg7 22 Qh6+ Kg8. How does White mate in two?

1 21...Kf8 loses to 22 Qh8, mate.
605. White is up a pawn, but his Re7 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Rxg7+ Kxg7 25 Qg5+. How does White win after 25...Kf7, 25...Kf8 and 25...Kh8?

1) 24...Kh8 loses to 25 Qh6, while 24...Kf8 loses to 25 Qf4+ Kxg7 26 Qf6+ Kg8 27 Rg1, mate.

606. Black's Qc7 is undefended. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxg7 Kxg7 22 Qg3+ Kh8 23 Ng6+ fxg6 24 Qxc7. What is the material balance?

1) 22...Ng4 also drops the Queen (see exercise 635). 2) 23 Nxf7 loses to 23...Rxf7, defending the Qc7.

607. White is down a pawn and his pawn on e4 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Rxg7+ Kxg7 25 Qg5+ Kh8 26 Qf6+ Kg8. How does White win here?

1) 24...Kh8 loses to 25 Qxh7+ Kxh7 26 Bf5+, e.g., a) 26...Kg8 27 Rg1+ Kh8 28 Qh6, mate; b) 26...Kh8 27 Qh6+ Kg8 28 Qh7/Rg1, mate; or c) 26...Kg7 27 Qg5+ Kh8 28 Qf6+ Kg8 29 Rg1, mate.

608. White is down a piece, but his Queen and Bishop dominate the light squares around Black's King. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rg5+ Kh8 21 Rxc7 Kxg7. How does White mate in two?

1) 20...g6 loses to 21 Qxg6+ Kh8 22 Qxh6, mate. 2) White's threat is 22 Qh7, mate. Black resigned here.
609. Two of White's pieces are under attack, but Black's Qd6 is undefended. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rxg7+ Kxg7 21 Qg3+ Kf8 22 Ng6+ hxg6 23 Qxd6+. What is the material balance?

1 20...Kh8 loses to 21 Qh6. 2 21...Kh8 22 Nf7 is mate, while 21...Kh6 drops the Queen to 22 Nf7+.

610. White is down a pawn and his Queen is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Rxg7+ Kxg7 17 Qxh6+ Kg8. How does White win here?

1 17...Kf7 18 Qh7+ Kg8 (18...Ke6 drops the Queen to 19 Re1+) 19 Be5+ leads to mate, e.g., a) 19...Kg6 20 h4+ Kg5 21 Qg7+ Kxh4 22 Qg3+ Kh5 23 Kf2, with 24 Rh1, mate to follow or b) 19...Ke6 20 Qb6+ and now: b1) 20...Kd7 21 Qd6, mate; b2) 20...Kf7 21 Qf6+ Kg8 22 Qg7, mate; b3) 20...Ke7 21 Qd6+ Kf7 22 Qf6+ Kg8 23 Qg7, mate.

611. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Rxg7+ Kxg7 24 Qe7+ Kg8 25 Ne6 Qf8 26 Nxh8 Rxh8. What is the material balance?

1 23...Kh8 24 Qe7 Qf8 loses to 25 Rxh7+ Nhx7 26 Qxh7, mate.

612. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxg7 Kxg7 22 Qf5+ Rg8 23 h6+ Kf8 24 Qxc8+ Bd8. What is the material balance?

1 22 h6+ Kh8 23 Qf5 gives White nothing after 23...f6, defending h7. 2 Black can draw with 22...Rh8, for example, 23 h6+ Kxh6 (Black can't play 23...Kf8 because of 24 Qxc8+ 24 Qh3+ Kg7 25 Qg4+ Kh6 with a draw. 3 The actual game continued 23...Kxh6 24 Qxh7+ Kg5 25 g3, when mate is unavoidable.
613. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Bxe5 dxe5 1 23 Rxg7+ R Kxg7 2 Qg5+ Kh8. How does White mate in this position?

1 22...g6 loses to 23 Bf6 with 24 Qh6, while 22...f6 23 Bxd6 Qf7 24 Bxb8 Rxb8 nets White a Rook and a pawn. 2 23...Kh8 loses to 24 Qh6 with Qxh7, mate.

614. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Rxg7+ Kxg7 1 19 Qg2+ Kh8 20 Rg1 R Ne8. How does White mate in two?

1 18...Kh8 drops the exchange to 19 Nxf7+ Rxf7 20 Rxf7 Qxf4+. 2 20 Rg1+ Kf8 21 Qxh8+ is also good.

615. White is down a piece and a pawn but has an attack. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Rxg7+ R Kxg7 24 Qg5+ Kh8. How does White win here?

616. White is down two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Rxg7+ R Kxg7 1 19 Qxh5 2 Rh8 3 20 Qg6+ 4 Kf8 21 Qxf6+ Ke8 22 Qxh8+. What is the material balance?

1 18...Kh8 loses to 19 Qxh5+ Kxg7 20 Qh7, mate. 2 White's threats include a) 20 Qh7, mate, b) 20 Qg6+ Kh8 21 Qh7, mate, and c) 20 Rg1+ Qg2 21 Rxg2, mate. 3 19...Rg8 loses to 20 Bh6+ Kh8 21 Bf8, mate. 4 20 Rg1+ Kf8 21 Qxh8+ is also good.
617. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Rxg7+ Kxg7 23 Qg5+ Kh8 24 Be5+ f6. How does White mate in this position?

618. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxg7+ Kxg7 22 Qg3+ Kf6 23 Qh4+ Ke6. How does White win Black’s Queen here?

1 22...Kh8 drops the Queen to 23 Ng6+ hxg6 24 Rxe7, while 22...Kh6 drops the Queen to 23 Ng4+ fxg4 24 Rxe7, when White has a Queen and pawn for a Rook and Bishop in both cases. 2 23...Kg7 drops the Queen immediately.

619. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Rxg7+ Kxg7 19 Qg4+ Kf6 20 Qh4+ Kf5 21 Be7. What are White’s two threats in this position?

19...Kh6 20 Ne4, with the idea of 21 Bd2, allows mate, e.g., 20...Bxe4 21 Bd2+ Qg5 22 Qxg5, mate or 20...Rg8 21 Bd2+ Rg5 22 Bxg5+ Kg7 23 Bf6+ Kf8 24 Qg7+ Ke8 25 Qh8+ Kd7 26 Qxd8, mate. 20...Kg6 21 Be7 is similar.

620. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Bxf5 21 Rg7+ Kxg7 22 Qh6+ Kg8 23 Qxe6+ Kh8 24 Qxf5. What is the material balance?

The immediate 20 Rgx7+, as played in the game, transposes after 20...Kxg7 21 Qg4+ (1-0) Kh8 22 Qh5+ Kg8 (22...Kg7 loses to 23 Bh6+ Kg8 24 Qg6+ Kh8 25 Bg7+) 23 Qg6+ Kh8 24 Bxf5 Rxh5 25 Qh6+ Kg8 26 Qxe6+, but the 20 Bxf5 line is three moves shorter. This is better than 21 Rxh5 exf5 22 Qxf5 Nh6 23 Qxf6, when White is up a pawn.
621. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Rxg7+ Kxg7 1 23 Qg2+ RQg4 24 Nxe4 Bb7 25 Qh3 hxg4 26 Qxg4+. What is the material balance?

1 22...Kh8 loses to 23 Rg5, with the threat of 24 Rxh5+ and if the Queen moves off of the h-file, then 24 Qxh5 is mate. 2 Moving the King loses, e.g., a) 23...Kh8 24 Qg6, mate; b) 23...Kh8/Kf8 drops the Queen to 24 Ng6+; or c) 23...Kf6 24 Qg6+ Ke7 25 Qf7, mate.

622. White has given up three pieces for a Rook and pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 17 R1f6 1 Ng5 2 18 Rxg7+ Kxg7 19 Qxh6+ R Kg8. How does White win here?

1 White's threat is 18 Rxh6 gxh6 19 Qg6+ Kh8 20 Qh7, mate. 2 17...Qxg7 18 Qxg7 gives Black three pieces for a Queen and pawn, while 17...Qf8 18 Rxf8+ Qxf8 19 Rxg8+ Kxg8 20 Qe5+ with 21 Qxc7 gives White a Queen and pawn for a Rook and Bishop.

623. Black has just taken White's Nd4 to go up a piece. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Rxg7+ Kxg7 1 23 Qg2+ R Qg4 24 Nxe4 Bb7 25 Qh3 hxg4 26 Qxg4+. What is White's threat and how can Black prevent it?

1 22...Kh8 loses to 23 Rg5, with the threat of 24 Rxh5+ and if the Queen moves off of the h-file, then 24 Qxh5 is mate. 2 Moving the King loses, e.g., a) 23...Kh8 24 Qg6, mate; b) 23...Kh8/Kf8 drops the Queen to 24 Ng6+; or c) 23...Kf6 24 Qg6+ Ke7 25 Qf7, mate.

624. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Rxg7+ R Kxg7 1 20 Qg5+ Kh8 21 Qf6+ Kg8 22 Rg1+ Bg4 23 Rxg4+ Qxg4 24 fxg4. What is the material balance?

1 White is up a pawn with an attack after 19...Kh8 20 Bd3 Rad8 21 Rhg1.
625. Black's Nf6 is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Rxg7 Kg7 19 Qg5+ Kf8\(^1\) 20 Qxf6 Kg8 21 Bc4 Re6. What is the material balance and how does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

\(^1\) 19...Kh8 loses to 20 Qxf6+ Kg8 21 Bc4 with 22 Rg1+. 2 White's threat is 21 Qh8, mate. 3 Hint: White can bring his Rd1 into the attack.

626. White's Bd3 is strong. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxg7+ Kxg7 22 Qg2+ Kh8 23 Qh3+ Kg7 24 Rg1+ Ng4. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 22...Kh6 23 Qg5 is mate. 2 23...Nh7 24 Qxh7 is mate. 3 Another idea is to walk the Queen up the board with 24 Qg3+ Kh8 (24...Kh6 25 Qg5 is mate) 25 Qh4+ Kg7 26 Qg5+ Kh8 27 Qh6+ Kg8, but White still can't mate without the Rook.

627. The count on d4 is 2-1 and 2-2 on f7. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Qf2 cxd4\(^1\) 23 Nxf7 Qc7\(^2\) 24 Rxf7+ Kxf7 25 Qf6+ Kh7\(^3\). How does White win here?

\(^1\) Changing the focal point with 22...f6 or 22...f5 is better. \(^2\) 23...Rxf7 loses to 24 Qxf7+ Kh8 25 Qxg7, mate. \(^3\) 25...Kg8 26 Qh8 is mate.

628. Black is threatening mate on g2 and is attacking White's Queen, but Black's King is defenseless. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxc4\(^1\) Rxc4 18 Rxe7+ Kxe7 19 Qg5+ Kh8. How does White win here? There are two solutions.

\(^1\) This eliminates Black's threats and opens up the first rank for White's Rd1. \(^2\) The actual game continued 18...Kh8 19 Qh6 Rxc3 20 Qxh7 (1-0), mate.
629. White is down a piece for a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rxg7 Kxg7 21 Qg2+ Kh8 22 Rg1 Bf6. How does White mates in three?

1 20...Bb5 loses to 21 Qg2, e.g., 21...Bxc4 22 Rxh7+ Kxh7 23 Rg1 (1-0), threatening both 24 Qg7, mate and 24 Qh3+; 20...Bc6 21 Qg2 Nf6 loses to 22 Rg1, with the threat of 23 Rxh7+ and 24 Qg7, mate. 2 21 Bh6+ Kh8 22 Qg2, with the threat of 23 Qg7, mate, also wins. 3 21...Kf6 loses to 22 Qg5, mate.

630. White can get his piece back with 17 bxc3, but goes for the attack instead. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Rxg7+ Kxg7 18 Qg3+ Kg8 19 Qxg4 Bg5 20 Bxg5 Qc7 21 Be7+. How does White mate in one after either 21...Kh8 or 21...Kh6?

1 17...Kf8 loses to 18 Rh7+ Kg8 20 Qg6, mate. 2 20...Rg8 loses to 21 Nf7, mate, while 20...Qe7 21 Bxf8 Qxf8 drops the Queen to 22 Nf7+. 3 21...Kf6 loses to 22 Qg5, mate.

631. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Rxg7+ Kxg7 19 Qg6+ Kh8 20 Bh6 Qc7 21 Bxf8 Nxe5 22 Qxf6+ Kg8 23 Nxe5 Bxf8. What is the material balance?

1 18...Kh8 loses to 19 Rh7+ Kg8 20 Qg6, mate. 2 20...Rg8 loses to 21 Nf7, mate, while 20...Qe7 21 Bxf8 Qxf8 drops the Queen to 22 Nf7+. 3 21...Bxf8 loses to 22 Nf7+.

632. White is down the exchange. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxg7 Kxg7 22 Qf6+ Kg8 23 Qxh6+ f5 24 exf6 Re7 25 fxe7. What is the material balance, what is White’s threat and how does Black prevent it?

1 22...Kf8 loses to 23 Bg6 (1-0), and if 23...Re7 then 24 Qh8 is mate. 2 White’s threat is 24 Bh7+ Kh8 25 Bg6+ Kg8 26 Qh7+ Kf8 27 Qf7, mate. 3 23...Re7 defends the f-pawn, but loses to 24 Qh7+ Kf8 25 Qh8, mate. 4 Now the threat is 25 Qg7, mate.
633. White is up the exchange for a pawn, but his Ra1 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Rg4 Qh1 23 Rxg7+ Kxg7 24 Qf6+ Kg8 25 Qg6+ Ke7. How does White mate in two?

1 This forces Black’s Queen to abandon either h6 or f6. 2 22...Qe7 allows 23 Bxh6. 3 25...Kh8 loses to 26 Qh7, mate.

634. White is down a couple of pawns, but has open lines to Black’s King. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Rxg7+ Kxg7 17 Qg3+ Kh8 18 Kg1 Bf6 19 Qh3 Bxb2+ 20 Kxb2 f5 21 Qg3. What is White’s threat and how does White win if Black plays 21...Rf7?

1 16...Kh8 loses to 17 Rxh7+ Kg8 18 Rg1+ Bg5 19 Rg5, mate. 2 17...Kf6 loses to 18 Qg5, mate, while 17...Kh6 loses to 18 f5+ Kh5 19 Be2+ Qg4 20 Qxg4, mate. 3 18 Qh3 can be met by 18...f5. 4 In order to play 20...f5.

635. Black’s Qc7 is undefended. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxg7 Kxg7 22 Qg3+ Ng4 23 Qxg4+ Kf6 24 Qh4+ Kg7 25 Qg3+ Kf6. How does White win here?

1 To draw White’s Queen off of the h2-b8 diagonal. 22...Kxh8 drops the Queen to 23 Ng6+ fxg6 24 Qxg6, when White is up a Queen and pawn for a Rook and Knight (see 606). 2 23...Kxh8 loses to 24 Qf4, threatening both 25 Qxh6+ Kg8 26 Qh7, mate and 25 Ng6+, winning Black’s Queen. 3 Less effective is 24 Qf4+ Ke7 25 Ng6+ Kd7, when the Queen is defended. 4 The only move. 5 25...Kxh8 drops the Queen to 26 Ng6+.

636. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Rg7+ Kg7 18 Qg4+ Bg5 19 Qxg5+ Kf8 20 Ba3+ Rd6 21 Bxd5 exd5 22 Qf6+ Be6 23 Qh8+ Ke7. What is the material balance and how does White win Black’s Rook in this position?

1 17...Kh8 loses to 18 Rxa7+ Kxh7 19 Qh5+ Kg7 20 Qxf7+ Kh8 21 Ng6, mate. 2 The only move, as moving the King allows mate, e.g., 18...Kh8 19 Nxf7, mate; 18...Kf6 19 Qg5, mate; or 18...Kf8 19 Bh6+ Ke8 20 Qg8+ Bf8 21 Qxf8, mate. 3 19...Kh8 loses to 20 Bxd5, threatening 21 Qf6+ and 22 Bh6, mating. 4 The count on d6 is 2-1.
CHAPTER 22. THE SEQUENCE 1 Rxc7+ Kxc7 2 Rg1+

This chapter contains exercises involving the sequence 1 Rxc7+ Kxc7 2 Rg1+ (or some other Rook check along the g-file), when White has sacrificed a Rook for a pawn, but has occupied the g-file with tempo and has weakened the squares around Black's King.

In Diagram 1, after the moves 1 Rxc7+ Kxc7 2 Rg1+ (see Diagram 2), both 2...Kh7 and 2...Kh8 lose to 3 Qh4, mate. Note that declining the sacrifice with 1...Kh8 loses to 2 Qh6, mate.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. Black’s King is on Kh8
2. Black’s King is on Kh8 with a Rook on g8
3. Black’s King is on Kh7
4. Black’s King is on Kh6
5. Black’s King is on Kf8
6. Black’s King is on Kf7
7. Black’s King is on Kf6
8. Black Interposes a Piece Along the g-file

These themes are illustrated using ninety-one preparatory positions, which are followed by thirty-two visualization exercises ranging in depth from five to seventeen ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply:</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Black’s King is on Kh8

1323 [VX-656]. 23 Qxf8 is mate.

1324 [VX-656]. 24 Qxf8 is mate.

1325 [VX-666]. 19 Qxf8 is mate.

1326 [VX-659]. 25 Qh6 is mate.

1327 [VX-639]. 20 Qxh6 is mate.

1328 [VX-640]. 20 Qxh6 is mate.

1329 [VX-660]. White wins with 19 Qh6, threatening both 20 Qxh7 and Qg7, mate.

1330 [VX-661]. White wins with either 19 Qh6 with 20 Qg7, mate, or 19 Qf7 Rxf7 20 Nxf7, mate.

1331 [VX-649]. White wins with 26 Qh6, threatening mate in three different ways -- 27 Qg7, 27 Qf6, and 27 Qf8, mate.
1332 [VX-662]. White wins with 20 Qxh6+ Nh7 21 Qg7, mate.

1333 [VX-645]. White wins with 24 Qxh6+ Nh7 25 Qg7, mate (1-0).

1334 [VX-645]. White wins with 25 Qxh6+ Nh7 26 Qxh7/Qg7, mate.

1335 [VX-637]. White wins with 27 Bf6, mate.

1336 [VX-644]. White wins with 29 Qxf6+ Kh7 (29...Qg7 30 Qxg7, mate) 30 Qh6, mate.

1337 [VX-642]. White wins with 26 Qe5+ Nf6 27 Qxf6, mate.

1338 [VX-652]. White wins with 22 Qg4 with Qg7, mate.

1339 [VX-662]. White wins with 22 Qg2 and 23 Qg7, mate.

1340 [VX-658]. White wins with 22 Qg5 (1-0), threatening 23 Qg7, mate, and if 22...Rf7 then 23 Qg8 is mate.
1341 [VX-650]. White wins with 27 Qh6+ Kg8 28 Rg1+ Qg5 29 Rxg5, mate.

1342 [VX-648]. White wins with 20 Qe5+ f6 21 Qh5, mate.

1343 [VX-668]. 23 Qxh7 is mate.

1344 [VX-653]. White can sacrifice his Queen to mate with his Bishop and Knight, e.g., 21 Qg4 Nxg4 22 Nf7+ Kg8 23 Nh6, mate.

1345 [VX-657]. 25 Bc2 threatens 26 Qg7, mate, when 25...Rg8 loses to 26 Bxf6+ Nxf6 27 Qxf6+ and 25...Nh5 loses to 26 Qh7, mate.

1346 [VX-655]. Here 27 Qh6 can be met by 27...Rg8, but White can win with 27 Qg5, threatening 28 Qg7, mate (1-0), when 27...Qf8 loses to 28 Bxf6+ Rxf6 29 Qxf6+ Qg7 30 Qxg7, mate.

1347 [VX-647]. White wins with 22 Qh3, threatening 23 Qh6, mate, which Black can avoid with 22...Qf4+ 23 Bd2 Qxd2+ 24 Kxd2 h5, when White has a Queen for a Rook and Knight.

1348 [VX-661]. White wins with 19 Bd3 (1-0) after 19...Rf5 20 Bxf5 exf5 21 Qr7, threatening both 22 Qg8 and 22 Qg7, mate, but Black can get out of the mate by giving up his Queen with 19...e4 20 Bxe4 Rf5 21 Bxf5 exf5 22 Qf7 Qxg3.
1349 [VX-646]. White wins Black's Queen with 27 Nxf7+ Rxf7 28 Bxc7.

1350 [VX-660]. White wins Black's Queen with 22 Ng6+ and 23 Nxe7+.

1351 [VX-668]. White wins Black's Queen with 25 Ng6+ Kg8 26 Nxe7+.

1352 [VX-654]. White wins with 19 Nf7+ Rxh7 20 Qxf7, with mate next move.

1353 [VX-665]. White wins with 21 Rxf7+ Kg8 22 Qg1+.

1354 [VX-665]. White wins Black’s Queen with 20 Rh5 f5 (20...Qf6 loses to 21 Rxf7+ Kg8 22 Qg1+) 21 Qh6 Qe7 22 Ng6+. 
2. Black’s King is on Kh8 with a Rook on g8

1355 [VX-662]. 21 Qxh6 is mate.

1356 [VX-660]. 19 Nxf7 is mate.

1357 [VX-665]. White wins Black’s Queen with 17 Rxh7+ Nxh7 18 Nxf7+.

1358 [VX-652]. White wins with 22 Bxf6+ Rg7 23 Bxg7, mate.

1359 [VX-657]. White wins with 24 Bxf6+ Nxf6 25 Qxf6+ Rg7 26 Qxg7, mate.

1360 [VX-662]. White wins with 22 Qxh6 Rg8 23 Rg7 Rxg7 24 Qxg7, mate.

1361 [VX-668]. White wins with 25 Ng6+, when 25...Kg7 drops the Queen to 26 Nxe7+ and 25...Rxg6 26 fxg6 Qg8 loses to 27 g7+ Qxg7 28 Rxg7 Kxg7 29 Qxd7.

1362 [VX-663]. White wins with 23 Rxg8+ when 23...Qxg8 loses to 24 Nxe7, threatening both 25 Qxf6+ and 25 Nxdg8 and 23...Kxg8 loses to 24 Nxe7+ (24 Qg1+ also wins) Qxe7 25 Qg1+ Ng4 26 Qxg4+ with Qg7, mate to follow.
3. Black’s King is on Kh7

1363 [VX-639]. 20 Qxh6 is mate.

1364 [VX-650]. 27 Qxh5 is mate.

1365 [VX-651]. 26 Qh5 is mate.

1366 [VX-639]. White wins with either 22 Qg7, mate or 22 Qh6, mate.

1367 [VX-662]. White wins with 21 Qxg5, threatening both 22 Qg7, mate and 22 Qh4+, mating.

1368 [VX-662]. White wins with 22 Rg7+ Kh8 23 Qxh6+ Nh7 24 Qxh7, mate.

1369 [VX-651]. White wins with 26 Qg8+ Kh6 27 Qh8, mate.

1370 [VX-646]. White wins with 29 Nf6+ Kh8 30 Qh7, mate.

1371 [VX-645]. White wins Black’s Queen with 24 e5+, when 24...Kh8 loses to 25 Qxh6+ Nh7 26 Qg7, mate. Black can avoid mate by giving up his Queen with 24...Ne4 25 Bxe4+ Qxe4 26 fxe4, when White has a Queen for a Rook and pawn.
4. Black’s King is on Kh6

1372 [VX-642]. 26 Qg5 is mate.

1373 [VX-637]. 27 Qh5 is mate.

1374 [VX-651]. 26 Qg6 is mate.

1375 [VX-651]. 26 Qh8 is mate.

1376 [VX-652]. 21 Be3 is mate.

1377 [VX-660]. 20 Ng4 is mate.

1378 [VX-653]. White wins with 21 Qe3 with the threat of 22 Qh3+.

1379 [VX-666]. White wins with 19 Qxf8+ Kh5 20 Qxf7+ with 21 Qxh7, mate or 20 Rg5+ Kh4 21 Qh6, mate.

1380 [VX-648]. White wins with 20 Qf4+, e.g., 20...Kh5 21 Qg4+ Kh6 22 Qg7+ Kh5 23 Qh7, mate or 20...Kh7 21 Qe5, threatening both 22 Qg7 and 22 Qh5, mate (1-0).
5. Black’s King is on Kf8

1381 [VX-638]. 28 Qh8 is mate.

1382 [VX-664]. 22 Qh8 is mate.

1383 [VX-643]. 23 Qh8+ Bg8 24 Qxg8 is mate.

1384 [VX-638]. 29 Qh8 is mate.

1385 [VX-655]. 27 Qh6 is mate.

1386 [VX-643]. 24 Qh6 is mate, as is 24 Qh8+ Bg8 25 Qxg8, mate and 24 Qf7+ Bxf7 25 Nd7, mate.

1387 [VX-649]. 26 Qh6+ Ke8 27 Rg8 is mate.

1388 [VX-667]. White wins with 25 Qh7 with 26 Rg8, mate.

1389 [VX-649]. White wins with 25 Qh6, e.g., 25...Ba4 26 Rg8+ Kxg8 27 Rg1+ Kh8 28 Qf8, mate.
1390 [VX-646]. 27 Bxh6 is mate.
1391 [VX-644]. White wins with 29 Qxf6+ Qf7 30 Bh6, mate.

6. Black’s King is on Kf7

1393 [VX-641]. White wins with 25 Qh8+ Ke7/Kf7 26 Rg7, mate.
1394 [VX-659]. White wins with 26 Qh6+ Ke7 27 Qg7+ Ke6 28 Qf7+ Kd6 29 Nb5, mate.
1395 [VX-664]. White wins with 23 Qh7, e.g., 23...Ne7 24 Qh8+ Kf7 (24...Ng8 25 Rg7 with 26 Qxg8, mate) 25 Rg7+ Kf6 26 Rg8+ winning Black’s Queen or mating after 26...Kf5 (26...Kf7 27 Qg7, mate) 27 Qe5, mate.

1396 [VX-644]. White wins Black’s Queen with 29 Qh7+.
1397 [VX-668]. 24 Qh5 is mate.
7. Black’s King is on Kf6

1398 [VX-638]. 29 Qh6 is mate.

1399 [VX-649]. 26 Qh6+ allows 26...Ke5, but White can close off e5 with 26 Qf4+ Rf5 27 e5+ (1-0) dxe5 28 Qh6, mate.

1400 [VX-651]. White wins with either 26 Qxf8, mate or 26 Rg6, mate.

1401 [VX-656]. White wins with 24 Qh4+ Kf5 25 Qg4+ Kf6 26 Qg5, mate.

1402 [VX-660]. White wins with 21 Qe5+ Qxe5 22 dxe5, mate.

1403 [VX-648]. White wins with 20 Qxh4+ Kf5 21 Qg4+ Kf6 22 Qg5, mate.

1404 [VX-664]. White wins with 23 Qh4+, e.g., 23...Kf5 24 Qg4+ Kf6 25 Qg7+ Kf5 26 Qg6+ Kf4 27 Qg4, mate, or 23...Kf7 24 Qh7+ Kf6 24...Ke8/Kf8 25 Rg8, mate) 25 Qg7+ Kf5 26 Qg6+ Kf4 27 Qg4, mate.

1405 [VX-667]. White wins with 25 Qg5+ Kf7 26 Qg7+ Ke8 27 Qh7 (1-0) Qf6 28 Rg8+ Qf8 29 Rxf8+ Kxf8, when White has a Queen for a Rook and Bishop and now wins Black’s Ra8 with 30 Qh8+ Ke7 31 Qxa8.

1406 [VX-666]. White can win Black’s Qg1 21 Ne4+ e.g., 21...Kg6 22 Qg8+, or 21...Kf5 (1-0) 22 Qxf7+ Kg4 23 Qg7+. 
1407 [VX-650]. White wins with 27 Bg5+, when 27...Kg7 drops the Queen and 27...Ke6 loses to 28 Qc4, mate.

1408 [VX-658]. White wins with 22 Bg5+, e.g., a) 22...Kf5 23 Bh4+ Ke4 (23...Kf4 24 Bg3+ Ke4 25 Re1, mate) 24 Re1+ Ke4 25 Bg3, mate; b) 22...Kg7 23 Bh4+ Kh8 24 Qg5, threatening 25 Qg7, mate, and if 24...Rf7 then 25 Qg8 is mate; or c) 22... Ke5 23 Be7+ and now: c1) 23...Kf5 24 Re1+ Kf4 25 Qg5+ Kf3 26 Qg3, mate; c2) 23...Kf4 24 Qf4+ Ke5 25 Re1, mate; or c3) 23...Rxg5 24 Qe2+ Kf4 25 Rg4/Qe3, mate).

8. Black Interposes a Piece Along the g-file

1409 [VX-638]. White wins with 29 Rxg5+ Qxg5 30 Qxg5+, with 31 Qxd8.

1410 [VX-652]. White wins with 24 Rxg5+ Qxg5+ 25 Qxg5+ Kh7 26 Qg7, mate.

1411 [VX-654]. White wins with 19 Rxg6+ hxg6 20 Qxg6+ Kf8 (20...Kh8 21 Nf7, mate) 21 Qf7, mate.

Nxb6 25 Bf6, mate.

1412 [VX-640]. White wins with 20 Rxg4+, when 20...Nxg4 and 20...Ng6 drop the Queen to 21 Qxc7, while 20...Kh8 loses to 21 Qxh6, mate.

1413 [VX-663]. White can win Black's Queen with 23 Rxg5+ Qxg5 24 Bxg5, but this gives Black two Rook and a pawn for a Queen and Bishop. Better is 23 Bxg5, mating, e.g., 23...f6 24 Bxf6+ Kf7 25 Bh5, mate or 23...Qb6= 24 Qxb6
637. White dominates the dark squares. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Rxg7\(^k\) Kg7\(^1\) 26 Rg5+ Kh8\(^2\). How does White win in this position?

1 This leads to a quick mate. Black can hold out longer with 25...f5, but it’s still hopeless after 26 Qh5 Kg7 27 Qg5+ Kf7 28 Bf6, e.g., 28...Rg8 29 Re7+ Kf8 30 Qh6+ Kg7, mate. 2 26...Kh6 loses to 27 Qh5, mate.

638. Black has just sacrificed his Rook on c3. Visualize the position after the moves 27 Rxg7+ Kg7\(^1\) 28 Rg1+ Kf6\(^2\). How does White win here?

1 27...Kf8 28 Qh8 is mate. 2 28...Kf8 29 Qh8 is mate, while 28...Bg5 loses to 29 Rxg5+ Qxg5 30 Qxg5+, when both of Black’s Rooks are under attack.

639. White’s Queen is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Rxg7+ Kg7 19 Rg1+\(^1\). How many legal moves does Black’s King have and how does White mate after each one?

1 19 Qxh6+ also wins, e.g., 19...Kf7 20 Qf6+ (1-0) Kg8 21 Rg1+ Kh7 22 Qg7/Qh6, mate, but 19 Bxh6 loses to 19...Kh7, when two of Black’s pieces are under attack, e.g., 20 Qe5 Kg8 21 Qf6 (21 Qf4 Rg4 wins White’s Bh6) Kg6 22 Qf8 Qxh6 23 Bxf8, when White has only two pawns for a Rook.

640. White is down a pawn but Black’s Qc7 is undefended. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Rxg7+ Kg7 19 Rg1+\(^2\) Bg4\(^4\) 20 Rxe4+ Nxg4\(^2\) 21 Qxc7. What is the material balance?

1 19...Kh8 loses to 20 Qxh6, mate. 2 20...Ng6 also drops the Qc7, while 20...Kh8 allows 21 Qxh6, mate.
641. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Rxg7+ Kxg7 23 Rg1+ Bg5 24 Rxg5+ Qxg5 25 Qxg5+. What is the material balance?

1 The only way to prevent mate is by giving up the Queen, since 23...Kf8 allows 24 Qh8+ Kf7 25 Rg7, mate. 2 24...Kf8 25 Qh8+ Ke7 26 Rg7 is mate.

642. White's Queen is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Rxg7+ Kxg7 25 Rg1+ Kh8. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 25...Kh6 26 Qg5 is mate. 2 Hint: Look for something stronger than 26 Qf6+, which loses to 26...Nxf6.

643. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Qh5+ Kg8 22 Rxg7+ Kxg7 23 Rg1+ Kf8. How does White win here?

1 22...Kf8 loses to 23 Qh8+ Bg8 24 Qxg8, mate. 2 23...Bg5 loses to 24 Qxg5+ with 25 Qg7, mate.

644. Visualize the position after the moves 27 Rxg7+ Kxg7 28 Rg1+ Kf8 29 Qxf6+. How does White win here?

1 27...Kf8 loses to 28 Qxf6+. 2 28...Kh8 loses to 29 Qxf6+ Kh7 30 Qh6, mate, while 28...Kf7 drops the Queen to 29 Qh7+.
645. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Rxg7 Kxg7 23 Rg1+ Kh7² 24 e5+ Kh8². How does White win here?

1 23...Kh8 loses to 24 Qxh6+ Nb7 25 Qg7, mate (1-0). 2 24...Ne4 drops the Queen to 25 Bxc4+ Qxe4 26 fxe4, giving White a Queen for a Rook and pawn.

646. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Rxg7 Kxg7 26 Rg3+ Kh7¹ 27 Qc2+ Kh8² 28 Nxf7+ Rxf7 29 Bxc7. What is the material balance?

1 26...Kh5 loses to 27 Bxh6, mate, while 26...Kh8 drops the Queen to 27 Nxf7+ with 28 Bxc7. 2 27...Ne4 28 Nxe4 e5 loses to 29 Nf6+ Kh8 30 Qh7, mate.

647. Black is up a pawn, but all of White's pieces are aimed at Black's King. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rxg7 Kxg7 21 Rg1+ Kh8² 22 Qh3 Qf4+ 23 Bd2 Qxd2+ 24 Kxd2. What is the material balance?

1 21...Kh8 loses to 22 Qxf5+ Kh8 23 Rg6, threatening 24 Rhx6+, and if 23...Qxh2 then 24 Bxf6+ wins, e.g., 24...Kh7 25 Rg8, mate or 24...Rxf6 25 Qxf6+ Kh7 26 Qg7, mate.

648. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Rxg7+ Kxg7 19 Rg1+ Kh6² 20 Qf4+ Kh7² 21 Qe5. What are White's two main threats in this position and how does White win after 21...Rg8?

1 19...Kh8 loses to 20 Qe5+ f6 21 Qh5, mate, while 19...Kf6 loses to 20 Qxb4+ Kf5 21 Qg4+ Kf6 22 Qg5, mate. 2 20...Kh5 loses to 21 Qg4+ Kh6 22 Qg7+ Kh5 23 Qh7, mate.
649. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Rxg7+ Kxg7 25 Rg1+ Kf6 26 Qf4+ Rf5 27 e5+ dxe5. How does White win here?

1 24...Kf8 loses to 25 Qh6, e.g., 25...Ba4 26 Rg8+ Kxg8 27 Rg1+ Kh8 28 Qf8, mate. 2 25...Kf8 loses to 26 Qh6+ Ke8 27 Rg8, mate, while 25...Kh8 loses to 26 Qh6, when White threatens mate in three different ways — 27 Qg7, 27 Qf6, and 27 Qf8, mate.

650. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Bxf5 exf5 25 Rxg7+ Kxg7 26 Rg1+ Kh8 27 Bg5+ Ke6. What is White's best move here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 25...Kh8 loses to 26 Qxh5+ Kxg7 27 Qh6+ Kg8 28 Rg1+ Qg5 29 Rxg5, mate. 2 26...Kh7/Kh8 27 Qxh5 is mate. 3 25...Kh6 loses to 26 Qh8, mate, while 25...Rg6 26 Rxg6+ Kh7 27 Qg8 is mate.

651. Black is up a pawn, but his King is vulnerable. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Qe8+ Kxe8 24 Rxg7+ Kg8 25 Rg1+ Kh7. How does White win here?

1 23 Rxg7+ immediately allows Black's King to escape to the center of the board, e.g., 23...Kxg7 24 Rg1+ Kf8 25 Qh8+ Ke7 26 Rg7+ Rf7, when White is down a Rook but can draw with 27 Qh4+ Kf8 28 Qh8+ Ke7 29 Qh4+. 2 23...Rf8 loses to 24 Rxg7 Kxg7 25 Rg1+, e.g., 25...Kh8/Kh7 26 Qh5, mate, 25...Kh6 26 Qg6, mate; or 25...Kf6 26 Qxf8, mate. 3 25...Kh6 loses to 26 Qh8, mate, while 25...Rg6 26 Rgx6+ Kh7 27 Qg8 is mate.

652. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Rxg7+ Kxg7 20 Rg1+ Kh8 21 Nxe7 Qxe7. How does White win here?

1 19...Kh8 loses to 20 Rfx7+ Kxh7 21 Nxf6+ Bxf6 22 Qh5+ Kg8 23 Rg1+, e.g., 23...Bxg7 24 Rxg7, mate or 23...Bg5+ 24 Rxf5+ Qxf5+ 25 Qxf5+ Kh7 26 Qg7, mate. 2 20...Kh6 21 Be3 is mate. 3 In order to draw Black's Queen off of the back rank (1-0). 21 Qg4 also wins, but it entails a Queen sacrifice, e.g., 21...Rg8 22 Nxe7 Rxg4 23 Bxf6+ Rg7 24 Bxg7, mate. 4 21...Rg8 loses to 22 Bxf6+ Rg7 23 Bxg7, mate.
653. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Rxg7+ Kxg7 20 Rg1+ Kh8 21 Qg4 Nxg4 22 Nf7+ Kg8. How does White win here?

1 20...Kh6 loses to 21 Qe3 with the threat of 22 Qh3+.

654. White is down a pawn and his Bd3 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Rxg7+ Kxg7 18 Rg1+ Kh8 19 Qxh7+ Ke8 20 Rg8+ Qf8 21 Rxf8+ Rx8. What is the material balance?

1 17...Kh8 loses to 18 Qg5, e.g., 18...Qd6 19 Rg8+ Ke7 20 Qg7+ Ke6 21 Re8+ Qe7 22 Qxe7, mate. 2 18...Kh8 loses to 19 Nf7+ Rxf7 20 Qxf7, with mate next move, while 18...Rg6 loses to 19 Rxf6+, e.g., 19...hx6 20 Qxg6+, with mate next move, or 19...Kh8 20 Qh6+ Ke8 21 Qxh7+ Ke8 22 Rg6+ Qf8 23 Qf7+ Kd8 24 Rxf8, mate. 3 White threatens 20 Rg8, mate. 4 White is up a pawn after 19...Be6 20 Qg7+ Ke8 21 Qxf6. 5 20...Rf8 loses to 21 Qf7+ Kd8 22 Rxf8+.

655. Visualize the position after the moves 25 Rxg7+ Kxg7 26 Rg1+ Kh8 27 Qg5 Qf8. How does White win here?

1 26...Kh6 loses to 21 Qe3 with the threat of 22 Qh3+.

656. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Rxg7+ Kxg7 23 Rg1+ Qg6 24 Rg6+ hxg6 25 Bh6+ Kxh6 26 Qxf8+ Kg5 27 Qxf7. What is the material balance?

1 22...Kh8 23 Qxf8 is mate. 2 23...Kh8 loses to 24 Qf8, mate, while 23...Kf6 loses to 24 Qh4+ Kg5 25 Qg4+ Kf6 26 Qg5, mate.
657. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxg7+ Kxg7 22 Rg1+ Kf7 23 Bg6+ Kg8 24 Qe7+ Kh8 25 Bc2. What is White’s threat and how does White win after either 25...Rg8 or 25...Nh5?

1 22...Kh8 loses to 23 Qe7, threatening 24 Qg7, mate, and if 22...Rg8 then 23 Bxf6+ Nxf6 24 Qxf6+ Rg7 25 Qxg7 is mate. 2 Black resigned in this position. White's threat is 25 Bc2+ (or anywhere else) Kh8 26 Qg7, mate.

658. Black is threatening to play 20...a4, trapping White's Bb3. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rxg7+ Kxg7 21 Rg1+ Kf6 22 Bg5+ Ke5 23 Be7+ Rf5. How does White win here?

1 21...Kh8 loses to 22 Qg5 (1-0), threatening 23 Qg7, mate, and if 22...Rf7 then 23 Qg8 is mate. 2 22 Bd4+ Ke7 lets Black's King get away, when White is down a Rook for a pawn and has to contend with 26...a4. 3 22...Kg8 loses to 23 Bb4+ Kh8 24 Qg5, threatening 25 Qg7, mate, and if 24...Rf7 then 25 Qg8 is mate, while 25...Kf5 loses to 23 Bb4+, e.g., 23...Kf4 24 Bg3+ Ke4 25 Re1, mate, or 23...Kc4 24 Re1+ Kf4 25 Bg3, mate. 4 23...Kf4 loses to 24 Qg4+ Ke5 25 Re1, mate, while 23...Ke4 loses to 24 Re1+ Kf4 25 Qg5+ Kf3 26 Qg3, mate.

659. White's Rook and Knight are under attack, but Black's King is defenseless. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Rxe7+ Kxe7 24 Rg1+ Kg8 25 Rxe4+ Kh6 26 Qh6+ Ke7 27 Qg7+ Ke6 28 Qf7+ Kd6. How does White win here?

1 24...Kh8 loses to 25 Qh6, mate, while 24...Kf6 25 Qh6+ Ke7 26 Qg7+ Kd6 is similar to the game.

660. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Rgx7 Kxg7 17 Rg1+ Ng4 18 Rgx4+ Bg5 19 Rxg5+ Kh8 20 Rh5 f5 21 Qh6 Qe7. How does White win here?

1 17...Kh8 loses to 18 Qh6, intending 19 Qg7, mate, and if 18...Rg8 then 19 Nxf7 is mate. 2 18...Kh8 loses to 19 Qh6, threatening both 20 Qxh7 and Qg7, mate. 3 19...Kh6 loses to 20 Ng4, mate, while 19...Kf6 20 Nc6 Qd6 loses to 21 Qe5+ Qxe5 22 dxe5, mate. 4 20...Qf6 loses to 21 Rhx7+ Kg8 22 Qg1+.
661. White is down a pawn and two of his pieces are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Rg4 fxe5 17 Rxg7+ Kxg7 18 Rg3+ Kh8 19 Bd3 Rf5 20 Bxf5 exf5. How does White win here?

1 16...bxc4 17 Rxg7+ Kxg7 18 Rg3+ Kh8 loses to either 19 Qh6 with 20 Qg7, mate or 19 Qf7 Rxf7 20 Nxf7, mate. 2 17...Kh8 18 Qxh7 is mate. 3 18...Kf6 19 Qf3 is mate, while 18...Bg5 loses to 19 Qxg5+ Kf7 (19...Kh8 20 Qg7, mate) 20 Qh5+.

4 Black can get out of it by giving up his Queen with 19...e4 20 Bxe4 Rf5 21 Bxf5 exf5 22 Qf7 Qxg3.

662. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Rxg7 Kxg7 19 Rg1+ Kh7 20 Ng5+ Kh8 21 Ne6 Nh7 22 Qxh6 Rg8. How does White win here?

1 18...Ng8 loses to 19 Rdg1, e.g., 19...b4 20 Rxg8+ Rg8 21 Qxh6, mate. 2 19...Kh8 loses to 20 Qxh6+ Nh7 21 Qg7, mate. 3 20...hxg5 21 Qxg5 threatens both 22 Qg7, mate and 22 Qh4+, mating. 4 21...fxe6 loses to 22 Qxh6 Nb7 23 Qg7, mate. 21...Kh7 loses to 22 Rg7+ Kh8 23 Qxh6+ Nh7 24 Qxh7, mate, and 21...Ng8 loses to 22 Qg2 with 23 Qg7, mate.

663. White is up a piece for two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rxg7 Kxg7 21 Rg1+ Kh8 22 Bh6 Rg8 23 Rxg8+ Kxg8 24 Nxe7+ Qxe7. How does White win here?

1 20...Re5 loses to 21 Nxe7 Qxe7 22 Bxd6, while 20...Nxd5 loses to 21 Rg8+ Kxg8 22 Rg1+, e.g., 22...Bg5 23 Bxg5 (23 Rxg5+ Qxg5 24 Bxg5 wins Black's Queen but gives Black two Rook and a pawn for a Queen and Bishop), and now: a) 23...f6 24 Bxf6+ Kf7 25 Bh5 is mate or 23...Qb6+ 24 Qxb6 Nxb6 25 Bf6, mate. 2 23...Qxg8 loses to 24 Nxe7, with the dual threat of 25 Qxf6+ and 25 Nxg8.

664. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxg7+ Kxg7 22 Rg1+ Kf6 23 Qh4+ Kf7 24 Qh7+ Kf6 25 Qg7+ Kf5. How does White win here?

1 21...Kf8 22 Qh8 is mate. 2 22...Kf8 loses to 23 Qh7, e.g., 23...Ne7 24 Qh8+ Kf7 (24...Ng8 25 Rg7 with 26 Qxg8, mate) 25 Rg7+ Kf6 26 Qg8+, when White doesn't have to win Black's Queen on his next move, but can mate after either 26...Kf7 27 Qg7, mate or 26...Kf5 27 Qe5, mate. 3 23...Kf5 loses to 24 Qg4+ Kf6 25 Qg7+ Kf5 26 Qg6+ Kf4 27 Qg4, mate. 4 24...Ke8/Kf8 loses to 25 Rg8, mate.
**665.** White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Rxg7 Kxg7 17 Rg1+ Ng4 18 Rg4+ Bg5 19 Rxg5+ Kh8 20 Rh5 f5 21 Qh6 Qe7. How does White win here?

1 16...Rg8 drops the Queen to 17 Rxh7+ Nhx7 18 Nxf7+. 2 17 Qg5+ is also good, e.g., 17...Kh8 18 Rg1 Ng4 (18...Rg8 19 Nxf7 is mate) 19 Qxg4 Bg5+ 20 hxg5, when White has two pieces for the Rook and threatens 21 Qe4 with 22 Qh7, mating. 3 17...Kh8 loses to 18 Qh6 (1-0), intending 19 Qg7, mate, and if 18...Rg8 then 19 Nxf7 is mate. 4 Other moves lose to 21 Rxh7+ Kg8 22 Qg1+.

**666.** White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Rxg7+ Kxg7 18 Rg1+ Kf6 19 Nc5 Qe7 20 Qxf8 Qxg1 21 Ne4+ Kg5 22 Qxf7+ Kg4. How does White win here?

1 17...Kh8 18 Qxf8 is mate. 2 18...Kh8 loses to 19 Qxf8, mate, while 18...Kb6 loses to 19 Qxf8+ Kh5 with either 20 Rg5+ Kh4 21 Rh6, mate or 20 Qxf7 with 21 Qh7, mate. 3 White’s threat is 20 Ne4+ Kg5 21 Rg5, mate, but 19 Qxf8 is also good. 4 20 Ne4+ Qxe4 21 Bxe4 gives Black a Rook and Knight for the Queen. 5 Black resigned here. 21...Kg6 22 Qg8+ wins Black’s Queen.

**667.** Visualize the position after the moves 23 Rxg7+ Kxg7 24 Rg1+ Kf6 25 Qg5+ Kg7 26 Qf7+ Ke8 27 Qh7 Rf6 28 Rg8+ Qf8 29 Rxh8+ Kxh8. What is the material balance and how does White win here?

1 24...Kf8 loses to 25 Qh7 with 26 Rg8, mate.

**668.** Visualize the position after the moves 22 Rxg7+ Kxg7 23 Rg1+ Kh8 24 Nf4 Rg8 25 Ng6+ Rxe6 26 fxe6 Qg8 27 g7+ Qxg7 28 Rxf7 Kxg7. What is the material balance and how does White win here?

1 22...Kh8 23 Qxh7, mate. 2 23...Kf7 24 Qh5, mate. 3 24...Rf7 drops the Queen to 25 Ng6+ Kg8 26 Nxe7+. 
CHAPTER 23. THE SEQUENCE 1 Rxg7+ Kxg7 2 MISCELLANEOUS

This chapter contains exercises involving the sequence 1 Rxg7+ Kxg7 followed by a move other than an immediate check along the g-file, when White has sacrificed a Rook for a pawn, but has opened the g-file and has weakened the squares around Black's King.

In Diagram 1, after the moves 1 Rxg7 Kxg7, White wins with 2 Nf5+ (see Diagram 2), with a forced mate in all variations, e.g., 2...Kf6 3 Qh6, mate; 2...Kg8 3 Qg4+ with Qg7, mate; or 2...Kh7 3 Qh6+ Kg8 4 Qg7, mate.

Diagram 1

Diagram 2

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. Winning with a Discovered Check
2. Mating Black’s King on f6
3. Mating Black’s King on h6
4. Winning with a Pawn on f6
5. Winning with a Knight on f5
6. Winning with a Bishop on h6
7. Winning with a Bishop on h6 and a Queen on h5
8. Black Refuses to Take White’s Rg7

These themes are illustrated using thirty-six preparatory positions, which are followed by twenty visualization exercises ranging in depth from five to fifteen ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply:</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Exercises:

- Diagram 1: 1 Rxg7 Kxg7
  - 2 Nf5+ (Diagram 2)
  - 2...Kf6 3 Qh6, mate
  - 2...Kg8 3 Qg4+ with Qg7, mate
  - 2...Kh7 3 Qh6+ Kg8 4 Qg7, mate
1. Winning with a Discovered Check

1414 [VX-675]. White wins with 23 Rg4+ Kh6 24 Qh3, mate.

1415 [VX-669]. White wins Black’s Queen with either 20 Rxf7+ or 20 Rg4.

1416 [VX-676]. After 22 e6+ d4 both Queen are under attack, but White wins with 23 Qg3+ (1-0) Kh7 24 exd7.

2. Mating Black’s King on f6

1417 [VX-684]. 22 Qg5 is mate.

1418 [VX-685]. 26 Qg6 is mate.

1419 [VX-681]. 22 Qxh6 is mate.

3. Mating Black’s King on h6

1420 [VX-683]. White wins with 19 Qxf6+ Kh5 20 Bf3, mate.

1421 [VX-677]. White wins with 21 Qf6+ Kh5 22 Bd1/g4, mate.

1422 [VX-680]. White wins with 22 Qf6+ Kh5 23 Bf3+ Qg4 24 Bxg4, mate.
4. Winning with a Pawn on f6

1423 [VX-671]. White wins by attacking h7 along the b1-h7 diagonal with 22 f6+, e.g., 22...Qxf6 23 Qxh7, mate or 22...Kg8 23 Qxh7, mate.

5. Winning with a Knight on f5

1426 [VX-672]. White wins with 22 Qg4+ with Qg7, mate.

6. Winning with a Bishop on h6

1429 [VX-685]. 28 Bh6 is mate.

1430 [VX-677]. White wins with 21 Qf6+ Kg8 22 Qg7, mate.

1431 [VX-677]. White wins with 21 Qg4+ Kh8 22 Qg7, mate.
1432 [VX-686]. White wins with 24 Qg5, with mate on g7 (1-0), e.g., 24...Rg8 25 Qf6+ Rg7 26 Qxg7, mate, or 24...Bg6 25 Qf6+ Kg8 26 Qxg7, mate.

1433 [VX-680]. White wins with 22 Qf6 (1-0), when the only way that Black can stop the mate on g7 is with 22...Bh2+ 23 Kxh2 Qxd4 24 Qxd4 f6, when White has a Queen and Bishop for a Rook and pawn.

1434 [VX-683]. White's Queen is under attack, but wins with 18 Bh6+, e.g., a) 18...Kxh6 19 Qxf6+ Kh5 20 Bf3, mate; b) 18...Kg8 19 Qxf6 with 20 Qg7, mate; or c) 18...Kg6 19 Be4+ and now: 19...Kxh6 20 Qxf6+ Kh5 21 Bf3, mate or 19...Kh5 20 Qxf6 Kg4 21 Qh4, mate.

7. Winning with a Bishop on h6 and a Queen on h5

1435 [VX-684]. White wins with 22 Qg5+ Kh8 23 Qg7, mate.

1436 [VX-688]. White wins with 23 Qg4+, with mate on g7.

1437 [VX-685]. White wins with 26 Qg6+ Kh8 27 Qg7, mate.

1438 [VX-678]. White wins with 22 Bd2+ Kg8 23 Rg4+, e.g., 23...Bxg4 24 Qxf7+ Kh8 25 Ng6, mate.

1439 [VX-678]. White wins with 22 Rg4+ (1-0) Bxg4 (22...Kh8 23 Bd2 is mate) 23 Qxf7+ Kh8 24 Qg7/Ng6, mate.

1440 [VX-685]. White wins Black's Queen with 26 Bf4+ Kg8 27 Qg6+ Kh8 (27...Kf8 28 Bb6, mate) 28 Bxe5+ Bf6 29 Bxf6+ Qxf6 30 Qxf6+. 
1441 [VX-687]. White wins with 15 Qf7, when the threat of Qg7, mate, forces 15...Ne6, which weakens h7 and allows 16 Ng5.

1442 [VX-687]. White wins with 16 Rg1+, e.g., 16...Kh8 17 Qf7 Ne6 18 Bg7+ Nxg7 19 Qxg7, mate, or 16...Ng6 17 Rxg6+ hxg6 18 Qxg6+ Kh8 19 Qg7, mate.

1443 [VX-684]. Here 22 Bxf8+ Kg8 23 Bh6 is not so good, as Black is up a piece for a pawn and can defend g5 with 23...Qe7, but White can win with 22 Bg5+ (1-0), e.g., 22...Kg8 23 Bf6 with 24 Qh8, mate or 22...Ng6 23 Rxg6+ Kh8 24 Qg7, mate.

8. Black Refuses to Take White’s Rg7

1444 [VX-677]. White wins with 20 Rxh7+ Kg8 21 Qg4, mate.

1445 [VX-680]. White wins with 21 Rxe6+ Kg8 22 Qf6 with 23 Qg7, mate.

1446 [VX-673]. White wins with 25 f6 and 26 Qh4, when Black is forced to gives up his Queen for White’s Rg7.

1447 [VX-679]. 24 Qh5 Kxg7 25 Nxe6+ wins Black’s Queen.

1448 [VX-687]. White wins with 14 Rfxh7+ Kxh7 15 Ng5, mating, e.g., 15...Kg8 16 Qxh7 Kf8 17 Qf7, mate.

1449 [VX-675]. White wins Black’s Queen with 23 Rxe7+ Kxe7 24 Rh4+ Kg6 25 Qxe5, when White is up a Queen for a Rook.
669. Black's Nh5 is overworked. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Rxg7+ Nxg7\(^1\) 20 Nf6+ Qxf6 21 Qxf6. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) Now Black's Qf4 is undefended, but 19...Kh8 drops the Queen to 20 Rxf7+ or 20 Rg4.

670. White is down a pawn, but Black's Rf6 is tied to the defense of the Qf4. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxg7+\(^R\) Kxg7\(^1\) 22 Ne6+ Rx6\(^2\) 23 Qxf4. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) 21...Kh8 drops the Ne7 to 22 Qxf4 Rxf4 23 Rxe7, while 21...Kf8 drops a Rook to 22 Qxf4 Rxf4 23 Ne6+ Ke8 24 Nxf4. \(^2\) Otherwise White plays 23 Nxf4.

671. White's Queen on h4 and pawn e3 are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxg7+\(^R\) Kxg7\(^1\) 22 f6+ Qxf6\(^2\). How does White win here?

\(^1\) 21...Kh8 loses to 22 Qxh7, mate. \(^2\) 22...Kg8 23 Qxh7 is mate.

672. White's Queen and Knight are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rxg7+\(^R\) Kxg7\(^1\) 21 Nf5+ Kf6\(^2\). How does White win here?

\(^1\) 20...Kh8 21 Qh6 is mate. \(^2\) 21...Kg8 loses to 22 Qg4+ with Qg7, mate, while 21...Kh7 loses to 22 Qh6+ Kg8 23 Qg7, mate.
673. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Rxg7 Rg8 25 Rxg8+ 2 Rxg8 26 f6 Qd8. What is the material balance? 

1. 24...Kxg7 loses the Queen to 25 f6+. The actual game continued 24...Qf8 25 f6+, when 26 Qh4 threatens mate on h7 and forces Black to give up his Queen on g7. 2. 25 f6 is also good.

674. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Rxg7+ 1 Kxg7 20 f6+ Qxf6 21 exf6+ Kxf6. What is the material balance? 

1. Black resigned here. 2. 19...Kh8 loses to 20 f6, for example, 20...Qd8 21 Rh7+ Kg8 22 Qg4, mate or 20...Nxf6 21 exf6 Qxf6 22 Rh7+ Kg8 23 Qg4+ Qg5 24 Bxg5.

675. White is down two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Rxg7 23 Rxh7+ Kxh7 24 Rh4+ Kg6 25 Qxe5. What is the material balance? 

1. White threatens both 23 Rh4 and 23 Rxh7+ Kxh7 24 Rg4+ Kg6 with 25 Qg7/Qh3, mate. 2. 22...Kxg7 loses to 23 Rg4+ Kh6 24 Qh3, mate. The actual game continued 22...Qxh2 23 Rxf7 Qg1+ 24 Rd1+ (1-0), when White wins Black's Queen, e.g., 24...Kg8 25 Rxf8+ Rxf8 26 Rxa1+.

676. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxg7+ Kxg7 22 e6+ d4. Both Queen are under attack. How does White win Black's Queen without losing his own? 

1. 21...Kh8 is met by 22 e6, with multiple threats.
677. White is down a pawn, but Black’s King is defenseless. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Rxg7+ Kxg7 20 Bh6+ Kh8. How does White win here?

1 19..Kh8 loses to 20 Rxe6 Qxe6+ 21 Kf1, mate. 2 20..Kg7 loses to 21 Qg4+ Kh8 22 Qg7, mate.

678. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rxg7+ Kxg7 21 Bxh6+ Kg8 22 Rxh6+ Kf8 23 Bxg7+ Kh8 24 Kf1. How does White mate in two?

1 21...Kg7 loses to 22 Bd2+ Kf8 23 Rg4+, e.g., 23...Bxg4 24 Qxg4+ Kh8 25 Nh5, mate. 2 22...Kh8 loses to 23 Bd2, mate.

679. White's c-pawn is under attack, but Black's e-pawn is weak. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Rg6 Qxc5 23 Rxg7+ Kh8. How does White win here?

1 Better is 22...Kh7 23 Rxe6 Qxe5, when e6 is occupied by White's Rook, not his Knight. 2 23..Kxg7 drops the Queen to 24 Nxe6+.

680. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rxg7+ Kxg7 21 Bh6+ Kg8 22 Qf6+ Kh7 23 Bf3+ Qg6 24 Bxg6, mate. How does White win here?

1 20..Kh8 21 Rxe6 Qxe6+ 22 Qxe6+ Kh8 23 Bf3+ Qg4 24 Bxg4, mate. 2 21..Kxh6 loses to 22 Qf6+ Kh5 23 Bf3+ Qg4 24 Bxg4, mate. 3 The only way to stop the mate on g7.
681. White is down a pawn and his Bh4 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Rxg7+ Kxg7 20 Bf6+ Bxf6 21 exf6+ Kg8 22 Qxh6 Qxe1+ 23 Bf1 Qe3+ 24 Qxe3. What is the material balance?

1 21...Kxf6 loses to 22 Qxh6, mate, while 21...Kh8 loses to 22 Qxh6+ Kg8 23 Qg7/Qh7, mate. 2 The only way to stop 24 Qg7, mate.

682. White is up a pawn, but two of his pieces are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Rxg7 Kxg7 20 Nf6 21 exf6+ Bxf6 22 Rg1+ Kh8 23 Bd3 24 Qxf3. What is the material balance?

1 White gives up a pawn to clear the b1-h7 diagonal. 2 20...Bxf6 21 Rg1+ Kh8 22 Bd3 also forces Black to give up his Queen with 22...Qxf3+ 23 Qxf3, when White is up a Queen and pawn for a Rook after 23...Bxc2 and 23...Nxe3 loses to 24 Bxh7, e.g., 24...Bg7 25 Qh5 Rd8 26 Qg8 27 Bb1 with 28 Qb4/Qh5+ Bh6 29 Qxh6, mate. 3 The threat of mate on h7 forces Black to give up his Queen. Black resigned here.

683. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Rxf7 Kxe4 17 Nxf6 Bxf6 18 Bh6+ Kg6 19 Be4+ Kxf6. How does White mates in two?

1 The actual game continued 16...Qd8 17 Rg5 Bc6 18 Nd6 (1-0), when play might continue 18...Bxg2 19 Kxg2 Rc8 20 Rd1, when 20...Rxc2 loses to 21 Nxf7+ Rxf7 22 Qxd8+ Bxd8 23 Rxd8+, with mate to follow. 2 18...Kxh6 loses to 19 Qxf6+ Kh5 20 Bf3, mate. 3 19...Kh5 loses to 20 Qxf6 with 21 Qh4, mate.

684. White has sacrificed a Bishop on h7 to get this position. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rxf7+ Kxf7 21 Bh6+ Kh7 22 Bg5+ Kg7. How does White mate in three?

1 21...Kh8 doesn't change anything, while 21...Kf6 loses to 22 Qg5, mate and 21...Kg8 loses to 22 Qg5+ Kh8 23 Qg7, mate. 2 Black resigned here. This is better than 22 Bxf8+ Kg8 23 Bh6, when Black is up a piece for a pawn and can play 23...Qe7, defending g5. 3 22...Kg8 loses to 23 Bf6 with 24 Qh8, mate.
685. White is down a piece for a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 24 Rxg7+ Kxg7 25 Bh6+1 Kh82 26 Bf4+ Kg8 27 Qg6+. How does White win after the moves 27...Kf8 and 27...Kh8?

1 Black resigned here. This is better than 25 Qg6+, since after 25...Kh8 Black is threatening to skewer White's Queen and King with 26...Rg8. 2 25...Kh7 and 25...Kf6 both lose to 26 Qg6+.

686. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 22 Rxg7+ Kxg7 23 Bh6+ Kg8 24 Qg5+ Bg6 25 Qf6 Nf5 26 Bxf7+ Bxf7 27 Rg1+ Bg6. White is down a Rook, but can draw the game. How?

1 Moving the King to f8 or h8 loses another pawn to 24 Rxf7. 2 Best. 23...Kg6 loses to 24 Qg5, mate, while 23...Kh8 allows 24 Qg5, with mate on g7 (1-0), e.g., 24...Bg6 25 Qf6+ Kg8 26 Qg7, mate or 24...Rg8 25 Qf6+ Rg7 26 Qxg7, mate.

687. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Rxg7+ Kxg7 14 Bh6+1 Kg82 15 Nxd5 Nxd5 16 Rg1+ Kh8 17 Qf7 Ne6. How does White mate in two?

1 13...Kh8 loses to 14 Rhx7+ Nhx7 15 Ng5, with mate to follow. 2 14 Rgl+ can be met by 14...Nge6. 3 14...Kh8 loses to 15 Qf7, when the threat of Qg7, mate, forces 15...Ne6, which weakens h7 and allows 16 Ng5. 4 15 Rgl+ can be met by 15...Ng6. 15 Nxd5 was played to draw one of Black's Knights away from g6. 5 15...Qxd5 drops the Re8 (1-0, 19). 6 16...Ng6 loses to 17 Rgxg6+ hxg6 18 Qxg6+ Kh8 19 Qg7, mate.

688. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Rxg7+ Kxg7 22 Bxh6+ Kh8 23 Nf6+ Kg8 24 exf6 Qxf6 25 Bg5+ Kh8 26 Bxf6+ Kxf6. What is the material balance and how does White win here?

1 22...Kh8 23 Nf6 transposes, while 22...Kg8 loses to 23 Qg4+, with mate on g7. 2 White can win Black's Queen with 23 Bg5+ Kg8 24 Bxe7 Bxe7, but that leaves White with only a Queen and two pawns for a Rook and Bishop. 3 The only move to avoid mate, e.g., 24...Qd7 loses to 25 Bg7+ Kg8 26 Qh8, mate.
CHAPTER 24. THE SEQUENCE 1 Bxh6 gxh6 2 Qxh6

This chapter contains exercises involving the sequence 1 Bxh6 gxh6 2 Qxh6, when White has sacrificed a piece for two pawns, but has opened up the g-file, weakened the squares around Black's King, and obtained a dominant Queen on h6.

In Diagram 1, after the moves 1 Bxh6 gxh6 2 Qxh6 (see Diagram 2), White threatens mate with either

a) 3 Rg3+ Qg5 2 Rxg5, mate;
b) 3 Qh7+ Kf8 2 Qxf7, mate; or
c) 3 Bh7+ Kh8 2 Nxf7, mate.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. Winning Black’s Queen with a Discovered Check
2. Winning Black’s Queen with Nxf6
3. Queen-Knight Mate on g7
4. Queen-Knight Mate on f7
5. Queen-Bishop Mate on h7
6. Queen-Bishop Mate on h7 (Mate in Five Moves)
7. Queen-Bishop-Knight Mate
8. Rook Lifts to the h-file
9. Rook Lifts to the g-file
10. Miscellaneous Rook Lifts
11. Black Plays ...f5
12. Miscellaneous Mates
13. Defends

These themes are illustrated using seventy-five preparatory positions, which are followed by thirty-six visualization exercises ranging in depth from five to eighteen ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply:</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Winning Black’s Queen with a Discovered Check

1450 [VX-702]. 18 Nxf7+ wins Black’s Queen.

1451 [VX-702]. 22 Ng4+ wins Black’s Queen.

1452 [VX-698]. White can win Black’s Queen with 20 Qg5+ Kh8 21 Nxf7+ Rxf7 22 Qxa5.

2. Winning Black’s Queen with Nxf6

1453 [VX-715]. White wins Black’s Queen with 19 Nxf6+, threatening 20 Qh7, mate.

1454 [VX-718]. White wins with 21 Nce4 Bxe4 22 Nxe4 Nxf5 (this attacks White’s Qh6; 22...Nxe4 loses to 23 Qh7, mate) 23 Nxf6+ Qxf6 24 Qxf6, when White is up a Queen and pawn for two pieces.

1455 [VX-722]. White wins with 17 Ne7+ (1-0) Kh7 18 Qg7, mate.

3. Queen-Knight Mate on g7

1456 [VX-693]. White wins with 20 Qxh6+ Kg8 21 Qg7, mate.

1457 [VX-697]. White wins with 16 Ne7+ (1-0) Kh7 17 Qg7, mate.

1458 [VX-692]. White wins with 15 Nh5 (1-0), threatening 16 Qg7, mate, and if 15...Nhx5 then 16 Qh7 is mate.
4. Queen-Knight Mate on f7

1459 [VX-701]. White wins with either 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Qxf7, mate, or 17 Bh7+ Kh8 18 Nxf7, mate.

1460 [VX-718]. White wins with 19 Nce4, threatening 20 Nxf6+ Bxf6 21 Qh7, mate, and if 19...Re8 then White wins with 20 Nxf6+ Bxf6 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Qxf7, mate.

1461 [VX-721]. White wins with 20 Rg4+ fxg4 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Qh8+ Kf7 23 Ne5, mate.

5. Queen-Bishop Mate on h7

1462 [VX-714]. White wins with 19 Qh7+ Kf8 20 Qh8, mate.

1463 [VX-702]. White wins with 22 Qxg5+ Kh8 23 Qh6+ Kg8 24 Qh7, mate.

1464 [VX-709]. White can give up his Rook to bring his Qd2 into the attack with 16 Rh8+ (1-0) Kxh8 (16...Kg7 17 Qh6, mate) 17 Qh6+ Kg8 18 Qh7, mate.

1465 [VX-719]. White wins with 18 Rxf6, threatening 19 Qh7, mate, although Black can avoid mate by giving up his Queen with 18...Qxd3 19 cxd3 Bxf6 20 Qxf6, when White is up a Queen for a Rook.

1466 [VX-695]. White wins with 20 Nd7 (1-0), when 20...Qc7 loses to 21 Nxf6+ Bxf6 22 Qh7, mate and 20...Ne4 drops the Queen to 21 Nxb8.

1467 [VX-705]. White wins with 16 Ne6 Bxe6 17 Rg3+Bg4 18 Rxg4+ Nxg4 19 Qh7, mate.
6. Queen-Bishop Mate on h7 (Mate in Five Moves)

1468 [VX-715]. Black’s Nf6 is undefended, giving White a mate in five with 23 Qg5+ Kh8 24 Qxf6+ Kg8 25 Qg5+ Kh8 26 Qh6+ Kg8 27 Qh7, mate.

1469 [VX-698]. White wins with 20 Nxd7, when 20...Nxd7 21 Qh7 is mate, while after 20...Bxd7 Black’s Nf6 is undefended, giving White a mate in five with 21 Qg5+ Kh8 22 Qxf6+ Kg8 23 Qg5+ Kh8 24 Qh6+ Kg8 25 Qh7, mate.

1470 [VX-723]. Black’s Qd8 is tied to the defense of the Nf6, allowing White wins to win a piece with 18 Rxd6, since 18...Qxd6 undefends the Nf6 and loses to 19 Qg5+ Kh8 20 Qxf6+ Kg8 21 Qg5+ Kh8 22 Qh6+ Kg8 23 Qh7, mate.

7. Queen-Bishop-Knight Mate

1471 [VX-705]. White wins with 14 Bh7+, e.g., 14...Kh8 15 Nxf7, mate or 14...Nxh7 15 Qxh7 Kf8 16 Qh8/Qxf7, mate.

1472 [VX-718]. White wins with 19 Bh7+, e.g., 19...Kh8 20 Nxf7, mate or 19...Nxh7 20 Qxh7 Kf8 21 Qh8/Qxf7, mate.

1473 [VX-723]. White wins with 19 Bh7+, e.g., 19...Kh8 20 Nxf7, mate or 19...Nxh7 20 Qxh7 Kf8 21 Qxf7+.

8. Rook Lifts to the h-file

1474 [VX-723]. White wins with 19 Rd4 and 20 Rh4, with mate to follow.

1475 [VX-696]. White wins with 20 Qxh6+ Kg8 21 Qg5+ Kh7 22 Rh6, mate.

1476 [VX-723]. White wins with 21 Qg5+ Kh8 22 Rxe4, threatening 23 Rh5+, when 22...Nxe4 drops the Queen to 23 Qxe7.
1477 [VX-720]. White wins with 18 Qxh6, intending either 19 Qh8, mate or 19 Qg5, mate.

1478 [VX-707]. White wins with 19 Re3, threatening both a) 20 Rh3 with Qh8, mate and b) 20 Qg5+ Kh8 21 Rh3+ Nh5 22 Rxe5, mate.

1479 [VX-707]. White wins with 19 Re5 Ne4 (the only way to avoid mate is with 19...Qd5, when 20 Rxd5 exd5 gives Black a Rook and Knight for a Queen and pawn) 20 Rh5 (1-0), threatening both 21 Qh8 and 21 Qh7, mate, e.g., 20...Re8 21 Qh8, mate or 20...Bf6 21 Qh7, mate.

9. Rook Lifts to the g-file

1480 [VX-703]. White wins with 19 Rd3 (1-0) Ng5 20 Rg3, when Black can't stop Rxg5, winning Black's Queen.

1481 [VX-710]. White wins with 20 Rg6+ Kh8/Kf7 21 Qg7, mate (1-0).

1482 [VX-704]. 16 Re5 threatens 17 Rg5, mate, although Black can prevent mate with 16...Qd5 17 Rg5+ Qxg5 18 Qxg5+, when White has a Queen and two pawns for a Rook and two pieces.

1483 [VX-718]. White wins with 18 Ng5, e.g., 18...Nxd4 19 Re3 Rxc3 20 Nxe6 (White threatens both Qg7 and Nxd8) fxe6 21 Rg3+ Kf7 22 Qg6, mate.

1484 [VX-709]. White wins with 14 Rg4+ Kh8 15 Qd2, intending 16 Qxh6, mate, when 15...Qe6 loses to 16 Bg6, e.g., 16...fxg6 17 Qxh6+ Kg8 18 Rxg6+, winning Black's Queen.

1485 [VX-721]. White can win Black's Queen with 18 Re5 Qxc2 19 Rg5+ Qg6 20 Rxg6+ fxg6 21 Qxg6+, and then the exchange with 21...Kh8 22 Ne5, when 23 Nf7 Rxh7 24 Qxf7 gives White a Queen and two pawns for three pieces.
10. Miscellaneous Rook Lifts

1486 [VX-714]. White can win with either a) 19 Rh4 with Qh8, mate or b) 19 Rg4+ Nxg4 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Qh8, mate.

1487 [VX-708]. White wins with 20 Qxg6+, e.g., 20...Kf8 21 Rf3+ Ke7 22 Qg7/Rf7, mate, or 20...Kh8 21 Qxh6+ Kg8 22 Rg3+ Kf7 23 Qg7, mate.

1488 [VX-723]. White wins with 17 Qg5+ Kh8 18 Rad1, e.g., 18...Qb6 19 Rd4, when the threat of 20 Rh4, mate wins Black's Queen or 18...Nh7 19 Qh6, attacking both h7 and d8.

1489 [VX-699]. 19 Ng5 gives White a forced mate, e.g., a) 19...hxg5 20 Qxg5+ Kh7 21 Re4 (1-0), when Black can't stop Rh4, mate, or b) 19...Kg7 20 Qh7+ Kf6 21 Qxh6+ Kf5 22 g4+ Kf4 23 Qf6, mate.

1490 [VX-705]. White wins with 15 Re4, e.g., 15...Qd5 16 Rh4 with mate on h8 or 15...Nxg4 16 Qh7, mate. Best is 15...Qxe4 16 Bxe4, when White has a Queen and pawn for a Rook and Bishop.

1491 [VX-716]. White wins with 17 Rd3 (1-0) Ng4 18 Bxg4, e.g., a) 18...Bxg4 19 Nd5 Qe6 20 Nf6+, winning Black's Queen, or b) 15...Qf8 19 Qh5 Ne7 20 Bf5 Ng6 21 Bxg6 fxg6 22 Rg3, threatening 23 Qxg6+ Kh8 24 Qh5+ Qh6 25 Qxh6, mate.

1492 [VX-708]. White wins with 20 Rg3, threatening 21 Bf5+ Kf8 22 Qxh6+ Ke8 23 Qh8/Rg8, mate, when 20...fxg6 loses to 21 Rfxg6+ Rg7 22 Rhxh6, winning Black's Queen, e.g., 22...Kf8 (22...Qa5 23 Rh8, mate) 23 Rh8+ Ke7 24 Rxd8.

1493 [VX-710]. 20 Nd5 gives White a 3-2 advantage on e7, when 20...Nxd5 loses to 21 Rg6+ Kf7 22 Qh7+ Kf8 23 Rg8, mate and 20...Kf7 loses to 21 Rxe7+ Rxe7 22 Qxf6+, e.g., 22...Ke8 23 Rxe7+ Qxe7 24 Qxe7, mate or 22...Kg8 23 Rxe7 Qg4 24 Qf7+ Kh8 25 Qh7, mate.

1494 [VX-712]. White wins with 15 Qxh6+ Kg8 16 Rg3+, when after 16...Ng4, White wins with either a) 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Qh8, mate, b) 17 Bh7+ Kh8 18 Nxh7, mate or c) 17 Rxd4+ Kg5 18 Rfxg5+ Qxg5+ Kf8 (19...Kh8 20 Nxf7, mate) 20 Nxd7, mate.
11. Black Plays \( ...f5 \)

1495 [VX-721]. White wins with 18 Ng5 threatening 19 Bxh7+, mating, e.g., 18...Rd8 19 Bh7+ Nxh7 (19...Kh8 20 Nxh7 is mate) 20 Qxh7+ Kf8 21 Qxf7, mate or 18...Rf8 19 Rd4 Qe5 20 Rh4 with 21 Qh8, mate. Black can avoid mate by giving up his Queen with either 18...Qxg5 or 18...Qf5.

1496 [VX-705]. White wins with 13 Ne5 Qxd4 (13...Rd8 14 Rae1 doesn't change anything) 14 Rae1 and now: a) 14...Nd7 15 Qh7 is mate; b) 14...Bd6 undefends the Nf6 and loses to 15 Qg5+ Kh8 16 Qxf6+ Kg8 17 Qg5+ Kh8 18 Qh7+ Kg8 19 Qg7+; c) 14...Rd8 15 Re3 Bd7 16 Rg3+ Ng4 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Qxf7, mate.

1497 [VX-721]. White wins with 18 Rd4, threatening 19 Rg4+ Nxg4 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Qh8, mate, when 18...Bc5 loses to 19 Bh7+ Nxh7 20 Rg4+ Kh8 21 Qg7, mate and 18...Qxb2 19 Rh4 Ne4 loses to 20 Rg4+ Bg5 21 Nxg5, threatening 22 Qh7+ Kf8 23 Qxf7, mate, and if 21...Nxg5, then 22 Rxg5+ Qg7 23 Qxg7 is mate.

1498 [VX-701]. White threatens both 17 Bxh7+ Kh8 18 Nxh6, mate and 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Qxf7, mate, and if 16...f5 then 17 Qg6+ Kh8 18 Nf7 is mate.

1499 [VX-694]. White wins with 18 Qc3 (1-0) Kg8 19 Qxh6, with the threat of 20 Qh8, mate.

1500 [VX-701]. White wins with 17 Nxf5 exf5 18 Qh6+, e.g., 18...Kg8 19 Bc4+ Be6 20 Bxe6, mate or 18...Kf7 19 Bc4+ Be6 20 Bxe6, mate.

1501 [VX-711]. White is up a pawn and wins more material after 19 Qxh6 f5 20 Qg6+ Qg7 (for 20...Kh8 see the next diagram) 21 Qxe6+ Rf7 22 Qxd6, when White is up a piece and three pawns.

1502 [VX-711]. White wins with 19 Qxh6 f5 20 Qg6+ Kh8 21 Re3, intending 22 Rh3, mate, when after 21...Qg7 22 Rh3+ Kg8 23 Qxe6+ Rf7 24 Nxf7 White has a Rook and three pawns and multiple threats.

1503 [VX-724]. White wins with 14 Bc4+ Kh8 (14...Rf7 15 Bxf7+ Kxf7 16 Qxh7+ 15 Ng5 (1-0) Bxg5+ 16 hxg5 Qe7 17 g6, when Black can’t stop both 19 Qxh7 Qxh7 20 Rxh7, mate, and 19 Qxf8+ Qxf8 20 Rxh7.
1504 [VX-715]. White is down a piece for a pawn, but after 19 Bxe4 f5 (19...Bxc4 20 Nf6+) 20 Nxf8 Bxf8 21 Qxe6+ Kh8 22 Qxf5 White is up a Rook and three pawns for a Bishop.

1505 [VX-714]. White wins with 19 Re3, intending 20 Rg3, and if 19...Ne4 20 Bxe4 f5, then White wins Black's Queen with 21 Rg3+ Bg5 22 Bxa8 when 22...Qxa8 loses to 23 Rxg5+ Kf7 24 Rg7+ Ke8 25 Qh8, mate.

1506 [VX-716]. White wins with 18 Rd3 f5 19 Nf6+, e.g., a) 19...Nxf6 20 Rg3+ Ng4 21 exf5 Bxf5 22 Bxg4 Bxg4 loses to 23 Rxg4+ Kf7 24 Rg7+ Ke8 25 Qh8, mate, or b) 19...Kh8 20 Rh3 Ra7 21 Nxh7 Qxh7 drops the Queen to 22 Qf6+ Rg7 23 Rxg7+ Kxg7.

12. Miscellaneous Mates

1507 [VX-713]. 19 Qh6 is mate.

1508 [VX-702]. White wins with 21 Nxd7+ Qxd7 22 Qe5, mate.

1509 [VX-713]. White wins with 16 Qg3+ Kf8 17 Qg7+ Ke8 18 Qh6+ Ng8 19 Qxg8, mate.

1510 [VX-713]. White wins with 21 Bxf7, threatening 22 Qg6+ Kh8 23 Qh6, mate, and if 21...Rxh7 then 22 Qg6+ Kh8 23 Qg8 is mate.

1511 [VX-702]. White wins with 21 gxh6+ Kf7 22 Qg7+ Ke8 23 Bg6+, winning Black's Rf8, with mate to follow.

1512 [VX-708]. White wins with 21 Bf5+ Kf8 22 Qxh6+ Ke8 23 Qh8/Rg8, mate.
1513 [VX-704]. White wins with 16 Ne4 Nxe4 17 Rxe4 (1-0) with the threat of 18 Rg4+ Bxg4 19 Qh7, mate, when 17...Qd7 undefends the Nf6 and gives White a mate in five with 18 Qg5+ Kh8 19 Qxf6+, etc.

1514 [VX-724]. Black's Pf7 is undefended, giving White a mate in five moves with 15 Nxf6+ Bxf6 16 Bh7+ Kh8 17 Bg6+ Kg8 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Qxf7, mate.

1515 [VX-702]. White can win Black's Queen with 22 Nf3 or mate with 22 Qh5, e.g., 22...Rfc8 23 Qh7+ Kf8 24 Qf7, mate or 23 Qf7+ Kh8 24 Qh7, mate.

1516 [VX-717]. White wins with 13 Rh3 Rf7 14 Rg3+ Rg7 15 Qh7+, e.g., 15...Kf8 16 Qh8+ Rg8 17 Qxg8, mate or 15...Kf7 16 Rxg7+ Ke8 (16...Kf8 17 Qh8, mate) 17 Rxe7+ Bxe7, when White is up a Queen and two pawns for a Bishop.

1517 [VX-706]. White wins with 20 Qh4, e.g., 20...Qd5 21 Bd2 (White's threat is 22 Qh8, mate) Kf8 22 Qf6, when 22...Ke8 drops both the Re8 and the Qd5 to 23 Rh8+ Kd7 24 Rxd8+ Kc7 25 Rxd5.

1518 [VX-701]. White can win with either 18 Qxf7+ Kh8 19 Qxg7, mate, 18 Bh7+ Kh8 (18...Kf8 19 Qxf7, mate) 19 Nx7, mate, or even 18 Rxg7 Kxg7 19 Qxf7 Kh6 (19...Kh8 20 Nxf7, mate) 20 Qg6, mate.

1519 [VX-710]. Black is up a piece for two pawns and threatens to take White's Re6, but White can defend the Re6 dynamically with 20 Ne4, when 20...Qxe6 drops the Queen to 21 Ng5+ and 20...Kxe6 drops the Queen to 21 Nxe6+, while 20...Rh8 loses to 21 Ng5+ Kg8 22 Qg6+ Kf8 23 Qf7, mate.

1520 [VX-701]. White wins with 15 Rg3+ Bg7 16 Qxb6, e.g., 16...Nh5 17 Qxh5, threatening both 18 Qxf7 Kh8 19 Qxg7, mate and 18 Bxh7+ Kh8 19 Nxf7, mate, when 17...Qf6 loses to 18 Nxd7, e.g., 18...Qe7 19 Qh7, mate.

1521 [VX-714]. White wins with 19 Rh4 (1-0) when 19...Nh5 can be met by either 20 Rg4+ Bg5 21 Rxg5+, winning Black's Queen, or 20 Rfx5 Bf6 21 Rc7 (this covers c7 and threatens 22 Bh7+ Kh8 23 Bg6+ Kg8 24 Bxf7, mate) Bg7 22 Rg5 Ng6 23 Rgx6 fxg6 24 Qxg7, mate.
13. Defends

1522 [VX-692]. Black can defend with 13...Nf6 14 Qg5 Ne8, defending g7 and discovering an attack on White's Queen.

1523 [VX-702]. White can get a perpetual check with either a) 19 Ng5 Bxg5 20 Qxg5+ Kh7 21 Qh5+ Kg7 22 Qg5+ or b) 19 Ng6 fxg6 (19...exf3 20 Nxe7 is mate) 20 Qxg6+ Kh8 21 Qh6+ with a perpetual check.

1524 [VX-713]. 15 Nf5 gives White nothing after 15...Ng4 16 Qh3 Ndf6 defending, since 17 f3 loses to 17...Qb6+, when 18 Kf1 loses to 18...Qf2, mate and 18 Kh1 18...Nf2+ give Black a smothered mate.
689. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxh6 gxh6 16 Qxf6 Qe7 17 Qxh6. What is the material balance?

690. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxh6 gxh6 18 Qxf6² Rfd8 19 Qxh6. What is the material balance?

¹ Otherwise White is simply up a pawn, e.g., 17...Rfd8 18 Bg5, when play might continue 18...Be7 19 Bxf6 Bxf6 20 Qe4 Kf8, etc.

691. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh6 gxh6 12 h5 f5 13 exf6 Rxf6 14 hxg6. What is the material balance and what is the count on g6 and h6?

¹ 12...Kh7 13 hxg6+ fxg6 loses to 14 Qg5 with 15 Rxh6 wins.

692. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxh6 gxh6 14 Qxh6 Nf6. How does White win here?

¹ Better is 13...Nf6 14 Qg5 Ne8, defending g7 and discovering an attack on White's Queen.
693. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bxh6 gxh6 19 Qh5\textsuperscript{R} Nf6\textsuperscript{1}. How does White win here?

\textsuperscript{1} 19...Kh7 loses to 20 Qxh6+ Kg8 21 Qg7, mate.

694. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxh6 gxh6\textsuperscript{1} 18 Qe3 Kg8 19 Qxh6\textsuperscript{K}. What are White's threats in this position?

\textsuperscript{1} 17...Kg8 loses to 18 Bg5, when 18...Qxg5 is the only move that prevents mate, while 18...Qa5+ 19 Kf1 Ne7 loses to 20 Rh8+ Kxh8 21 Qb4+ Kg8 22 Bxe7 Rxe7 23 Qh7+ Kf8 24 Qh8, mate.

695. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bxh6 gxh6 19 Qxh6 Qb8\textsuperscript{1} 20 Nd7\textsuperscript{K} Qc7\textsuperscript{2}. How does White win here?

\textsuperscript{1} 19...Qe8 is better. \textsuperscript{2} 20...Ne4 drops the Queen to 21 Nxb8.

696. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bxh6 gxh6 19 Rxf6\textsuperscript{K} Be6. How does White mate in three?
697. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxh6 gxh6 14 Qg4+ Bg6 15 Nxg6 Nf6. How does White win here?

1 Other moves just concede the pawn. 2 15...f5 can be met by 16 Ne7+ Kf7 17 Qg7+ Ke8 18 Ng6 or 18 Nxd5 exd5 19 0-0-0.

698. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bxh6 gxh6 19 Qxh6 exd4 20 Qg5+ Kh8. How does White win here?

1 19...Qxa2 loses to 20 Nxd7, e.g., a) 20...Nxd7 21 Qh7, mate or b) 20...Bxd7 21 Qg5+ Kh8 22 Qxf6+ Kg8 23 Qg5+ Kh8 24 Qh6+ Kg8 25 Qh7, mate.

699. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bxh6 gxh6 19 Ng5 hxg5 20 Qxg5+ Kh7. How does White win here?

1 Other moves concede the pawn. One possibility is 18...Ne7 19 Qg4 Ng6 20 Bg5, when 20...Qxb2 can be met by 21 Qxd4. 2 This move gives White a forced mate. 3 19...Kg7 loses to 20 Qh7+ Kf6 21 Qxh6+ Kf5 22 g4+ Kf4 23 Qf6, mate.

700. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxh6 gxh6 17 Qg4+ Kh7 18 Rxd7 Qe8 19 Qe4+ Kg8 20 Qxe7. What is the material balance?

1 Moving the King to a light square loses. Better is 17...Kh8 or 17...Bg5, when White is up a pawn after 18 Rxd7, when Black take advantage of White’s weak back rank with 18...h5 19 Qd1/Qh3 Qxd7 20 Qxd7 Rad8 21 Qxd8 Rxd8, when White is up only a pawn. 2 With Black's King on h7, 18...Qxd7 19 Qxd7 Rad8 loses to 20 Qf5+ and 21 Nc3.
701. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxh6 gxh6 14 Rh3\(^1\) Ng4\(^2\) 15 Rg3\(^3\)Bg5 16 Rxg4 f6 17 hxg5 hxg5. What is the material balance?

1 Black resigned here. 14 Qxh6 can be met by 14...Bf8. 2 14...Bf8 loses to 15 Rg3+ Bg7 16 Qxh6, while 14...h5 shows White's threat: 15 Qb6 Ne4 16 Bxe4 f5 (16...Bf6 can be met by either 17 Qh7 Kf8 18 Qxf7, mate or 17 Bxh7+ Kh8 18 Nxh7 mate.) 17 Qg6+ Kh8 18 Nh7 mate. 3 15 Nxf4 f5 16 Nxf6+ Kf8 17 Nxh5 exf5 loses to 18 Qh6+ Kg8 19 Bc4+ Be6 20 Bxe6, mate.

702. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxh6 gxh6 17 Qg3\(^1\) Ng4\(^2\) 18 Qxg4+ Bg5\(^3\) 19 h4 f6 20 hxg5 fxg5\(^4\). What is the material balance?

1 After 17 Qxh6 Ne4 18 Bxe4 dxe4 19 Ng6 fxg6 (19...exf3 20 Nxe7 is mate) 20 Qxe6+ Kh8 White is down two pieces for three pawns, but can force a draw with 21 Qb6+ Kg8 22 Qb6+, 2 17...Kh8 drops the Queen to 18 Nxf7+, 3 18...Kh8 loses to 19 Qf4 (1-0) Kg7 20 Qg3+ Bg5 (20...Kf6 loses to 21 Nxd7+ Qxd7 22 Qc5, mate) 21 Nxf5 hxg5 (1-0)...Kf6 drops the Queen to 22 Ng4+, with mate in three: 22 Qxg5+ Kh8 23 Qh6+ Kg8 24 Qh7 mate. 4 20...fxe5 loses to 21 gxh6+ Kf7 22 Qg7+ Ke8 23 Bg6+, winning Black's Rf8, with mate to follow, while 20...hxg5 21 Nxe5 Qxe5 loses to 22 Qh5.

703. White gains an extra tempo for the attack if Black's King is already on h8. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxh6 gxh6 18 Qxh6+ Kg8 19 Rd3\(^5\) Ng5. How does White win here?

704. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxh6 gxh6 14 Qe3 d4 15 Qxh6 dxe3\(^1\) 16 Re5 Qd5 17 Rg5\(^2\) Qxg5 18 Qxg5+\(^2\). What is the material balance?

1 15...Bd6 loses to 16 Ne4 Nxe4 17 Rxe4 (1-0) with the threat of 18 Rg4+ Bxg4 19 Qh7, mate. 2 17 Rxh5 exd5 18 bxc3 is similar.
705. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh6 gxh6 12 Qxh6 Re8\(^1\) 13 Ng5\(^2\) Rf8 14 Rae1 Qxd4\(^3\). How does White win here?

1 12...Qd5 threatens to play 13...Qh5, but loses to 13 Ne5 with 13 Rae1-e3-g3. \(^2\) White’s threat is 14 Bh7+ Kh8 15 Nxf7, mate. Black resigned here. \(^3\) 14...Qb6 15 Re3 e5 loses to 16 Ne6 Bxe6 17 Rg3+ Bg4 18 Rfxg4+ Nxd4 19 Qh7, mate.

706. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Bxh6 gxh6\(^1\) 20 Qxh6 Qxe5 21 Qg5+ Qg7\(^2\) 22 Qxd8+ Qf8. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 19...g6 loses to 20 Qh4, e.g., 20...Qd5 21 Bd2 Kf8 22 Qf6, when 22...Ke8 drops the Re8 and the Qd5 to 23 Rh8+ Kd7 24 Rxd8+ Ke7 25 Rxd5. \(^2\) 21...Kf8 loses to 22 Qxd8+ Ke7 23 Rh8+, mate. \(^1\) Hint: Find something stronger than 23 Rh8+.

707. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxh6 gxh6 17 Nxf6+ Nxf6 18 Qxh6 cxd4\(^1\) 19 Re5 Ne4\(^2\). How does White win here?

1 18...Bd6 loses to 19 Re3, threatening both 20 Rh3 with Qh8, mate and 20 Qg5+ Kh8 21 Rh3+ Nh5 22 Rfxh5, mate. \(^2\) The only way to avoid mate is with 19...Qd5, when 20 Rxd5 exd5 gives Black a Rook and Knight for a Queen and pawn.

708. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxh6 gxh6 18 Re3 Ng6 19 Bxg6\(^1\) fxg6\(^2\) 20 Qxg6+. How does White win here? Consider both 20...Kf8 and 20...Kh8.

1 The game continued cryptically 19 Bf5 ex5 20 Rg3 Kf8 (23...Kh7 holds the h-pawn) 21 Qxh6+ (\(1-0\)). \(^2\) 19...Re7 loses to 20 Rg3, threatening 21 Bf5+ Kf8 22 Qh6+ Ke8 23 Qh8/Rg8, mate, and if 20...fxg6 then 21 Rg6+ Rg7 22 Rxh6 threatens to win Black’s Queen with 23 Rh8+. 
709. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxh6 gxh6 14 Qd2\(^1\) Qe6 15 Rxh6 Qg4\(^2\). How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

\(^1\) Also good is 14 Rg4+ Kh8 15 Qd2, when 15...Qe6 can be met by 16Bg6 with 17 Qxh6+. \(^2\) 15...f6 16 Ng5 Qe7 can be met by either 17 Bc4+ Kg7 18 Rh7+, winning Black’s Queen, or 17 Rg6+ Kh8 18 Qd1, with 19 Qh5, mate. \(^3\) Hint: White can sacrifice his Rook in order to bring his Queen into the attack.

710. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bxh6 gxh6 19 Qxh6 Kf7\(^1\) 20 Ne4 Rh8\(^2\). How does White mate in three?

\(^1\) White’s threat is 20 Nd5, with a 3-2 advantage on e7, when a) 20...Nxd5 loses to 21 Rg6+ Kf7 22 Qh7+ Kf8 23 Rg8 mate and b) 20...Kf7 loses to 21 Rxe7+ Rxe7 22 Qxf6+, e.g., b1) 22...Ke8 23 Rxe7+ Qe7 24 Qxe7, mate or b2) 22...Kg8 23 Rxe7 Qg4 24 Qf7+ Kh8 25 Qh7, mate. Relatively best is to give back the piece with 19...Bf8 20 Qxf6 Bg7 21 Qg6, although White has three connected passed pawns on the kingside, since 19...Nh7 loses to 20 Rg6+ Kh8/Kf7 21 Qg7, mate (1-0). \(^2\) 20...Qxe6 loses to 21 Ng5+, while 20...Kxe6 drops the Queen to 21 Nxf6+.

711. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nxf6+ Nxf6 17 Bxh6 gxh6 18 Qxf6\(^k\) Qe7 19 Qxh6 f5 20 Qg6+ Qg7\(^1\) 21 Qxe6+ Rf7 22 Qxd6. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) 20...Kh8 loses to 21 Re3, with the threat of 22 Rh3, mate, e.g., 21...Qg7 22 Rh3+ Kg8 23 Qxe6+ Rf7 24 Nxf7, when White is up a Rook and three pawns and has multiple threats.

712. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxh6 gxh6 14 Rh3\(^k\) Bf8\(^1\) 15 Rc3+ Bg7\(^2\) 16 Qxh6 Nh5 17 Qxh5 Qf6 18 Nxd7 Qe7. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 14...Kh8 loses to 15 Qxh6+ Kg8 16 Rg3+, \(^2\) 15...Kh8 loses to 16 Nxf7, mate.
713. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxh6 gxh6 14 Nf5\(^1\) Ne5\(^2\) 15 Qe3 Rfd8\(^3\) 16 Qg3+\(^4\) Kh8. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 14 Qe3 Kh7 15 Nf5 gives White nothing after 15...Ng4, since 16 Qh3 Ndf6 17 f3 loses to 17...Qb6+, when 18 Kf1 loses to 18...Qf2, mate and 18 Kh1 drops the Queen to 18...Nf2+, followed by a smothered mate. Keeping the Queen on e2 prevents ...Ng4. \(^2\) This prevents Rd3. \(^3\) Two alternatives: a) 15...Ne6 16 Qxh6 Ng4 17 Qh4 traps Black’s Ng4 or 16...Nh7 17 Rd3; b) 15...Ne8 16 Qxe8 Bc8 (Black intends to play 17...Bxf5) 17 Qg5+ Kh7 18 Qh4+ Kg8 (18...Kg6 19 Qh6 mate) 19 Ne7+ Kg7 20 Qg5+ Kh7 21 Bxf7, threatening 22 Qg6+ Kh8 23 Qh6, mate, when 21...Rxh7 loses to 22 Qg6+ Kh8 23 Qg8, mate.

714. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxh6 gxh6 17 Qxh6 Re1\(^1\) 18 d5 Nf8\(^2\) 19 Rh4\(^3\) Nh5 20 Rg4+3 Bg5. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 17...b5 18 Re1 bxc4 loses to 19 Re3, intending 20 Rg3, mate, when 19...Nxe4 20 Bxe4 f5 drops the Queen to 21 Rg3+ Bg5 22 Rxa8\(^4\) (22...Qxa8 loses to 23 Qg6+ Kh8 24 Rg3+ Kg8, mate) 23 Rg5+ Qxg5 24 Qxg5+, when White is up a Queen and two pawns for a Rook. \(^2\) 18...Nxd5 loses to 19 Qh7+ Kh8 20 Qh8, mate, while 18...exd5 loses to either 19 Rh4 with Qh8, mate or 19 Rg4+ Nxe4 20 Qh7+ Kh8 21 Qh8, mate. \(^3\) 20 Rxh5 is also possible, e.g., 20...Bf6 21 Rd7, when White threatens 22 Bh7+ Kh8 23 Bg6+ Kg8 24 Bxf7, mate, and if 21...Bg7 then 22 Rg5 wins, e.g., 22...Ng6 23 Rxe6 fxg6 24 Qxg7, mate.

715. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxh6 gxh6\(^1\) 17 Qxh6 cxd4 18 Nd7 Ne4\(^2\) 19 Bxe4 f5 20 Nxf8 Bxf8 21 Qxe6+ Kh8 22 Qxf5. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) The actual game continued 16...cxd4 17 Bxg7 Kg7 18 Qg3+ (1-0) Kh8 19 Qh4+ (18...Kh6 losses to 19 Nfx7+ Rxh7 20 Qg6, mate) Kg7 20 Qg5+ Kh8 21 Qh6+ Kg8 22 Nd7, when a) 22...Qxd7 gives White a mate in five (23 Qg5+ Kh8 24 Qxf6+ Kg8 25 Qg5+ Kh8 26 Qh6+ Kg8 27 Qh7, mate); b) while after 22...Nd4 23 Bxe4 f5 24 Nxf8 Qxf8 (24...Nxe4 25 Nxe6) 25 Qxe6+ Kh8, White is up the exchange and two pawns. \(^2\) 18...Qxd7 allows the same mate in five as in footnote 1, while 18...Be4 losses to 19 Nxf6+, when the only way that Black can stop 20 Qh7, mate is by giving up his Queen.

716. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxh6 gxh6 16 Qxh6 Qe7\(^1\) 17 Rd3\(^2\) Ng4 18 Bxg4 Bxg4\(^2\) 19 Nd5 Qe6. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 16...Nh7 17 Nd5 (insufficient is 17 Rd3 f5 18 Rg3+ Kh8 19 Nd5 Qf7, defending) Qb7 18 Rd3 f5 19 Nh6+ wins, e.g., a) 19...Nxf6 20 Rg3+ Ng4, when White can clear the g-file with 21 exf5 Bxf5 22 Bxg4 (22...Bxg4 gives White a mate in three: 23 Rxe4+ Kf7 24 Rg7+ Ke8 25 Qh8, mate); b) 19...Kh8 20 Rh3 Ra7 21 Nxf7 Qxf7 22 Qf6+ Rg7 23 Rxf7+ Kxf7, when White has a Queen and two pawns for a Rook and Knight. \(^2\) 18...Qf8 19 Qh5 Ne7 loses to 20 Bf5 Ng6 21 Bxg6 fxg6 22 Rg3.
717. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh6 gxh6 12 Qxh6 Qe7\(^1\) 13 Rh3 Rf7 14 Rg3+ Rg7 15 Qh7+\(^2\) How does White win here? Consider both 16...Kf8 and 16...Kf7.

\(^1\) This loses an important tempo. Better is 12...Rf7, intending to meet 13 Rh3 with 13...Rg7, defending.

718. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxh6 gxh6 17 Qxh6 Nxd4\(^1\) 18 Nxd4 Qxd4 19 Re3 Ne4 20 Rg3+ Bg5\(^3\) 21 Bxe4 Bxe4 22 Qxg5+ Bg6. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) Three alternatives: a) 17...Re8 loses to 18 Ng5 with a forced mate (1-0), e.g., a1) 18...Nxd4 19 Bh7+ (19...Kh8 20 Nxf7, mate or 19...Nhx7 20 Qxh7 Kf8 21 Qxf7, mate, or 19...Rf8 19 Nce4 Re8 20 Nfx6+ Bxf6 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Qxf7, mate. b) 17...Re8 18 Ng5 Nxd4 19 Re3 Rxc3 20 Nxe6 (threatening both Qg7 and Nxd5) fx6 loses to 21 Rg3+ Kf7 22 Qg6, mate. c) 17...Bd6 takes a defender away from f6 and loses to 18 Ng5 Nxd4 19 Bh7+ Kh8 20 Bf5+ (this keeps e4 open for the Nc3) Kg8 21 Nce4 Bxe4 22 Qxg5+ (this wins Black's Queen) Nxf5 23 Nxf6+ Qxf6 24 Qxf6.\(^2\) Also good is 20 Bxe4 Bxe4 21 Rxe4 Qg7 22 Qh5, threatening 23 Rg4.\(^3\) 20...Nxg3 loses to 21 Qxh7, mate.

719. Black is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bxh6 gxh6 15 Qxh6 Qxd4+ 16 Kh1 Nbd5 17 Nxd5\(^4\) cxd5\(^1\) 18 Qg5\(^+\) Kh8 19 Rxf6 Qxf6\(^5\). How does White win here?

\(^1\) 17...Nxd5 18 Qh7, mate.\(^2\) White is up a Queen for a Rook after 18 Rxf6 Qxd3 (forced) 19 cxd3 Bxf6 20 Qxf6+.\(^3\) White is up a Queen for a Rook after 19...Qxd3 20 cxd3 Bxf6 21 Qxf6+.

720. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxh6 gxh6 17 Qe1\(^1\) h5\(^2\) 18 Qg5+ Kh8 19 Ne4 Rg8 20 R hx5+ Nh7\(^3\) 21 Nf6 Rg7 22 Qf4. What is the White’s threat and how can Black prevent it?

\(^1\) White’s threat is 18 Qxh6 with either 19 Qh8, mate or 19 Qg5, mate.\(^2\) This gives up control of g5, but otherwise the h-pawn falls. Adding the moves 17...Bxf2+ 18 Kh1 doesn't change anything (1-0).\(^3\) 20...Nhx5 loses to 21 Qh6, mate.
**721.** Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxh6 gxh6 16 Qxh6 Re8 17 Rad1 Qb6 18 Rd4 Qxb2 19 Rh4 Ne4 20 Rg4+ Bg5. What is the material balance?

1. 16...Qb6 17 Rae1 Qa5 loses to 18 Ng5, threatening 19 Bh7+, e.g., 19...Nh5 20 Rd4 Rfxd4 21 Kg5 Kh8 22 Ne4, when 23 Nf6 Rxg7 24 Qh7 gives White a Queen and two pawns for three pieces. 2. 17...Qe5 loses to 18 Ng5, 19 Bh7+, threatening 20 Qh7+ Kh8 21 Bxf7, mate. 3. 17...Rxg7 allows mate in two (18 Nh7+ Kh8 19 Bf5+, mate).

**722.** What is the material balance after the moves 15 Bxh6 gxh6 16 Qxh6 Ne7 17 Qg5+ Ng6 18 Bxg6 fxg6 19 Qxg6+ Kh8 20 Qh6+ Qg7 21 Nxd5?

1. Defending the Nf6 with 15...Qd4 loses to 16 Rad1 Qe5 17 Nxd5, e.g., 17...Qxd5 18 Bh7+ Nxh7 19 Rxd5, when White is up a Queen and three pawns for three pieces and threatens both 20 Rxd7 and 20 Rh5, and if Black meets both threats with 19...Bg4 then 20 Rg5+ Nxg5 21 Qxg5+ Kh7 22 Qh4+ Kg6 23 Qxg4+ gives White a Queen and three pawns for a Rook and Knight. 2. Black can defend with 15...Kh8 16 Re1 Qa5 17 Ng5 e5 18 Rfd1 Bg4 19 Bh7+ Kh8 20 Bxg5+ Kg8, when White has three pawns for the piece. 3. White is up four pawns for a piece after 19...Nh7 20 Qxh6 axb6 21 Nxd5.

**723.** Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxh6 gxh6 16 Qxh6 Bd6 17 Rad1 e5 18 c5 Be6 19 Rxd6 Qe7 20 Re1 e4 21 Qg5+ Kh8 22 Qxe4. What is White's threat and how does White win after 22...Nxe4?

1. White's threat is 17 Qg5 Kh8 18 Rad1, e.g., 18...Qb6 19 Rd4, creating a mate threat that wins Black's Queen or 18...Nh7 19 Qh6, when both the Nh7 and Qd8 are under attack. 2. Two alternatives: a) 16...Qe7 17 Rad1 Qa5 loses to 18 Ng5, threatening 19 Bh7+, e.g., 19...Nh7 20 Qxh7 Kg8 21 Qxe7+ or 19...Kh8 20 Nxf7, mate, when 18...Rf8 loses to 19 Rd4, threatening 20 Rh4 with mate to follow; b) after 16...Qa5 17 Ng5 e5 18 Rfe1 Bg4 19 Bh7+ Kg8 20 Bf5+ Kg8 21 Bxg4 White is up two pawns and has an attack. 3. White's threat is 18 Rxd6 Qxd6 19 Qg5+ Kh8 20 Qxf6+, with mate to follow (e.g., 20...Kh8 21 Qh5+ Kg8 22 Qh7+ Kh8, mate). 4. 19...Qc7 drops the Nf6. 5. White wants to play 21 Rxe5 and 22 Rg5, mate.

**724.** Black is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxh6 gxh6 11 Qxh6 Nh7 12 h4 Nc6 13 Bd3 f5 14 Bc4 Kh8 15 Ng5 Bxg5 16 hxg5 Qe7 17 g6. What is White's threat and how can Black parry this threat?

1. Black is threatening to exchange some pieces with 12...Bg5+. 2. Black can meet the threat of 12...Qg4+ with 13 h5 Ng4+ 14 Kh3 Rxg4, when 15 Rg5+ Kh8 16 Qxg4+ Kh8 17 Re1, with compensation for the exchange. 3. 12...Nd7 14 Rhf1 Ba6, since 15 Rhxh1 Rxg4 is met by 15...Kg7+ 16 Kh1 Bxg4, when White has compensation for the exchange. 4. 13...Nf6 14 Nxd5 Re8 allows mate in five (15 Nxh6+ Bxf6 16 Bh7+ Kh8 17 Bg6+ Kg8 18 Qh7+ Kh8 19 Qf7, mate).
This chapter contains exercises involving the sequence 1 Bxh6 gxh6 2 Qg6+ Kh8 3 Qxh6+, when White has sacrificed a piece for two pawns, but has opened up the g-file, weakened the squares around Black's King, and obtained a dominant Queen on h6.

In Diagram 1, after the moves 1 Bxh6 gxh6 2 Qg6+ Kh8 3 Qxh6+ Kg6 (see Diagram 2), White can play either 4 Ng5, threatening 5 Qh7, mate or 4 Re4, threatening 5 Qg6+ Kh8 6 Rh4, mate.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. White Brings the Nf3 into the Attack
2. White Brings a Rook into the Attack
3. Black Counters with a Skewer Trick
4. White Brings the Light-Squared Bishop into the Attack
5. Black Counters with ...f5
6. White Brings the Nc3 into the Attack
7. Black Interposes on g7
8. Black Refuses to Take White’s Bh6
9. Miscellaneous Mates and Tactics

These themes are illustrated using forty-six preparatory positions, which are followed by twenty-eight visualization exercises ranging in depth from five to twenty-three ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply:</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. White Brings the Nf3 into the Attack

1525 [VX-738]. White wins with 18 Ng5/Nf6, when Black has to give up his Queen to stop 19 Qh7, mate.

1526 [VX-747]. 17 Ng5 threatens 18 Qh7, mate and wins Black’s Queen, since 17...Re8 loses to 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Qxf7 is mate.

1527 [VX-747]. Here 17 Ng5 threatens 18 Qh7, mate, but loses to 17...Ng4+ and 18...Nxh6.

1528 [VX-728]. White wins with 16 Ng5 (1-0), when the only way that Black can avoid mate is by giving up his Queen with 16...Qxg5, since moves like 16...Re8 lose to 17 Bxf7, mate.

1529 [VX-738]. White wins with 17 Ng5, e.g., 17...Nf6 18 Qxf6 Nd5 19 Qh6 Nf6 20 Qg6+ Kh8 21 Bxf7, controlling g8 and threatening 22 Qh6 Nh7 23 Qxh7, mate.

2. White Brings a Rook into the Attack

1531 [VX-729]. White wins with 24 Re7 with Qh7, mate.

1532 [VX-737]. White wins with 20 Rg5, mate.

1533 [VX-738]. White wins with 18 Re3 Nd5 19 Rh3, threatening 20 Qh8, mate (18 Ng5/Nf6 also wins).
1534 [VX-725]. White wins with either 15 Rxh6+ Nh7 16 Qxh7, mate, or 15 Qxh6+ Kg8 16 Qg6/Qh8/Qg5, mate.

1535 [VX-737]. White wins with 20 Rh5 Nd6 21 Qg6+ (1-0) Kh8 22 Qxf6+ Kg8 23 Qg6+ Kh8 24 Qxh7Rxh7, mate.

1536 [VX-744]. White wins with 20 Re3, intending 21 Rg3+, mate, when 20...f5 loses to 21 Qg6+ Kh8 22 Rh3, mate.

1537 [VX-739]. White wins with 19 Rf3, e.g., 19...Nf6 20 Qg6+ Kh8 21 Rh3+; with mate next move or 19...Rf6 20 Nxf6+ Qxf6 21 Rg3+ Kf7 22 Qh7+ Ke6 23 Rg6, winning Black's Queen.

1538 [VX-733]. White wins with 19 Rh3, e.g., 19...Bxh4+ 20 Rxh4 Qxh4+ 21 Qg6+ Kh8 22 Qh7Rxh7, mate.

1539 [VX-742]. White wins with 24 Rd3, threatening both 23 Rh3, mate and 23 Qh6+ Kg8 24 Rh3, mate, e.g., a) 22...Rf6 23 Rh3 is mate; b) 22...Nf6 23 Rh3+ Nh7 24 Qxh7/Rxh7, mate; and c) 22...Nf4 23 Qh6+ Kg8 24 Rg3+ (1-0) Ng6 25 Rxg6, mate.

1540 [VX-740]. White wins with 22 Rd3, threatening both 23 Rh3, mate and 23 Qh6+ Kg8 24 Rg3, mate, e.g., a) 22...Nf6 23 Rh3 is mate; b) 22...Nf6 23 Rh3+ Nh7 24 Qxh7/Rxh7, mate; and c) 22...Nf4 23 Qh6+ Kg8 24 Rg3+ (1-0) Ng6 25 Rxg6, mate.

1541 [VX-734]. White wins with 21 Rf5, threatening both 22 Qg6 Kh8 23 Rh5, mate and 22 Rh5 with 23 Qh8, mate, e.g., a) 21...Nxd5 22 Rh5 Ng6 23 Qh7, mate or b) 21...Bxg6+ 22 Rh5 with 23 Qh8 also wins, but 22 Qxg5+ Qxg5 23 Qxg5+ gives Black a Rook and a Knight for a Queen and two pawns) Kh8 23 Rh5, mate.

1542 [VX-749]. White wins with 22 Rd4, threatening 23 Rg4+, e.g., a) 22...Kf7 23 Qh5+ Kg7 24 Rg4+ Kg6 25 Nxg5 with 26 Qh7, mate; b) 22...Rf7 23 Rg4+ Kg5 24 Rxg5+ Qxg5 25 Nxg5 Re7 26 Ne3-Ng4-f6; or c) 22...Rf5 23 Rg4+ Kg5 24 Nxg5 Rxg5 25 Rxe5+ Kf7 26 Qh7+ Kf8 27 Rg8, mate.
3. Black Counters with a Skewer Trick

1543 [VX-744]. White wins with 21 Re3 Qh4 22 Rg3 (22 Rh3 allows the skewer trick 22...Qxh3 23 gxh3 Rg8 24 Qg3 Rhxg3+ 25 hxg3, although White remains up a pawn) 22...Rg8 23 Qxd6, when White is up two pawns.

1544 [VX-743]. Here 18 Rh3 loses to the skewer trick 18...Qxh3 19 gxh3 Rg8 20 Qg3 Rxg3+ 21 hxg3, when White is down a piece for two pawns, but 18 Rg3 wins, e.g., 18...Qh7 19 Qxe6 Nc6 (19...Bc8 20 Qd5 c6 21 Qxd6 threatens both 22 Qxf8 and 22 Rh3) 20 Rh3 Qxh3 21 gxh3, when White has a Queen and three pawns for a Rook and Knight.

1545 [VX-749]. White wins with 23 Rd3 (1-0) b5 24 Rad1 Nb8 (24...Be8 loses to 25 Qh6+ with 26 Rxd8) 25 Ng5 Bxg5 26 Rh3+ Bh4 (26...Bh6 27 Rxh6 is mate) 27 Rd4, when Black can't stop 28 Rxc4, mating. Note that 27 g3 bxc4 28 Rxh4+ loses to the skewer trick 28...Qxh4 29 gxh4 Rg8, when White is down two pieces for two pawns after 30 Qg3 Rxg3+ 31 hxg3.

4. White Brings the Light-Squared Bishop into the Attack

1546 [VX-746]. White wins Black’s Queen with 19 Qh6+ Kg8 20 Bh7+ Kh8 21 Bg6+.

1547 [VX-746]. White mates in five: 19 Qh6+ Kg8 20 Bh7+ Kh8 21 Bf5+ Kg8 22 Bxe6+ Rf7 23 Bxf7, mate.

1548 [VX-736]. White mates in four: 13 Bxf7+ Kxf7 14 Ng5+ Kg8 (14...Ke7 15 Qg7, mate) 15 Qg6+ Kh8 16 Nf7, mate.

1549 [VX-747]. White wins with 19 Ng5 Re8 20 Bxe6, e.g., a) 20...Rx e6/fx e6 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Qxf7, mate or b) 20...Qe7 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Qh8, mate.

1550 [VX-746]. White wins with 20 Bh7+ Kh8 21 Bf5+ Kg8 22 Qg6+ Kh8 23 Nxe6 dxe6 24 Qh6+ Kg8 25 Bxe6+ Rf7 26 Qg6+ Kh8 27 Bxf7, when White is up a Rook and four pawns for two pieces.
5. Black Counters with ...f5

1551 [VX-736]. White wins with 14 Bd3 f5 15 Nh4 Qf6 16 Ng6+, e.g., 16...Kg8 17 Bc4+ Rf7 18 Re8+ Bf8 19 Rxc8 (1-0).

1552 [VX-736]. White wins with 15 Bd3 f5 16 Bxf5 Qd7 (16...Bxf5 drops the Re8) 17 Bxh7, threatening 18 Bg6+, and if 17...Re7 18 Bf5+ Rh7, then White is up a Rook and three pawns after 19 Qxh7+ Qxh7 20 Bxh7.

1553 [VX-748]. White wins with 20 Be4, e.g., a) 20...Rfe8 21 Bh7+ Kh8 22 Bg6+ Kg8 23 Qh7+ Kf8 24 Qxf7, mate, or b) 20...f5 21 Bd5+ Be6 (21...Rf7 loses to 22 Qg6+ Kh8 23 Bxf7, with Qh6, mate) 22 Bxe6+ Rf7 23 Ng5, piling up on Black's pinned Rf7.

1554 [VX-744]. White wins with 20 d4, threatening 21 Bxh7 Kh8 22 Bg6+ Kg8 23 Qh7+ Kf8 24 Qxf7, mate, when a) 20...Qe7 loses to 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Kh8, mate and b) 20...f5 loses to 21 Bxf5 with Re4, e.g., 21...Re7 22 Re4 Rg7 23 Rg4 Qc7 (23...Rgx4 24 Be6, mate) 24 Qh7+ Kf8 25 Qh8+ Ke7 26 Rxe7+, winning Black's Queen.

1555 [VX-741]. White wins with 16 Bd3 f5 (the only move) 17 exf6 (this is better than 17 Bc4+ Rf7 18 Qg6+ Kh8 19 Bxf7, which gives White the exchange and three pawns, but the threat of 20 Qh6, mate can be met by 19...Qf8) and now: a) 17...Rxf6 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Qh8+ Kf7 20 Ng5, mate (1-0) or b) 17...Rf7 loses to 18 Ng5, threatening 19 Qg6+, with mate next move, and if 18...Qe8 then 19 Bh7+ Kh8 20 Nxf7+ Qxf7 21 Bg6+ wins Black's Queen.
6. White Brings the Nc3 into the Attack

1556 [VX-746]. White wins with 19 Nde4, intending 20 21 Nxf6+ and 22 Qh7, mate, e.g., 19...Qe8 20 Qh6+ Kg8 (20...Nh7 21 Qxh7 is mate) 21 Nxf6+ Rxf6 (21...Bxf6 22 Qh7, mate) 22 Qh7+ Kf8 23 Qh8, mate.

1557 [VX-750]. White wins with 16 Nce4, e.g., 16...Bxg5 17 Nxg5 Qa5 18 Rae1 (18 Qg6+ Kh8 19 Bxf7 Qxg5 20 Qxg5 Rxf7 gives Black three pieces for a Queen and three pawns) Qf5 19 Re3 Nb6 (19...Nd5 drops the Queen to 20 Bd3, since moving it loses to 21 Qh7, mate) 20 Rg3 Be6 21 Nxe6+ Ng4 22 Qg7, mate.

1558 [VX-751]. 15 Nce4 threatens 16 Qg6+ Kh8 17 Bxh7 with 18 Qh6, mate, and if 17...Rxf7, then 18 Nxf7 is mate. After 15...Bxg5 16 Nxg5 the threat is on again and White wins after either a) 16...Qe8 (defending the f-pawn) 17 Rae1 or b) 16...Nb6 17 Qg6+ Kh8 18 Bxf7 (1-0) Bf5 19 Qxf5 Qxd4 (19...Rxf7 drops the Queen to 20 Nxe6+, mate) 20 Rg3 Be6 21 Nxe6+ Ng4 22 Qg7, mate.

7. Black Interposes on g7

1559 [VX-729]. After 24 Re7 Rf7 White wins with either 25 Qxf7+ Kh7 26 Qxg7, mate, or 25 Rxh7 with 26 Qxg7, mate.

1560 [VX-730]. White wins with 21 Nh5, threatening 22 Qxg7, mate, e.g., 21...Ne6 22 Bxe6 Bxe6 23 Qxg7, mate.

1561 [VX-745]. White wins with 17 Qg6+, e.g., a) 17...Bg7 drops the Re8; b) 17...Kf8 defends the Re8 but loses to 18 Qxf6+ Kg8 19 Qg6+ Kf8 20 Rf1+ Ke7 21 Qf6, mate; c) 17...Qg7 18 Qxe8+ Qf8 19 Bh7+ Kg7 20 Qg6+ (1-0) Kh8 21 Nf7+, winning Black’s Queen.
8. Black Refuses to Take White’s Bh6

1562 [VX-725]. White wins with 14 Qg6 Ne8 15 Bxg7, e.g., 15...Nxg7 16 Qh7, mate or 15...Bxh4 16 Bf6+ Ng7 17 Qxg7, mate.

1563 [VX-728]. White wins the exchange by pressuring g7, e.g., 14 Bxe6 dxe6 15 Qg4 g6 16 Bxf8 Qxf8.

1564 [VX-727]. White wins with 18 Qh7+ Kf7 19 Nxe5+, when Black’s King is forced to go the e-file, when White will win Black's Queen with a discovered check.

9. Miscellaneous Mates and Tactics

1565 [VX-738]. 17 Ng5 can be met by Qg7, but 17 Nf6+ wins Black’s Queen.

1566 [VX-730]. White wins with 22 Nh5, threatening 23 Nxf6, mate, e.g., 22...Qe7 23 Nxf6+ wins Black’s Queen.

1567 [VX-727]. White wins with 18 Nxf6 Re7 (taking on f6 loses to 19 Qh7, mate) and either 19 Qxh6+ with 20 Qh7, mate, or 19 Qxh6+ Rh7 20 Qxh7, mate.

1568 [VX-739]. White can sacrifice his Queen for mate with 19 Qh7+ (1-0) Kxh7 20 Ng5+ Kh8 21 Nf7, mate.

1569 [VX-745]. White wins with 16 Qg6+ and mate next move, e.g., 16...Kf8 17 Qf7, mate or 16...Kh8 17 Nf7, mate.

1570 [VX-752]. After 20 Nxf7+ Rxf7 21 Bxh7 White threatens both 22 Qg8 and 22 Qh6, mate, but Black can meet both threats with 21...Qxf7 22 Kf6, when White wins with either a) 23 Qf6+ Kh7 24 Bg6+ Kh6 (24...Kg8 25 Qf7+ Kh8 26 Qh7 is mate) 25 Bf5+ Kh5 26 g4, mate, or b) 23 Re1 (1-0) Qf4 24 Re5 Bg4 25 Rg5, threatening both 26 Qg7 and 26 Qh6, mate.
725. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxh6 gxh6 14 Qg6+ Kh8. How does White win here?

1 13...b6 loses to 14 Qg6 Ne8 15 Bxg7 Bxh4 (15...Nxg7 16 Qh7, mate) 16 Bf6+ Ng7 17 Qxg7, mate.

727. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxh6 gxh6 17 Qg6+ Kh8 18 Nxf6² Rf7. How does White win here?

1 16...Nxd5 loses to 17 Qh7+ Kf7 18 Qxg7, mate, while 16...Ne5 loses to 17 Nxf6+ Qxf6 (17...Rx6 drops the g-pawn after 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Qxg7+). 18 Qh7+ Kf7 19 Nxe5+, when Black's King is forced to go to the e-file, when a discovered check will win Black's Queen. ² 18... Qxf6 loses to 19 Qh7, mate. Black resigned here.

726. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bxh6 gxh6 15 Qg6+ Kh8 16 Qxf6+ Kg8 17 Qg6+ Kh8 18 Qxh6+. What is the material balance?

728. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxh6 gxh6 14 Qg6+ Kh8 15 Qxh6+ Kg8 16 Ng5² Re8. How does White win here?

1 13...Ne6 loses the exchange to 14 Bxe6 dxe6 15 Qg4 g6 16 Bxf8 Qxf8 ² White threatens 17 Qh7, mate (1-0). ³ The only way that Black can avoid mate is by giving up his Queen with 16...Qxg5.
729. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Bxh6 gxh6 22 Qxh6+ Kg8 23 Qg6+ Kg7\(^1\) 24 Re7 Rf7. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 23...Kh8 loses to 24 Re7, intending Qh7, mate.

730. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Bxh6 gxh6 20 Qg6+ Kh8 21 Qxh6+ Kg8 22 Nh5\(^2\) Qe7. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 20...Bg7 loses to 21 Nh5, with Qxg7, mate, e.g., 21...Ne6 22 Bxe6 Bxe6 23 Qxg7, mate. \(^2\) White's threat is 23 Nx6, mate.

731. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bxh6 gxh6 15 Qg6+ Kh8 16 Ng5\(^1\) Bxg5 17 hxg5 Rf7. How does White mate in two?

\(^1\) Also good is 16 Qxh6+ – see exercise 732.

732. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bxh6 gxh6\(^1\) 15 Qg6+ Kh8 16 Qxh6+ Kg8 17 Qg6+ Kh8 18 Ng5\(^2\). How does White win after the moves 18...Bxg5, 18...Rf7, and 18...Nf6?

\(^1\) White is up a pawn after 14...Rf7 15Bg5. \(^2\) Also good is Ng5 – see exercise 731.
733. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxh6 gxh6 17 Qg6+² Kh8 18 Qxh6+² Kg8. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 18 Bxh7 wins the exchange, due to the threat of 18 Qxh6, mate, but after 18...Rxh7 19 Qxh7 White has only a Rook and pawn for two pieces. ² Hint: White can bring one of his Rooks into the attack.

734. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bxh6 gxh6 19 Qg6+² Kh8 20 Qxh6+ Kg8 21 Rf5³ Be4². How does White mate in two? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 White threatens both 22 Qg6 Kh8 23 Rh5, mate, and 22 Rh5 with 23 Qh8, mate, but 21 Bd3 is also good, e.g., 21...f5 22 Bc4+ Rf7 23 Rx5 Qe7 24 Rh5. On the other hand, 21 Qg6+ Kh8 22 Rf5 doesn't work because Black's f-pawn is no longer pinned, so the mate has to come with White's Queen on h6, not g6. ² 21...Nxg5 loses to 22 Rh5 Ng6 23 Qh7, mate.³ Hint: Look for something stronger than 22 Rg5+ 22 Qxg5 23 Qxg5, which gives Black a Rook and a Knight for a Queen and two pawns. There are two solution.

735. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bxh6 gxh6 15 Rxe6² fx6 16 Qg6+² Kh8 17 Nxe6² Kg8. Here both Queen are under attack, but White can win. How?

1 To secure g6 for the Queen.² After 16 Qg3+ Kh8 17 Nxe6 (1-0) White is threatening both 18 Nxd8 and 18 Qg7, mate, but 17...Rg8 gives Black the advantage, e.g., 18 Nxd8 Rxg3 19 Nf7+ Kg7 20 hxg3 Kxh7, when Black has a piece for two pawns.³ White threatens both 18 Nxd8 and 18 Qg7, mate.

736. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Bxh6 gxh6 11 Qg6+² Kh8 12 Qxh6+ Nh7³ 13 Rf6² Rg8² 14 Bxf7 Qf8 15 Qxf³ Rxh6. What is the material balance?

1 12...Kg8 loses to 13 Bxf7+ Kxf7 14 Ng5+ Kg8 (14...Ke7 15 Kg7 mate) 15 Qg6+ Kh8 16 NF7 mate.² Best. Two alternatives: a) 13 Rf8 loses to 14 Bd3 f5 15 Nh4 Qf6 16 Ng6+, e.g., 16...Kg8 17 Be4+ Rf7 18 Re8+ Bf8 19 Rxe8 (1-0); b) 13...Bf8 14 Qh5 Be6 15 Bd5 f5 loses to 16 Bxf5, e.g., 16...Bxf5 17 Rxe8 or 16...Qd7 17 Bxh7.³ White can also keep Queens on the board with 15 Qh5 Bg4 16 Qd5 Bxf3 17 Qxf³ Nc6 18 Rad1, etc.
737. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bxh6 gxh6 19 Qxh6¹ Nh7² 20 Rh5 Ndf6 21 Qg6+³ Kh8. How does White win here?

¹ White’s threat is 20 Rg5, mate. ² This protects g5 and opens up f6 for the Nd7, but the Nf6 will be defenseless.

738. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxh6 Bxf3¹ 14 Qxf3 gxh6 15 Qf6² Ng6³ 16 Qxg6+ Kh8 17 Qxh6+ Kg8. How does White win here?

¹ 13...gxh6 loses a pawn to 14 Nf6+ and 15 Nxg4. ² White’s threatens both 16 Qxd6 and 16 Qxh6. ³ 15...Be7 16 Qxh6 doesn’t help, e.g., a) 16...Qxd4 loses to 17 Nf6+, when Black has to give up his Queen to stop 18 Qh7, mate, or 16...Nbd5 17 Ng5, with the threat of 18 Qh7, mate, when 17...Nf6 18 Qxf6 Nf5 19 Qh6 Nf6 loses to 20 Qg6+ Kh8 21 Bx7, intending 22 Qh6 Nh7 23 Qxh7, mate.

739. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxh6 gxh6 16 Qg4+ Kh8¹ 17 Qg6 Be3² 18 f6 Rg8³. How does White mate in three? See the last footnote for a hint.

¹ 16...Kh7 loses to 17 fxe6+, e.g., a) 17...Ke8 18 Qg6+ Ke7 19 Rf7+ Ke8 (19...Rxh7 20 Qxh7, mate) 20 Nd6, mate; or b) 17...Ke7 18 Qg7+ Kxe6 19 Rxh8, when 19...Qb6/Qc7 lose to 20 Qf7+ Ke5 21 Qf5, mate. ² This defends the h-pawn. 17...exf5 loses to 18 Qxh6+ Kg8 19 Rf3, e.g., a) 19...Nh6 20 Qg6+ Kh8 21 Rh3+, with mate next move, or b) 19...Rf6 20 Nxh6+ Qxh6 21 Rg3+ Kf7 22 Qh7+ Ke6 23 Rg6, winning Black’s Queen. ³ 18...Rf7 loses to 19 Nd6. ⁴ Hint: White can sacrifice his Queen on h7.

740. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bxh6 gxh6 19 Qg6+ Kh8 20 Qxh6+ Kg8 21 Qg6+ Kh8 22 Rd3¹ Nh4². How does White mate in three?

¹ White threatens both 23 Rh3, mate and 23 Qh3+ Kg8 24 Kg3, mate. ² 22...Rf6 loses to 23 Rh3, mate, while 22...Nh6 loses to 23 Rh3+ Nh7 24 Qxh7/Rxh7, mate.
741. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxh6 gxh6\(^1\) 14 Qg6+ Kh8 15 Qxh6+ Kg8 16 Bd3 f5\(^2\) 17 exf6\(^3\) Rxh6\(^4\) 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Qh8+ Kg7. How does White win here?

\(^1\) Other moves just concede the pawn. \(^2\) This is the only way to stop 17 Qxh7, mate. \(^3\) This is better than 17 Bc4+ Rf7 18 Qg6+ Kh8 19 Bxf7, which gives White the exchange and three pawns, but Black can meet the threat of 20 Qh6, mate with 19...Qf8. \(^4\) 17...Rf7 loses to 18 Ng5, threatening 19 Qg6+, with mate next move, when 18...Qe8 drops the Queen to 19 Bh7+ Kh8 20 Nxh7+ Qxf7 21 Bg6+.

742. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Bxh6 gxh6 21 Qg6+ Kh8 22 Rxd7\(^1\) Nxd7 23 Qxh6+ Kg8 24 Kg4+ Bg5. What is White best move here? See the last footnote for a hint.

\(^1\) In order to prevent ...Nh7 in response to Qh6+. The move order 22 Qxh6+ Nh7 23 Rxd7 allows 23...Rf6, driving White’s Queen away from the kingside. Black resigned after 22 Rxd7. \(^2\) This shows the reason behind 22 Rxd7 – Black can’t play ...Nh7, but has to move his King to the open g-file. \(^3\) 24...Kf7 loses to 25 Qg6, mate. \(^4\) Hint: Look for something stronger than taking on g5, e.g., 25 Rxg5+ Kf7 or 25 Nxe5 Nf6.

743. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bxh6 gxh6\(^1\) 15 Qxh6+ Kg8 16 Qg6+\(^2\) Kh8 17 Re3 Qh4 18 Rg3\(^3\) Qh7 19 Qxe6 Nc6\(^4\) 20 Rh3 Qxh3 21 g6h3. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) 14...Qe8 just trades Queens when Black is down a pawn, e.g., 15 Qxe8 Rxe8 16 Bg5. \(^2\) 18 Rh3 allows 18...Qxh3 19 gxh3 Rg8 20 Qg3 Rgxg3+ 21 hxg3, when White is down a piece for two pawns. \(^3\) 19...Bc8 20 Qd5 c6 loses to 21 Qxd6, when White threatens both Qxf8 and Rh3.

744. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Bxh6 gxh6 17 f6 Bxf6\(^1\) 18 Qxf6 Qd8 19 Qxh6\(^2\) f5\(^3\) 20 Qxg6+ Kh8 21 Re3 Qh4 22 Rg3\(^4\) Rg8 23 Qxd6. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) 17...Bd8 loses to 18 Qg4+ Kh7 19 Qg7, mate. \(^2\) White’s threat is 20 Re3-g3+. Black resigned here. \(^3\) 19...Re8 loses to 20 d4, threatening 21 Bxh7 Kh8 22 Bg6+ Kg8 23 Qh7+ Kf8 24 Qxf7, mate, when 20...Qe7 loses to 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Qh8, mate, and 20...f5 loses to 21 Bxf5, intending 22 Re4, e.g., 21...Re7 22 Re4 Rg7 23 Kg4 Qc7 (23... Rxf4 24 Be6 is mate) 24 Qh7+ Kf8 25 Qh8+ Kg7 26 Bxg7+, winning Black’s Queen. \(^4\) 22 Rh3 allows 22...Qxh3 23 gxh3 Rg8 24 Qg3 Rgxg3+ 25 hxg3, although White is still up a pawn.
745. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Qh4 h6 14 Bxh6 gxh6 15 Qxh6+ Bf6 16 Rxf6 Bxf6 17 Qgx6+ Qg7 18 Qxf8+ Qh8 19 Bh7+ Kg7. How does White win here?

1 White’s threat is 16 Qg6+ Kh8 17 Qh7, mate or 16...Kf8 17 Qf7, mate. 2 Relatively best is 15...Bf8, although this drops the Ng6 to 16 Qg6+ Qg7 17 Rxf6, when White is up two pawns. 3 Black’s King, Rook and Bishop are all under attack. 4 17...Bg7 drops the Re8, while 17...Kf8 defends the Re8 but loses to 18 Qxf6+ Kg8 19 Qg6+ Kf8 20 Rf1+ Ke7 21 Qf6, mate.

746. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Bxh6 gxh6 15 Qxh6+ Kg8 16 Qg6+ Kh8 17 Qxh6 18 Ng5 Bb6 19 Qh6+ Kg8 20 Bh7+ Kh8 21 Bf5+ Kg8 22 Qg6+ Kh8. What is the material balance?

1 This controls f7, which isn’t the case after 17 Ng5 Rf7, intending 18...Rg7, hitting White’s pawn on g2, when 18 Nxf7 Kxf7 gives Black two pieces for a Rook and two pawns and breaks White’s attack. 2 Black resigned here. White’s threat is 19 Nde4 with 20 Qh6+ Kg8 21 Nxf6+ Rxf6 22 Qh7+ Kf8 23 Qh8, mate. 3 Best. 18...Qe8 drops the Queen to 19 Qh6+ Kg8 20 Bh7+ Kh8 21 Bg6+, while 18...d6 weakens e6 and allows mate in five with 19 Qh6+ Kg8 20 Bh7+ Kg8 21 Bf5+ Kg8 22 Bxe6+ Rf7 23 Bxf7, mate. 4 19 Nf7+ Rxf7 20 Qxf7 Qe7 gives White has a Rook and two pawns for two pieces.

747. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxh6 gxh6 14 Qg6+ Kh8 15 Qxh6+ Kg8 16 Ng5 Bxf2 17 Rxf2 Bxf2+ 18 Bxe6 19 Ng5 Re8 20 Bxe6 Rxe6. How does White mate in two?

1 White’s threat is 17 Ng5 with 18 Qh7, mate. 2 White has to be careful, since 17 Ng5 drops the Queen to 17...Ng4+. 3 Now the threat of 19 Ng5 and 20 Qh7 is on again. 4 20...fxe6 doesn’t change anything, while 20...Qxe7 defends f7 but loses to 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Qh8, mate. 20...Qxg5 is the only move that avoids mate.

748. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxh6 gxh6 18 Qg6+ Kh8 19 Qxh6+ Kg8 20 Be4 f5 21 Bd5+ Be6 22 Bxe6+ Rf7 23 Ng5 Re8 24 Qg6+ Kf8 25 Bxf7 Qd7 26 Nh7+ Ke7. How does White win here?

1 20...Rf8 loses to 21 Bh7+ Kh8 22 Bg6+ Kg8 23 Qh7+ Kf8 24 Qxf7, mate. 2 21...Rf7 loses to 22 Qg6+ Kh8 23 Bxf7, with Qh6, mate. 3 23 Qg6+ also wins, but this is stronger. 4 24...Kh8 loses to 25 Bx7 with 26 Qh6, mate. 5 25...Ke7 loses to 26 Qg8/Qh6/Nh7, mate, while 25...Ke7 loses to 26 Qe6+ Kf8, when the quickest way to win is 27 Qf6 with 28 Ne6/Nh7, mate.
749. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Bxh6 Nxe4 19 Qxe4 gxh6 20 Qg6+ Kh8 21 Qxh6+ Kg8 22 Rd3 b5 24 Rad1 Nb8 25 Ng5 Bxg5 26 Rh3+ Bh4. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 18...gxh6 loses to 20 Qg6+ Kh8 21 Qxh6+ Kg8 22 Rd4, with the threat of 23 Rg4+. 2 This defends the Bd7 but gives up control over d4. Unpinning and attacking White's Queen with 24...Be8 loses to 25 Qh6+ and 26 Rxd8. 3 26...Bh6 27 Rxh6 is mate. 4 Hint: Look for something better than 27 g3 bxc4 28 Rxh4+, which loses to 28...Qxh4 29 gxh4 Rg8 30 Qg3 Rxg3+ 31 hxg3, when White is down two pieces for two pawns.

750. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Bxh6 gxh6 13 Qg6+ Kh8 14 Qxh6+ Kg8 15 Ng5 Bf4 16 Nce4 Bxg5 17 Nxg5 Qa5 18 Rae1 Qf5 19 Re3 Nb6 20 Rg3 Be6 21 Nxe6+ Ng4. How does White win here?

1 14...Nh7 should be met by 15 Qxd6, when White is up two pawns (1-0, 18), but not 15 Ng5, which drops a piece to 15...Qxg5. 2 White can win Black's Queen with 18 Qg6+ Kh8 19 Bxf7 Qxg5 20 Qxg5 Rxf7, but Black has three pieces for a Queen and three pawns. 3 19...Nd5 drops the Queen to 20 Bd3, since moving it allows 21 Qh7, mate.

751. Visualize the position after the moves 11 Bxh6 gxh6 12 Qg6+ Kh8 13 Qxh6+ Kg8 14 Ng5 Bf4 15 Nce4 Bxg5 16 Nxg5 Nb6 17 Qg6+ Kh8 18 Bxf7 Bf5 19 Qxf5 Qxd4. How does White win here?

1 White is up two pawns after 13...Nh7 14 Qxd6, but not 14 Ng5 because of 14...Qxg5. 2 Best. 15 Qg6+ Kh8 16 Nx7+ Rx7 17 Qx7 Qf8 gives White a Rook and three pawns for two pieces, but his attack is gone, while 15 Bx7+ Rx7 16 Nx7 Bxh6 17 Nxd8 also gives White a Rook and three pawns for two pieces. 3 Relatively best is 16...Qa5 17 Qg6+ Kh8 18 Bxf7 (White's threat is 19 Qh6 Nh7 20 Qxh7, mate) Qxg5 19 Qxg5 Rx7, with three pieces for a Queen and three pawns. 16...Qe8 defends the f-pawn, but 17 Rae1 just drives the Queen away again. 4 White's threat is 19 Qh6+ Nh7 20 Qxh7, mate. Black resigned here. 5 19...Rg8 loses to 20 Bxg8, while 19...Rx7 drops the Queen to 20 Nx7+, as does 19...Qe7 20 Qg6 Rx7 21 Nf7+.

752. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxh6 Nxe5 16 Qxe5+ gxh6 17 Qh6+ Kg8 18 Qxh6+ Kg8 19 Ng6+ Kh8 20 Nxf7+ Bxf7 21 Bxf7 Qe3+ 22 Kb2 Bd7. How does White win here?

1 15...gxh6 loses to 16 Qg6+ Kh8 17 Qh6+ Kg8 18 Ng5, e.g., 18...Bf5 19 g4 Qa3+ (19...Bg6 loses to 20 Qxg6+ with 21 Qh7, mate) 20 Kb1 Qxc3 gx5, with 22 Qh7, mate. 2 16 dxe5 also wins, e.g., 16...gxh6 17 Qg6+ Kh8 18 Qxh6+ Kg8 19 Ng5, when 19...Bf5 20 Rf1 Qxe5 loses to 21 Rxf5 Qxf5 22 Bd3. 3 White threatens both 22 Qg8 and 22 Qh6, mate. 4 Black has covered both threats.
CHAPTER 26. WHITE PLAYS 1 Nh6+

This chapter contains exercises in which White plays the move 1 Nh6+, when 1...gxh6 opens the g-file and weakens the squares around Black's King, while playing 1...Kh8 allows 2 Nxf7+, often forking Black's Kh8 and Qd8.

In Diagram 1, after the moves 1 Nh6+ Kh8, White wins Black's Queen with 2 Nxf7+. In Diagram 2, after the moves 1 Nh6+ Kh8 2 Nxf7+, White again wins Black's Queen, while after 1...gxh6 2 Qxf6, White threatens mate with either 3 Qh8, 3 Qxf7, or 3 Bxf7, mate.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. White Plays Nxf7, Winning Black’s Queen or Rook on d8
2. Discovered Attacks
3. Mate on g8 and Smothered Mates
4. White’s Knight on f7 Supports a Mate on h8
5. The Idea of Qg7, Mate
6. Mating with a Queen and Two Bishops
7. Queen Sacrifices
8. The Move Qg6+
9. Miscellaneous Tactics
10. Miscellaneous Mates
11. King Hunts

These themes are illustrated using eighty preparatory positions, which are followed by forty visualization exercises ranging in depth from five to twenty-three ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply: 5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17+</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. White Plays Nxf7, Winning Black’s Queen or Rook on d8

1571 [VX-763]. White wins Black’s Queen with 15 Nxf7+.

1572 [VX-754]. White wins Black’s Queen with 18 Nxf7+.

1573 [VX-790]. White wins the exchange and a pawn with 20 Nxf7+ Rxf7 21 Qxf7.

1574 [VX-778]. White wins with the exchange and a pawn with 20 Nxf7+ Kg8 21 Nxd8 Rxd8.

1575 [VX-761]. White wins the exchange and a pawn with 21 Nxf7+ Kg8 22 Nxd8 Qxd8.

1576 [VX-762]. White wins the exchange and a pawn with 20 Nxf7+ Kg8 21 Nxd8 Qxd8.

1577 [VX-758]. White wins Black’s Queen with 20 Ngxf7+ Qxf7 21 Nxf7+.

1578 [VX-768]. White wins with the exchange on d8, then Black’s Nd5 with 20 Nxf7+ Kg8 21 Nxd8 Qxd8 22 exd5.

1579 [VX-775]. White can win Black’s Rd8 with 18 Nxf7+ Kg8 19 Nxd8, but better is 19 Nxe5+, winning Black’s Queen.
2. Discovered Attacks

1580 [VX-758]. White wins Black's Queen with 20 Nxe6+.

1581 [VX-759]. White wins Black's Queen with 20 Nh6+, e.g., 20...Bxh6 21 Qxd7.

1582 [VX-771]. White wins with 18 Nxf7+ Kg8 19 Ng5+ Kh8 20 Qxh7, mate.

1583 [VX-788]. White wins with 18 Nxf7+, e.g., 18...Kg8 19 N7g5+ with 20 Qh7, mate.

1584 [VX-783]. White wins with 25 Nfxe5+ Kh8 (25...Rf7 loses to 26 Qc8+, mating) 26 Ng6+ hxg6 27 Qh3+ Bh4 28 Qxh4, mate.

1585 [VX-772]. White wins with 20 Nxf7+ Kg8 21 Qxd5, intending 22 Nh6+ Kh8 23 Qg8, mate, e.g., a) 21...Re5 22 Nh6+ Kh8 23 Qg8, mate; b) 21...Be7 22 Nh6+ Kh8 23 Qg8+ Rxg8 24 Nh7, mate; or c) 21.h6 22 Nd8+ Kh8 23 Rxe8, winning Black's Re8 and Bf8.

1586 [VX-769]. White's Queen is under attack, but after 20 Nhxf7+ Rx7 21 Nxf7+ Kg8 22 Qxe6 White is up a Rook and a pawn, is attacking Black's Qd8, and is also threatening a discovered check (see next diagram).

1587 [VX-769]. Black to play must lose more material, e.g., a) 22...Qe8 23 Nd6+ wins Black's Queen; b) 22...Qf8 23 Nd6+ wins Black's Bb7; c) 22...Qe7 23 Nh6+ Kh8 24 Qg8+ Nxg8 25 Nf7 is a smothered mate; or d) 22...Be8 23 Nxd8+ Bxe6 24 Nxe6 wins another piece.

1588 [VX-791]. White wins with 23 Nxd7+ Kg8 (23...Kg8 24 Qf5 is mate, while 23...f6 drops the Queen to 24 Bxf6+) 24 Nf6+ Kg7 25 Nxe8+ Kg8 26 Nf6+ Kg7 27 Qf5 (White's threat is 28 Qxh7, mate) Ng5 28 h4 Be7 29 hxg5 Bxf6 30 Bxf6+, winning Black's Queen.
3. Mate on g8 and Smothered Mates

1589 [VX-772]. White's Queen is under attack, but White wins with a double check, e.g., 22 Nh6+ Kh8 23 Qg8, mate.

1590 [VX-772]. White wins with a smothered mate, e.g., 22 Nh6+ Kh8 23 Qg8+ Rxg8 24 Nf7, mate.

1591 [VX-791]. White can win Black's Qd8 with 22 Nxf7+ or play 22 Qxf7, intending 23 Qg8, mate, when 22...Be7 defends g8 but gives White a smothered mate, e.g., 23 Qg8+ Rxg8 24 Nf7, mate.

4. White's Knight on f7 Supports a Mate on h8

1592 [VX-774]. White wins with 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Qh8, mate.

1593 [VX-767]. White wins with 21 Nxf7+ Kg8 22 Rh8, mate.

1594 [VX-774]. After 19 Qh5+ Black has to give up his Queen with 19...Qh6, since 19...Kg8 20 Qh8 is mate.

5. The Idea of Qg7, Mate

1595 [VX-771]. White wins with 20 Qg4+ Bg7 21 Qxg7, mate.

1596 [VX-771]. White wins with 19 Qg4+ Bg7 20 Qxg7, mate.

1597 [VX-768]. White wins with 20 Qg4+ Bg7 21 Qxg7, mate.
1598 [VX-784]. White wins with 21 Qg3+ Kf8 22 Qg7, mate.

1599 [VX-782]. White wins with 17 Qg3+ Bg4 18 Qxg4+ Kh8 19 Qg7, mate.

1600 [VX-757]. White mates in two with 19 Bxf6+ Bg7 20 Qxg7, mate.

1601 [VX-763]. White wins with 15 Bxf6, e.g., 15...Qd7 16 Qg3+ Bg7 17 Qxg7, mate.

1602 [VX-775]. White wins with 18 Bxf6 threatening 19 Qg3, mate, and if 18...Qd2 then 19 Re3, when Black can't stop 20 Qg3+ Bg7 21 Qxg7, mate.

1603 [VX-788]. White wins with 21 Bxh6 Rg8 22 Bxg8 Qxg8 23 Rd7, with a 3-2 advantage on g7.

1604 [VX-772]. White wins with 21 Qg4+, e.g., a) 21...Kh8 22 Bf6+ Bg7 23 Qxg7, mate, or b) 21...Bg7 22 Bf6, when Black can't stop 23 Qxg7, mate.

1605 [VX-776]. White wins with 16 Qxf6, threatening mate on g7 or h8 and forcing Black to give up his Queen, e.g., 16...Be5 17 Bxe5 Qxe5 18 Qxe5.

1606 [VX-778]. Black’s Bd7 controls g4, but White wins with 21 Bxe5, drives Black’s Queen away from the defense of the Bd7, e.g., 21...Qc5 22 Rxd7 Rxd7 23 Qg4+Bg7 24 Qxg7, mate.
6. Mating with a Queen and Two Bishops

1607 [VX-785]. White wins with 21 Bh7, mate.

1608 [VX-756]. White wins with 21 Bh7, mate.

1609 [VX-781]. White wins with 19 Qxh6+ Kg8 20 Qh7, mate.

1610 [VX-771]. White wins with 19 Qxf7+ Kh8 20 Bxg7/Qxg7, mate.

1611 [VX-781]. White wins with 21 Nf7+ Kg8 22 Bh7, mate.

1612 [VX-781]. White wins with 18 Nxf7+ Rxf7 (18...Kg8 drops the Qd6) 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Qh8, mate.

1613 [VX-773]. White wins with 19 Qxf6, threatening both 20 Bxf7+ Kf8 21 Bxh6, mate, and 20 Bxh6 with 21 Qg7, mate.

1614 [VX-789]. White wins with 19 Qg3+ Kh8 20Bg7+, e.g., a) 20...Nxg7 21 Qh3+ Kg8 22 Qh7, mate, or b) 20... Kgl 21 Bf6 Ng7 22 Qxg7, mate.

1615 [VX-771]. White wins with 18 Qf5, intending 19 Qf7/Bf7, mate, e.g., a) 18...Bg7 19 Qxf7+ Kh8 20 Bxg7, mate; b) 18...d6 (this defends the f-pawn) 19 Qg4+Bg7 20 Qxg7, mate; or c) 18...Ne5 19 Bxe5 d6 20 Qg4+ Bg7 21 Qxg7, mate.
7. Queen Sacrifices

1616 [VX-784]. White wins with 21 Rg5+ hxg5 22 Bxh7+ Kxh7 23 Qh5+ Bh6 (23...Kg8 24 Qh8 is mate) 24 Qxf7+ Bg7 25 Qxg7, mate.

1617 [VX-781]. White wins with 18 Rxe5 Qxe5 19 Nxf7+ Rxf7 (18...Kg8 drops the Qe5) 20 Qh5+ Kg8 21 Qh7+, mate.

8. The Move Qg6+

1618 [VX-773]. White wins by sacrificing his Queen with 20 Nxe5 dxe5 (20...Qc8/Qd8 doesn’t change anything) 21 Qxf6+ gxf6 22 Bh6, mate.

1619 [VX-773]. White wins by sacrificing his Queen with 20 Nxe5 dxe5 (20...Qc8/Qd8 doesn’t change anything) 21 Qxf6+ gxf6 22 Bh6, mate.

1620 [VX-776]. White Queen is under attack, but wins with 16 Qxf6, e.g., a) 16...gxf6 17 Bxf6 is mate; b) 16...Rg8 defends g7, but drops the Queen to 17 Nxf7+; c) 16...Be5 17 Bxe5 Rg8 loses to 18 Nxf7+ Qxf7 19 Qxf7, when White is up a Queen, Bishop, and pawn.

1621 [VX-767]. After 21 Qg6+ Kh8 White wins with 22 Rxh6+ Nh7 23 Qxh7/Rxh7, mate or 22 Qxh6+ Nh7 23 Qxh7/Qxh7, mate.

1622 [VX-765]. White wins with 20 Nxf7, when White’s pawn on h5 will support White’s Qg6, e.g., 20...Qd7 21 Qg6+ Kf8 22 Bxh6, mate, or 20...Kxh7 21 Qg6+ Kf8 22 Bxh6, mate.

1623 [VX-788]. White wins with 18 Qg6+ Kh8 19 Bxf7, threatening 20 Qg8, mate, when 19...Bg7 loses to 20 Bxh6, e.g., 20...Rg8 21 Bxg7+Rxg7 22 Qh5+ Rh7 23 Qxe5+Rg7 24 Rxd4, threatening 25 Rh4, mate.
1624 [VX-780]. White wins with 18 Qg6+ Kh8 19 Qxh6+, e.g., a) 19...Kg8 20 Qg6+ Kh8 21 Rh4+ Nh7 22 Qxh7/ Rxh7, mate, or b) 19...Nh7 20 Rh4 Ndf6 21 Qxf6+ Kg8 22 Qg6+ Kh8 23 Qxh7/ Rxh7, mate.

9. Miscellaneous Tactics

1627 [VX-780]. Black is up a pawn and attacking two of White’s pieces, but White wins the exchange and a pawn with 18 Nxf7+ Rxf7 19 Rh4+ Kg8 20 Qb3, winning Black’s pinned Rf7.

10. Miscellaneous Mates

1629 [VX-777]. White wins with 17 Qf5, when Black can’t stop 18 Qh7, mate.

1630 [VX-792]. White wins with 19 Be3+ f6 20 Rxe7 Bxe7 21 Qg6, when Black can’t stop Qh7, mate.

1631 [VX-760]. White wins with 22 Qxf7+ Kh8 23 Qxh7, mate.
1632 [VX-782]. White wins with 17 Qxf7+ Kh8 18 Qg7, mate.

1633 [VX-764]. White wins with 18 Qe7 (1-0), e.g., 18...Rg8 19 Nxf7, mate.

1634 [VX-779]. White wins with 20 Qxh5+, e.g., 20...Nh7 21 Qxh7, mate, or 20...Nxh5 21 Rxf8, mate.

1635 [VX-770]. White wins with 22 Qh6+ Kg8 23 0-0-0, e.g., 23...Ne5 24 Rg1+ Ng6 25 Rxg6, mate.

1636 [VX-766]. White wins with 16 Qe7, e.g., a) 16...Kg8 17 Nxe5 or b) 16...Rxf7 17 Qd8+, mating.

1637 [VX-789]. White wins with 18 Ng4+ Kg8 19 Bxf6 Nxf6 20 Nxf6+ Bxf6 21 Qh7, mate.

1638 [VX-781]. White wins with 20 Bxf6, threatening 21 Bh7, mate, and if 20...gxf6, then 21 Qh7 is mate.

1639 [VX-781]. White wins with 20 Bxf6, e.g., 20...gxf6 21 Qh7/Qg6, mate, or b) Rxf7 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Qh8, mate.

1640 [VX-782]. White wins with 16 Nxf7+ Kg8 17 Qg3 (White’s threat is 18 Nh6+, winning Black’s Queen) Qe7 18 Nh6+ Kh8 19 Rf7, threatening both 20 Rxe7 and 20 Qxg7, mate.
1641 [VX-777]. White wins with 17 Qh5, threatening 18 Nxf7+ Kg8 19 Bh7, mate, e.g., 17...g6 18 Nxf7+ Kg8 (18...Kg7 19 Qxg6 is mate) 19 Qxg6+ Ng7, when White can either win Black’s Qd8 or play 20 Nh6+ Kh8 21 Qh7, mate.

1642 [VX-781]. White wins with 18 Qh5, threatening 21 Nf7+ Kg8 22 Bh7, mate, when 18...gxh6 loses to 19 Qxh6+ Kg8 20 Qh7, mate, and 18...Nf6 loses to 19 Nxf7+ Kg8 20 Bxf6 Rxf7 (20...gxf6 21 Qh7/Qg6 is mate) 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Qh8, mate.

1643 [VX-786]. White wins with 18 Nxf7+ Rxf7 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Qh8+ Kg7 22 Bh7, mate. 1644 [VX-782]. White wins with 17 Qxf7+ Kh8 18 Qxe8+ Kg7 19 Qf8+ Kg6 20 Rf6+, winning Black’s Queen with mate to follow, e.g., 20...Kg5 21 Qxh6+ Kg4 22 Be2, mate.

1645 [VX-784]. White wins with 21 Qg3+, e.g., a) 21...Kf8 22 Bxe7+ Ke8 23 Qg8, mate, or b) 21...Bg4 22 Qxg4+ Kf8 23 Bxe7+, when 23...Qxe7 24 Rxe7 gives White a Queen and Bishop for a Rook and 23...Ke8 loses to 24 Qg8+ Kd7 25 Bf5, mate.

1646 [VX-789]. White wins with 20 Qg3+ Kf7 21 Qg7+ Ke8 22 Ng5, intending 23 Qg6+ Kh8 24 Nxe6, winning Black’s Qc7, e.g., a) 22...Bxg5 23 Bxg5, threatening both 24 Qe7 or 24 Rx6, mate; b) 22...Qd6 23 Rx6 Qxf4 24 Qxe7, mate, or c) 22...Rf6 23 Rx6 Rx6 24 Nxe6 Qc6 25 Qg6, mate.

11. King Hunts
1647 [VX-785]. White wins with 21 Nxf7+ Kg8 22 Bh7+ Kxf7 23 Qg6+ Ke7 24 Rae1+ Ne5 (24...Kd8 25 Rxe8, mate) 25 Bxe5 and now: a) 25...Qd7 drops the Queen to 26 Bc7+, when Black's only move is 26...Qe6, or b) 25...Qb7 26 Bb8+ Be6 (26...Kd7 27 Qxe8 is mate) 27 Qxe6+ (also good is 27 Rxe6+ Kd7 28 Qxe8, mate) Kd8 28 Qxe8, mate.

1648 [VX-770]. White wins with 22 0-0-0, intending 23 Rd3-Rh3, 23 Rg1-Qg7, or 23 Qh4-Rg1. If Black covers g6 with 22...Ne5 23 Rg1 Ng6, then 24 Bxf7 Rxf7 25 Qxg6+ wins, e.g., 25...Kh8 26 Qxf7 with 27 Qg7/Qh5, mate. If Black makes a hole with 22...Rg8, then 23 Qh5+ Kg7 24 Rg1+ Kf6 (24...Kf8 25 Qxf7 is mate) 25 Qf5+ Ke7 26 Qxf7+ Kd8 27 Rg8 is mate.

1649 [VX-790]. White wins with 20 Qf5 e4 (the only move as 20...Kg7 loses to 21 Qxh7+ Kg6 22 Qxh6, mate) 21 Bxe4 Kg7 22 Qxh7+ Kf6 23 Rh3 (White's threat is 24 Rf3+ Ke5 25 Qf5, mate) 23...Qd7 (23...Rh8 lets White execute his threat – 24 Rf3+ Ke5 25 Qf5, mate) 24 Rf3+ Ke5 25 Qg7+ f6 (25...Kxe4 26 Qd4 is mate) 26 Qg3+ Kxe4 27 Rd1, when Black can’t stop both 28 Rd4 and 28 Qf4, mate.

1650 [VX-787]. White wins with 21 Ng5+, e.g., a) 21...Kh8 22 Qh4+ Nh7 23 Qxh7, mate; b) 21...Kg6 22 Bf7+ Kh6 23 Qh4+ Nh5 24 Qxh5, mate; or c) 21...Kh6 22 Qh4+ Nh5 23 Bg8 (White's threat is 24 Nh7+ Kg6 25 Nh8, mate) and now: c1) 23...Kg6 24 Nh7 threatens 25 Nh8, mate, and if 24...Rxg4 then 25 Nh8+ Kf5 26 Qg5 is mate or c2) 23...g6 24 Ne6+ g5 25 Bxg5+ Kg6 26 Qxh5+ Kxh5 27 Bf7, mate.
753. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nh6+ Kh8. How does White win here?

754. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nh6+ Kh8. How does White win here?

755. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nh6+ Kh8. How does White win here?

756. White's Nf5 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nxh6+ Kh8\(^1\) 21 Nxf7+ Rxf7\(^2\) 22 Rxf7. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) 20...gxh6 loses to 21 Bh7, mate (1-0). \(^2\) 21...Kg8 22 Bh7 is mate.
757. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Nh6+R g6xh6. How does White mate in two?

1 18...Kh8 drops the Queen to 19 Nxf7+.

1 757. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Nh6+ R gxh6. How does White mate in two?

1 18...Kh8 drops the Queen to 19 Nxf7+.

758. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nh6+R g6xh6. How does White win here?

1 19...Kh8 20 Ngxf7+ creates a mating net that forces Black to play 20...Qxf7 21 Nxf7+, winning Black’s Queen.

1 758. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nh6+ R gxh6. How does White win here?

1 19...Kh8 20 Ngxf7+ creates a mating net that forces Black to play 20...Qxf7 21 Nxf7+, winning Black’s Queen.

759. Black has just taken White's Ne4, but in the process has undefended his Qd7. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Qg4 Bg5. How does White win here?

1 19...g6 doesn’t change anything, while moving the King loses to 20 Qxg7, mate.

1 759. Black has just taken White's Ne4, but in the process has undefended his Qd7. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Qg4 Bg5. How does White win here?

1 19...g6 doesn’t change anything, while moving the King loses to 20 Qxg7, mate.

760. Black’s Qe5 is forkable from f7 and his pawns on f7 and h7 are weak. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Nh6+R g6xh6 22 Qxf7+ Kh8. How does White win here?

1 21...Kh8 drops the Queen to 22 Nxf7+.

1 760. Black’s Qe5 is forkable from f7 and his pawns on f7 and h7 are weak. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Nh6+R g6xh6 22 Qxf7+ Kh8. How does White win here?

1 21...Kh8 drops the Queen to 22 Nxf7+.
761. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nh6+ Kh8 21 Nxf7+ Kg8 22 Nxd8 Qxd8. What is the material balance?

762. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nh6+ Kh8 20 Nxf7+ Kg8 21 Nxd8 Qxd8. How does White win here?

763. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Nh6+ gxf6 15 Bxf6 Qd7. How does White win here?

1 14...Kh8 drops the Queen to 15 Nxf7+. 2 The only way that Black can stop the mate is to give up his Queen with 15...Qxf6.

764. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nf5 Ne8 17 Nh6+ Kh8 18 Qe7 Rg8. How does White win here?

1 16...g6 drops the exchange to 17 Qxf6 gxf5 18 Nd5, e.g., 18...Re8 19 Ne7+ Rxex7 20 Qxe7, or the exchange and a pawn to 17 Ne4 Nxe4 18 Ne7+ Kg7 19 Qxe5+ f6 20 Qxb8. 2 The only way that Black can avoid mate is by giving up his Queen with 18...Qb4, answering 19 Qxb4 with 19...d6, blocking White's access to f8.
765. White’s Ne5 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nxh6+ gxh6 20 Nxf7\(^1\) \(Kxf7^{2}\) 21 Qg6+ Kf8. How does White win here?

\(^1\) White's threat is 21 Nxd8. Black resigned here. \(^2\) 20...Qd7 loses to 21 Qg6+ Kf8 22 Bxh6, mate.

766. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nh6+\(^R\) Kh8\(^1\) 16 Nxf7+ Rxf7\(^2\). How does White win here?

\(^1\) 15...Nxh6 drops the Qe5. \(^2\) 16...Kg8 drops the Qe5.

767. Here White has a half-open h-file. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nxh6+ gxh6\(^1\) 21 Qg6+\(^1\) Kh8. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 20...Kh8 loses to 21 Nxf7+ Kg8 22 Rh8, mate.

768. Black has just taken White's Nd5. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nh6+ Kh8\(^1\) 20 Nxf7+ Kg8 21 Nxd8\(^R\) Qxd8 22 exd5. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) 19...gxh6 20 Qg4+ Bg7 21 Qxg7, mate.
769. White's Qg4 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nh6+ Kh8 20 Nxf7+ Rxg7 21 Nxf7+ Kg8. White is up the exchange and a pawn, but both Queens are under attack. How does White win here?

770. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxe6+ gxh6 18 Qxe6 Nxe6 19 Bxe6 Bxe6 20 Rxe6 Qxe6 21 Qxe6+. What is the material balance?

1 17...Kh8 drops the Queen to 18 Nxf7+. 2 White’s threat is 19 Rh3 with 20 Qh7/Qh8, mate. Black resigned here.

771. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nh6+ gxh6 18 Qf5 Ne5 19 Bxe5 d6. How does White win here?

1 17...Kh8 loses to 18 Nxf7+ Kg8 19 Ng5+ Kh8 20 Qxh7, mate. 2 White threatens both 19 Bxf7 and 19 Qxf7, mate. Black resigned here.

3 18...Bg7 loses to 19 Qxf7+ Kh8 20 Qxg7/Bxg7, mate, while 18...d6 defends the f-pawn, but loses to 19 Qg4+ Bg7 20 Qxg7, mate.

772. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nh6+ Rxg8 20 Rxg8 21 Qg4+. How does White win here?

1 19...Kh8 loses to 20 Nxf7+ Kg8 21 Qxd5, e.g., a) 21...Re5 attack White’s Qd5, but loses to 22 Nh6+ Kg8 23 Qg8, mate; b) 21...Be7 defends g8, but gives White a smothered mate after 22 Nh6+ Kh8 23 Qg8+ Rfxg8 24 Nh7, mate; or c) 21...h6 loses to 22 Nd4+ Kh8 23 Rxe8, winning Black's Re8 and Bf8. 2 21...Kh8 loses to 22 Bf4+ Kg7 23 Qxg7, mate.
773. Visualize the position after the moves 18 N\textsuperscript{x}h6+ Kf8\textsuperscript{1} 19 N\textsuperscript{x}xf7\textsuperscript{2} exd4\textsuperscript{3} 20 Ne5\textsuperscript{4} dxe5\textsuperscript{5}. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

\textsuperscript{1} 18...gxh6 19 Qxf6 threatens both a) 20 Bxf7+ Kf8 21 Bxh6, mate and b) 20 Bxh6 with 21 Qg7, mate.  
\textsuperscript{2} White is threatening to sacrifice his Queen with 20 Nxe5, followed by 21 Qxg6 or 22 Bh6, mate.  
\textsuperscript{3} After 19...Ng6 20 Bh6 Nf4 21 dxe5 dxe5 22 Nxe5 Rxe5 23 Bxf4 White is up three pawns.  
\textsuperscript{4} Also good is 20 Qxf6 (1-0), threatening 21 Nh8+ gxf6 22 Bh6, mate.  
\textsuperscript{5} 20...Qc8/Qd8 doesn't change anything.  
\textsuperscript{6} Hint: White can sacrifice his Queen.

774. White is down the exchange. Visualize the position after the moves 17 N\textsuperscript{x}h6+\textsuperscript{R} Kh7\textsuperscript{1} 18 N\textsuperscript{x}xf7\textsuperscript{2} Ne5\textsuperscript{3} 19 Qh5+. How does White win after either 19...Qh6 or 19...Kg8?

\textsuperscript{1} 17...Kh8 is worse as 18 N\textsuperscript{x}xh6 comes with check.  
\textsuperscript{2} 18 Rxf6 wins Black's Queen, but Black has two Rooks for a Queen, Knight and pawn after 18...N\textsuperscript{x}xh6 19 Be4+ Nxe4 (19...Kf7 20 Qh4 wins, e.g., 20...N\textsuperscript{x}xh6 21 Nh5+ Kg7 22 Ng7, mate) 20 Qxe4+ f5 21 Qh4, but now the threat of 19 Rxf6 is on.  
\textsuperscript{3} 18...Qc3 saves the Queen but loses to 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Qh8, mate.

775. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nh6+ gxh6\textsuperscript{1} 18 Bxf6\textsuperscript{2} Qd2. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

\textsuperscript{1} 17...Kh8 drops the Queen to 18 N\textsuperscript{x}xh6+ Kg8 19 N\textsuperscript{x}xg7+,  
\textsuperscript{2} The only move that stops 19 Qg3/Qg4, mate. Black resigned here.  
\textsuperscript{3} Hint: White can do better than win Black's Queen with 19 Qg3+ Qg5 20 Bxg5.

776. White's Qf3 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nh6+\textsuperscript{R} Kh8\textsuperscript{1} 16 Qxf6 Be5\textsuperscript{2} 17 Bxe5 Rg8. How does White win here?

\textsuperscript{1} 15...gxh6 loses to 16 Qxf6, threatening mate on g7 or h8 and forcing Black to give up his Queen, e.g., 16...Be5 17 Bxh5 Qxe5 18 Qxe5.  
\textsuperscript{2} 16...gxh6 17 Bxh6 is mate, while 16...Rg8 defends g7, but drops the Queen to 17 N\textsuperscript{x}xg7+.
777. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nxh6\(^{R}\) Kh8\(^{1}\) 17 Qh5\(^{2}\) g6 18 Nxf7+ Kg8\(^{3}\) 19 Qxg6+ Ng7. How does White mate in two?  

1 16...gxh6 loses to 17 Qf5, when Black can't stop 18 Qh7, mate.  
2 White's threat is 18 Nxf7+ Kg8 19 Bh7, mate.  
3 18...Kg7 19 Qxg6 is mate.

778. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nh6\(^{R}\) gmxh6\(^{1}\) 20 Bxf6\(^{2}\) e5 21 Bxe5\(^{3}\) Qc5 22 Rxd7 Rxd7. How does White win here? 

1 19...Kh8 drops the exchange and a pawn to 20 Nxf7+ Kg8 21 Nxd8 Rxd8.  
2 White's threat is 21 Qg4+, mating.  
3 This drives Black's Queen away from the defense of the Bd7.

779. White's Qg3 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Qg6 Ndf6\(^{1}\) 17 Nxh6+ Kh8 18 Nxf7+ Kg8\(^{2}\) 19 Ng5+\(^{3}\) Kh8\(^{4}\). How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint. 

1 16...Nh6f 6 17 Qxg7 is mate.  
2 After 18...Rxf7 19 Qxf7 White is up the exchange and two pawns.  
3 Also good is 19 Rxf6 Nxf6 20 Bh6, e.g., 20...Rxg7 21 Qxg7, mate (1-0) or 20...Ne8 21 Bxg7, threatening 22 Nh6, mate.  
4 19...Nd5 loses to 20 Qh7, mate, while 19...Rf7 20 Qxf7+ nets White a Rook and two pawns.  
5 Hint: White can sacrifice his Queen for mate.  

780. White's Rook is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nnh6+ gmxh6\(^{1}\) 18 Qg6+ Kh8 19 Qxh6\(^{R}\) Nh7\(^{2}\) 20 Rh4 Ndf6 21 Qxf6+ Kg8. How does White win here? 

1 17...Kh8 loses material to 18 Nnh7+ Rxf7 19 Rh4+ Kg8 20 Qh3, winning Black's pinned Rf7.  
2 19...Kg8 loses to 20 Qg6+ Kh8 21 Rh4+ Nh7 22 Qxh7/Rxh7, mate.
781. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nxh6+ Kh8 17 Bg5 Qxe3\(^1\) 18 Qh5\(^2\) Nf6\(^3\) 19 Nxf7+ Kg8 20 Bxf6 Rxf7\(^4\). How does White win here?

\(^1\) Two alternatives: 17...Qd6 loses to 18 Nxf7+ (1-0), e.g., 18...Rxg7 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Nh6+ Kh8, mate, while 17...Ne5 loses to 18 Rxe5 Qxc5 19 Nxf7+, e.g., 19...Rxg7 20 Qh5+ Kg8 21 Nh6+ Kh8, mate. \(^2\) White’s threat is 21 Nh6+ Kg8 22 Bh7+, mate. \(^3\) 18...gxh6 loses to 19 Qxh6+ Kg8 20 Qh7, mate. \(^4\) 20...gxh6 loses to 21 Qh7/Qg6, mate.

782. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nh6+ Rxg6\(^1\) 16 Bxh6 Qxh6\(^2\) 17 Qxf7+ Kh8 18 Qxe8+ Kg7. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 15...Kh8 loses to 16 Nxf7+ Kg8 17 Qh5+, threatening to win Black’s Queen with 18 Nh6+, when 17...Qe7 loses to 18 Qe6+ Kh8 19 Re7, threatening both 20 Rxg7 and 20 Qxg7, mate. \(^2\) 16...Qd6 loses to 17 Qf5+ Kh8 18 Qg6, mate.

783. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Nh6+ Kh8 22 Nxf7+ Kg8\(^1\) 23 Nxd6+ Kh8 24 Nf7+ Kg8 25 Nfxe5+ Kh8\(^2\) 26 Ng6+ hxg6. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 22...Rxg7 loses to 23 Qc8+, mating. \(^2\) 23 Nfxe5+ d5 is messier. \(^3\) 25...Rf7 loses to 26 Qe8+. The only way to stop the mate is by giving up the Queen with 25...Qf7.

784. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Nh6+ gxf6\(^1\) 19 Bxf6 Qc7 20 Re5\(^2\) Rb6 21 Rg5+ hxg5 22 Bxh7+ Kxh7 23 Qh5+ Bh6\(^3\). How does White mate in two?

\(^1\) 18...Kh8 drops the Queen to 19 Nxf7+, while 20...Bxg6 loses to 21 Qg3+ Kg8 22 Qg7, mate. \(^2\) 20...Be7 loses to 21 Qg3+, e.g., 21...Kf8 22 Bxe7+ Ke8 23 Qg8, mate, or 21...Bg4 22 Qxg4+ Kf8 23 Bxe7+, when 23...Qxe7 24 Rxe7 gives White a Queen and Bishop for a Rook and 23...Ke8 loses to 24 Qg8+ Kd7 25 Bf5, mate. \(^3\) 23...Kg8 24 Qh8 is mate.
785. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Nxh6+ Kh8\(^1\) 21 Nxf7+ Kg8 22 Bh7+ Kxf7 23 Qg6+ Ke7 24 Rae1+ Ne5\(^2\) 25 Bxe5 Qb7\(^3\) 26 Bb8+ Be6\(^4\). How does White mate in two?

\(^1\) 20...gxh6 21 Bh7 is mate (1-0). \(^2\) 24...Kd8 25 Rxe8 is mate. \(^3\) 25...Qd7 drops the Queen to 26 Be7+, when Black's only move is 26...Qe6. \(^4\) 26...Kd7 27 Qe8 is mate.

786. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxh6+ Kh8\(^1\) 18 Nxf7+ Rxf7 19 Qh5+ Kg8 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Qh8+ Ng8 22 Bh7\(^2\) Be5\(^3\) 23 Bb4+. How does White win after either 23...d6 and 23...Ke8?

\(^1\) 17...gxh6 loses to 18 Qg4+ -- see exercise 792. \(^2\) White's threat is 24 Qxg8, mate. \(^3\) Black resigned here. 19...Nxf3+ opens the d-file for White's Rook, e.g., 20 Kh1 Bg7 21 Bxh6 Rg8 22 Bxg8 Qxg8 23 Rd7, with a 3-2 advantage on g7.

787. White's Nc3 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nxh6+ Kh7 20 Nxf7 Qxa5 21 Ng5+ R Kh6 22 Qh4+ Nh5 23 Bg8\(^2\) g6\(^3\) 24 Ne6+ g5 25 Bxg5+ Kg6. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

\(^1\) 21...Kh8 loses to 22 Qh4+ Nh7 23 Qxh7, mate, while 21...Kg6 loses to 22 Bh7+ Kh6 23 Qh4+ Nh5 24 Qxh5, mate. \(^2\) White's threat is 24 Ne7+ Kg6 25 Nh8, mate. \(^3\) 23...Kg6 loses to 24 Nf7, threatening 25 Nh8, mate, and if 24...Rxe4 then 25 Nh8+ Kf5 26 Qg5 is mate. \(^4\) Hint: White can sacrifice his Queen for a quick mate.

788. White's Qe4 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxh6+ gxh6\(^1\) 18 Qg6+ Kh8 19 Bxf7\(^2\) Bg7\(^3\) 20 Bxh6 Rg8 21 Bxg7+ Rf8 22 Qh5+ Rh7 23 Qxe5+ Rg7. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 17...Kh8 loses to 18 Nxf7+ Kg8 19 N7g5+, when Black is in check and can't stop 20 Qh7, mate. \(^2\) White's threat is 20 Qg8, mate. \(^3\) Black resigned here. 19...Nxf3+ opens the d-file for White's Rook, e.g., 20 Kh1 Bg7 21 Bxh6 Rg8 22 Bxg8 Qxg8 23 Rd7, with a 3-2 advantage on g7.
17 ply

789. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxh6+ gxh6 18 Bxh6 Ne4 19 Nxe4 f5 20 Qg7+ Kf7 21 Qxh6+ Ke8 22 Ng5 Rf6 23 Rxe6 Rx6 24 Nxe6 Qc6. How does White mate in one?

1 17...Kh8 loses to 18 Ng4+ Kg8 19 Bxf6 Nxf6 20 Nxf6+ Bxf6 21 Qh7, mate.
2 White's threat is 19 Qg3+, when Black can't stop Qg7, mate.
3 18...Ne8 loses to 19 Qg3+ Kh8 20 Bg7+ (1-0) Nxg7 21 Qh3+ Kg7, mate.
4 19...dxe4 loses to 20 Qg3+ with Qg7, mate.
5 White's threat is 23 Qg6+ Kd8 24 Nxe6, winning Black's Qc7.
6 22...Bxg5 threatens mate with both 24 Qe7 and 24 Rxe6, while 22...Qd6 loses to 23 Rxe6, e.g., 23...Qxf4 24 Qxe7, mate.

19 ply

790. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nh6+ R gxh6 20 Qf5 e4 21 Bxe4 Kg7 22 Qxh6+ Kf6 23 Rh3 Qd7 24 Rf3+ Ke5 25 Qg7+ f6 26 Qg3+ Kxe4 27 Rd1 Rc4. How does White mate in one?

1 19...Kh8 drops the exchange and a pawn to 20 Nxf7+ Rxf7 21 Qh5+ -- see exercise 786.
2 White's threat is 24 Rf3+ Ke5 25 Qf5, mate.
3 23...Rb8 lets White execute his threat – 24 Rf3+ Ke5 25 Qf5, mate.
4 25...Kxe4 26 Qd4 is mate.
5 This moves creates two threats -- 28 Rd4, mate, and the move made in response to 27...Rc4.

19 ply

791. Visualize the position after the moves 21 Nh6+ R gxh6 22 Nf6+ Kg7 23 Nxd7+ Kg8 24 Nf6+ Kg7 25 Nxe8+ Kg8 26 Nf6+ Kg7 27 Qf5 Ng5 28 h4 Be7 29 hxg5 Bxf6. How does White win here?

1 21...Kh8 loses to 18 Ng4+ Kg8 19 Bxf6 Nxf6 20 Nxf6+ Bxf6 21 Qh7, mate.
2 White's threat is 19 Qg3+, when Black can't stop Qg7, mate.
3 18...Ne8 loses to 19 Qg3+ Kh8 20 Bg7+ (1-0) Nxg7 21 Qh3+ Kg7, mate.
4 19...dxe4 loses to 20 Qg3+ with Qg7, mate.
5 White's threat is 23 Qg6+ Kd8 24 Nxe6, winning Black's Qc7.
6 22...Bxg5 23 Bxg5 threatens mate with both 24 Qe7 and 24 Rxe6, while 22...Qd6 loses to 23 Rxe6, e.g., 23...Qxf4 24 Qxe7, mate.

23 ply

792. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxh6+ gxh6 18 Qg4+ Ng6 19 Bxg6 fxg6 20 Qxg6+ Kh8 21 Qxh6+ Kg8 22 Qg6+ Kh8 23 Re4 Rf4 24 Bxf4 Qc5 25 Re8+ Bf8. How does White win here?

1 17...Kh8 loses to 18 Nxf7+ Rxf7 19 Qh5+ -- see exercise 786.
2 18...Kh8 loses to 19 Bc3+ f6 20 Rxe7 (1-0) Bxe7 21 Qg6, when Black can't stop Qh7, mate.
3 23...Bf4 24 Re7 threatens 25 Qh7, mate.
4 White's threat is 25 Re8+ Bf8 26 Rxf8, mate. 24 Re8+ also wins.
5 24...Bxf4 takes a defender off of f8 and allows 25 Re8, mate. 24...Qc5 adds another defender to f8, but still loses.
CHAPTER 27. WHITE PLAYS 1 Nf6+

This chapter contains exercises in which White plays the move 1 Nf6+, when capturing the Knight with 1...gxh6 opens up the g-file and weakens the squares around Black's King, while playing 1...Kh8 gives White a strong Knight on f6, with pressure on the light squares.

In Diagram 1, Black's Bc4 is skewering White's Qd3 and Rf1, but White wins with 1 Nf6+, when Black can't stop 2 Qxh7, mate, e.g., if Black plays 1...gxf6 or 1...Bxf6, then 2 Qh7 is mate, while if Black plays 1...Kh8, then 2 Qh7 is also mate.

In Diagram 2, after 1 Nf6+ Black can’t play 1...Kh8 because of 2 Qxh7, mate, and if Black takes the Knight with 1....gxf6, then White wins with 2 Qg4+ Kh8 3 Bxf6, mate.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. The Move Qg7, Mate
2. The Move Bxf6, Mate
3. The Move Qxh7, Mate
4. The Move Ng5+
5. Mates Involving a White Bishop on the a2-g8 Diagonal
6. Mates Involving a White Rook
7. Miscellaneous Mates
8. Miscellaneous Tactics and Longer Variations
9. Black Refuses to Take the Nf6 – White Plays Nh5
10. Black Refuses to Take the Nf6 – White Plays Bxh6
11. Black Refuses to Take the Nf6 – Miscellaneous

These themes are illustrated using seventy-six preparatory positions, which are followed by forty-four visualization exercises ranging in depth from three to twenty-five ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply:</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercises:</td>
<td>14*</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Six of these fourteen exercises are 3-ply.
1. The Move Qg7, Mate

1651 [VX-804]. White wins with 20 Qg4+ Kh8 21 Qg7, mate.

1652 [VX-831]. White wins with 20 Qg3+ with 21 Qg7, mate.

1653 [VX-818]. White wins with 17 Qh6, when Black can't stop 18 Qg7, mate.

1654 [VX-820]. White wins with 17 Bxf6+ Kg8 18 Qg5+ Ng7 19 Qxg7, mate.

1655 [VX-817]. White wins with 18 Qg5 (1-0), when Black can't stop 18 Qh6-Qg7, mate.

1656 [VX-819]. White wins with 19 Qh6 (1-0) Nf5 20 Bxf5 with 21 Qg7, mate.

1657 [VX-830]. White wins with 16 Qg4+, when the only way that Black can prevent mate is with 16...Ng6, but that drops the Qd8.

1658 [VX-835]. White wins with 13 Qh6, e.g., 13...Qxe4+ 14 Be2, when Black can't stop 15 Qg7, mate. Note that White’s Bf6 is undefended, but isn’t under attack (compare the next diagram).

1659 [VX-835]. Here the idea of Qg5-h6-g7 doesn't work since Black can attack White’s undefended Bf6 before the Queen gets to h6, e.g., 13 Qg5 Qxe4+ 14 Be2 Qe6, when White can't play 15 Qh6 because of 15...Qxe6.
1660 [VX-833]. White wins with 17 Qg5 g6 (1-0) 18 Qh6 with Qg7, mate.

1661 [VX-836]. White wins with 15 exf6 with 16 Qg7, mate.

1662 [VX-833]. White is down a Rook and a Knight but wins with 18 Qg5, e.g., 18...g6 19 Qh6 with 20 Qg7, mate.

1663 [VX-807]. White wins with 18 exf6, when saving the Rook with 18...Rc7 allows 19 Qh6, when Black has to give up his Queen on f6 to stop the mate.

1664 [VX-814]. White wins with 15 exf6, when 15...Bxf6 drops the Qc7 and 15...Bd6 loses to 16 Qg4+ Kh8 17 Qg7, mate.

1665 [VX-822]. White can't play 19 Qg3/Qg4+ because of 19...Qg5, but White can block the 5th rank with 19 Rd5, e.g., 19...exd5 20 Qg3+ with mate on g7.

1666 [VX-809]. White wins with 15 Bxf6, e.g., a) 15...Be7 16 Qg4+ Kf8 17 Qg7, mate or b) 15...Re7 16 Qg4+ Bg7 17 Qxg7, mate.

1667 [VX-815]. White wins with either a) 18 Qg5+ Ng6 19 Qh6 and 20 Qg7, mate or b) 18 fxe7 Qxe7 19 Qg4+, e.g., 19...Qg5+ 20 Qxg5, mate.

1668 [VX-818]. White wins with either a) 17 Qg5+ Ng6 18 Qh6 with 19 Qg7, mate or b) 17 Qh6 Nf5 18 Qg5+ Ng7 19 Qxg7, mate.
2. The Move Bxf6, Mate

1669 [VX-801]. White wins with 19 Qg4+ Kh8 20 Bxf6, mate.

1670 [VX-802]. White wins with 17 Qg3+ Kh8 18 Bxf6, mate.

1671 [VX-800]. White wins with 18 Qg4+ Kh8 19 Bxf6, mate.

3. The Move Qxh7, Mate

1672 [VX-803]. White wins with 14 Bd3, when Black can't stop 15 Qxh7, mate.

1673 [VX-810]. White wins with 19 Qf5 (1-0), when Black can't stop 20 Qxh7, mate.

1674 [VX-812]. White wins with 19 Qf5, when Black can't stop 20 Qxh7, mate.

1675 [VX-813]. White wins with 14 Qf5 with 15 Qxh7, mate.

1676 [VX-823]. White wins with 19 Qh5, e.g., 19...h6 20 Qxh6+ Kg8 21 Qh7, mate.

1677 [VX-811]. White wins with 19 Qh4, when the only way to stop 20 Qxh7, mate, is with 19...f5, but that loses to 20 Qxe7.
1678 [VX-824]. White wins Black’s Queen with 17 Be4, since moving the Queen out of the way allows 18 Qxh7, mate.

1679 [VX-812]. White wins with 20 Nf6+, e.g., 20...Kf8 21 Qh8, mate, or 20...gx6 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Qh8, mate.

1680 [VX-821]. White wins with 17 exf6, threatening both 18 fxe7 and 18 Qg7, mate, when 17...Rg8 loses to 18 Qe4, threatening both 19 Qh7, mate and 19 fxe7.

4. The Move Ng5+

1681 [VX-831]. White wins with 21 Ng5+, e.g., a) 21...Kg6 22 Qh5, mate; b) 21...Kh8 22 Bg7+ Kxg7 23 Qh7, mate; c) 21...Kg8 22 Bg7 threatens mate on both h7 and h8; or d) 21...fxg5 22 Bxg5+ Kg8 23 Bf6 Bxf6 24 exf6 Ne5 25 Qh6 with 26 Qg7, mate.

1682 [VX-831]. White wins with 21 Ng5+, e.g., a) 21...Kg6 22 Qh5, mate; b) 21...Kg8 22 Bg7 with either 23 Qh7 or 23 Qh8, mate, and c) 21...Bxg5 22 Bxg5+ and now:

1683 [VX-831] (continued): c1) 22...Kg6 23 Qh6, mate; c2) 22...Kg7 23 Bf6+ Kg8 24 Qh8, mate; or c3) 22...Kg8 23 Bf6 with 24 Qh8, mate.

5. Mates Involving a White Bishop on the a2-g8 Diagonal

1684 [VX-834]. White wins with 18 Qg6+ Kh8 19 Bc4 with 20 Qh6, mate.

1685 [VX-829]. White wins with 22 Qg6+, e.g., 22...Kf8 23 Qxf7, mate, or 22...Kh8 23 Bxf7, when Black can’t stop 24 Qh6, mate.

1686 [VX-834]. White wins with 21 Bc4+ Rf7 22 Qg6+ Kh8 (22...Kf8 23 Qxf7, mate) 23 Bxf7, when Black can’t stop 24 Qh6, mate.
6. Mates Involving a White Rook

1687 [VX-832]. White wins with 19 Rg3+ Qg5 20 Rxg5, mate.

1688 [VX-808]. White wins with 20 gxf6+ Kh8 21 Rg7 with 22 Qh7, mate.

1689 [VX-808]. White's threat is 21 Rxg7+ Kh8 22 Qxh7, mate, and if 20...g6, then 21 Qh6 wins.

1690 [VX-832]. White wins with 19 Rg3+ Ng6 20 hxg6, when Black can't prevent 21 gxf7+ Kxf7 22 Qg7, mate, e.g., 20...Nxd3+ 21 Kf1 Nxc1 22 gxf7+ Kxf7 23 Qg7, mate.

1691 [VX-829]. White wins with 20 Rg3+ Bxg3 21 hxg3, threatening 22 Qh8, mate, when 21...Bh3 loses to 22 Qg6+ Kh8 (22...Kf8 23 Qxf7, mate) 23 Bxf7 with 24 Qh6, mate.

1692 [VX-826]. White wins with 16 Rf3 Ng6 17 Rg3, e.g., 17...Qa5 18 Be2, defending the pawn on c3 and threatening 19 Bh5 and 20 Bxg6.

1693 [VX-834]. White wins with 19 Rxd6 f6 20 Qh6+ Kg8 21 Be4+ Rf7 22 Qg6+, e.g., 22...Kf8 23 Qxf7, mate or 22...Kh8 23 Bxf7 with 24 Qh6, mate.

1694 [VX-826]. White is down a piece for a pawn, but wins Black's Queen for a Rook with 17 Rf3 Qg6 18 Rg3 Qxg3 19 hxg3. Note that 18...f5 19 Rxe6+ fxg6 20 Qxg6+ just drops an extra pawn compared to 18...Qxg5.

1695 [VX-833]. White wins with 20 Rf4, threatening 21 Rh4-h8, mate, e.g., a) 20...Qxd2 21 Rh4 f5 22 Rh8+ Kf7 23 Qf6, mate, or b) 20...f5 21 Rh4 Qxe5 22 Qxd8+ Kxg7 23 Qh8+ Kg6 24 Qxe5, wins Black's Queen.
7. Miscellaneous Mates

1696 [VX-832]. White mates in four
with 18 Bh7+ (1-0) Kh8 19 Bg6+ Kg8
20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Qxf7, mate.

1697 [VX-833]. White can mate by sa-
crificing his Queen with a) 18 Qh8
Kxh8 19 Rh6+ Kg8 20 Rh8, mate, or
with b) 18 Qg5+ Qg6 19 Rxg6+ fxg6 20
Qxg6, mate.

1698 [VX-827]. 17 Qf5+ wins, e.g., a)
17...Kg8 18 Qg4+ Kh7 19 Qg7, mate, or
b) 17...Kh8 18 Qf4 and now: b1) 18...
Kg8 19 Qg4+ Kh7 20 Qg7, mate, or b2)
18...Kh7 19 Qxh6+ Kg8 20 Qg7, mate.

8. Miscellaneous Tactics and Longer Variations

1699 [VX-820]. White is down a piece,
but wins the exchange on d8 and then
Black’s Bb4 with 17 Bxd8 (17 Qg4+
Kf8 18 Bxd8 is similar ) Qxd8 18 Qg4+
Kh8 19 Qxb4.

1700 [VX-834]. White is down a piece
for a pawn, and after 14 Qxh6 Qxf5 15
efx5 Nhx1 16 Qxf6, White is down a
Rook and two pieces for a Queen and
pawn, but threatens 17 Qg5+ Kh7 18 f6
with 19 Qg7, mate, and if 18...Rg8 then
19 Qh5 is mate.

1701 [VX-830]. White wins with 12 Qh5
Nd8 13 Qh6 Ne6 14 0-0-0, intending
Rd3-h3, e.g., 14...Bxf2 15 Rd3 Ng6 16
Rh3 Bh4 17 Rbxh4 Nhx4 18 Qxh4 (1-0)
Nf4 19 Qg5+ Ng6 20 Qh6 with 21 Qg7,
mate.

1702 [VX-820]. White wins with 17
Qg4+ Kf8 18 Bxf5, e.g., 18...Rd8 19
Qg7+ Ke8 20 Qh8+ (this keeps White’s
e-pawn defended) Kd7 21 Bxd8 (21
Rfd1+ Kc6 22 Bxd8 Bd7 pins White's
Bd8) Qc6 22 Rfd1+, winning Black's

1703 [VX-835]. White wins with 12 Qh5
Nd8 13 Qh6 Ne6 14 0-0-0, intending
Rd3-h3, e.g., 14...Bxf2 15 Rd3 Ng6 16
Rh3 Bh4 17 Rbxh4 Nhx4 18 Qxh4 (1-0)
Nf4 19 Qg5+ Ng6 20 Qh6 with 21 Qg7,
mate.
9. Black Refuses to Take the Nf6 – White Plays Nh5

1704 [VX-811]. White wins with 19 Qh4 h5 20 Qg5 (White's threat is 21 Qh6, mate) Kg7 21 Nxh5+ with 22 Qxe7.

1705 [VX-821]. White wins Black's undefended Queen with 17 Qe4 g6 18 Qh4 Kg7 19 Nh5+.

1706 [VX-821]. Here Black's Qe7 is defended by the Nd5, but 19 c4 wins the Nd5, which can't move because 20 Nh5.

1707 [VX-822]. White wins with 18 Qe4 g6 19 Qh4, threatening 20 Qxh6, mate, when 19...Kg7 drops the Queen to 20 Nh5.

1708 [VX-825]. White wins with 17 Qh3 h5 18 Nxh5 gxh5 19 Qxh5+, and now: a) 19...Kg8 20 Nf6+ Kg7 21 Qh6, mate, or b) 19...Kg7 20 Qh6+ Kg8 21 Nh5, mate.

1709 [VX-802]. White wins with 18 Qh3 h5 19 Nxh5+ (1-0), e.g., 19...e5 (attacking White's Qh3) 20 Qh4, and now a) 20...exd4 21 Qf6+ Kg8 22 Qg7, mate, or b) 20...gxh5 21 Qxh5+ Kg7 22 fxe5 Qxe4 (otherwise Bd3) 23 exd6+f6 24 Rd3, intending 25 Kg3, mate.

24 Nd7+ Ke8 25 Qf6 Rf8 26 h8=Q.

1710 [VX-814]. White wins with 16 Qh4, e.g., a) 16...Bxf6 17 Qxf6+ Kg8 18 Bf4 (1-0) with 19 Bh6 and 20 Qg7, mate, or b) 16...h5 17 Qg5 Kg7 18 Nxh5+ Kh7 (18...Kg8 19 Nf6+ Kg7 20 h4 transposes) 19 Nf6+ Kg7 20 h4 Rh8 (continued next diagram).

1711 [VX-814]. White wins with 21 h5, e.g., a) 21...Nd7 22 h6+ Kf8 23 Rxd7; b) 21...Rh6 22 hxg6 Rxg6 23 Rh7+ Kf8 24 Rh8+ Kg8 25 Rxg8, mate; c) 21...a5 22 hxg6 Nd7 23 Rh7+ Rxh7 24 gxh7 Kh8 25 Qg8+ Rxg8 26 hxg8=Q, mate; or d) 21...Na6 22 h6+ Kf8 23 h7 Bc5 (23... Bxf6 24 Qxf6 wins Black's Rh8 or d2)
10. Black Refuses to Take the Nf6 – White Plays Bxh6

1712 [VX-828]. White wins with 17 Bxh6, intending 18 Bg5, mate, e.g., a) 17...gxh6 18 Qxh6, mate; b) 17...g6 18 Bxf8, mate; c) 17...gxh6 18 Bg5+ Kg8 19 Bxf6 with 20 Qh8, mate.

1713 [VX-810]. White wins with 19 Bxh6, when taking the Bh6 loses to Qxh6, mate, and not taking the Bishop loses to Bxg7+, e.g., 19...g6 20 Bg7+ Kxg7 21 Qh7, mate, or 19...gxh6 20 Bg5+ or 21 Bg7+ with 21 Qh7, mate.

1714 [VX-816]. White wins with 14 Bxh6, when taking the Bh6 loses to 15 Qxh6, mate, and not taking the Bishop loses to Bxg7+, e.g., 14...g6 15 Bg7+ Kxg7 16 Qh7, mate, or 14...gxh6 15 Bg5+ or Bg7+ with 16 Qh7, mate.

1715 [VX-825]. White wins with 16 Bxh6, e.g., a) 16...gxh6 17 Qxh6, mate; b) 16...g6 17 Bg7+ Kxg7 18 Qh7, mate or c) 16...gxh6 17 Bg5+ Kg7 (17...Kg8 18 Nxf6+ Kg7 10 Qh6, mate) 18 Qh6+ Kg8 19 Nxf6, mate.

1716 [VX-830]. White wins with 16 Bxh6, e.g., a) 16...gxh6 17 Qxh6, mate; b) 16...g6 17 Qh3, intending 18 Bxf8, mate; or c) 16...gxh6 17 Bg5+ Kg8 18 Bxf6, intending 19 Qh8, mate, when 18...Ng6 stops the mate, but drops the Qh8.

1717 [VX-820]. White wins with 17 Bxh6, threatening 18 Bxg7+ Kxg7 19 Qxh6, mate, e.g., 17...Rg8 18 Be3 h6 19 Bxh6 g6 (19...gxh6 20 Qxh6, mate; 19...gxh6 20 Bf8, mate) 20 Bg7+ Kg8 21 Qh7+ Kg8 22 Qxg8+ Ke7 23 Qe8, mate.

1718 [VX-820]. White wins with 17 Bxf5, e.g., a) 17...exf5 18 Bxh6, threatening 19 Bg5, mate, or b) 17...Qxe5 18 Bxh6 and now: b1) 18...g6 19 Qh4 Qxf5 20 Bg5+ Kg7 21 Qh6, mate, or b2) 18...Qxf5 19 Bg5+ (1-0) Qh7 20 Qxh7, mate.

1719 [VX-827]. 16 Bxh6 wins, e.g., a) 16...gxh6 17 Qf5 with 18 Qh7, mate; b) 16...g6 17 Bxf8 Qxf8 18 Qh3+ Kg7 19 Qh7, mate; c) 16...gxh6 17 Qh5 Bxe1 18 Bg5+ Kg8 19 Bxf6 with 20 Qh8, mate; or d) 16...Re8 17 Bg5 (1-0), threatening Qh5, mate, and if 17...gxh6 then 18 Bxf6+ threatens Qh8, mate.

1720 [VX-835]. 12 Bxh6 wins, e.g., a) 12...gxh6 13 Qxh6, mate; b) 12...g6 13 Qh4, intending 14 Bxf8, mate or c) 12...gxh6 13 Bg5+ Kg7 (13...Kg8 14 Bxf6 threatens mate on h8, when 14...Ng6 stops the mate, but drops the Qd8) 14 Qh6+ Kg8 15 Bxf6 with 16 Qh8, mate.
11. Black Refuses to Take the Nf6 -- Miscellaneous

1721 [VX-824]. White wins Black's Queen with 17 Be4.

1722 [VX-829]. Material is even, but now White wins the exchange with 19 Nxe8 Bxc4 20 Nd6 Qd7 21 Rf3.

1723 [VX-812]. White's Queen is under attack, but wins with 20 Qh6 Kg8 21 Nf6+, when Black has to give up his Queen to avoid mate.

1724 [VX-811]. White wins with 19 Qh3 Kg7 20 Bg8 (1-0), e.g., 20...Rxg8 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Qxg8, mate.

1725 [VX-825]. White wins with 16 Qh5, threatening 17 Qh6+ Kh8 18 Qxh7, mate, when 16...Kxf6 loses to 17 Qg5, mate, and 16...Bf5 loses to 17 Bh6+ (1-0), e.g., 17...Kxf6 18 Qg5, mate or 17...Kh8 18 Qxf5 with Qxh7, mate.

1726 [VX-809]. White wins with 15 Qf5 g6 (15...gxh6 16 Bxf6+) 16 Nxe8+ Kg8 17 Qc5 f6 18 Qd5+ Kh8 19 Qf7, with the threat of both 20 Qxf8 and 20 Bxf6+, e.g., 19...Qe7 (19...Bh6 20 Bxf6+) 20 Bxf6+ Qxf6 21 Nxf6 with 22 Qg8/Qh7, mate.
793. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Nf6+. How does White win after 13...gxf6, 13...Bxf6, and 13...Kh8?

1 Note that White has two threats here -- 14 Nxg8 and 14 Qxh7, mate.

794. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nf6+. How does White win here?

1 Note that White has two threats here -- 20 Nxg8 and 20 Qxh7, mate.

795. White's Queen is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nf6+. How does White win after the moves 16...gxf6, 16...Qxf6, and 16...Kh8?

1 Note that White has two threats here -- 17 Nxg8 and 17 Qxh7, mate.

796. White's Queen is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Nf6+. How does White win after the moves 14...gxf6, 14...Bxf6, and 14...Kh8?

1 Note that White has two threats here -- 15 Nxg8 and 15 Qxh7, mate.
797. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nf6+. How does White win after either 19...gxf6, 19...Bxf6, or 19...Kh8?

798. White is down a pawn and his Queen is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Nf6+. How does White win after 18...gxf6, 18...Bxf6, and 18...Kh8?

799. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nf6+ R gxf6\(^1\) 18 Qg4+ Kh8. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 17...Kh8 18 Qxh7, mate.

800. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nf6+ R gxf6\(^1\) 18 Qg4+ Kh8. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 17...Kh8 18 Qxh7 is mate.
801. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Nf6+ R gxf6 19 Qg4+ Kh8. How does White win here?

1 18...Kh8 drops the Queen.

802. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nf6+ gxf6 17 Qg3+ Kh8. How does White win here?

1 16...Kh8 loses to 17 Qd3 g6 18 Qb3 h5 19 Nxh5+ (1-0) c5 (attacking White's Qb3) 20 Qb4 and now: 20...exd4 21 Qf6+ Kg8 22 Qg7, mate, or 20...gxh5 21 Qxh5+ Kg7 22 fx e5 Qxc4 (otherwise Bd3) 23 exd6+ f6 24 Rd3, intending 25 Rg3, mate.

803. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Nf6+ gxf6 14 Bd3. What is White's threat and what can Black do about it?

804. Black threatens 19...Qe1, mate. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nf6+ R gxf6 20 Qg4+ Kh8. How does White win here?

1 Other moves drop the Queen.
805. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nf6+ R Nxf6 17 exf6. What are White’s two main threats and how does White win after 17...Qxf6, 17...gxh6, 17...hxg5, and 17...g6?

1 16...Kh8 loses to 17 Qh7, mate.

806. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nxe4 Bxc1 18 Nf6+ R gxf6. How does White win here?

1 17...dxe4 loses to 18 Bxe4, e.g., 18...Bh6 19 Bxh6 gxh6 20 Rf6, with 21 Qxh6 and 22 Qxh7, mate, or 18...Bxh2+ 19 Qxh2 (19 Kh1 f5 gives Black the advantage) Qxh2+ 20 Kxh2, when White is up a piece for a pawn. 2 18...Kh8 19 Qxh7 is mate.

807. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nf6+ R gxf6 18 exf6 Rc7. How does White win here?

808. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Nf6+ R Bxf6 20 gxh6 g6. How does White win here?

1 19...gxh6 loses to 20 gxf6+ Kh8 21 Rg7 with 22 Qh7, mate. 2 White’s threat is 21 Rg7+ Kh8 22 Qxh7, mate.
809. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Nf6+ R gxf6 15 Bxf6. How does White win after 15...Be7 and 15...Re7?

1 14...Kh8 15 Qf5 g6 (15...gxf6 16 Bxf6+ wins Black's Queen) 16 Nxe8+ Kg8 17 Qe5 f6 18 Qd5+ Kh8 19 Qf7 Qe7 (19...Bh6 20 Bxf6+ doesn't change anything) 20 Bxf6+ Qxf6 21 Nxf6 with 22 Qg8/Qh7, mate.

810. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nf6+ gxf6 18 Qg4+ Kh8. How does White win here?

1 17...Kh8 loses to 18 Qh5, e.g., 18...h6 19 Bxh6 and now: a) 19...gxh6 15 Qxb6, mate; b) 14...gx6 15 Bg5+ or Bg7+ with 16 Qh7, mate; c) 19...g6 20 Bg7+ Kxg7 21 Qh7, mate.

811. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nf6+ gxf6 18 Qg4+ Kh8. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

1 17...Kh8 loses to either 18 Qe4 g6 19 Qh4 h5 20 Qg5 Kg7 21 Nhx5+ with 22 Qxe7 or 18 Bxh7 g6 19 Qh3 Kg7 20 Bg8 (1-0) Rxg8 21 Qh7+ Kb8 22 Qxg8, mate. **Hint:** Look for something better than 19 Qe4, which can be met by 19...f5.

812. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nf6+ gxf6 18 Qg4+ Kh8. How does White win here?

1 After 17...Kh8 18 Qh5 isn't as good because of 18...h6 19 Qf5 g6, but 18 Nxe7 wins, e.g., 18...Re8 (other moves drop the exchange) 19 Qh5 and now: a) 19...Kg8 20 Nf6+ fxe6 21 Kh7+ Kf8 22 Qh8, mate or b) 19...g6 20 Qh6 Kg8 21 Nf6+, when Black has to give up his Queen to avoid mate.
813. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Nf6+ gxf6\(^1\) 13 Qg4+ Kh8. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 12...Kh8 loses to 13 Qh5 (see exercise 816).

814. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Nf6+ gxf6\(^1\) 15 exf6 Bd6\(^2\). How does White win here?

\(^1\) 14...Kh8 loses to 15 Qe4, e.g., 15...g6 16 Qh4 h5 (16...Bxf6 loses to 17 Qxf6+ Kg8 18 Bf4 (1-0) with 19 Bh6 and 20 Qg7, mate) 17 Qg5 (White's threat is 18 Qh6, mate) Kg7 18 Nhx5+ Kh7 (18...Kg8 transposes after 19 Nf6+ Kg7 20 h4) 19 Nf6+ Kg7 20 h4 Rh8 21 h5, with a winning attack, e.g., 21...Nd7 22 h6+ Kf8 23 Rxd7; 21...Rh6 22 hxg6 Rxg6 23 Rh7+ Kf8 24 Rh8+ Kg8 25 Rxg8/Qxg8, mate; or 21...Nf6 22 h6+ Kg8 23 h7 Bc5 (23...Bxf6 24 Qxf6 wins Black's Rh8) 24 Nd7+ Ke8 25 Qf6 Rf8 26 h8=Q. \(^2\) 15...Bxf6 drops the Queen.

815. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nf6+ gxf6 17 exf6\(^8\) Ne7 18 Qg5+\(^1\) Ng6. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 18 fxe7 Qxe7 19 Qg4+ also wins, e.g., 19...Qg5+ 20 Qxg5, mate.

816. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Nf6+ Kh8\(^1\) 13 Qh5 h6\(^2\) 14 Bxh6\(^6\) g6\(^3\). White's Queen is under attack, but White can mate in two. How?

\(^1\) 12...gxf6 loses to 13 Qg4+ Kh8 14 Qf5 with 15 Qxh7, mate. \(^2\) 13...gxf6 loses to 14 Qxh7, mate (as in exercise 813). \(^3\) Taking the Bh6 loses to 15 Qxh6, mate, while not taking the Bishop loses to Bxg7+, e.g., 14...g6 15 Bg7+ Kxg7 16 Qh7, mate, or 14...gxf6 15Bg5+ or Bg7+ with 16 Qh7, mate.
817. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nf6+ gxf6 17 Bxf6+ Bg6. How does White win here?

818. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nf6+ gxf6 16 Bxf6 Ne7 17 Qg5+ Ng6. How does White win here?

1 15...Kh8 16 Qxh7, mate. 2 16...Bf5 17 Qh6 with 18 Qg7, mate. 3 White can also win with 17 Qh6 Nf5 18 Qg5+ Ng7 19 Qxg7, mate.

819. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nf6+ gxf6 18 Bxf6 Nce7 19 Qh6 Kf6. How does White win here?

1 White's threat is 19 Qh6 and 20 Qg7, mate. 2 The only way to avoid mate is by giving up the Queen with 18...Qxe5 19 Bxe5 Ncxe5, when White is up a Queen for two pieces and a pawn; 18...Nd4 19 exd4 Qe6 give Black nothing after 20 f3.

820. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nf6+ gxf6 16 Bxf6 Re8 17 Qg4+ Kf8. How does White win here?

1 15...Kh8 loses to 16 Qh5, e.g., a) 16...h6 17 Bxf5 Qxe5 (17...exf5 18 Bxf6 threatens 19 Bg5, mate) 18 Bxh6 and now: a1) 18...g6 19 Qh4 Qxf5 20 Bg5+ Kg7 21 Qh6, mate, or a2) 18...Qxf5 19 Bg5+ (1-0) Qh7 20 Qxh7, mate, or b) 16...Nh6 17 Bxh6 (White's threat is 18 Bxg7+ Kxg7 19 Qxh7, mate) Rg8 18 Be3 h6 19 Bxh6 g6 (19...gxh6 20 Qxh6 is mate, as is 19...gxh6 20 Bf8, mate) 20 Bg7+ Kxg7 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Qxg8+ Kc7 23 Qe8, mate. 2 16...Bxc5 loses to 17 Qg4+ Ng7 18 Qxg7, mate, while 16...Rd8 loses the exchange to 17 Bxd8 (17 Qg4+ is good too) Qxd8 18 Qg4+ Kh8 19 Qxb4.
821. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nf6+ gxf6\(^1\) 16 Qg4+ Kh8 17 exf6 Rg8\(^2\). Both Queens are under attack. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 15...Kh8 loses to 16 Qg4 Nd5 (this defends the Qe7; 16...dxc3 drops the Queen to 17 Qe4 g6 18 Qb4 Kg7 19 Nh5+) 17 Qe4 g6 18 Qb4 Kg7 19 c4 (1-0) White wins the Nd5, which can't move because 20 Nh5+ will win Black's Qe7.  
\(^2\) 17...Qxf6 loses to 18 Rxg6 Rg8 19 Rxh6, mate.

822. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Nf6+ gxf6\(^1\) 18 exf6\(^2\) Qc5. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

\(^1\) 17...Kh8 loses to 18 Qe4 g6 19 Qb4 (19 Qe3 1-0), e.g., 19...Kg7 20 Nh5+ wins Black's Queen.  
\(^2\) White's threat is 19 Qg3/Qg4+ Kh7/Kh8 20 Qg7, mate.  
\(^\text{Hint:}\) Look for something better than 19 Qg3/Qg4+, which can be met by 19...Qg5.

823. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nf6+ gxf6 17 Bf5\(^1\) Qd6 18 Qg4+\(^6\) Kh8. How does White win here?

\(^1\) This move gains control over the g4 square.

824. White is down a pawn and his Bd5 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Nf6+\(^1\) gxf6\(^2\). How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

\(^1\) White threatens both 17 Qxh7, mate and 17 Be4.  
\(^2\) 16...Qxf6 loses to 17 Qxh7, mate, while 16...Kh8 17 Be4 wins Black's Queen.  
\(^\text{Hint:}\) Find a way to increase the pressure on h7.
**825.** Visualize the position after the moves 14 Nf6+ gxf6 15 Nxf6+ Kg7 16 Qh5+ Bf5 17 Bh5+. How does White win after either 17...Kf6 or 17...Kh8?

1 14...Kh8 loses to 15 Qh5, e.g., a) 15...h6 16 Bxh6 and now: a1) 16...gxh6 17 Qxh6, mate; a2) 16...g6 17 Bg7+ Kxg7 18 Qh7, mate; a3) 16...gx6 17 Bg5+ Kg7 (17...Kg8 18 Nxf6+ Kg7 10 Qh6, mate) 18 Qh6+ Kg8 19 Nxf6, mate, or b) 15...Bf5 16 Qxf5 g6 17 Bg7+ Kxg7 18 Qh7, mate; b1) 19...Kg8 18 Nxf6+ Kg7 10 Qh6, mate) 18 Qh6+ Kg8 19 Nxf6, mate, or b2) 19...Kg8 20 Nf6+ Kg7 21 Qh6, mate. 2 White's threat is 17 Qh6+ Kh8 18 Qxh7, mate.

1 16...Kxh8 loses to 17 Bxh6, e.g., a) 16...gxh6 17 Qf5 with 18 Qh7, mate; b) 16...g6 17 Bxh6 Qxf8 18 Qh7+ Kg7 19 Qh7, mate; c) 16...gx6 17 Qh5 Bxe1 18 Bg5+ Kg8 19 Bxf6 with 20 Qh8, mate; or d) 16...Re8 17 Bg5 (1-0), threatening Qh5, mate, and if 17...gx6 then 18 Bxf6+, threatening Qh8, mate. 2 16...Kh8 loses to 17 Qf4, e.g., 17...Kh7 18 Qxh6+ Kg8 19 Qg7, mate, or 17...Kg8 18 Qg4+ Kh7 19 Qg7, mate. 3 17...Kg8 loses to 18 Qg4+ Kh7 19 Qh7, mate.

1 15...f5 loses to 16 Rf3, e.g., 16...Ng6 17 Rg3 Qa5 18 Be2, defending the c-pawn and threatening 19 Bh5 and 20 Bxg6. Note that 17 h4 Nhx4 loses to 18 Rg3+ Ng6 19 Ke2 Rd8 20 Rh1 with 21 Qh8, mate, but Black can defend with 17...Qd8 18 h5 Qh4. 2 17...e5 just drops another pawn after 18 Rg3+ Qg4 19 Rxg4+ Bxg4 20 fxe5. 3 18...f5 19 Rxe6+ fxg6 20 Qxg6+ drops an extra pawn compared to the 18...Qxg3 line.

1 16...Kh8 loses to 17 Bxh6, intending 18 Bg5, mate, e.g., a) 17...gxh6 18 Qxh6, mate; b) 17...g6 18 Bxh6, mate; c) 17...gx6 18 Bg5+ Kg8 19 Bxf6 with 20 Qh8, mate. 2 18...Bxf2+ 19 Kxf2 Qb6+ 20 Kg3 Qc3 pins White's Nf3, although White still wins with 21 Bg5 (this attack on Black's Queen is better than 21 Rae1, which can be met by 21...Qxa3, when White's Nf3 is still pinned) f4+ 22 Kh4, and now: 22...Kg7 23 Qxh6+ Kg8 24 Bf6 or 22...Kg8 23 Bf6 Nd4 24 Nxd4 (24 Qxh6 Nf5+ wins White's Queen) Qxd4, when White can play 25 Qxh6, 25 Rf3, or 25 Rad1.
829. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Nf6+ gxf6\(^1\) 19 Qxh6\(^k\) Bxf2 20 Rg3+ Bxg3 21 hxg3 Bh3 22 Qg6+ Kh8\(^2\) 23 Bxf7. What is White's threat?

\(^1\)18...Kh8 drops the exchange to 19 Nxe8 Bxc4 20 Nd6, e.g., 20...Qd7 21 Rf3 Bb8 22 Nx7+ or 22 e5, while 18...Kh8 is similar, e.g., 19 Nxe8 Bxc4 20 Nd6 Qc7 21 Rf3. \(^2\)22...Kh8 23 Qxf7, mate.

830. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Nf6+\(^R\) gxf6\(^1\) 15 Bxf6 Nx d4 16 Qg4+\(^3\) Ng6 17 Bd8 Raxd8 18 Bxb7 Nxc2 19 Rec1 Nxa1 20 Rxc7. What is the material balance?

\(^1\)14...Kh8 loses to 15 Qh5 b6 16 Bxh6 gxf6 (16...gxh6 17 Qxh6, mate, or 16...g6 17 Qh3 with 18 Bx8, mate) 17 Bg5+ Kg8 18 Bxf6, threatening 19 Qh8, mate, when 18...Ng6 stops the mate, but drops the Qh8. \(^2\)White's threat is 16 Qg4+ Ng6 17 Bd8, winning Black's Queen. \(^3\)16 Bxb7 transposes to the main line after 16...Nxc2 17 Qg4+ Ng6 18 Bxd8 Raxd8 19 Rec1 Nxa1 20 Rxc7.

831. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Nf6+ Rgxf6\(^1\) 19 Bxh6\(^k\) Kh7 20 Qh4\(^3\) fxe5 21 Ng5+ Bxg5\(^7\) 22 Bxg5+ Kg8\(^7\). How does White win here?

\(^1\)18...Kh8 drops the Bd7, while 18...Bxh6 19 exf6 gives White an attack. \(^2\)White's threat is 20 Qg3+ with 21 Qg7, mate. \(^3\)White's threat 21 Bg5+, e.g., 21...Kg8 22 Qh6+ Kg8 23 exf6; 21...Kg8 22 Bxf6 Bxg6 23 exf6 with 24 Qg4/Qg5+ and 25 Qg7, mate, or 21...Ke6 22 Qh6+ Kf5 23 Qh7+ Kg4 24 Qh3, mate. \(^4\)21...Ke6 loses to 22 Qh5, mate, while 21...Kg8 loses to 22 Bg7, threatening both 23 Qh7 or 23 Qh8, mate. \(^5\)22...Kg7 loses to 23 Bxf6+ Kg8 24 Qh8, mate, while 22...Kg6 23 Qh6 is mate.

832. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nf6+ gxf6\(^1\) 16 Qxh6 f5 17 Rh3 Nc4\(^2\) 18 h5 Nxb2\(^3\) 19 Rg3+ Ng6 20 hxg6 Nxd3+ 21 Kf1 Nxc1. How does White win here?

\(^1\)Other moves drop the exchange. \(^2\)17...f4 loses to 18 Bh7+(1-0) Kh8 19 Bg6+ Kg8 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Qx7, mate. \(^3\)18...Rf8 19 Rg3+ Ng6 20 hxg6 is similar to the main line, while 18...Nc6 loses to 19 Rg3+ Qg5 20 Rxg5, mate.
833. White is down a piece and a pawn and his Ra1 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Nf6+ Bxf6 16 exf6 Qd6 17 Be5 Rd6 18 Qg5 Kf8 19 fxg6+ Kxg6 20 Qxe6 Qxe6 21 Rh4 Qxe5 22 Qxd8+ Kxg7. How does White win here?

1 15...gxf6 loses to 16 exf6 Bxf6 17 Nxe6. 2 Black resigned here.

834. Both of White’s Rooks are under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Nf6+ gxf6 14 Qxh6 Qxf5 15 exf5 Nxf5 16 Qxf5 Nc6 17 Qg5+ Kh8 18 Rxd6 f6 19 Qxe6+ Kf7 20 Qf6+ Kg7 21 Qg5+ Kh6 22 f6 Qg6 23 fxg6+ Kf7 24 Qf7+ Ke6 25 Rf7+ Kd6 26 Qd5+ Kc6 27 Qxb7 mate. How does White win here?

1 The only move besides 14...Ne3 that prevents mate. 2 White's threat is 17 Qg5+ Kh7 18 f6 with 19 Qh6, mate, and if 18...Rg8 then 19 Qh5 is mate. 3 This gets rid of the White's f-pawn. Three alternatives: a) 16...Re8 loses to 17 Qg5+ Kf8 18 f6; b) 16...Nf2 loses to 17 Qg5+ Kh7 18 f6, threatening 18 Qh6, mate, and if 18...Rg8 then 19 Qh5 is mate; c) 16...Ng3 loses to 17 Qg5+ Kh7 18 Qxb7 threatens mate on h8, when 18...Ng6 stops the mate but drops the Qd8. 4 This breaks the pin on Black's Ne7. 5 12 Qg5+ can be met by 12...Ng6 13 Qxh6 threatening mate on h8, when 14...Ng6 stops the mate but drops the Qd8. 6 This forces White's Queen to leave the Kingside, since 16 Qh3/Qh5 drops the Queen to 16...Nf4+ with a discovered check. 7 White's threat is 19 Qg4 Ng5/Nf7 20 Qxg5/Qxg7, mate. Black resigned here.

835. Visualize the position after the moves 10 Nf6+ gxf6 11 Bxf6 Qe8 12 Qh5 Nbd4 13 Qh6 Ne6 14 0-0-0 Bxf2 15 Rd3 Ng6 16 Rh3 Bb4 17 Rxb4 Nxb4 18 Qxb4 Nf4 19 Qg5+ Ng6. How does White win here?

1 10...Kh8 loses to 11 Qh6 h6 12 Bxh6, threatening 13 Bg5, mate, e.g., 12...gxh6 13 Qxb6, mate; 12...Qxh6 14 Qh4, intending 14 Bxh8, mate or 12... Qg6 13 Bg5+ Kg7 (13...Qxg6 14 Bxf6 threatens mate on h8, when 14...Ng6 stops the mate but drops the Qd8) 14 Qh6+ Kg8 15 Bxh6 with 16 Qxh8, mate. 2 This breaks the pin on Black's Ne7. 3 12 Qg4+ can be met by 12...Ng6 13 Qg5 Qxe4+ 14 Be2 Qe6, when White can't play 15 Qh6 because of 15...Qxe6. 4 12...Ng6 loses to 13 Qh6, when 13...Qxe4+ is too late. 5 Intending Rd3-g3. 6 Black resigned here. 7 White's threat is 19 Qg4 Ng5/Nf7 20 Qxg5/Qxg7, mate. Black resigned here.
CHAPTER 28. WHITE PLAYS 1 RxN(f6)

This chapter contains exercises in which White plays 1 RxN(f6), when 1...gxf6 opens the g-file and weakens the squares around Black's King, while 1...Bxf6 weakens the square h7.

In Diagram 1, after 1 Rxf6 Black can't play 1...Bxf6 because of 2 Qh7, mate, and if 1...Re8, then White wins with 2 Rxf7, when Black can't prevent 3 Qh7+, mate.

In Diagram 2, White has already played Rxf6 and now wins with either 1 Nf5 or 1 Nh5, when Black can't stop 2 Qg7, mate.

The following themes are frequently seen in this chapter:

1. Mate on h7 – White’s Queen is Supported by a Bishop on the b1-h7 Diagonal
2. Mate on h7 – White’s Queen is Supported by a Knight on f6
3. Black’s King Escapes to f8 – Miscellaneous
4. Black’s King Escapes to f8 – White Wins Black’s Queen with Ne6+ or Nd7+
5. Black’s King Escapes to f8 – Queen and Bishop Mate on f7
6. Mate on g7 – White’s Queen is Supported by a Bishop on h6
7. Mate on g7 – White’s Queen is Supported by a Knight on h5
8. Mate on g7 – White’s Queen is Supported by a Knight on f5
9. Black’s King Escapes to f8
10. The Formation Qh5, Ng6, and Bd3
11. Attacking Black’s Fiancetto with Bh6
12. Attacking Black’s Fiancetto with Nd5
13. Miscellaneous Mates Involving a Queen and Bishop
14. Miscellaneous Mates Involving a Queen and Rook
15. Black Refuses to Take the Rf6

These themes are illustrated using seventy-six preparatory positions, which are followed by forty-four visualization exercises ranging in depth from five to twenty-one ply, distributed as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ply:</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
<th>16</th>
<th>17</th>
<th>TOTAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ex.</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Mate on h7 – White’s Queen is Supported by a Bishop on the b1-h7 Diagonal

1727 [VX-873]. 18 Qh7 is mate.

1728 [VX-879]. White wins with 22 Qg3+ Kh8 23 Qh4 with Qxh7, mate.

1729 [VX-841]. White wins with 13 Qh5, threatening 14 Qh7, mate, and if 14...Re8, then 15 Qh7+ Kf8 16 Qh8 is mate.

1730 [VX-848]. White wins with 18 Qg4+ Kh8 19 Qf5 with 20 Qxh7, mate (1-0).

1731 [VX-847]. White wins with 22 Qg4+ Kh8 23 Qf5 (1-0), when Black can’t stop Qh7, mate.

1732 [VX-846]. White wins with 20 Qg4+, e.g., 20...Kh8 21 Qf5 (1-0) with 22 Qxh7, mate, or 20...Bg7 21 exf6 with 22 Qxg7, mate.

2. Mate on h7 – White’s Queen is Supported by a Knight on f6

1733 [VX-878]. White wins with 20 Qh6 and 21 Qxh7, mate.

1734 [VX-871]. White wins with 18 Qh6, intending 19 Nx6, when the only way that Black can prevent mate is by taking White’s Nf6 with his Queen.

1735 [VX-856]. White wins with 25 Nd5 Qd8 26 Nxf6+, when the threat of mate on h7 forces Black to play 26...Qxf6.
3. Black’s King Escapes to f8 – Miscellaneous

1736 [VX-860]. White wins with 21 Nxf6+ Kh8 22 Bxg6 fxg6 23 Qxh7, mate.

1737 [VX-860]. White wins with 20 Qh6, e.g., 20...f5 21 Nf6+, when Black has to give up his Queen to stop 22 Qxh7, mate.

1738 [VX-878]. White wins with 19 Nf6+, threatening Qh6-h7, mate, e.g., 19...Kh8 20 Qh6 and 21 Qxh7, mate, or 19...Kg7 20 Qg5+ Kh8 21 Qh6 with 22 Qxh7, mate.

1739 [VX-842]. White wins with 19 Qxh7+ Kf8 20 Qf7, mate.

1740 [VX-845]. Here Black’s Qc7 defends the f-pawn, but White wins with 19 Qh7+ Kf8 20 Bc5+ (1-0) Re7 21 Qxf7, mate.

1741 [VX-849]. White wins with 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Bc5+, e.g., 19...Rd6 20 Bxd6+ Qxd6 21 Qxf7, mate, or 19...Ke8 20 Qg8+ Kd7 21 Qx7+ Be7 22 Qxe7, mate.

4. Black’s King Escapes to f8 – White Wins Black’s Queen with Ne6+ or Nd7+

1742 [VX-849]. White wins Black’s Queen with 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Ne6+.

1743 [VX-855]. White wins with 17 Qg3+, e.g., 17...Kh8 18 Nf7, mate, or 17...Kf8 18 Nd7+, winning Black’s Queen.

1744 [VX-863]. White wins Black’s Queen with 20 Qxh7+ Kf8 21 Ne6+ Bxe6 22 Qxc7.
5. Black's King Escapes to f8 – Queen and Bishop Mate on f7

1745 [VX-860]. White wins with 20 Qh6, threatening both 21 Nxf6+ and 21 Bxh7+ Kh8 22 Bg6+ Kg8 23 Qh7+ Kf8 24 Qxf7, mate.

1746 [VX-872]. White wins with 17 Bxh7+ Kh8 18 Bg6+ Kg8 19 Qh7+ Kf8 20 Qxf7, mate.

1747 [VX-872]. White can either win Black's Queen with 20 Rf3-g3+ or mate with 20 Bh7+ Kh8 21 Bg6+ Kg8 22 Qh7+ Kf8 23 Rxf7+ Bxf7 24 Qxf7, mate.

6. Mate on g7 – White's Queen is Supported by a Bishop on h6

1748 [VX-866]. White wins with 23 Qg3+ and 24 Qg7, mate.

1749 [VX-877]. White wins with 18 Qxf6+ Kh8 19 Qg7, mate.

1750 [VX-864]. White wins with 22 Bxf8 and 23 Qg7, mate.

7. Mate on g7 – White's Queen is Supported by a Knight on h5

1751 [VX-872]. White wins with 17 Nh5, threatening both 18 Qg7, mate and 19 Nf6+ Kh8 20 Qxh7, mate.

1752 [VX-854]. White wins with 20 Nh5, threatening both 21 Qg7 and 21 Nf6, mate. 20 Nf5 is also good, but doesn't lead to mate, as Black can play 20...Qxf5.

1753 [VX-871]. Black has defended against Qg7, mate, and 21 Nf6 can be met by 21...Rg7, but White wins with 21 Qf6+ Rg7 22 Qxg7, mate.
8. Mate on g7 – White’s Queen is Supported by a Knight on f5

1754 [VX-850]. White wins with 18 Qg3+ Kh7 19 Qg7, mate.

1755 [VX-852]. White wins with 17 Qh5, threatening 18 Qxh6+ and 19 Qg7, mate.

1756 [VX-843]. White wins with 24 Nf5 Qd7 25 Qg4+ Kh8 26 Qg7, mate.

1757 [VX-850]. White wins with 18 Qh3 (1-0) d3 19 Qxh6+ Kg8 20 Qg7, mate.

1758 [VX-854]. White wins with 19 Nf5 with 20 Qxh6 and 21 Qg7, mate.

1759 [VX-862]. Here 23 Nf5 can be met by 23...d6, attacking White’s Nf5, but better is 23 Qxh6, when Black can’t stop 24 Nf5 and 25 Qg7, mate.

1760 [VX-851]. White wins with 20 Qe3, intending 21 Qxh6+ Kg8 22 Qg7, mate, which Black can prevent only by giving up his Queen with 20...Qxf5.

1761 [VX-862]. White wins with 21 Nf5, when Black can’t stop 22 Qxh6+ Kg8 23 Qg7, mate.
9. Black’s King Escapes to f8

1762 [VX-851]. White wins with 20 Qg3+ Kf8 21 Qg7+ Ke8 22 Qg8, mate.

1763 [VX-852]. White wins with 17 Qg4+ Kf8 (17...Kh8 18 Qg7, mate) 18 Qg7+ Ke8 19 Qg8, mate.

10. The Formation Qh5, Ng6, and Bd3

1764 [VX-861]. White wins with 21 Qh5 (1-0), threatening 22 Qh7, mate, when 21...Rd8 loses to 22 Qh7+ Kf8 23 Qf7/Qh8, mate.

1765 [VX-838]. White wins with 19 Qh5, threatening 20 Qh7, mate, when 19...Rf8 loses to 20 Qxh7+ Kf8 21 Qxf7/Qh8, mate.

1766 [VX-841]. White wins with 13 Qh5 Re8 14 Bh7+, e.g., 14...Kf8 15 Qxf7, mate, or 14...Kh8 15 Nxf7, mate (1-0).

1767 [VX-861]. White wins with 21 Qh5, e.g., 21...Rh6 22 Qf7+ Kh8 23 Qxg7/Bxg7, mate.

1768 [VX-861]. White wins with 21 Qh5 Bxg5 22 Bh7+ Kh8 23 Bg6+ Bh6 24 Qxh6+ Kg8 25 Qxg7/Qh7, mate.

1769 [VX-841]. White wins with 16 Qh7+ Kf6 17 Nxf7, threatening both 18 Nxd8 and 18 Bg5, mate.
11. Attacking Black’s Fiancetto with Bh6

1770 [VX-840]. White wins with 22 Bxg7 and 23 Qh7/Qh8, mate.

1771 [VX-840]. White wins with 21Bg7, threatening both 22 Qh7 and 22 Qh8, mate.

1772 [VX-839]. White wins with 15 Bg7, e.g., 15...Bd4+ 16 Bxd4 f6 17 Qh7, mate.

1773 [VX-859]. White wins Black’s Queen with 14 Nd5 Qd8 15 Bb6 (1-0) Qd7 16 Nxf6+ Kg7 17 Nxd7.

12. Attacking Black’s Fiancetto with Nd5

1774 [VX-859]. White wins Black’s Queen with 14 Nd5 Qd8 15 Bb6 Qd6 16 Bc7 Qe6 17 Nc5 Qe8 18 Nxf6+.

1775 [VX-868]. White wins Black’s Queen with 15 Nd5, e.g., 15...Qd8 16 Bb6 Qd6 17 Bc7 Qe6 18 Nc5 Qe8 20 Nxf6+ or 15...Qd6 16 Bc5 Qd8 17 Bd6 Qd6 18 Bc7 (1-0) Qe6 19 Nc5 Qe8 20 Nxf6+.

1776 [VX-857]. White wins with 19 Nd5 Qb7 (19...Qd8 drops the Queen to 20 Nc6 e.g., 20...Qd7 21 Nxf6+ with 22 Nxd7) 20 Nxf6+ Kf8 21 Nxe8 Kxe8, when White is up a piece.

1777 [VX-867]. White wins back her material with 17 Nd5, e.g., 17...Qe6 18 Nxf6+ Qxf6 19 Qxd7, when White has two Bishops for the Rook or 17...Qd6 18 Bc5 Qxc5 19 Nxf6+ Kg7 20 Nxd7 Qb4 21 Nxf8 Rxf8, when White is up a piece.

1778 [VX-858]. White wins Black’s Queen with 21 Nd5 Qd8 22 Bb6 (1-0), e.g., 22...Qd7 23 Nxf6+ Kg7 24 Nxd7 Nxd7, when White is up a Queen and Bishop for a Rook or 22...Qxb6+ 23 Nxb6 Rc6, when White is up a Queen for a Rook.
13. Miscellaneous Mates Involving a Queen and Bishop

1779 [VX-853]. White wins with 19 Bxh7+ (1-0) Kf8 20 Qd2 with 21 Qh6, mate.

1780 [VX-880]. White wins with 24 Bxf7 with either 25 Qg8 or 25 Qh6, mate.

1781 [VX-874]. White wins with 18 Bg5, threatening both 19 Bxf6, mate and 19 Bg6+ Kg8 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Qxf7, mate.

1782 [VX-864]. White wins with either 23 Be5+ f6 24 Qxh6, mate, or 23 Qxh6+ Kg8 24 Be5.

1783 [VX-866]. White wins with either 23 Be3+ Kg7 24 Qh6, mate or 23 Bf8+ Kg6 24 Qf5/Qh6/Qh5, mate.

1784 [VX-877]. White wins with 21 Bf4 (1-0) Nf8 22 Qxh6+ Kg8 23 Be5, with either 24 Qg7 or 24 Qh8, mate.

1785 [VX-877]. White wins with 17 Qh4, threatening 18 Qg4+ Kh8 19 Qg7, mate, and if 17...Bxa2+ 18 Nxa2 Rd5, intending to meet 19 Qg4+ with 19...Rg5, then 19 f4 renews the threat.

1786 [VX-869]. White wins with 39 Qg6+ Kf8 40 Qxf6+ Kg8 41 Ba2+, e.g., 41...Kh7 42 Qf7+ Kh8 43 Qxe8+ Kg7 44 Qf7+ Kh8 45 Qg8, mate.

1787 [VX-874]. White wins with 18 Bg5+, e.g., 18...Kg8 19 Bxf6 with 20 Qh8, mate; 18...Kg7 19 Qh6+ Kg8 20 Bxf6 with either 21 Qg7 or 21 Qh8, mate; or 18...Kg6 19 Qh6+ Kf5 20 Qxf6+ Ke4 (20...Kg4 21 h3+ Kg3 22 Qf4, mate or 21...Kg5 22 Qh6, mate) 21 Qf4+ Kd5, when White can win Black's Queen with 22 Qe5+ Kc4 23 Qxa5.
1788 [VX-865]. White wins with 19 Bxf7, threatening 20 Qh6, mate, when 19...Qe3 defends h6, but loses to 20 Qxf6+, e.g., 21...Kg8 22 Qf7+ Kh8 23 Qh7, mate or 20...Kh7 21 Bg6+ (1-0) Kh6 22 Bf5+ Kh5 23 g4, mate.

1789 [VX-879]. White wins with 25 d6 (1-0), e.g., 25...Rxd6 26 Rxd6 Qxd6 27 Bh7+ Kh8 28 Bg6+ Kg8 29 Qh7+ Kf8 30 Qxf7, mate, or 25...Qxe2 26 Bh7+ Kh8 27 Bg6+ Kg8 28 Qh7+ Kf8 29 Qxf7, mate.

1790 [VX-880]. White wins with 20 Bxg5, threatening 21 Bf6 and 22 Qg7/ Qh8, mate, and if 20...Be7 then 21 Bd3 wins, e.g., 21...f5 22 Bc4+ Rf7 23 Qg6+ Kh8 (23...Kf8 24 Qxf7, mate) 24 Bxf7 with either 25 Qg8 or 25 Qh6, mate.

1791 [VX-866]. White wins with 23 Be3+ Kg8 24 Qg4+ Kh7 25 Rf5 with 26 Rh5, mate.

1792 [VX-844]. White wins with 21 Qg6+, e.g., 21...Qg7 22 Qxe8+ Qf8 23 Qxf8, mate or 21...Kh8 22 Qxe8+ Kg7 23 Qf8, mate.

1793 [VX-878]. White wins with 22 Qg5+ Kh8 (22...Kf8 23 Bxe6) 23 Qf6+ Kg8 24 Bxe6 fx6 25 Rf3, when Black has to give up his Queen to stop 26 Rg3, mate.

1794 [VX-866]. White wins with 23 Rf3, threatening 24 Rg3 and 25 Bf8, mate, when 23...Qc8 loses to 24 Qh5 Qd7 25 Rg3 with either 26 Rg7, mate or 26 Bf8/Bf4/Be3/Bd2/Bc1, mate.

1795 [VX-878]. White wins with 23 Rf2+ (1-0), e.g., 23...Kg7 24 Qg5+ Kh8 25 Qf6, mate; 23...Kh8 24 Qd8+ Kg7 25 Qf6, mate; or 23...Qxe4 24 Qg5+ Kh8 and either 25 Qf6+ Kg8 26 Qf8, mate or 25 Rf8+ Qg8 26 Rxg8/Qg8/Qf6/Qxe5, mate.

1796 [VX-876]. White wins with 17 Re3 f6 (17...Kh8, intending to meet 18 Rg3 with 18...Rg8, loses to 18 Qf6+ (1-0) Kg8 19 Rg3, mate. With the text move Black’s Qc7 now defends g7, but it’s inadequate) 18 Rg3+ Kh8 19 Ng6+ Kg8 20 Ne7+ Kf7 (20...Kh8 21 Qg7 is mate) 21 Rg7+ Ke8 22 Nxf5 Qh8 23 Re7+ Kd8 24 Qxf8, mate.
15. Black Refuses to Take the Rf6

1797 [VX-837]. White wins with either 15 Qh7+ Kf8 16 Rxf7, mate, or 15 Rxf7 with 16 Qh7, mate.

1798 [VX-880]. White is up a piece and now wins Black’s Queen with 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Rxf7+ Qxf7 19 Nxf7.

1799 [VX-849]. After 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Rxf7+ Qxf7 20 Nxf7 White has a Queen and pawn for a Rook, but now wins Black’s Bg7 with 21 Rf1+.

1800 [VX-845]. White wins with 19 Qh7+ Kf8 20 Bc5+ Re7 21 Rxf7+ Ke8 22 Qg8+, e.g., 22...Kd7 23 Rxg7, mate, or 22...Bf8 23 Qxf8+ Kd7 24 Rxe7, mate.

1801 [VX-875]. White wins with 19 Nd5, e.g., 19...Bd8 20 Bh6, when 20...Bxf6 loses to 21 Nxf6+ Kh8 22 Qxg7, mate, and 20...g6 loses to 21 Qxe5 (1-0), threatening 22 Rg6+ and 23 Qg7, mate.

1802 [VX-870]. White wins with 19 Qh7+ Kf8 20 Rxf7+ Kxf7 21 Qg6+, e.g., 21...Kf8 22 Bh6 Qd4 (22...Bxh6 23 Rf1+) 23 Rf1+ Kg8 24 Qh7, mate or 21...Kg8 22 Bh6 Qd4 23 Rf1 (White’s threat is 24 Qh7, mate) Qf6 24 Rxf6 exf6 25 Qxg7, mate.
837. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Rxf6\(^1\) Rfe8\(^2\) 15 Rxf7. What is White's threat and how can Black prevent it?

1 White's threat is 15 Qh7 mate. Black resigned here. 2 14...Bxf6 15 Qh7 is mate, while 14...Rfe8 loses to 15 Qh7+ Kf8 16 Rxf7, mate.

838. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Rxf6 gx6\(^1\) 19 Qh5\(^R\) Rfe8\(^2\). How does White win here?

1 18...Bxf6 loses to 19 Bxh7+ Kh8 20 Qh5, e.g., 20...Qe7 21 Bg6+ Kg8 22 Qh7, mate or 20...Bxg5 21 Bf5+ Bh6 22 Bxd7, winning Black's Queen. 2 19...fxg5 20 Qxh7 is mate.

839. White is down two pawns. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Rxf6\(^1\) Bxf6 15 Bg7\(^2\) Bd4+\(^3\) 16 Bxd4 f6. How does White win here?

1 Also good is 14 Bxg7 Kxg7 15 Rxf6, e.g., 15...d4 16 Rxe6+ fxg6 17 Qh7+ Kf6 18 Qxg6+ Ke5 19 Re1+ Kf4 20 Re4/Nh3/Ne6, mate. 2 White threatens both 16 Qh7 and 16 Qh8, mate. 3 15...Bxg7/Kxg7 16 Qh7 is mate.

840. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rxf6 a3\(^1\) 21 Rf1\(^2\) axb2\(^3\). How does White win here?

1 20...Bxf6 loses to 21 Bg7 (1-0) with either 22 Qh7 or 22 Qh8, mate, while 20...exf6 loses to 21 Bxg7 with either 22 Qh7 or 22 Qh8, mate. 2 This defends the Rf6. Black's King gets out after 21 Bxg7 Kxg7 22 Qh7+ Kxf6. 3 21...Bxf6 loses to 22 Bg7.
841. White is down a piece. Visualize the position after the moves 12 Rxf6 Bxf6 13 Qh5 Re8 14 Bh7+. How does White win after either 14...Kf8 or 14...Kh8?

1 12...exf6 loses to 13 Qh5, threatening 14 Qh7, mate, while 12...g6 loses to 13 Bxg6, e.g., 13...fxg6 14 Rxg6+ Kh8 15 Qh5, mate, or 13...Bxf6 14 Qh5 and now: a) 14...Re8 15 Qh7+ Kf8 16 Qxf7 is mate or b) 14...Bxd4+ 15 cxd4 Kg7 16 Qh7+ Kf6 17 Nxf7, when White's threatens both 18 Nxd8 and 18 Bg5, mate.

842. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Rxe6 1 fxe6 18 Rxf6 19 Qxg5+ 20 Qxg5 exf6 20 Qxf6. What is the material balance?

1 17 Rxf6 immediately doesn't work because Black's pawn on f7 isn't weak, e.g., 17...exf6 18 Qxh7+ Kf8 gives White nothing. 2 Also good is 18 Bxg6, threatening 19 Bxh7+ Nh7 20 Qxh7, mate, when 18...hxg6 loses to 19 Qxg6+, e.g., 19...Kf8 20 Nh7, mate or 19...Kf8 20 Nh7/Qf7, mate.

843. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Rxf6 24 Nf5 Qd7. How does White win here?

1 White is up a piece for a pawn after 23...exd3 24 Rf6 and 25 Rxd3.

844. White is down a pawn, but his two Bishops are strong and Black’s Re8 is undefended. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rxf6 21 Qg6+ Kh8 22 Qxe8+ Kg7. How does White win here?

1 20...g5 loses to 21 Qg6+, e.g., 21...Qg7 22 Qxe8+ Qf8 23 Qxf8, mate or 21...Kh8 22 Qxe8+ Kg7 23 Qf8, mate. 2 21...Qg7 loses to 22 Qxe8+ Qf8 23 Qxf8, mate.
845. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Rxf6 Bxf6\(^1\) 19 Qh7+ Kf8 20 Bc5+ Re7. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

\(^1\) 18...Ba6 loses to 19 Qh7+ Kf8 20 Bc5+ Re7 21 Rxf7+ Ke8 22 Qg8+ Bf8 (22...Kd7 23 Rxe7 is mate) 23 Qxf8+ Kd7 24 Rxe7, mate. \(^2\) Hint: Look for something better than 21 Qh8+, which drops the Queen.

846. White's pawn on e5 is pinned. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Rxf6 gxf6\(^1\) 20 Qg4+ Kh8. How does White win here?

\(^1\) If Black doesn't take on f6, then White is simply up a piece for a pawn, e.g., 19...Rxe5 20 Qg4, when White can continue Rff1 and Bd4. \(^2\) 20...Bg7 loses to 21 exf6 with 22 Qxg7, mate.

847. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rxf6 Bxf6 21 Rxf6 gxf6\(^1\) 22 Qg4+ Kh8. How does White win here?

\(^1\) This move gives White a mate, but otherwise White gets an attack with Qg4-e4.

848. White is up a piece and a pawn. Black is ahead in development, but his kingside is nearly defenseless. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Rxf6 gxf6 17 Be4 Bxd4\(^1\) 18 Qg4+ Kh8. How does White win here?

\(^1\) Relatively best is 17...f5 18 Bxf5 Qxd4, when White can no longer play Qg4+.
849. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Rxf6 Bxf6\(^1\) 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Bc5+ Rd6\(^2\). How does White win here?

\(^1\) 17...b6 loses to 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Rxf7+ Qxf7 20 Nxf7 Kxf7 21 Rf1+, while 17...Rd7 drops the Queen to 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Ne6+. \(^2\) 19...Ke8 loses to 20 Qg8+ Kd7 21 Qxf7+ Be7 22 Qxe7, mate.

850. Black has just taken White's pawn on d4. Visualize the position after the moves 16 Rxf6 gxf6 17 Nf5 Kh7\(^1\) 18 Qh3\(^8\) d3. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 17...Nc6 loses to 18 Qg3+ Kh7 19 Qg7, mate. The only way that Black can avoid mate is by giving up his Queen with 17...Qxf5.

851. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Rxf6 gxf6 19 Nf5\(^8\) Kh7\(^1\) 20 Qe3 Rh8\(^2\). How does White win here?

\(^1\) 19...Kh8 20 Qc3 is even worse for Black, while 19...Rfd8 loses to 20 Qg3+ Kf8 21 Qg7+ Ke8 22 Qg8, mate. \(^2\) 20...Qxf5 is the only move to avoid mate.

852. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Rxf6 gxf6\(^1\) 16 Nf5\(^8\) Rfd8\(^2\) 17 Qg4+ Kf8\(^3\). How does White win here?

\(^1\) Black can limit the damage by pinning White's Rf6 with 15...Qe7, although after 16 Rxf7 Rxf7 17 Nf5 Qd7 18 Qb3 White will be up a pawn after winning the exchange on f7. \(^2\) 16...Kh7 loses to 17 Qh5, intending 18 Qxh6+ and 19 Qg7, mate. \(^3\) 17...Kh8 18 Qg7 is mate.
853. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Rxf6 gxf6 18 Bxf6\(^1\) Re8 19 Bxh7+\(^2\) Kf8. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

\(^1\) White's threat is 19 Bxh7, mate. \(^2\) Hint: In two moves White's Queen can occupy one of the weak dark squares near Black's King.

854. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Rxf6 gxf6 18 Qh5\(^1\) Ne7 19 Qxh6\(^2\) Ng6. How does White win here?

\(^1\) White's threat is 19 Qxg6+ and if 18...Kg7/Kh7, then White wins with 19 Nf5 and 20 Qxh6. \(^2\) Also good is 19 Ng4, threatening to win Black's Queen with 20 Nxf6+ (1-0, 21), e.g., 19...Qc8 20 Qxh6, threatening 21 Nxf6, mate.

855. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Bxe6 Rxe6\(^1\) 16 Rxf6 gx\,f6\(^2\) 17 Qg3+. How does White win after either 17...Kf8 or 17...Kh8?

\(^1\) 15...fxe6 16 Rxf6 wins a piece, since 16...gx\,f6 loses to 17 Qg3+, e.g., 17...Kh8 18 Nf7, mate or 17...Kf8 18 Nd7+ wins Black's Queen. 15...Qxe6 avoids all tricks. \(^2\) Black should give back the exchange with 16...Rxf6 17 Nd7 Qe6 18 Nxf6+ Qxf6.

856. Visualize the position after the moves 23 Rxf6 Bxf6\(^1\) 24 Bxf6 Be\,8\(^2\) 25 Qg5\(^3\) g6. How does White win here?

\(^1\) Relatively best is 23...gx\,f6 24 Bxf6 (24 Bh6 f5 attacks White's Qh4) Bxf6 25 Qxg4+ Bg7, although White can win back the exchange with 26 Nd5 Qd8 27 Nf6+ Kh8 28 Nxe8 Qxe8 29 b3. \(^2\) Now 24...gx\,f6 loses to 25 Nd5 Qd8 26 Nxf6+, when the threat of mate on h7 forces Black to play 26...Qxf6.
Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxf6 Nxf6. What is the material balance?

1 White is up a piece after 17...Bxf6 18 Nd5 Qb7 (Black's Queen is trapped after 18...Qd8 19 Nc6) 19 Rxf6. 2 18...Qc5 just gives up the piece and a pawn after 19 Nb3 (1-0) and 20 Rxd6. 3 19...Qd8 drops the Queen to 20 Nc6 e.g., 20...Qd7 21 Nxf6+ with 22 Nxd7.

---

Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rxf6 Bxf6. How does White win here?

1 Relatively best is 20...Nxd3 21 Qxd3 Bxf6 22 Nd5 Qxc4 23 Nxf6+ Kg7 24 Qxd6, when White is up two pieces for a Rook. 2 Black can preserve his Bf6 with either 22...Qxb6+ 23 Nxb6 Rc6 or 22...Re8 23 Bxd8 Bxd8, but in both cases is down a Queen for a Rook.

---

Visualize the position after the moves 12 fxe5 Nxe5. How does White win here?

1 12...dxe5 loses to 13 Rxf6 Bxf6 14 Nd5 Qd8 15 Bb6 Qd6 16 Be7 Qe6 17 Nc5, when 17...Qe8 18 Nxf6+ wins Black's Queen.

---

White is up a pawn, but his d-pawn is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Rxf6 gx6. How does White win here?

1 Black is down a piece for a pawn after 18...Qxd4 19 Rb6 Qxc5 20 Rxb7. 2 19...Qxd4 loses to 20 Qh6, e.g., 20...f5 21 Nfx6+, when Black has to give up his Queen to stop 22 Qxh7, mate, while 19...Rfd8 loses to 20 Qh6, threatening both 21 Nfx6+ and 21 Qxh7+ Kf8 22 Qh8, mate, when 20...Rxd5 loses to 21 Bxh7+ Kh8 22 Bg6+ Kg8 23 Qh7+ Kf8 24 Qxh7, mate. 3 Also good is 20 Nxf6+ (1-0), e.g., 20...Kg7 (20...Kh8 21 Qh6 Bg6 transposes) 21 Nhx5+ with 22 Qh6, when Black can't stop 23 Qxh7, mate.
861. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rxf6 Bxf6¹ 21 Qh5 Bxg5 22 Bh7+ Kh8 23 Bg6+ Bh6. How does White win here?

¹ 20...Rxh6 loses to 21 Qh7, mate, e.g., 21...Rh6 22 Qf7+ Kh8 23 Qxg7, mate.

862. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Rxf6 gxf6 19 Bxf6 Rxf8¹ 20 Qd2 Kh7² 21 Nf5 Rh8³. How does White win here?

¹ 19...Qb6 is best met by 20 c5 Qc7 21 Bc4. ² 20...Qf2 loses to 21 Rf1 (1-0), e.g., 21...Qb6 22 Qxh6 or 21...Qxf6 22 Rxf6 b6 23 Qxh6, when Black can't stop 24 Nf5 and 25 Qg7, mate. ³ Other moves such as 21...d6, attacking White's Nf5, don't change anything.

863. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Bxc7 Qxc7 18 Bxf7+ Bxf7¹ 19 Rxf6 gxf6² 20 Qxh7+ Kh8. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

¹ 18...Kh8 drops a piece to 19 Bxg6, as does 18...Kf8 19 Bxg6 since 19...hxg6 drops the Queen to 20 Qh8+ Ke7 21 Qxg7+ Kd6 22 Rxf6+. ² 19...h6 20 Rxf7 hxg5 21 Rxc7 gxh4 22 Nxh7 nets White three pawns. ³ Hint: Black’s Bf7 is pinned along the 7th rank.

864. Visualize the position after the moves 19 Rxf6 Bxf6¹ 20 Qxg6+ Kh8² 21 Qxf6+ Kg8³ 22 Qg6+ Kh8. How does White win here?

¹ Relatively best is 19...Bf5 20 Rxf5 gxg5 21 Qxg5, when White has two pieces and a pawn for a Rook (1-0, 28). ² Two of Black's pieces are hanging. Self-pinning with 20...Bg7 loses to 21 Be5. ³ 21...Kh7 drops the Rook to 22 Bxf8, with 23 Qg7, mate next move.
865. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Rxf6 gxf6 18 Qxg6+ Kh8 19 Bxf7 Qe3\(^1\) 20 Qxf6+ Kh7 21 Bg6+\(^1\). How does White win after the moves 21...Kg8 and 21...Kh6?

\(^1\) This prevents 20 Qh6, mate.

866. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rxf6 gxf6\(^1\) 21 Bxh6 Kh7\(^2\) 22 Qh3\(^3\) Rh8\(^4\) 23 Rf3\(^5\) Qc8 24 Qh5 Qd7\(^6\) 25 Rg3 Rac8. How does White win here?

\(^1\) After 20...Qxf6 21 Rxf6 gxf6 22 Bxh6 White threatens 23 Qg3+ and 24 Qg7, mate, and if 22...Kh7/Kh8 then White can either win Black's Rf8 or continue to attack with 23 Qh3. \(^2\) 21...Re8 loses to 22 Qg3+ and 23 Qg7, mate. \(^3\) White's threat is 23 Be3+ Kg8 24 Qg4+ Kh7 25 Rf5 with 26 Rh5, mate. \(^4\) 22...Rg8 loses to either 23 Be3+ Kg7 24 Qh6, mate, or 23 Bh8+ Kg6 24 Qf5/Qh6/Qh5, mate. \(^5\) White's threat is 24 Rg3 and 25 Bh8, mate, but also good is 23 Bh4 Kg8 24 Bh5 (1-0), with the threat of Qg3, mate. \(^6\) White still threatens 25 Rg3 with 26 Bh8, mate, but also 25 Qxh7+ Kxh6 26 Rxf6+ Kg5 27 Qg7+ Kh4 28 Qg3, mate.

867. Visualize the position after the moves 15 fxe5 dxe5\(^1\) 16 Rxf6 Bxf6 17 Nd5 Qd6\(^2\) 18 Bc5\(^5\) Qxc5 19 Nxf6+ Kg7 20 Nxd7 Qb4 21 Nxf8 Rx8. What is the material balance?

\(^1\) 15...Ne8 16 exd6 gives up two pawns, since Black can't take back with either piece, e.g., 16...Qxd6 17 Qxd6 Nxd6 18 Rad1 or 16...Nxd6 17 Bf4. \(^2\) 17...Qe6 18 Nxf6+ Qxf6 19 Qxd7 gives White two Bishops for a Rook.

868. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Rxf6 Bxf6 15 Nd5 Qd6\(^1\) 16 Bc5 Qd8 17 Bb6 Qd6 18 Bc7\(^8\) Qe6. How does White win here?

\(^1\) 15...Qd8 16 Bb6 Qd6 17 Bc7 Qe6 transposes to the game.
869. White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 38 Rxf6\textsuperscript{8} gxf6 39 Qg6+\textsuperscript{1} Kg8 40 Ba2+ Kh7\textsuperscript{2} 42 Qf7+ Kg8 43 Qxe8+ Kg7. What is the material balance and how does White win in this position?

\textsuperscript{1} 39 Qh7+ Kf8 40 Qxh6+ Ke7 41 Qg7+ gives White nothing. \textsuperscript{2} 41...Re6 loses to 42 Bxe6+ Kh7 43 Qf7+ Kh8 44 Qg8, mate, but Black can avoid mate by giving up the Queen with 41...Qc4 42 Bxc4+, although White then has a Queen and two pawns for a Rook.

870. White is down a piece for a pawn, but has pressure on h7. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Rxf6 Rd8\textsuperscript{1} 19 Qh7+ Kf8 20 Rxf7+ Kxf7 21 Qg6+ Kg8\textsuperscript{2} 22 Bh6 Qd4 23 Rf1. What is White's threat and how does White win after 23...Qf6 24 Rxf6 exf6?

\textsuperscript{1} 18...Bxf6 loses to 19 Qh7, mate, while 18...Re8 19 Qh7+ Kf8 20 Rxh7+ transposes to the main line. \textsuperscript{2} 21...Kf8 loses to 22 Bh6, e.g., 22...Bxh6 23 Rf1+ leads to mate or 22...Qd4 23 Rf1+, when 23...Kg8 24 Qh7 is mate and 23...Qf6 24 Rxf6+ exf6 loses to 25 Qxg7+ Ke8 26 Bg6, mate.

871. Visualize the position after the moves 15 fxe5 dxe5 16 Rxf6 gxf6 17 Nd5 Qxc2\textsuperscript{1} 18 Nxf6+ Kh8\textsuperscript{2} 19 Qh6\textsuperscript{3} Bf5 20 Nh5\textsuperscript{4} Rg8. How does White win here?

\textsuperscript{1} 17...Qd8 loses to 18 Qh6, intending 19 Nxf6, winning Black's Queen. The idea behind 17...Qxc2 is to meet 18 Nxf6+ Kh8 19 Qh6 with 19...Bxf5 20 exf5 Qxf5, defending h7, but White has an answer. \textsuperscript{2} 18...Kg7 loses to 19 Qg5+ Kh8 with either 20 Qh6, with 21 Qxh7, mate, or 20 Nh5, threatening 21 Qg7, mate, when 20...Rg8 loses to 21 Qf6+ Rg7 22 Qxg7, mate. \textsuperscript{3} Mate is unavoidable. \textsuperscript{4} Black resigned here. 20 exf5 allows 20...Qxf5, defending h7.

872. Visualize the position after the moves 13 Bxd6 Qxd6 14 Rxf6 gxf6 15 Qh6\textsuperscript{1} Rad8\textsuperscript{2} 16 Ng3\textsuperscript{3} Bg4.\textsuperscript{4} How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

\textsuperscript{1} White's main threat is 16 Ng3/Nf4-h5. \textsuperscript{2} 15...f5 loses to 16 Bxf5 (16 Nf4 can be met by 16...Qf8), e.g., 16...Rad8 17 Bxh7+ Kh8 18 Bd3+ Kg8 19 Rf1, intending to either win Black's Queen with 20 Rf3-g3+ or mate with 20 Bh7+ Kh8 21 Bg6+ Kg8 22 Qh7+ Kg8 23 Rxf7+ Bxf7 24 Qxf7, mate. \textsuperscript{3} The actual game continued 16 Bxh7+ Kh8 17 Bd3+ Kg8 18 Nf4 Qxf4 19 Qxg4 (1-0, 22). \textsuperscript{4} 16...Nxd4 loses to 17 Nh5, threatening both 18 Qg7, mate and 19 Nf6+ Kh8 20 Qxh7, mate. \textsuperscript{5} Hint: Black's last move has undefended the f-pawn.
873. White is down a piece. Visualize the position after the moves 17 Rxf6 Re8\(^1\) 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Rx7+\(^2\) Kxf7 20 Qg6+ Kf8\(^3\) 21 Bh6\(^4\) e6 22 Nxd5\(^5\) exd5 23 Rf1+. How does White win after either 23...Kg8 or 23...Kc7?

\(^1\) Taking the Rook loses to 18 Qh7, mate.  
\(^2\) 19 Rxa6, as suggested in the bulletin, wins a piece after 19...Qg4, e.g., 20 Bh6 Bxh6 21 Rxf6, but the text move is better (21 Qh6+ Qg7).  
\(^3\) 20...Kg8 loses to 21 Bh6, e.g., 21...e6 22 Rf1 Rf8 23 Qh7, mate.  
\(^4\) 22 Rf1+ Ke7 23 Bg5+ Kd6 lets Black's King get away. After 22 Nd5+ exd5, White's Qg6 control the 6th rank and prevents ...Kd6.

874. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Rxf6 gxf6 16 Bxh6 Rfd8 17 Bh7+ Kxh7\(^1\) 18 Bg5+ Kg6\(^2\) 19 Qh6+ Kf5 20 Qxf6+ Ke4\(^3\) 21 Qf4+ Kd5. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

\(^1\) 17...Kh8 loses to 18 Bg5, when White is threatening both 19 Bxf6, mate, and 19 Bg6+ Kg8 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Qx7, mate.  
\(^2\) 18...Kg8 loses to 19 Bxf6 with 20 Qh8, mate, while 18...Ke7 loses to 19 Qh6+ Kg8 20 Bxh6 with either 21 Qg7 or 21 Qh8, mate.  
\(^3\) 20...Kg4 loses to 21 h3+, e.g., 21...Kh5 22 Qb6, mate or 21...Kc3 22 Qf4, mate.  
\(^4\) 21 Qf4 also wins, e.g., 21...Kxd4 22 Be3+ Ke4 23 Qe4+ Kb5 24 Qd3+ Kb4 (24...Ka4 25 Qb3, mate) 25 Qb3, mate.  
\(^5\) Hint: White can win Black's Queen.

875. Visualize the position after the moves 18 Rxf6\(^1\) Bxf6\(^2\) 19 Bxf6 g6 20 Nd5\(^3\) h5\(^4\) 21 Ne7+ Kh8 22 Bx7+ Kg8 23 Bxg6+ Kh8 24 Qh4\(^5\) Rxf6 25 Qxf6. What is the material balance and what is White's threat in this position?

\(^1\) This is better than 18 Bxf6 Bxf6 19 Rxf6 Qxe4, when it's difficult for White to attack Black's King.  
\(^2\) 18...Qxe4 loses to 19 Nd5, e.g., 19...Qxc2 20 Nxe7+ Kh8 21 Re1 wins Black's Be7 or 19...Bd8 20 Bh6 g6 (20...Bxf6 loses to 21 Nxf6+ Kh8 22 Qxg7, mate) 21 Qxe5 (1-0), when the only way Black can stop 22 Rxf6+ is to give up the Queen with 21...Qxe4 22 Qxe4 Bxf6 23 Nxf6+, when White will win Black's Rf8.  
\(^3\) 20 Qg5 doesn't win, as Black can defend g7 with 20...Re8 21 Qh6 QR.  
\(^4\) 20...Re8 loses to 21 Ne7+, e.g., 21...Rxe7 22 Rd8+ or 21...Kb8 22 Qg5.  
\(^5\) White's threat is 23 Qxg6, mate.  
\(^6\) 22...Rxf7 23 Qxg6 is still mate.  
\(^7\) White's threat is 25 Qg5, mate.

876. White is down a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 15 Rxf6 gxf6 16 Qh6 f5 17 Re3 f6\(^1\) 18 Rg3+ Kh8 19 Ng6+ Kg8 20 Ne7+ Kf7 21 Rg7+ Ke8 22 Nxf5 Qb8. How does White win here? See the last footnote for a hint.

\(^1\) This allows Black's Qc7 to defend his h-pawn. 17...Kh8 loses to 18 Qf6+ (1-0) Kg8 19 Rg3, mate.  
\(^2\) 20...Kh8 21 Qg7 is mate.  
\(^3\) Hint: Black's King is tied to the defense of the Rf8.
**VISUALIZATION EXERCISES**

**CHAPTER 28. WHITE PLAYS 1 RxN(p6)+** | 499

---

**877.** White is up a pawn. Visualize the position after the moves 14 Rx6 f6 15 Bh6 Rd8 16 Qe11 Kh82 17 Qb4+ Bxa2+ 18 Nxa2 Rd1+ 19 Nd3 20 Bd3 Rxh1 21 Bf4 Nf8 22 Qxf6+ Kg8. How does White win here?

1. White's threat is 17 Qg3+ Kh8 18 Qg7, mate.
2. 16...Qc7 loses to 17 Qh4, threatening 18 Qg4+ Kh8 19 Qg7, mate, and if 17...Bxa2+ 18 Nxa2 Rd5, intending to meet 19 Qg4+ with 19...Rg5, then 19 f4 renews the threat.
3. Now White's threat is 18 Qxf6+ Kh8 19 Qg7, mate.
4. 17...Nd7 drops a piece to 18 Qg4 Rd8 19 Qd7.
5. Now Black's Nd7 is defended after 20 Qg4+ Rg8, but White can switch his attack from f6 to h7.

---

**878.** Visualize the position after the moves 16 e51 dxe5 17 Rx6 gx6 18 Ne4 Kh8 19 Nxf6 Rg8 20 Nxe6 Kxg8 21 Bc4 Qe7 22 Rx7 Qc5+ 23 Rf2+ Qxc4. How does White win here?

1. This frees up e4 for White's Nc3. White gets nothing after 16 Rx6 gx6 17 Rfx6 Be6 18 Qg5+ Kh8.
2. 18...f5 loses to 19 Nf6+, e.g., 19...Kh8 20 Qh6 or 19...Kg7 20 Qg4+ Kh8 21 Qh6. White's threat is 20 Qh6 and 21 Qxh7, mate.
3. Material is even but now Black's weak f-pawn allows White to expand his position and create a winning attack. 21...Bf5 loses to 22 Qg5+ Kh8 (22...Kf8 23 Bxe6) 23 Qf6+ Kg8 24 Bxe6 fxe6 25 Rf3, when Black has to give up his Queen to stop 26 Rf8, mate.

---

**879.** White’s pawn on d5 is under attack. Visualize the position after the moves 20 Rx6 gx6 21 Bf51 Rf6 22 Qh4 e4 23 Bxe4 Kh8 24 Bh5+ Kg8 25 d6 Rx6 26 Rxd6 Qxd6. How does White win here?

1. Best. Moves like 21 Qe4 and 21 Kh6 can be met by 21...f5 22 Bxf5 f6, when Black’s Qc7 defends the pawn on h7. Similarly 21 Qg3+ can be met by 21...Kh8 22 Qh4 f5, e.g., 23 Qf6+ Kg8 24 Bxf5 Qd6. In all cases White has compensation for the exchange, but has no outright win. 2. 21...Qa5 loses to 22 Qg3+ Kh8 23 Qh4 with Qxh7, mate.
3. This drives Black's Queen off of the 7th rank. Black resigned here.
4. Otherwise White plays 27 Rx6 with 28 Bg6 and 29 Rx7, when Black's f-pawn is indefensible, e.g., 26...Rf8 27 Qh7, mate or 26...Re7 27 Qh7+ Kf8 28 Qh8, mate.

---

**880.** Visualize the position after the moves 15 Qd3 h6 16 Rx6 hxg5 17 Rh6+ gxh6 18 Qg6+ Kh8 19 Qxh6+ Kg8 20 Bxg5 Be7 21 Bd3 f5 22 Bc4+ Rf7 23 Qg6+ Kh8. How does White win here?

1. 16...Re8 loses to 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Rxf7+ Qxf7 19 Nxf7, when White has a Queen, Knight and pawn for a Rook.
2. White is up only a pawn after 17 Qg6 b5 18 Bxf7+ Rxf7 19 Rfx7 Qx7 20 Qxd6. White's threat is 23 Bf6 with 24 Qh8, mate. The actual game arrived at this same position via the moves 20 Qxg5+ Kh8 21 Qh6+ Kg8 22 Bg5.
3. 21...Rd8 loses to 22 Qh7+ Kf8 23 Qh8, mate.
4. 23...Kf8 loses to 24 Qxf7, mate.
CHESS VISUALIZATION COURSE
Chapter 1. Even Number of Attackers and Defenders on f7.


White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces, but can win a piece with 16 Rxe7, when he's up the exchange and a pawn.


White is up the exchange and a pawn. The game continued 26...Nc5 27 Bxf7+ Kxf7 28 Bb6 Bxc3 29 bxc3 Na4 30 Rxd7+ (1-0).


White is up a Queen and pawn for a Rook and Knight (11 points to 8). The game continued 26 dxc5 bxc5 27 e4 Rd8 28 Qf2+ (1-0) Kg8 29 Qf6, winning Black's g-pawn.


White is up the exchange and a pawn. 16...Kxf7 drops the Queen to 17 Nd6+, The actual game continued 16...a6 17 Nd6 Qxc7 18 Qf4 Ne5 19 Rxe7+ Kxe7 20 Qxe5+ (1-0); when play might continue 20...Kf8 (20...Kh6 21 Nf7, mate; 20...Kg8 21 Qxe7) 21 Qh8+ Ng8 22 Rf1+ Ke7 23 Qg7+ Kxd6 24 e5+ Ke6 25 Qf7+ Kxe5 26 Qd5, mate.


White is up the exchange and a pawn. 16...Kxf7 drops the Queen to 17 Nd6+. The actual game continued 16...a6 17 Nd6 Qxc7 18 Qf4 Ne5 19 Rxe7+ Kxe7 20 Qxe5+ (1-0); when play might continue 20...Kf8 (20...Kh6 21 Nf7, mate; 20...Kg8 21 Qxe7) 21 Qh8+ Ng8 22 Rf1+ Ke7 23 Qg7+ Kxd6 24 e5+ Ke6 25 Qf7+ Kxe5 26 Qd5, mate.


White is up the exchange and a pawn. 16...Kxf7 drops the Queen to 17 Nd6+. The actual game continued 16...a6 17 Nd6 Qxc7 18 Qf4 Ne5 19 Rxe7+ Kxe7 20 Qxe5+ (1-0); when play might continue 20...Kf8 (20...Kh6 21 Nf7, mate; 20...Kg8 21 Qxe7) 21 Qh8+ Ng8 22 Rf1+ Ke7 23 Qg7+ Kxd6 24 e5+ Ke6 25 Qf7+ Kxe5 26 Qd5, mate.


White can win Black's Bishop with 18 Qh5+ Kg8 19 Bxg5, when White is up the exchange and a pawn.


Material is even. The game continued 19...d5 20 Qg4 Re8 21 Rf1 Kg7, when White has a won position, e.g., 22 Rxf6 (1-0) Kxf6 23 Bg5+ Kf7/Kg7 24 Qd7+ Kf8 (the only move to defend the Re8) 25 Bh6+ Kg8 26 Qg7, mate.


White is down the exchange for a pawn, but has a won position, e.g., 22 Bh4+ Kg7 23 Nh5+ Kh6 (23...Kh7 24 Rf7+) 24 Qg5+ Kh7 25 Rf7+ Kh8 26 Qh6+ Kg8 27 Qg7, mate.


White is up the exchange and a pawn (1-0, 21).


White is up the exchange (1-0).


White is up the exchange for a pawn. 21...Qf7 allows 22 Re7 with 23 Qe5, threatening both 24 Qxg7 and Re8+) 22 Re8+ Kh7 23 Rbe1, etc.


White is up the exchange and two pawns. Note that Black can't win the a-pawn with either 20...Be6 21 Qb5 or 20...Qxa2 21 Rfe1 h6
White is up a pawn. The game continued 18...Qh4 19 Be3 Kh8 (this unpins the Nd5, but loses; 19...Rf8 was better) 20 Bd3 Kg8 21 Qh7+ (21 Rf1 is also good) Kf8 22 Rf1+ Ke8 23 Qg8+ (1-0) Ke7 24 Rf7+ Ke6 25 Bf5, mate.


White can win a piece with 16 Bxc5 Bxc5 17 Qc4+ Be6 18 Qxc5, when White is up the exchange and a pawn.


White can win a piece with 23 Qxg7+, when White has a Queen and Knight for two Rooks (13 points to 10) and will win Black's e-pawn after 23...Ke6 24 Nxe4.


White wins with 19 Qxc6 (1-0) Qxc6 20 Nxe5+ Kf6 21 Nxc6, when he is up the exchange and two pawns. Note that 19...Rb8 drops the Queen to 20 Nxe5+, while 19...Qf5 20 Rxe5 Qxd3 loses to 21 Ng5+ Kf8 22 Qe8, mate.


White is up a Rook.


White is up a Rook and three pawns for two pieces (8 points to 6). Play might continue 16 Qf4+ Kg7 17 Qe4 Qd7 18 Nd5, intending 19 Nxe7, 19 Bc3, and 19 e6.


White is down the exchange for a pawn, but has a winning attack. Play might continue 22 Bb2+ Ke7 23 Re1+ and now: a) 23...Kd8 24 Bf6+ Re7 25 Qg8+ Kc7 26 Rxe7 or b) 23...Kf8 24 Qf4+ Kg8 Rxe8+ Qxe8 26 Qd4 Qe7 27 Ng5, when Black can’t stop 28 Qh8, mate.


White can save his Queen and win Black’s Queen with either 16 Qf3+ Kg7 17 Bxd8 or 16 Qh6+ Kg8 17 Bxd8. 16 Qh4 wins Black’s Queen as well, but isn’t as good as it gives up another piece after 16...Qxg5 17 Qxg5.


White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces, but can win Black’s Bishop with 16 Bb7 with 21 Rto7+ Kg8 22 Rxb7, when White is up the exchange and a pawn (1-0, 30).

White is down a piece for a pawn, but gets his material back with 22 Qxb7 (two of Black’s pieces are under attack) Rxd8 23 Qxc6+, when White is up two pawns and has an attack.


White has a Rook and two pawns for two pieces, but can win Black’s Nb7 with 27 Rxd5 28 Qc7+ Kg6 29 Rxb7, when White is up the exchange and two pawns. Black played 29...Bxa2, then resigned. Play might continue 30 Qxe7 Nh5 31 Bxg7 (this controls h6 and threatens 32 Qe8+ Bxb3 32 Qe8+ Kg5 33 h4, mate).


White wins by exchanging three times on f7 and pushing his b-pawn, e.g., 24 Rxf7 Rxf7 25 Qxf7+ Qxg2 26 Rxf7 Kxf7 27 b7, when Black has nothing left to stop White’s b-pawn.


White is up the exchange for a pawn. Black can’t play 12...Nxf6 because it drops the Bc5 after either 13 Qh5+ (1-0) Kg8 14 Qxc5, when White is up a Rook for a pawn, or 13...g6 14 Qxh7+ Ke8 (14...Kf8 15 Bh6+ Ke8 transposes) 15 Qxg6+ Kd7 (15...Ke7 16 Qxf6+ Kd7 17 Qf5+ is even worse) 16 Qf5+.


White is up a Queen and pawn for two pieces.

31. Richter-Christoffersen, Munich Olympiad, Munich, Germany, 1936. C84.

White is up a piece.


White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces, but can win Black’s Ra8 with 12 d6 Bxd6 13 Qd5+ Kf8 14 Qxa8, when White is up two Rooks for two pieces.

33. Clever-Hofelder, SW Team Championship, Germany, 1979-80. A71.

Black has two legal moves -- 21...Kh5 loses to 22 Be2, mate, while 21...Kf6 loses to 22 Qxe6, mate.


White has a Queen and two pawns for a Rook and Knight.


White mates in two with 29 Qh7+ (1-0) Kh8 30 Qh8, mate.


White wins with 27 Qe5 (1-0) with 28 Qg7, mate.


White mates in two with 29 Qh7+ (1-0) Kh8 30 Qh8, mate.

White wins with 25 Rf3, threatening 26 Rh3, mate, which Black can only stop by giving up his Rb4, e.g., 25...Rh4 26 Bxh4, after which White is up a piece and threatens both 27 Rxf8 and 27 Bf6 and Rh3, mate. Play might continue 26...Re8 27 Rf7+ and now: a) 27...Kh8 28 Qxg6 Qg8 29 Qh6+ Qh7 30 Qxh7, mate or b) 27...Kh6 28 Qh3 Qxf7 29 Bf6, mate.

White is up a pawn. The game continued 26...Rxf2 27 Kxf2 Rc8 28 Ke3 (1-0), when White has a strategically won ending, as all of his pieces are better than their Black counterparts.


White is up the exchange and a pawn (6 points to 3). The game continued. 10...Kf6 (10...Kg8 11 Bxh6 threatens 12 Bf4, mate) 11 Bb3 Bxd4 (11...d5 closes off the b3-h7 diagonal, but White is still up the exchange and a pawn) 12 Qf7, mate.


White mates in two with 18 Qe8+ (1-0) Bf8 19 Qxf7, mate.


White is up the exchange (1-0) and will win Black's f-pawn, since defending it with 20...g6 drops the Ne7 to 21 Re7 Qg8 22 Rxd7.


White mates in two with 18 Qe8+ (1-0) Bf8 19 Qxf7, mate.


White is up a pawn, threatening 17 Bxh6, although Black can avoid mate either by defending h6 with 16...Ng8 or 16...Kh7, or by attacking White's Bf7 with 16...Ne5 or 16...Be8.


White can win Black's Queen with 15 Nxe6 (1-0), threatening both 16 Nxd8 and 16 Nxe6 mate. The game continued 15...Rg8 16 Nxd8 Bxd8 (1-0).


White is up the exchange and a pawn. Now 20...Kh8 loses to 21 Ng6+ Kh7 22 Ng8+ Kh8 23 Re8, intending 24 Ng6+ Kh7 25 Rh8, mate. The actual game continued 20...Kh7 21 Nc4 (1-0), when one possible continuation is 21...Qb4 22 Re8 Bxd4 23 Rf1 Bf4 24 Rdd8 Bxd8 25 Kg8+, winning, e.g., 25...Kg6 26 Kg5 27 Qf7+ Bf6 (27...Kf4 drops the Queen to 28 Nxf6+ 27...Kg5 28 Kg3 Nc3 mate) 28 Qg6+ Kg4 29 h3 is mate) 28 Qg6+ Kg4 29 g3/Nd3, mate.


White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces, but can win Black's Nc6 with 27 d5 (1-0), when White is up the exchange after 27...Bd6 28 dxc6 bxc6.


White can win Black's Queen with 22 Ng6+ Kh7 23 Nxf8+ Rxh8, when White is up a Queen and pawn for two pieces.

(1-0) Rxf8 29 Rxf8, mate.

White is up a piece.


White can win the exchange with 12 Qd5+ Kh8 13 Nf7+ Rxf7 (13...Kg8 14 Nh6+ leads to a smothered mate) 14 Qxf7 (1-0).

White is up a piece.


White can win the exchange with 12 Qd5+ Kh8 13 Nf7+ Rxf7 (13...Kg8 14 Nh6+ leads to a smothered mate) 14 Qxf7 (1-0, 19).

White is up a piece.


White wins with 24 Qxg6, threatening both 25 Qh7, mate, and 25 Nf7+, winning Black's Queen. The actual game continued 24...Nh6 25 Qh7, mate. 24...Kg8 also loses to 25 Qh7, mate.

White wins a Queen and a pawn.


White has three pawns for the exchange, but can win material with 26 Bxe5 (1-0), e.g., 26...Rxe5 27 Rxa7+ Kf8 28 Rxa8+, when White is up four pawns.

White is up a piece.


White has a Rook and a pawn for two pieces, but can win Black's Nd3 with 20 Qb3, with the dual threat of 21 Nf7+ and 21 Qxd3 (1-0). The game continued 20...Qd5 (20...Qf8 is also possible, but other Queen moves lose, e.g., 20...Qe8 drops the Queen to 21 Nf7+ Kg8 22 Nd6+) 21 Qxe3, when White is up the exchange and a pawn.

White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces, but can win Black's Nd3 with 20 Qb3, with the dual threat of 21 Nf7+ and 21 Qxd3 (1-0). The game continued 20...Qd5 (20...Qf8 is also possible, but other Queen moves lose, e.g., 20...Qe8 drops the Queen to 21 Nf7+ Kg8 22 Nd6+) 21 Qxe3, when White is up the exchange and a pawn.

White can win material by opening up the e-file to secure e6 with 12 exf5, e.g., 12...Bxf5 13 Nf7+ Rxf7 14 Qxf7, when 14...Be6 now loses to 15 Rxe6. The game continued 14...e6 15 Bg5 (1-0). Play might continue 15...Qc8 16 Nc4 Ne8 17 Bf4 d5 18 Ne3 Bxd3 19 Bh3, etc.

White can win material by opening up the e-file to secure e6 with 12 exf5, e.g., 12...Bxf5 13 Nf7+ Rxf7 14 Qxf7, when 14...Be6 now loses to 15 Rxe6. The game continued 14...e6 15 Bg5 (1-0). Play might continue 15...Qc8 16 Nc4 Ne8 17 Bf4 d5 18 Ne3 Bxd3 19 Bh3, etc.

White is up a Rook and a pawn.


White is up a pawn. The game continued 23...Kh8 24 Qe6 (threatening 25 Nf7+, with a smothered mate) Qc7 25 Rd1 Qe7 26 Qh3 Qe8 27 g6 h6 28 Qb3 (1-0) Qe7 29 Nf7+ Kg8 30 Nxh6+ Kh8 (30...Kf8 31 Qg8, mate) 31 Nf7+ Kg8 32 Ng5+, mating, e.g., 32...Kh8 33 Qh3+ Kg8 34 Qh7+ Kf8 35 Qh8, mate or 32...Kf8 33 Nh7+ Ke8 34 Qb5+ Qd7 35 Qxd7, mate.

White is up a pawn. The game continued 23...Kh8 24 Qe6 (threatening 25 Nf7+, with a smothered mate) Qc7 25 Rd1 Qe7 26 Qh3 Qe8 27 g6 h6 28 Qb3 (1-0) Qe7 29 Nf7+ Kg8 30 Nxh6+ Kh8 (30...Kf8 31 Qg8, mate) 31 Nf7+ Kg8 32 Ng5+, mating, e.g., 32...Kh8 33 Qh3+ Kg8 34 Qh7+ Kf8 35 Qh8, mate or 32...Kf8 33 Nh7+ Ke8 34 Qb5+ Qd7 35 Qxd7, mate.

White is up a pawn and two pawns (7 points to 3), and has outside connected passed pawns.


White mates with either 28 Qg6 with 29 Qh7, mate or 28 Qf6+.

White mates with either 28 Qg6 with 29 Qh7, mate or 28 Qf6+.


White is up a piece.


White wins with 24 Qxg6, threatening both 25 Qh7, mate, and 25 Nf7+, winning Black's Queen. The actual game continued 24...Nh6 25 Qh7, mate. 24...Kg8 also loses to 25 Qh7, mate.

White mates in two with 25 Qxg6+ Kh8 26 Qh7, mate.


White is up a Queen, Knight and pawn for two Rooks (14 points to 10).

White is up a Queen, Knight and pawn for two Rooks (14 points to 10).


White is up the exchange and two pawns (7 points to 3), and has outside connected passed pawns.

White is up the exchange and two pawns (7 points to 3), and has outside connected passed pawns.

63. Fries Nielsen-Hellsten, Politiken Cup, Copenhagen, Denmark, 1996. D05.

White mates in two with 25 Qxg6+ Kh8 26 Qh7, mate.

White mates in two with 25 Qxg6+ Kh8 26 Qh7, mate.

White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces, but 26 Qg6+ Kg8 27 Qxe4 wins a piece, when White is up the exchange and a pawn.


White is down a Rook for a pawn, but can win Black’s Queen and Rook with 24 Bx7f+ (1-0) Kh7 25 Qxf8.


White is up a pawn and wins Black’s Queen with 25 Qxe6, when 25...Rx6 isn’t possible because of 26 Rxf8, mate.


White wins with 20 Nf5 (1-0), threatening mate on g7, since 20...Kh8 loses to 21 Qxg7+ Ke8 22 Qe7, mate.


White can win Black’s Queen with

15 Bg5 (1-0), since taking the Bishop allows mate on either g8 or h5 and Black’s Queen has no safe squares to move to.


White wins with the Rook lift 23 Re3 with 24 Rh3, mate. Note that 23 Qe4 doesn’t mate because of 23...Nf5 24 Bxd8 Raxd8, when Black has a Rook and Knight for the Queen. Note also that after 23...Ng8, White doesn’t have to win Black’s Queen, but can mate in three with 24 Rh3+ Nh6 25 Bxh6, e.g., 25...gxh6 26 Rxh6, mate or 25...Qf6 26 Bxg7/Bg5, mate.


24...Qxf8 drops the Queen to 25 Ng6+, while 24...Bxf8 allows 25 Qg6, threatening 26 Qh7, mate.


White wins with 17 Bg5 (1-0), e.g., 17...Qg8 18 Bf6+ Qg7 19 Qxg7/Bxg7, mate.


White can win a pawn with 19 Bxb7, e.g., 19...Rab8 20 Be4.


White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces, but can win Black’s Nc6 with 27 d5 (1-0).

White mates in three with 29 Qf6+ Kg8 30 Rh4 and 31 Rh8, mate or 30 Rg4+ Kh7 31 Qg7, mate.


White can win Black's Rook with 27 Bxg6+ (1-0) Kh6 28 Qxe8.


White can win material with 29 Rxd7, when is up two pawns.


White is up a Rook and two pawns for a piece (1-0, 24).


White is up a pawn and will win Black's d-pawn, e.g., 18...Qb6 19 Rad1 and the pawn falls.

83. Kupreichik-Fakhredinov, Russia Cup, Omsk/Perm, 1998. E08.

White is up two pawns. Note that 14...Re7 can be met by 15 Qxd8.

White mates with 15 Qh3, mate.


White can win Black's Bd6 with 17 Qxe6+ Kf8 18 Qxd6+, when White is up a Rook and two pawns for a Knight.


White can mate with either 14 Qf7+ Kf5 15 Be6, mate, or 14 Bd3+ Kh5 15 Qh3, mate.


White mates with 15 Qh3, mate.


White mates with 15 Qh3, mate.


White is up two pawns. After 20...Nc2 White can save his Rooks by playing 21 Bxf6 gxf6 (21...Nxe1 loses to 22 Qxg7+, e.g., 22...Kf5 23 g4+ Kf4 24 Qxh6+ Kxg4 25 Qg6+ Kf3 26 Qg3/Qe4, mate) 22 Re6 Rf8 23 Rd1. The actual game continued 23 Ra1 Nxd4 (1-0, 31), although Black could have defended better with 23...Nxe1 24 Rxe1 Rf7.


White can win a piece with 19 Bxd5, and if 19...Nxd5 then 20 Bxd6, when White is up two pawns. 20...Nc7 can be met by 21 Bxc7 Qxc7 22 Rd3. The actual game continued 20...Qg5 21 Rd3 (1-0), intending to gang up on f7 with 22 Rf3.


White is up a piece and two pawns and is threatening 21 Nxc8. Some examples: a) 20...Rce8 loses to 21 Nxe8 Rxe8 22 Qxe8+ Nxe8 23 Rxe8+, mating; b) 20...Rcd8 21 Nf7+ Kg8 22 Nxd8 Rxd8 gives White a Rook and two pawns; c) 20...Rb8 drops another piece to 21 Bxf6 Rxf6 (21...gxf6 allows 22 Oxhr7, mate) 22 Ncb5 Qd8 23 Qxd8+ Rxd8 24 Nxb7.


White has a Rook and three pawns for two pieces (8 points to
6. The game continued 21 Bg5 Qd8 22 Re3 Kg8 (better is 22...Nd5, attacking two of Black's pieces at once, although White can prevent the loss of material with 23 Bxe7+ Rxe7 24 Rxe7+ Qxe7, when White has a Rook and three pawns for two pieces) 23 Bxf6 Nxf6 24 Rae1 (1-0), when Black's Be7 is pinned and White is threatening to undermine Black's Nf6 with h4-h5-h6.


White wins with 29 c5 (1-0), threatening mate in three ways -- 30 Qe7', 30 Qf7, and 30 Qg8.


White wins with 14 Nxh6+ Kh8 15 Qg8+ Nxg8 16 Nf7, mate.


White wins with 18 Nxh6+ Kh8 (18...Kf8 19 Qf7, mate) 19 Qg8+ (1-0) Rxg8 (or 19...Nxg8) 20 Nf7, mate.


White wins with 16 Nh6+ Kh8 17 Qg8+ Nxg8 18 Nf7, mate.


White is up the exchange and two pawns (7 points to 3).


White is up the exchange and two pawns (1-0, 23).


White is up the exchange and a pawn. Note that 26 Qxb6 axb6 27 Rxe7 is better than 26 Qxe7 Qxb2 because it trades off Black's active Queen, breaks up Black's queenside pawns structure, and wins an extra pawn compared to the 26 Qxe7 line. After 27 Rxe7, play might continue 27...Bxc4 28 Bxb7 Bxa2 29 Rxb6, when White has a solid outside passed pawn.


White's threat is 24 Qg8, mate, and mates after either 23...Nf6 24 Qxe7, mate, or 23...Ke8 24Bg6+ Kf8 25 Qf7, mate.


The count on d7 is 1-1, but White can play 25 Bc7, attacking Black's Rd8 and winning either the ex-
change on d8 or, if Black’s Rd8 moves away, then the Nd7 (1-0).


White wins with 27 Qxf7+ Kh8 28 Qh7, mate, as Black’s Nf6 is pinned. The actual game continued 27 Bxf7+ Kh7 28 g3 Ne4 29 Rxe4 Bxe4 30 Qxe4+ (1-0), with mate next move.


White can win with 20 dxe5/Rxe5, removing the only piece that defends f7, when the only way that Black has to give up his Queen with 20...Qxd5. White can also win with 20 Qxg8+, e.g., 20...Kxg7 21 Qxg7+ Kd6 22 dxe5+ Kc5 23 Re4, with the dual threat of 24 b4, mate or 24 Re4. mate.


White is up the exchange and two pawns and can consolidate his position with either 25 Re2 or 25 Re3 Rc2 26 b3.


White is down a piece for two pawns, but has a protected passed pawn in the center and the two Bishops as compensation. The game continued 22...Ne5 23 Qxc8 Nxd3 24 Qxe8 (24 Qxa6 Nxb2 25 Rb1 Nc3 26 Qxb6 also wins) Nxe8 25 Rxd3, when White is up the exchange and two pawns (1-0, 27).


White is up two pawns and can win Black’s Rook with 23 Bd6, e.g., a) 23...Ng8 24 Bxg8 Kxg8 25 Rxe7 or b) 23...Rae8 24 Rxe7 Rxe7 25 Re1 Ng8 26 Bxg8 Kxg8 27 Rxe7.


White is up a Rook and two pawns for a piece. The game continued 21...Bf5 (21...Kxf7 drops two pieces to 22 Rxe7+ Kg8 23 Rxd7) 22 Be6 a3 23 Bxa3+ Rxa3 24 Bxd7 Bxe3 25 Rxe3 Rxa2 26 h3 Rb2 27 Re8+ Kf7 28 Rb8 (1-0).


White is up a Rook and two pawns for three pieces and can win Black’s Queen with 23 Rh8+ Kxh8 24 Qxf7, when White has a Queen and three pawns for three pieces.


White can win with either a) 27 Rf3, e.g., 27...Rf5 28 gxf5 Qg4+ 29 Rg3, and if 29...Qxf5 then 30 Qxe7+ or b) 27 Rh3 Qxe1+ 28 Qxe1, when White has a Queen and two pawns for Rook and Bishop, but now wins a Rook with 28...Kf7 29 Rh3+ Kg8 30 Qe6+ Kh8 31 Rh3+ Rh5 32 gxh5 1-0 32...gxh5 33 Rxh5 is mate) 33 h6, when play might continue 23...Rg8 34 Qg6 (to prevent Black’s King from taking on g7 after hxg7+) Ba8 35 hgx7, mate.


White can win with either 27 Re7 (1-0), e.g., 20...Rxe7 21 Bx6, mate; b) 20...Rg8 21 Bx6+ Rg7 22 Qxg7, mate; or c) 20...Qxe7 21 Bx6+, winning Black’s Queen.


White has a Rook and three pawns for three pieces and can win Black’s Queen with 23 Rh8+ Kxh8 24 Qxf7, when White has a Queen and three pawns for three pieces.

White mates with 25 Bxd8+, e.g., 25...Kxd8 26 Qe8, mate or 25...Kf8 26 Qe8, mate.


White is up the exchange and a pawn.


White mates in two with 29 Qf5+ Kh6 30 Qh5, mate.


White gets a smothered mate in three 18 Nh6+ Kh8 19 Qg8+ Rxg8 20 Nf7, mate.

120. Rubinstein-Burn, Ostende, Belgium, 1906. D37.

White mates in two with 24 dxe5+ Kc6 25 Qc4, mate.


White has a Rook and two pawns for two pieces, but can win another piece with 27 h5, when 27...Nh6 loses a Knight and a Rook to 28 Rxe7+ Kd8 29 Re8+ Kc7 30 Rxa8, while after 27...Kf7 28 hxg6+ Nxd6 White is up the exchange and a pawn.


White can win Black’s Queen with 18 Nxe6+ (1-0) Kg8 19 Nxd8.


White has won a pawn and is now up a piece. The game continued 17 Qxd8+ Rxd8 18 Bf4 Nb4 19 Bb3 (1-0).


White is up the exchange and a pawn and can win Black’s Rc8 with 26 Qe6+ Kh7 27 Qxc8 (1-0).


White is up a pawn.


White has a Queen and two pawns for a Rook and two pieces (12 points to 11) and can attack...

127. Znosko Borovsky-Rabinovich, Russian Championship, Kiev, Russia, 1903. C29.
Black's open King and other weaknesses in the position. The game continued 25 Qg6 Rg8 26 Re1+ Kd7 27 Qf7+ Kd8 28 Bxh6 Re8 29 Rxe8+ Nxe8 30 Bg5+ (1-0) Nf6 31 Qf8+ Kd7 32 Qxa8 (see exercise 155).


White is up a Rook and two pawns for two pieces (7 points to 6). The game continued 19 Qb3+ Kf8 20 Rcd1 Rd7 21 Ne2 Ne5 22 Ng3 Nf4 23 f3 Rxd4 24 Qb4+ (1-0).


White has a Rook and two pawns for two pieces. The game continued 17 Qb3+ Rc4 18 a4 Qxd4 19 axb5 Qd4 20 g3 Ne6 21 f4 Bc5+ (1-0).


White is up a Rook for a pawn and can consolidate his advantage with 22 Qd6.


White is up the exchange.


White is up a Rook and two pawns (1-0, 20).


White is up two pawns. Black resigned after 25...RxR 26 Qg3 (1-0).

137. Perlis-Lee, Ostende (B), Ostende, Belgium, 1907. B01.

White mates in two with 12 Qd5+ Kf6 13 Qf5, mate.


White is up a Rook. White mates in two with 27...Rxf7 28 Rxf7 Rf8+ 29 Rxf8 Rxf8 (27...Qd7 drops the Queen to 28 exf6=Q+ Rxf8 29 Rxd7, as does 27...Qe8 28 exf8=Q+ Qxf8 29 Rxf8+ Kxf8) 28 exf8=Q+ Rxf8, when White has a Queen and Bishop for two Rooks. Black resigned after 29 Bf4 (1-0), when play might continue 29...Rfd7 30 Nxd6 Rxd6 31 Bxd6 Rxd6 32 Qe8+ Kh7 33 Qe7+.


White is up an exchange and two pawns (7 points to 3).


White is up a pawn and can win Black's Nd7 with 20 Qe6+ Kh8 21 Rxd7. The game continued 21...Bf6 22 Qf5 (1-0).


White has two Rooks and two pawns for two pieces (12 points to 6).


White is up a pawn. Now 25...Rxf7 26 Rxf7 Nc7 can be met by 27 Qg4, defending e6 and attacking g6. The game continued 25...Bf6 26 R1xf6 exf6 27 e7 Rxe7 (27...Qd7 drops the Queen to 28 exf6=Q+ Rxf8 29 Rxd7, as does 27...Qe8 28 exf8=Q+ Qxf8 29 Rxf8+ Kxf8) 28 exf8=Q+ Rxf8, when White has a Queen and Bishop for two Rooks. Black resigned after 29 Bf4 (1-0), when play might continue 29...Rfd7 30 Nxd6 Rxd6 31 Bxd6 Rxd6 32 Qe8+ Kh7 33 Qe7+.


White is up a pawn and can win Black's Nd7 with 20 Qe6+ Kh8 21 Rxd7. The game continued 21...Bf6 22 Qf5 (1-0).


White has two Rooks and two pawns for two pieces (12 points to 6).

145. Konings-Thorsteinsson, www.oz.com qualifier blitz, Inter-
White is up two pawns.


White is up two Rooks and two pawns for two pieces.


White mates with either 22 Qe6 or 22 Qf3, mate.


White is up two pawns.


White mates in two with 21 Qxf5+ Ke6 22 Qe6, mate.


White mates in two with 21 Qxf5+ Ke6 22 Qe6, mate.


White mates in two with 22 Qg8+ Ke7 23 Rf7, mate.


White mates in two with 22 Qg8+ Ke7 23 Rf7, mate.


White mates with either 22 Qe6 or 22 Qf3, mate.


White mates with 33 Qxa8.


White is up a pawn. Black resigned after 21 Rd1 Ke6 (1-0).


White is up a pawn. Black resigned after 21 Rd1 Ke6 (1-0).


White can win Black's Rook with 32 Qf8+ Kd7 33 Qxa8.


White mates in two with 21 Qxf5+ Ke6 22 Qe6, mate.


White mates in two with 21 Qxf5+ Ke6 22 Qe6, mate.


White mates in two with 21 Qxf5+ Ke6 22 Qe6, mate.


White mates in two with 33 Qxc6+ Kb8 34 Qb7, mate.


White has a Rook and three pawns for two pieces.


White has a Rook and three pawns for two pieces.


White mates in two with 33 Qxc6+ Kb8 34 Qb7, mate.


White mates in two with 21 Qxf5+ Ke6 22 Qe6, mate.


White mates in two with 21 Qxf5+ Ke6 22 Qe6, mate.


White mates in two with 33 Qxc6+ Kb8 34 Qb7, mate.


White mates in two with 21 Qxf5+ Ke6 22 Qe6, mate.


White mates in two with 33 Qxc6+ Kb8 34 Qb7, mate.


White is up a Rook.


White mates in two with 26 Rf8+ Rg8 27 Qxg8/Rxg8/Qxh6, mate. The actual game continued 26 Qxh6+ Kg8 27 Bh7+ Kh8 28 Rf8+ (1-0) Rg8 29 Rxf8, mate.


Black can't prevent 23 Qh6, mate.


White wins with 26 Rf1, when Black can't stop 27 Qh7, mate, although 26 Qh7+ also wins, e.g.,


White can win Black's Queen with 21 Rf1 Qxf1+ 22 Kxf1, when White is up a Queen for a Rook.


White can mate in three with 19 Qxh5+ Kg7 20 Bh6+ Kh7 21 Bxf8, mate. Note that 19 Bh6 can be met by 19...Nxe5, stopping the mate threats, although White is still winning after 20 Bxf8 Nxe6 21 Bxe7 Nxe7 22 Bxh5.


White mates in two with 26...Kf7 27 Rf1+ Kxe6 28 Bc4+ Qd5 29 Qf5, mate.


White wins Black's Queen with 21 Ng6+ (1-0) Kg8 22 Qxd8+, when White has a Queen and three pawns for a Rook (13 points to 5).


White mates in two with 23 Re1+ Ne4 24 Rxg4, mate.


White can win Black's Queen with 20 Rxg7 Qxg7 21 Qe4+ Qf6 22 Rxf8+ Kxf8 23 Qf7, mate.


Black mates with 28...Qxe7 29 Qxe7+ Kh8, mate, or 21 Qf5+ Kg7 22 Rxf7, mate.


White mates with 25 Bd3+, e.g., a) 25...Kd4 26 Bxg5/Bf1, mate, or b) 26...Kb4 27 Be2+ Ka4 28 Bc2, mate.


White wins in two with either 21 Qxg7+ Kd8 22 Rf8, mate, or 21 Qf6+ Kd7 22 Rf7, mate.


White wins with 19 Nxh6, when Black can't stop 20 Qxg8, mate.


White mates with either 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Qe4+ Kf7 22 g6, mate or 20 Bh7+, and now: a) 20...Kf7 21 Qg6+ Kf8 22 Qg8, mate or b) 20...Kh8 21 Bg6+ Kg8 22 Qh7+
White has several ways to mate: a) 27 Qh7+ Kf8 28 Bg6 with 29 Qf7, mate; b) 27 Bg6 Rd8 28 Qh7+ Kf8 29 Qf7, mate; or c) 27 Bh7+ and now: c1) 27...Kh8 28 Bg6+ Kg8 29 Qh7+ Kf8 30 Qf7, mate, or c2) 27...Kf7 28 Qg6+ Kf8 29 Qg8, mate.


White mates in two with 24 Rf6+ Bxf8 25 Qg8, mate.


White wins with 29 Re7, threatening mate on g7, and if 29...Rg8 then 30 Qh6 is mate.

CHAPTER 6. THE SQUARES F7 AND H7.


White has several ways to win, but the quickest is 26 Bh6, mate.

178. Muhutdinov-Andreenko, Val


White has a Rook and three pawns for two pieces. The game concluded with White winning on the light squares: 22...Kf8 (22...Kg8 23 Bxd5 exd5 24 Re6, intending 25 Rae1, is similar) 23 Bxd5 exd5 24 Re6 Nfd2 25 Rae1 (1-0) Ne4 26 f3 Nxf3 27 Rd6 Qc7 28 Qf6+ Kg8 29 Qd4, when the dual threat of 30 Qf6+ and 30 Qxf7 wins Black's Queen.

179. Bareev-Sakaev, FIDE World Championship Knock Out, Moscow, Russia, 2001. E34.

White can win a piece with 26 Rxb7, when White is up a piece and two pawns.


White is up two pawns.


White is up three pawns and 26...Qxf6 loses to 27 Rf1, e.g., 27...Qe6 28 Rxe5 Qxe5 29 Qf7, mate.


White has a Queen for Rook and Knight. White has a Queen for Rook and Knight. Play might continue 22 Re1 Nc5 23 g4 f4 23...f4 24 h4 loses to 24 Rf1+ Ke8 25 Qf7, mate and 23...Re8 24 Qxf5+ exf5 loses to 25 Qxf5+ Kg7 26 Rg1+, with mate next move) 24 g5, etc.


White mates in two: 26 Bxg6+ (1-0) Kf8 27 Qh8, mate.


White is up the exchange. The game continued 15...Kf8 16 f4 (1-0), intending 17 e5 or 17 g4-g5, when 16...e5 loses to 17 Nd5+ Ke6 18 f5+ Qxf5 19 Qxf5, mate, or 18...Kd7 19 Nf6, mate.


White's best move is 25 Ne4,
White has a Queen and three pawns for a Rook and Bishop and can win more material with 27 Bh6 (27 Bd4 can be met by 27...Nd6) Rg8 28 Re1, intending 29 Re7+, and if 28...Re8 then 29 Rxe8 wins either Black’s Bg7 or Rg8.

189. Usoltsev-Lazarenko, Russian Cup, Tomsk, Russia, 2002. B08.

Material is even, but White has an attack, for example, a) 24...Kd8 25 Ra1 Na3 (1-0) Qc7 loses to 26 Qg6+ Kd7 27 Bb4+ Nc6 28 Bxc6+ Qxc6 29 dxc6+ with 30 Qxa8) 26 Qg8+ Kd7 (26...Kc7 doesn’t change the basic nature of the position) 27 Nf4 Bb7 28 Re1 Na6 29 Qe6+ wins the e-pawn, although White can also force mate with 29 Rxe7+ Kxe7 30 Qg7+ Ke8 31 Bxf6 Qd8 32 Bc4+ Qd7 33 Bxd7, mate, or b) 24...Kd7 25 Qg4+ Kd8 (25...Kc7 26 Qe6+ Kb8 27 Qg8+ reaches the same position) 26 Qg8+ Kd7 27 Ra1 Na3 28 Nf4 transposes to 27 Nf4 in the line above.

190. Trapp-Bildt, LGA Cup, Nuernberg, Germany, 2004. A03.

White can win Black’s Ng7 with 23 Rf1+ Ke7 24 Qxg7+. Here 23...Ke8 is even worse, as 24 Qg8+ Ke7 25 Rf7 is mate and 23...Nf6 simply drops the Knight to 24 Rxf6+.


White is up a pawn and threatens 25 Qxb2. Play might continue a) 24...Rab8 25 e5 d5 26 Bxe7, when taking back with 26...Rxe7 drops the exchange to 27 Rf6+ Kd7 28 Qxe7+ Kxe7 29 Rxc6 and 24...Nc5 25 Rf7 Qc7 26 Bxe7 (1-0), wins Black’s Queen, e.g., 26...Rxe7 27 Qf6+ Kd7 28 Qxe7+ with 29 Qxc7 or 26...Ne5 27 Rf6+ Kd7 28 Bxd6+ Kc6 29 Qxc7+.


White has a Queen for two Rooks, but Black’s pieces are all bottled up. Play might continue 23...e5 24 Nc5 e4 (24...Nd8, with the idea of challenging White’s Nc5 with 25...Ne6, loses to 25 Ne4+ Kf5 26 Qh3+ Kxe4 27 Qf3, mate) 25 g4 Nd8 26 g5+ Kxg5 27 Be7+ wins the exchange, since moving the King allows mate, e.g., a) 27...Kg4 28 Qxg6+ Kh3 (other moves loses to 29 Qxe4, mate) 29 Qg3, mate; b) 27...Kf4 28 Qh4+ Ke3 (other moves loses to 29 Qxe4, mate) 29 Qf2, mate; or c) 27...Kf5 28 Qh3+ Ke5 (28...Kf4 29 Qg3+ Kf5 30 Qg5 is mate) 29 Qg3+ Kd5 (29...Kf5 30 Qg5, mate) 30 Qd6+ Kc4 31 Qd4, mate.


White wins with 20 Re7 and 21 Qf7, mate. The actual game continued 20 Qxg6 Nf7 21 Rae1 Bb7 22 Rg3 (1-0, 26).

194. Loureiro-Nagashima, Sao Paulo State Championship, Santos, Brazil, 1998. E47.

White mates in three with 19 Bh6+ Ke8 20 Qg8+ (to cover e6) Ke7 21Bg5, mate.


White mates with 28...Ke8 loses to 29 Bh5, mate, while 28...Kc6 loses to 29 Qxc8+ Bc7 30 Qxc7, mate.


White mates in two with 21 Rxe7+ (1-0) Rxe7 22 Qf6, mate.


White has a Queen and a pawn for two Rooks. Black’s h-pawn is indefensible (1-0, 47).


White has four pawns for the piece (1-0, 25).

White can win back his material with 22 Ba5, when 22...Bc5+ 23 Nxc5 Qxa5 loses to 24 Qxf6+ Kc7 25 Qd6, mate (1-0) and 22...Qxa5 23 Nxa5 Kd7 gives White a Queen and three pawns for a Rook and Bishop.

White mates in three, beginning with 26 Qg8+, e.g., a) 26...Ke7 27 Rf7, mate or b) 26...Nf8 and now White mates in two with either 27 Qxf8+ Kd7 28 Rf7, mate or 27 Rxf8+ Kd7 28 Qf8, mate.

White mates in two with 26 Qf6+ Kd7 27 Qe7, mate.

White mates in three with 28 Bh5+ Kf5 29 Qg6+ Kg4 30 Re4/Qe4, mate, although White can also play 30 g3+ Kf3 31 Re3/Qe4/Qd3, mate.

White mates in two with 26 Qf6+ Kd7 27 Qe7, mate.

White mates in three, beginning with 26 Qg8+, e.g., a) 26...Ke7 27 Rf7, mate or b) 26...Nf8 and now White mates in two with either 27 Qxf8+ Kd7 28 Rf7, mate or 27 Rxf8+ Kd7 28 Qf8, mate.

White mates in three, beginning with 26 Qg8+, e.g., a) 26...Ke7 27 Rf7, mate or b) 26...Nf8 and now White mates in two with either 27 Qxf8+ Kd7 28 Rf7, mate or 27 Rxf8+ Kd7 28 Qf8, mate.

White mates in two with 26 Qf6+ Kd7 27 Qe7, mate.

White mates in three, beginning with 26 Qg8+, e.g., a) 26...Ke7 27 Rf7, mate or b) 26...Nf8 and now White mates in two with either 27 Qxf8+ Kd7 28 Rf7, mate or 27 Rxf8+ Kd7 28 Qf8, mate.

White mates in three, beginning with 26 Qg8+, e.g., a) 26...Ke7 27 Rf7, mate or b) 26...Nf8 and now White mates in two with either 27 Qxf8+ Kd7 28 Rf7, mate or 27 Rxf8+ Kd7 28 Qf8, mate.
CHAPTER 7. WHITE SACRIFICES

A PIECE ON G6.


White wins with 24 Rd7, threatening both 25 Qe7 and 25 Qf7, mate.


White has a Queen, Knight, and two pawns for two Rooks. Play might continue 29...Kd8 30 Kg1 Bxd5 31 Nd4, intending 32 Bf5 and 33 Qd7+.


White mates in two with 27 Qg8+ Ke7 28 Qg7, mate.

CHAPTER 7. WHITE SACRIFICES

A PIECE ON G6.


White mates in two with 17 Rh8+ Kxh8 18 Qh7, mate.


White wins with 20 Qg7, mate (1-0).


White mates in two with 18 Rh8+ (1-0) Kxh8 19 Qh7, mate.


White wins with 20 Qf7+ Kh8 21 Rh1, mate.


White wins with 24 Qh6, mate.


White wins with 24 Qh6, mate.


White wins with either 22 Qg7 or 22 Ng5, mate.


White wins with 30 Bxc5+, creating a mating net that wins Black’s Queen, e.g., 30...Qe7 31 Bxe7, when after 31...Ke8 White mates in two -- 32 Bc5+ Kd8 33 Bxb6, mate.


228. Leon Hoyos-Cabrera Huanaman, Cali, Colombia, 2007. C05.
White wins with 23 Nxe6, mate (1-0).


24 Rg7 is mate.


White wins Black's Queen with 19 Rh8+ Kh8 20 Qxf8+.


Simplest is 28 Rxa7+ Qxa7 29 Re8, mate, although 28 Re8 is also good, e.g., 28...Bd7 29 Bxf8+ Rxf8 30 Re7, mating.


White wins with 19 Qxg7+ (1-0) Kxg7 20 Ne8+ Kf7 21 Nxc7, when White is up a Rook and two pawns.


White wins Black's Queen with 19 Rh8+ Kh8 20 Qxf8+.

White wins with 18 Bf8+ Kxf8 19 Qf7, mate.


White mates in two with 32 Bc4+ Qd5 33 Bxd5, mate.

Chapter 8. White Plays 1 Rxa7+.


White wins with 25 Rh1, mate.

White wins with 20 Qg7+ Ke6 21 Qf7, mate (1-0) or 21 f5, mate.


White wins Black's Queen with 27 Qh6+ (or 27 Qh5+) Kg8 28 Rxg7, when White is up a Queen and two pawns for two pieces.


White wins with 23 Qxg7, mate.

White wins with 30 Rxg8, mate.

White wins with 30 Qxh6, mate.


White wins with 30 Rg3 with 31 Qxg7, mate.


White wins with 23 Qf7, mate.


White wins with 20 Rg1 (1-0), e.g., 20...Qf7 21 Qxh6+ Qg7 22 Qxg7, mate or 20...Bg5 21 Rxf3 Qxg3 22 Qxg3, when White has a Queen, Knight and two pawns for two Rooks.

White wins with 23 e4 (1-0) with 24 Rh1, mate, when Black has to give up his Queen with 23...Qxe4 24 Qxe4 Kg7, netting White a Queen and two pawns for a Rook.


White wins with 27 Qh6+ (1-0) Qh7 28 Qxh7, mate.


White wins with 20 Qh6+ (1-0) Qh7 28 Qxh7, mate.


White wins with 28 e5, when Black can't prevent Qh7, mate.


White wins with 30 Nf7, mate.


White wins with 28 Rf7+ Ke8 29 Qg8, mate.


White wins with 29 Qg6, mate.

White mates in two with 26 Rh8+ (1-0) Kxh8 27 Qh7, mate.


White wins with 21 Rxg7 White is up a Queen and pawn for a Rook and Bishop, but now can win Black's Ra8 with 31 Qh8+ Kd7 32 Qxa8.

257. Betak-Príbyl, Czech Team Championship (T1c 9697), 1997. C84.

White mates in two with 26 Rh8+ (1-0) Kxh8 27 Qh7, mate.


White wins with 25 Rh3+ Bh6 26 Rxh6, mate.


White wins with 25 Qh8+ Kf7 22 Qg7, mate.
White wins with 29 Qg5+ (1-0) Kh7 30 Rh6, mate.

260. Renaud-NN, Nice, France, 1941. C44.

White mates in two with 26 Rxf7+ Kg8 27 Qh7, mate.


White threatens both 23 Qg7 and 23 Qh4, mate, e.g., 22...Rg8 23 Qh4 is mate.


White's best move is 27 Rh4, threatening Qh8, mate.


White wins with 29 Qg5+ (1-0) Kh7 30 Rh6, mate.


White mates in three with 22 Bg7+ Kg8 23 Bh6+ Kh8 24 Qg7, mate.


White can win Black's Queen at least with a) 28 Bf6+ (1-0), e.g., 28...Kd5/Kd7 29 Rxe7, with a Queen and three pawns for the Rook (note that 28...Kf5 29 Qg5 is mate). Also good is 28 Qg6+ Kd5 (28...Kd7 29 Rd1+) 29 Rd1+ Bd3 30 Rxd3+ Kc5 31 Bd6+, etc.


White wins with 20 Qh5+ Bh6 21 Qxh6, mate.


White has many ways to win, e.g., a) 24 Rh1+ Nh5 25 Rxf5, mate or 24...Nh7 25 Qxh7/Rxh7, mate; b) 24 exf6 with 25 Qh7/Qxg7/Rh1, mate; c) 24 Qxf6+ Kg8 25 Qg6+ Kh8 26 Qh7/Rh1, mate.


White can win Black's Queen at least with a) 28 Bf6+ (1-0), e.g., 28...Kd5/Kd7 29 Rxe7, with a Queen and three pawns for the Rook (note that 28...Kf5 29 Qg5 is mate). Also good is 28 Qg6+ Kd5 (28...Kd7 29 Rd1+) 29 Rd1+ Bd3 30 Rxd3+ Kc5 31 Bd6+, etc.


White wins with 26 Qg7, mate.


White wins with 26 Qxg6+.


White wins with 25 Qg7, mate.


White wins with either a) 26 Qh5+ Kf8 27 Qh8, mate; b) 26 Qh8+ Rf8 27 Qh5+ Rf7 28 Qxf7, mate; or c) 26 Nxf6+ Kf8 27 Qh8/Rxb7/Rd7/ Rh7, mate.


White wins with 21 Bxf6+ Bg7 22 Qxg7, mate.


White wins with 31 Qh6+ Bh7 32
Qxh7, mate.


White wins with 31 Rg1+, threatening 32 Qg7, mate, when 31...Rg2 loses to 32 Rfxg2+ Qxg2 33 Bxg2.


White wins with 27 Qxf8+, e.g., a) 27...Bg8 28 Qxf6+ Qg7 29 Qxg7, mate, or b) 27...Qg8 28 Qxf6+ Kh7 29 Qh6/Qh4, mate.


White wins with 28 Qg6+ Rf7 29 Qxf7, mate.


White wins with 32 Qf6+ Re7 33 Qxe7, mate.


White wins with 20 Qxg7, mate.


White can draw with 16 Qh6+ Kg8 17 Qg6+ Kh8 18 Qh6+.


White wins with 21 Rh8+ Ng8 22 Qxg8/Rxg8, mate.


White mates in two with 26 Bg7+ Kg8 27 Rh8, mate.


White has several ways to win, e.g., a) 22 Bxd6, threatening 23 Be5, e.g., 22...Rf6/Qf6 23 Be5; b) 22 Re5, threatening 23 Rh5, mate, when 22...Bxe5 23 Bxe5+; or c) 22 Be5+ Bxe5 23 Rxe5, threatening 24 Rh5, mate, which Black can stop only by giving up his Queen with 23...Qd5.


White is up two pawns and has an attack. Play might continue a) 22...Bxe4 23 Qxe4 g5 24 Qg6+ Kf8 25 Rxc8 (25 Rh3 Qxd4) 25...Qxc8 26 Rh3 threatens 27 Rf8, mate, and if 26...Bb4 then 27
Qf6+ Kg8 28 Rh8 is mate, or b) 22...g5 23 Nxg5 Bxg5 24 Bxg5 Qc7 25 Bf6+ Kf8 26 Rg8+ Kxg8 27 Qg6+ Kf8 28 Qh6+ Kg8, when White wins with 29 Qh8+ Kf7 30 Qg7, mate.

White has a Queen and three pawns for a Rook and Knight.


a) 26...Ng7 27 Qxg7 is mate, b) 26...Rf6 27 Rxf6 (threat: 28 Rf8, mate) Bx6 28 Bx6+ Ng7 29 Qxg7 mate or c) 26...Bf6 27 Rxf6 (threat: 28 Rfx8, mate) Rxf6 28 Bxf6+ Ng7 29 Qxg7, mate.


White has three pawns for the piece.


White is up a Queen and two pawns for three pieces and will win more material soon, e.g., 20...Bg7 21 Qd8+ with 22 Qxc8 or 20...Kg8 21 Qg6+ Bg7 22 Re1, threatening both 23 Re8 and 23 Re7.


White is up four pawns for a piece and is forking Black’s Re7 and Pc7.


White wins with both 23 Bg8 Rxg8 24 Qh6, mate.


White wins with 23 Bg8 Rxg8 24 Qh6, mate.


White is up a Queen and two pawns.


White wins with both 20 Bh7+ Kf7 21 Qg6, mate, or 20 Bh5/Be6+ Kf5 21 Qg6, mate.


White can win Black’s Queen with 26 Qf5+ Kg8 27 Rg6.


White has four pawns for a piece, but White can also play 28 Qg6, threatening 29 Bh6, mate, e.g., a) 28...Bh4 29 e6 (now the threat is 31 Qf7, mate) 29...Nf6 30 Bb4+ Qe7 31 Qf7, mate or b) 28...Bd8 29 e6 Nb6 30 Bb4+ Be7 31 Qf7, mate.


White has four pawns for the piece and 26...Qxg5 drops the Queen to 27 Qh3+ Kg8 28 Rg4.


White has a Queen and three pawns for a Rook and Knight.


White is up the exchange and two pawns.

303. Arakhamia Grant-Frendzas,
**Chapter 10. White Plays \(1 \text{N}x\text{h7 (Black Pawn on} \text{g6)} \).**


White is up two pawns. Play might continue 21...Qg5+ (21...Qd6 loses to 22 Qf7, mate, while 21...Rg5 loses to 22 Rh8, mate) 22 Qxg5 Rxg5 23 Rh8+ (23 Be4 is also good) Rg8 24 Rxg8+ Kg8 25 Re1, when White is up two pawns with the better position.


White wins with 22 Qxg6+ Kh8 23 Qh7, mate.


White wins with 19 Qxg6+ Kh8 20 Qh7, mate.

308. Boutsikoukis-Mitrkis, 35th Greek Team Championship, Ermiorni, Greece, 2006. D05.

White is up a piece and a pawn. The game continued 15...Ne7 16 Bg5 Qc8 17 Bf6 Nf5 18 Bxf5 gxf5 19 Qg7, mate (1-0).


White wins with 21 Qh3-Qh7, mate, e.g., 21 Qh3 Nf6 22 exf6+ Bxf6 23 Qh7, mate.


White wins with 22 Qxg6+ Kh8 23 Qxh7/Rxh7, mate.


White wins with 22 Qxg6+ Kh8 23 Qh7, mate.


White wins with 25 Qxh6+ Kg8 26 Qh8/Qg7, mate.


White wins with 23 Qh7+ Kf8 24 Qh8, mate.


White wins with 17 Qh7, mate.


White wins with 19 Qh8, mate.


White wins with 23 Qh7+ Kf8 24 Qh8, mate.
White wins with either 19 Qh7, mate or 19 Bxf6 with 20 Qh8, mate.


White wins with 22 Qxh7+ Ke8 23 Rg8, mate.


White wins with 19 Rf7 (1-0), threatening both 20 Qxh7 and 20 Qg7, mate.


White wins with 20 Qh8+ Ng8 21 Qg7, mate.


White is up a Rook and two pawns.


White wins Black's Queen with 24 Bh6.


White wins with 21 Qg8, mate.


White mates in two with 18 Qh8+ Ke7 19 Qxg7, mate, but also good is 18 exf6 (1-0), e.g., 18...Nxf6 19 Rxf6+ Ke7 20 Qxg7+ Kd6 21 Bf4, mate.


White wins with 21 Qg8, mate.


White wins with 21 Qh7+ Bg7 22 Qxg7, mate.


White mates in two with 18 Qh8+ Ke7 19 Qxg7, mate, but also good is 18 exf6 (1-0), e.g., 18...Nxf6 19 Rxf6+ Ke7 20 Qxg7+ Kd6 21 Bf4, mate.


White can win with either 22 Qh8+ Ke7 23 Bg5+ f6 24 Qxf6, mate, or 22 Bg5, threatening Qh8, mate, and if 22...f6 then 23 Bh6+ Qg7 24

23...Rxf6 loses to 24 Qxg7, mate, as does 23...Bxh6 24 Qxh7, mate, while 23...Ke8 loses to 24 Rxh7 with multiple threats.


White wins with 25 Qg8+ Bf6 26 Qxf8, mate.


White wins with 22 Qxg6+ Kh8 23 Qg7, mate.


White wins with 22 Qxg6+ Kh8 23 Qg7, mate.

Qxg7 is mate.

23 Ne4 is mate.

White wins with 20 Bg5, mate.

White wins with 20 Qh8, mate.

White wins with either 20 Bh7+ Kf7 21 Qg6 mate or 20 Bh5+ Kf5 21 Qg6, mate.

White has a Queen and pawn for three pieces, but now 17...Na6 traps White's Queen.

White wins with 27 Rxh4 and 28 Qh8, mate.

White wins with 20 h8=Q+ Bxh8 21 Rxh8+ Ng8 22 Qxg8/Rxg8/Qh6, mate.

White can win Black's Ra8 with 16 Qe4+ f5 (16...Kg8 doesn't change anything) 17 Qxa8, when White is up the exchange and a pawn. The game continued 17...Nf6 18 Qxa7 Qe7 19 Rc7 (1-0).

White can win Black's Ra8 with 16 Qe4+ f5 (16...Kg8 doesn't change anything) 17 Qxa8, when White is up the exchange and a pawn. The game continued 17...Nf6 18 Qxa7 Qe7 19 Rc7 (1-0).

White can mate in two by sacrific-
White can win Black's Queen with 352. Steinitz-Mongredien, London, Qh7/Qh8, mate.

White wins with either 22 Qxg7 or A67.

White wins with either 22 Qg7 or Qh7, mate.

White wins with 23 e6 with 24 Qh7/Qh8, mate.

White wins with either 22 Qg7 or Qh7, mate.

The easiest way to win is with 21 Qg5+ Ng6 22 Qh6 (1-0) and 23 Qg7, mate, although 21 dxe5 with 22 Qg5+ also wins. The move 21 Qh6 is less forcing and gives Black some chances to defend if White isn't careful, e.g., 21...Nf3+ 22 Kg2 Nh4+ and 23...Nf5, defending g7.

White wins with 23 Qh6+ Kg8 24 Qh7/Qh8, mate.

White wins with 35 Qh7, mate.

White wins with 22 Qxg7+ Ke8 23 Qf7, mate.

White wins Black's Queen with 23 Rh8+ Kxh8 24 Qxf7.

White wins Black's Queen with 23 Rh8+ Kxh8 24 Qxf7.

White wins Black's Queen with 26 Qxe8+ Bf8 27 Qxf8, mate or 26 Rxh7+ Kxh7 27 Qh5+ Bh6 28 Qxh6, mate.

White can win Black's Queen with 14 Nxf7+ Rxf7 15 Bxc7 (1-0).

White mates in one with 15 Nxf7, mate.

Mittendorf, Bergen Enkheim Open

White mates in two with 15
Nxf7+ Rxf7 16 Nxd7, mate.

364. Jussupow-Adasjik, Warsaw,
Poland, 2005. D05.

White wins with 22 Ng6, mate.

365. Karlovich-Cherevinjenko,
Ukrainian Women's Ch., Sevastopo-

White is up the exchange and a
pawn. The game continued
15...Bd6 16 Ng6+ Kh7 17 Nf8+ Kh8,
when White won by sacrific-
ing his Queen with 18 Qh7+ Nhx7
19 Ng6, mate (1-0).

366. Sanchez-Leon Varela, Gran
Canaria, Spain, 1989. D43.

White is up the exchange. The
game continued 16...Qf6 17 Bg6
Bd6 18 h3 Qe7 19 0-0-0 Na7 20
Rhe1 c6 21 Ne5 Bc7 22 g4 Nc8
23 g5 (1-0).

White can win Black's Queen with
18 Ng6+ Kxh7 19 Nxe7+, when
White also wins the exchange af-
after 19...Kh8 20 Nxc8 (1-0) Bxc8.

367. Chan Yi Ren-Tin Lay Shwe,

White is up the exchange and a
pawn and threatens Qxg7, mate,
as well as 21 Re6 with 22 Rhx6,
mate. The game continued
20...Qg6 21 Qf4 Qxh2 (21...c6
leaves White up the exchange and
a pawn) 22 Qxh6+ (1-0).

368. De Cauter-Bujdosó, Eger

White is up the exchange and a
pawn (6 points to 3). The game
continued 20...Bc7 21 Ne5 Be6 22
Rfe1 g5 (22...Qd6 or 22...Qd5 are
better) 23 Qf6 (1-0) Bd6 24 Nf7,
attacks Black's Queen and Ne7.

369. Gerhardt-Woetzel, VfB Open,

White is up the exchange and a
pawn. The game continued
18...Qe7 17 Bg6 Bd6 18 h3 Qe7
19 0-0-0 Na7 20 Rhe1 c6 21 Ne5
Bc7 22 g4 Nc8 23 g5 (1-0).

370. Olujic-Standen, Burlingame
Open, Burlingame, USA, 1996.
D81.

White can win Black's Queen with
18 Ng6+ Ke7 17 Bd6, mate.

371. Alvarez-Longoni, Ajelbre
Cup1 Colegio Crear, Chivilcoy on

White is up the exchange and two
pawns (7 points to 3). Play might
continue 17...Kg8 18 Ng5 Bd6
(White's threat was 19 Nxe6, trap-
ping Black's Queen) 19 Bf7+ Kh8
20 Bxe6, etc.

374. Jensen-Hein, Politiken, Co-
penhagen, Denmark, 2005. A52.

White wins with 14 Na5+ Rxf7
15 Qxe5+ (1-0) Kh7 16 Qxh5
14 Bxg6+ Kg7 15 Qh7+ Kh6 is
not so clear.

375. Vasilev-Goris, Liechtenstein

White is up two pawns and threat-
ens 15 Bg6+ Kg7 16 Qh7, mate.
Play might continue 14...Qe6 (the
only move) 15 Bxg7+ Kg6 16
Nf7 Qc7, when White has a mate
in four: 17 Qh6+ Kh6 18 Qg5+ Kg7
19 Bh5+ Kh7 20 Qg6, mate.

376. Vokroj-Schock, Austrian

White wins Black's Queen with
21 Nxf7+ Rxf7 22 Nx7+ Kh7 23
Nxd8 Rxd8, when White has a
Queen and Rook for three pieces
(1-0).

White is up two pawns. The game continued 19...c5 20 Bg6 Re6 21 d5, winning Black’s Re6 (1–0, 24), since 21...Re7 allows 22 Qh8 is mate.


White is up three pawns.


White wins with 25 Bd6+ Be7 26 Qg8, mate. 25 Bg6 also wins, e.g., 25...Qe7 26 Be6 Ne5 27 Bxe7+ Bxe7 28 dxe5 with 29 Qf7, mate.


White is up four pawns.


White mates in two with 28 Bd6+ Qe7 29 Qxe7, mate.


White can create a mate threat that wins Black’s Queen with 23 Qd2, threatening 24 Qf4, mate (1–0), which Black can avoid only by giving up his Queen with 23...Qxe5.


White can win Black’s Queen with 30 Rf1, when 30...Qxf1+ 31 Kxf1 gives White a Queen and pawn for a Rook.


White mates in two with 24 Qh7+ Kf8 25 Qf7, mate.


White mates in four: 27 Bg6+ Kf8 28 Rde6, when Black can’t prevent 29 Re8+ Rxe8 30 Rxe8, mate.

Chapter 13. The Sequence 1

White mates in four: 27 Bg6+ Kf8 28 Rde6, when Black can’t prevent 29 Re8+ Rxe8 30 Rxe8, mate.


White mates in two with 24 Qh7+ Kf8 25 Qf7, mate.


White has three pawns for a piece. The best way to prevent mate is with 25 Rxh7, when White is up three pawns. The game continued 25...Qxa4 26 R7xb6 Qxa3 27 Rb3, when Black resigned. After 27...Qe7 28 Rh3+ Bh4 29 Qxe7 Rxe7 30 Rxc4+, Black is down three pawns.


White mates in two with 24 Bd6+ and now: a) 24...Re7 25 Qh8, mate or b) 24...Kg8 25 Qh7, mate.


White wins with 32 Rh4, mate.


24 Qxb7 wins a piece, when White is up two pawns and threatens to win Black’s a-pawn as well.


White wins material with 28 Re3, e.g., 28...Qh4 29 Rh3 Qxh3 30 gxh3 Nxa4, when White is up a Queen for a Rook.


White mates in two with 22 Nh8+, e.g., 22...Rxf8 23 Qh5, mate or 22...Kxh6 23 Qg6, mate.


White wins with 25 Rxh6+ Kxh6 26 Qg6, mate.


White wins with 25 Rxh6+ Kxh6 26 Qg6, mate.


White mates in two with 22 Nh8+, e.g., 22...Rxf8 23 Qh5, mate or 22...Kxh6 23 Qg6, mate.


White wins with 25 Rxh6+ Kxh6 26 Qg6, mate.


White wins with 21 Ng6, mate.


White wins with 25 Rxh6+ Kxh6 26 Qg6, mate.


White wins with 24 Rh3+Bh4 25 Rxh4, mate.


White wins with 23 Rxh6+ Kxh6 24 Qg6, mate.


White wins with 23 Rxh6+ Kxh6 24 Qg6, mate.


White is up two pawns.


White up the exchange and two pawns. Black can win back a pawn and get some pressure with 25...cxd4 26 exd4 Qxh4 27 Rf2 Qd1+ 28 Rf1 Bc5+, but White can neutralize it with 29 Rxc5, when play might continue 29...Qd4+ 30 Kh1 Rb8 (or 30...bxc5 31 Qxa8 Qxe5 32 Qxa6) 31 Rxc1 Rxf1+ 32 Rxf1 Qxe5 33 Qxb6, when White is a Rook and a pawn.


White wins with 25 Rxh6+ Kxh6 26 Qg6, mate.

406. Collas-Blanvillain, French Championship (Qualifying), Bes-
sibilities after the moves 15...Kf8 and
16...Kg7. a) 15...Kf8 16 Qh5
Bxe3+ 17 Kh1 Ng6 18 Bxg6 Ke7
19 Qh7 fxe5 20 Qxf7+ Kd6 21
dxe5+ wins Black's Re8; b) 15...
Kg7 16 Qg4+ Ng6 (16...Kf8
17 Qh5 Bxe3+ 18 Kh1 Ng6 trans-
poses to 15...Kf8) 17 Bxg6 Bxe3+
18 Kh1 fxe5 19 Bx7+ Kf8
(19...Kxf7 loses to 20 fxe5+) 20
fxe5 Qg5 (20...Ke7 loses to 21
Qg7) 21 Bxe8+ Kxe8 22 Qf3 gives
White a winning attack.

When White is up a Queen and
two pawns for a Rook, but White
can also win with 20 Ng6 Bxg2 21
Rxh4+ Qxh4 22 Nhx4, when
White is up a Queen and a pawn
for a Rook.

White mates in two with 23 Nf5+
Qxh4 24 Qxg7, mate.

White mates in two with 23 Nf5+
Qxh4 24 Qxg7, mate.

White mates in two with 23 Nf5+
Qxh4 24 Qxg7, mate.

White mates in two with 23 Nf5+
Qxh4 24 Qxg7, mate.

White mates in two with 23 Nf5+
Qxh4 24 Qxg7, mate.

White mates in two with 23 Nf5+
Qxh4 24 Qxg7, mate.

White mates in two with 23 Nf5+
Qxh4 24 Qxg7, mate.

White mates in two with 23 Nf5+
Qxh4 24 Qxg7, mate.

White mates in two with 23 Nf5+
Qxh4 24 Qxg7, mate.

White mates in two with 23 Nf5+
Qxh4 24 Qxg7, mate.

White mates in two with 23 Nf5+
Qxh4 24 Qxg7, mate.

White mates in two with 23 Nf5+
Qxh4 24 Qxg7, mate.

White mates in two with 23 Nf5+
Qxh4 24 Qxg7, mate.

White mates in two with 23 Nf5+
Qxh4 24 Qxg7, mate.

White mates in two with 23 Nf5+
Qxh4 24 Qxg7, mate.

White mates in two with 23 Nf5+
Qxh4 24 Qxg7, mate.

White mates in two with 23 Nf5+
Qxh4 24 Qxg7, mate.
White can defend against Black's "attack" with either 26 Bd2, when mate is unavoidable, or 26 Rf2, when Black can avoid mate by playing 26...Qxf2+ 27 Nxf2 Kg8 28 Rxh7, but then White has a Queen and Knight for a Rook and pawn.


White wins with 27 Rh5+ Kg4 28 Qf5/Qf3, mate.

CHAPTER 14. THE SEQUENCE 1


White is up a pawn. Two continuations: a) 23...Nx4 24 Rd1 Qe4 25 Qh5+ Kg8 26 Rd7 threatens 27 Qf7+ with mate next move and if 26...Rf8 then 27 Rgx7 wins; b) 23...Qd5 24 Qh5+ Kg8 25 Rd1 Qa5 26 Bh6 (1-0) gxh6 27 Qg6+ Kh8 (27...Kh8 loses to 28 e6) 28 Qxh6+ Kg8 29 Qg6+ Kh8 30 Qf6+ with 31 Rd4 wins.


White is up a Queen and two pawns for a Rook.


White is up two pawns.


White can win Black's Queen with 24 Qh5+ Kg8 25 bxa5, when White is up a Queen and two pawns for a Bishop.


There are many ways to win: a) 28 h3/f3+ Kh4 29 Qh5, mate; b) 28 Qh5+ Kf4 29 g3/Qf3, mate; or c) 28 Qf3+ Kh4 29 Rh5/Qh3/Qh5/ Qg3/Qg4/Qf4/Qe4, mate.


White's threat is 21 Qh7, mate. After 20...gx6, best is 21 Qh6, mate.


White can win with either 27 Qh7+ Kf8 28 Ne6+ or 27 Rde1, threatening 28 Qh7+ Kf8 29 Qh8, mate.


Most forcing is 24 Rxg6+ Bxg6 25 Rh3, mate, but 24 Rh3 also wins, e.g., 24...Rg8 25 Rxh5+ Kxg5 26 Qg5, mate.


28 Rh3+ loses to 28...Qxh3, but White can win with 28 e6, threatening both 29 Rh3 and 29 Qxg7, mate.

White wins a Rook with 27 Rxe8.


White can win Black's Queen with 25 Ne6+ Ke8 26 Nxc7+.


White wins with 28 Qh7+ Kf8 29 Qh8+ Ke7 30 Qxg7+, mate.


White wins with 28 Rf3+ Kg8 29 Qh7, mate.


White wins with 31 Nf4+ Kf5 32 Qf6/Qg6/Qg4/g4, mate.

Chapter 15. The Sequence 1 Rxg7? Khxg7 2 Qxg7.


White wins with 21 Rh1+ Qh4 22 Rxe4, mate.


White wins with either 28 Rh1+ Bh2 29 Rxe2+ Bh3 30 Rxe3, mate, or 28 Qd6+ Kh8 29 Rh1+, mating.


White wins with 29 Qxf7+ (1-0) Kh6/Kh8 30 Rh1, mate.


White wins with 23...Kh4/Kh5 loses to 24 Qh7, mate, while 23...Kh6 loses to either 24 Qxg6, mate or 24 Rxg6+ Kh5 25 Qh7, mate.


White wins with 29 Qh7, threatening both 30 Qh4 and 30 Rg3, mate.


28 Rh1 is mate (1-0).


White wins with 28 Rh1+, mating, e.g., 28...Nh2 29 Rxh2+ Qh4 30 Rxe4, mate.


White wins with 26 Rh1+ Kg5 (26...Bh4 27 Rxe4+ Kg5 28 Rg4+ is similar) 27 Rg1+ (1-0), e.g., 27...Kh4/Kh5 28 Qh7, mate, or 27...Kh6 28 Qxg6, mate.


White wins with 26 0-0-0 (1-0) with 27 Rh1, mate.

White wins with 27 Rh1+ (1-0) Kg5 28 Qh7, mate.

White mates in two with 26 Qxe7+ (1-0) Kf4/Kg4 27 Rh4, mate.

White wins with 24 Qf4, mate. Note that 24 Rg1+ is less effective because Black's Nf8 prevents both Qxg6+ and Qh7+.

White wins with 24 Qf4, mate. e.g., 23...Nf6 24 exf6 Nxc4 25 Rh4/Qg7, mate.

White has several ways to win, e.g., a) 26 Qf3+ Kxg5 (26...Kh4 27 Qg3+ Kh5 28 Nh3, mate) 27 Qf4+ Kh5 28 Ng3, mate; b) 26 Qh7+ Kxg5 (26...Kg4 27 Qh3+ Kxg5 28 f4, mate) 27 f4+ Kg4 28 Qh3, mate; or c) 26 Nh4+ also wins, but this gives Black more options than 26 Qf3+.

White wins with 23 Rxh5+ Rh7 24 Qxh7/Rxh7, mate.

White wins with 26 Qh6, mate.

White wins with 30 Rxh4+ gxf4 31 g5, mate.

White wins with 30 Bxg7+ Bxg7 31 Rh3+ Nh7 32 Rxh7, mate.

White wins with 29 Rh1+ Kg5 30 Qg3/Qf5 (1-0), mate.

White wins with 29 Bxc4, when
White is up a pawn and the attack continues, e.g., a) 15...Nf6 16
Nxf6+ gxf6 17 Qg4+ Kh8 18 Qh4+
Kg7 18...Kg8 19 exf6 19 Qh6+
Kg8 20 exf6, matting; b) 15...g6 16
Qh6 Qe7 17 Ng5, when the threat of
Qh7, mate, forces Black to play
17...f6, which drops the g-pawn to
18 Qxg6+; or c) 15...f6 16 Ba3
and now: c1) 16...Rf7 17 d5,
threating 18 dx6, trapping
Black's Rooks, when 17...exd5 18
e6 has the same affect, or c2)
16...Re8 17 exf6 Nxf6 18 Nxf6+
gxf6 19 Qg6+ Kh8 20 Rad1, when
the threat of 21 Rd3-h3 wins, e.g.,
20...Re7 21 Qxh6+ wins the Re7
as a minimum.

Chapter 16. The Sequence
Bxh7+ Kg6+ 2 Kg5+ Kf5 3
Qh5.

White wins with 31 Rh1+ Bh4 32
Rhx4, mate.

463. Yu-Oliver, 44th Doeberl Cup,
Canberra, Australia, 2006. D00.

White is up a pawn and the attack
continues, e.g., a) 15...Nf6 16
Nxf6+ gxf6 17 Qg4+ Kh8 18 Qh4+
Kg7 18...Kg8 19 exf6 19 Qh6+
Kg8 20 exf6, matting; b) 15...g6 16
Qh6 Qe7 17 Ng5, when the threat of
Qh7, mate, forces Black to play
17...f6, which drops the g-pawn to
18 Qxg6+; or c) 15...f6 16 Ba3
and now: c1) 16...Rf7 17 d5,
threating 18 dx6, trapping
Black's Rooks, when 17...exd5 18
e6 has the same affect, or c2)
16...Re8 17 exf6 Nxf6 18 Nxf6+
gxf6 19 Qg6+ Kh8 20 Rad1, when
the threat of 21 Rd3-h3 wins, e.g.,
20...Re7 21 Qxh6+ wins the Re7
as a minimum.

466. Lupien-Tumanon, Manila
E12.

White wins with 28 Be2, threaten-
ing both 29 Qh6 and 29 Qg3,
mate.

464. Kudrin, S-King, Bayswater,

White is up a Queen for two piec-
es. The game continued 12 Rc1
Nc6 13 a3 Bxc3+ 14 Rxc3 b5 15
Rh3 f6 16 exf6 Nxf6 17 Bxf6 (1-0).

467. Teixeira-Duarte, Brasilian Ch.

White is up two pawns and threat-
en 21 Qh7+ and 22 Qh8, mate.
Black can’t avoid mate, for exam-
ple, 19...Kf8 (19...Bxf2 20 Kxf2
doesn’t change anything) 20 Nd6
and now: a) 20...Rc7 21 Qe8 is
mate; b) 20...Bd7 loses to 21 Qh5
Kg8 22 Qh7+ Kf8 23 Qh8; c)
20...Nd8 loses to either 21 Qh7
Nf7 22 Nxf7 Rxf7 23 Qh8+ Ke7
24 Qe8, mate or 21 Nh7+ Kg8 22
Nf6+ Kf8 23 Qh7 Rc7 24 Qg8+
Ke7 25 Qe8, mate.

468. Zsiltzova-L-Biti, Women’s
Olympiad, Moscow, 1994. B00.

White is up two pawns. Play might
continue 16...Nxg5 17 Qxf6
when the threat of 18 Qh3+ Qh6
19 Nh7+ and 20 Bxh6 forces Black
to trade Queen.

C05.

White is up a Queen for two piec-
es. The game continued 14 f4 g6
(14...Bxc3 15 bxc3 Nf5 16 g4) 15
Qh3 Nf5 16 g4 Bc5+ 17 Kh1 Ne3
(1-0, 20) 18 Rf3, intending 19 Qh4
and 20 Rh3.

470. Wiszgott-Gonschorek, East

White is up two pawns. Play might
continue 16...Qxe5 17 Qxe6
when the threat of 18 Qh3+ Qh6
19 Nh7+ and 20 Bxh6 forces Black
to trade Queen.

472. Murphy-Hieser, ACT Ch.,

White is a up a pawn.

473. Wechselberger-Hartli Enigl,
Wattens Open, Wattens, Austria,

White mates in seven with the typ-
ical 13 Qh5+ Kg8 14 Qh7+ Kg8 15
Qh8+ Ke7 16 Qxg7, mate, but 13
Rf3 is quicker, e.g., 13...Qxg5 14
fxg5 (1-0), when Black can’t stop
15 Rh3, mate.

474. Zivkovic-Vlahovic, Winter
White can mate in two with either 14 Qxf7+ Kh8 15 Qxg7/fxg7, mate, or 14 Qh7+ Kf8 15 Qxg7/Qh8, mate.


White mates in two with either 14 Qxf7+ Kh8 15 fxg7, mate, or 14 Qh7+ Kf8 15 Qxg7/Qh8, mate.

479. Wegner-Skupin, German U20 Team Ch., 1997. D16.

White mates in two with either 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Qh8, mate, or 17 Qxf7+ Kh8 18 Qxg7/fxg7, mate.


White has Queen for a Rook, Knight and pawn.


White is up a the exchange and three pawns. Black can defend the Nf8 a second time with 16...Kg8.


White wins with either 18 Qxf7+ Kh8 19 Qxg7/fxg6, mate, or 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Qh8, mate.


Material is even. Play might continue 17 Bh6 Rd8 20 Nd2 Rd3 21 0-0 Rad8, etc.


White is up a Queen for two pieces and a pawn and can win Black's c-pawn with 19 Rac1.


White is down a piece and his attack on Black's Queen is neutralized by Black's threat of 19...Nf3+.


White wins Black's Queen with either a) 22 Nh7+ Qxh7 (22...Kg8 23 Qxf5) 23 Qxh7, or b) 22 Rf1 g6 (22...Qg6 just drops the Queen; 22...Qd7 23 Rxf7+) 23 Qh6+ Ke7 24 Rxf5.


Material is even. Play might continue 17 Bb2 and now: a) 17...f6 18 Nxe6 Qxg2+ (after 18...Bxg2 19 Kg1, Black's Queen is still under attack and has no where to move on the g-file) 19 Ke2 Qe4+ 20 Kd2 Qxe6, when White mates with 21 Rh1+ Qg4 22 Rxc4, mate, or 17...e5 18 Bxe5 f6 19 Ne6 Qxg2+ 20 Ke2 fxe5 (White is the exchange after 20...Bf3+ 21 Qxf3 Qxf3+ 22 Kxf3 fxe5+ 23 Nxf8 Kxf8) 21 Rag1 Rxh2+ 22 Ke1 Nd7 23 Rfx2+ Rxg2, when White can play either 24 Ng5 or 24 Rf1, intending 25 Qf7+ Kh8 25 Rf5.

White mates in two with 17 Qh8+ Ke7 18 Qxg7, mate.


White mates with 17 Qh7+ Kf8 18 Qh8+ Ke7 19 Qxg7, mate.


White mates in three with 15 Qh7+ Kf8 16 Qh8+ Ke7 17 Qxg7, mate.


White mates in four with 16 Qh5+ Kg8 17 Qh7+ (1-0) Kf8 18 Qh8+ Ke7 19 Qxg7, mate.


White is down a piece for a pawn and his attack is busted, e.g., 21 exf6 Nxf6 22 Rf4 e5 forces 23 Rf3 Rxf3 24 Nxf3, when White has to move his Queen away, or 21 Rf4 Nc7 (defending e6 before playing Qh6) 22 Re1 Qh6 23 Qxh6 gxh6 24 Nf3 Nxc4 25 Bc1 Rfd8, when

White is a pawn.


White is up a pawn.


Black has a dominant position.

495. Olafsson-Mellberg, U20 World Ch. Qualifier (A), Copenhagen, Denmark, 1953. E50.

17 Qxe6 is mate.


White is up a pawn and has multiple threats, e.g., 17 Nh7+, 17 Qd4+, and 17 Nc3-e4+. Play might continue 16...Rg8 17 Nc3 Bc6 (17...Nxc3 18 Qxc3+ Ke7 19 Qf3 threatens both Qxa8 and Qf7+) 18 Nce4+ Kg6 (18...Ke5 loses to 19 g4, with the threat of 20 f4, mate) 19 Nxe6, when White is up two pawns.


White has a Rook and two pawns for two pieces.


White is up a pawn and has an attack, e.g., a) 18...Kd7 19 Qd6+ Ke8 20 Nxe6 Qxd6 21 Nxd6+ Kd7 22 Nxf8+ Kxd6 White is up the exchange and two pawns or b) 18...Ke8 19 N6d+ Kd7 20 Nd7 (this threatens 21 Qd6, mate, and ties Black’s Queen down to the Rfx) 20...Rxf7 (20...Qe8 21 Qd6, mate; 20...Qf6 21 Qxf6) 21 Nxf7, when White is up the exchange and a pawn. Play might continue 21...Qf6 22 Qf8, intending 23 Bg5 and bringing his Rooks into play.

White mates in all variations: a) 15...Kxf6 16 Qxe6, mate; b) 15...Kh6 16 Qh7, mate; c) 15...Kg5 16 Qh7+ Kg4 17 Qh3/ h3/f3, mate.

503. Zsiltzova Lisenko-Biti, Women's Olympiad, Moscow, Russia, 1994. B00.

White mates with either 18 Qh3, 18 h3, or 18 f3, mate.


White has three pawns for the piece. Play might continue 16...Nf6 17 Qg6+ Kg8 18 0-0 (Black's Nf6 is under attack) Ne7 19 Bxh4 (19 Qg3 allows 19...Ne4, attacking both the Qg3 and the Bd2) Qxh4 20 Qg3 Ne4 21 Qf3, etc.


Material is even, but White gets an attack with 19 Qe4 Bd5 20 Qg6, winning the g-pawn, since 20...Rg8 21 Qf7+ Kd6 22 Bf4+ Kc6 gives White an attack after 23 c4, e.g., 23...Bxc4 24 0-0-0 Qe8 25 Rd6+.


White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces.


White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces.


White mates after either 18...Kxf6 19 Nh7, mate, or 18...Kh5 19 Qh7+ Kg4 20 Qh3+ Kxf6 21 Qg3, mate.

White has three pawns for the piece. After 18...Kh8 he can either win a fourth with 19 Qxg4 or play 19 f4 with 20 Rf3, e.g., 19 f4

509. Olafsson-Mellberg, U20 World Ch. Qualifier (A), Copenhagen, Denmark, 1953. E50.

White has a Rook and two pawns for two pieces.


White has a Rook and two pawns for two pieces.


White mates after either 18...Kxf6 19 Nh7, mate, or 18...Kh5 19 Qh7+ Kg4 20 Qh3+ Kxf6 21 Qg3, mate.

White has three pawns for the piece. After 18...Kh8 he can either win a fourth with 19 Qxg4 or play 19 f4 with 20 Rf3, e.g., 19 f4


18 Qxe6 is mate.


14 Qxg6 is mate.


White threatens mate with 15 Qg6, 15 Qh7, and 15 Nf7, double check and mate.

Nc6 20 Rf3 Nf6 21 exf6 Qe1+ 22 Rf1 Qxc3 23 fxg7+ Kxg7 24 Rb1, when White is up two pawns.


White wins with 16 Qd4+ Kf5 17 Qf4, mate.

517. Teixeira-Duarte, Brazilian Ch. (Semi-Finals), Brazil, 1999. B40.

White is up a piece for a pawn.


White has a Rook and two pawns for two pieces.


White wins with 19 Re1, threatening 20 Re5, mate, and mating in four moves, e.g., 19...Ne3 (19...Be3 20 Bxe3 Nxe3 21 Rxe3 is similar) 20 Bxe3 (White's threat is 21 Qf4, mate) Bxe3 21 Rxe3 e5 22 Qh3+ Kf4 23 Qf3, mate (White has four other moves that mate in one as well).


White is up the exchange and a pawn.


White has three pawns for the piece and dominates the center. Play might continue 20...Ne7 21 Nxa8 Bxa8 22 d6 Neg8 23 Rfd1, etc.


Black can't stop 17 Qf3, mate.


White can win a piece with 25 Re5 Qc6 26 Qxc5, when White is up the exchange a pawn.


White wins with 23 Be3, e.g., 23...Qxe5 24 Bxb6, intending 25 Rxc8, mate, and if 24...Qe6 then 25 Bc7 is mate.


Chapter 18. The Sequence 1 Bxh7+ Kh6 2 Ng5+ Kg8 (Black Ne7).


White wins with 14 Qh7+ Kf8 15 Qh8, mate. Black can’t play 15...Ng8 because his Knight is pinned.

White mates in two with 20 Qxf7+ Kh8 21 Rh4, mate.


White wins with 15 Nxe6, threatening both 16 Qxg7 and 16 Nxc7, when defending g7 with 15...Rg8 loses to 16 Qh5, mate and 15...Nf5 loses to 16 Nxc7 Rf8 17 Qh5+ Kg8 18 Nxg8, when White has a Queen, Rook and three pawns for piece.


White wins with 15 Nx6, threatening both 16 Qxg7, mate and 16 Nxc7, when defending g7 as well as 16 Nxd8, e.g., a) 15...Rb8 16 Qxg7, mate (1-0); b) 15...Rg8 16 Qh5, mate; or c) 15...Nf5 16 Nxd8, when White has a Queen and three pawns for a piece. Note that 15 Qh5+ is not as good, since after 15...Kg8 16 Qh7+ Kf8 17 Qh8+ Black can interpose his Knight on g8 with 17...Ng8, when 18 Nh7+ can be met by 18...Kf7.


White wins with 18 Nx6, threatening both 19 Qxg7 and 19 Nxd8, when after 18...Nf5 19 Nxd8 Rxd8 20 Nxc7 White is up a Queen and four pawns for a piece.


White has a Queen and three pawns for two pieces.


White wins with 19 Nxe6, threatening both 20 Qxg7, mate, and 20 Nxd8, winning Black’s Queen.


White wins with 15 Ne6, either winning Black’s Queen or mating on g7.


White wins with 15 Qh8, mate.


The quickest way to win is with 17 Ba3+ Bb4 18 Bxb4, mate, although 17 Bb5+ also wins, e.g., 17...f6 18 Qxg7, mate, or 17...Nf6 18 Bxf6+ gxf6 19 Qxf6, mate.


White mates in two with 17 Rxe6+ gxe6 18 Qh7, mate.


White mates in two with 18 Rxe6+ gxe6 19 Qh7, mate.


White wins with 17 Rxe6+ gxe6 18 Qh7, mate.


White mates in two with 17 Rxe6+ gxe6 18 Qh7, mate.


White mates in two with 16 Rxe6+ gxe6 17 Qh7, mate.

White mates in two with 21 Rxh6+ (1-0) gxh6 22 Qh7, mate.


White can win in several ways: a) 17 Rh4+ Qh6 18 Qxg7/Qxe8, mate; b) 17 Qxe8+ Qf8 18 Qxf8, mate; or c) 17 Qh5+ with 17...Qh6 18 Qxe8, mate, or 17...Kg8 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Qh8, mate.


White wins with 21 Nxe6 (1-0), threatening both 22 Qxg7, mate and 22 Nxc7.


White mates in two with 24 exf6+ gxf6 25 Bxf6, mate.


White has three pawns for the piece and threatens to win Black’s Re8 with 22 Bxe7 Nxe7 23 Nf6+.


White wins with 17 Qxh7, mate.


White is up a Rook and two pawns for a Knight.


White is up a Rook and two pawns for a Knight.


White mates with 14 Nh7, mate.


White mates with 15 Qe6, mate.

White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces.


White has two pieces for a Rook and pawn.


Black has four legal moves, but each one leads to a mate two, e.g., 14...Kf6 15 Qxg7, mate; 14...Kxe6 15 Qxg7+ Kf5 16 Qg5/ Re5/g4, mate; 14...Kxe6 15 Qxg7+ Kf5 16 Qg5, mate or 15 Qg5+/ Kh7 16 Qxg7, mate; 14...Kf7 15 Qxg7+ Ke6 16 Qxf8, mate.


Black has two pieces for a Rook and pawn.


Black has four legal moves, but each one leads to a mate two, e.g., 14...Kh7 15 Qxg7, mate; 14...Kxf6 15 Qxg7+ Kf5 16 Qg5/ Re5/g4, mate; 14...Kh6 15 Qxg7+ Kh5 16 Qg5, mate or 15 Qg5+/ Kh7 16 Qxg7, mate; 14...Kf7 15 Qxg7+ Ke6 16 Qxf8, mate.


Black wins with 20 Qh4, when Black can't stop Qh7, mate.


White wins with 20 Qh4, when Black can't stop Qh7, mate.


White is up a Rook and three pawns for a Knight.


White has a Rook and pawn for two pieces.


White has a Queen and pawn for Rook and Bishop and will also win Black's Bh5 (1-0, 27).


White is up a Rook for a pawn.


White is up a Rook pawn.


White has a Rook and three pawns for two pieces, but 19...Rc8 gets at least a pawn back after, e.g., 20 e6 Rxс7 21 exd7 Rd7.


White mates with 19 Qh7, mate.


White mates with 19 Qh7, mate; or 17 g4 is mate.


White wins with 17 Nf6, mate; 17 gхh8=Q + Kхh8 18 Rхh6, mate; or 17 Rхh6+ Kg8 18 Rхh8/gхh8=Q, mate.


Material is even.


Black has three legal moves (29...Kб6, 29...Kб5, and 29...Kd6), but all of them lose to 30 Qc5, mate.

582. Kordahi-Jochimsen, Doebertl Cup, Canberra, Australia, 1996. C00.

White is up two pawns and has an attack. Play might continue 17...Qхb2 18 Qg7+ Kе8 19 Nхf8 Bd8 20 Qg6+ Kxf8 21 Bh6, mate, or 17...Rg8 18 Qh4 Rh8 19 Nd8+ Bxd8 (19...Rhxd8 loses to 20 Rxe7+ 20 Qхh8, when White has a Rook and two pawns for a piece.


13 g4 is mate.


White can set up a mating net with 14 g6 (1-0), when Black has no defense against 15 Qh8, mate.


White wins with 15 Qh8, mate.


White wins with 18 g6, when Black can't stop Qh8, mate (1-0).


White wins with 18 g6, when Black can't stop Qh8, mate (1-0).

588. Abel-Varaljai, Hungarian Team Championship, 1995-96. D02.

589. Abel-Varaljai, Hungarian Team Ch., 1995-96. D02.
White mates with either 18 Qh7+ Kf8 19 Qh8/Qxg7/fxg7, mate or 18 Qxf7+ Kh8 19 Qxg7/fxg7, mate.


White can mate in two with 18 g6, when Black can’t prevent 19 Qh8, mate.


21 Qh7 is mate. The answer to the question in footnote 5 is that the move 20 exf6 threatens both 21 Qg6 and 21 Qh7, mate. Black’s move 20...Rx6 defended against the mate threat on g6, but not the mate threat on h7.

593. Greco-NN, Rome, Italy, 1875. C00.

Black has three pieces for a Queen and two pawns.


Material is even, but White threatens 22 Bg5 with Rf1 and Qh7, e.g., 21...Qe8 22 Qh7+ Kf7 23 Bg5 (White’s threat is 24 Rf1, mate) Qb5 24 Rf1+ Ke8 25 Rxf8+ Kxf8 26 Qh8+ Kf7 27 Rh7, with mate to follow, e.g., 27...Kg6 28 Rxe7+ Kf5 29 Qh7+ Kg4 30 Bf4/Qh3, mate.


White wins with 22 Qh7+ Kf8 23 Qh8, mate.


White wins with 21 Qh6 (1-0), trapping Black’s Rf4 and threatening to play 22 g7, e.g., 21...Qe7 can be met by either 22 Qxe4 Qg7 23 Qf6 or 22 g7 Nbd7 23 g8=Q.


White wins with either 20 Qh7+ Kf8 21 Qxg7/fxg7/Qh8, mate or 20 Qxf7+ Kh8 21 Qxg7/fxg7, mate.


White wins with 25 Qe5+, mating.


White wins with 27 Qxh6 is mate.


White wins in two with 25 Nh6+ Kf8 26 Qxg8, mate.


White wins with 25 Qe5+, mating.


White wins with 25 Qe5+,...
25...Kf8/Kf7 loses to 26 Rf1, mate, while 25...Kh8 loses to 26 Qf6+ Kg8 27 Rg1, mate.

White is up a Queen and pawn for a Rook and Knight. Play continued 24...Rd7 25 Qg3 Rg7 (1-0) 26 Rxe6.

White wins with 27 Be5, when 18...Rf7 loses to 19 Qh8, mate and 18...Qe7 loses to 19 Qg6+ Qg7 20 Qxg7, mate. The only move that avoids mate is 18...Qxe6 19 dxe6, when White has a Queen and pawn for a Rook and Bishop. In the game Black resigned after 19...Kf7 20 Re1 (1-0).

White is up two pawns.

White mates with 25 Qf6+ Kg8 26 Rg1, mate.

White mates in two: 22 Qg6+ Kh8 23 Qxh6, mate.

White mates in three: 25 Qf6+ Kg8 26 Rg3+ Qg4 27 Rgx4, mate.

White mates in three: 25 Qf6+ Kg8 26 Rg3+ Qg4 27 Rgx4, mate.

White is up a pawn. Play might continue 22...Ke7 23 Rg1 Bb7 24 Rg7+ Kd6 25 Rg6+ Ke7 (25...Kc7 26 Bb6, mate) 26 Bg5+ Kf7 27 Rg7+ Ke6 28 Qh6, mate.

White is up a Queen and pawn for a Rook and Knight. White now wins with 27 Bf5, threatening 28 Be6+ Kh8 29 Qxf8, when 27...Be8 drops a piece to 28 Be6+ Bf7 29 Qxf6 while 27...Rf7 drops an entire Rook to 28 Be6 Be8 29 Qxf6 with 30 Bxf7.

White mates with 25 Qf6+ Kg8 26 Rg3+ Qg4 27 Rgx4, mate.

White is up three pawns after 28 Qg8+ Ke7 29 Qxa8.

White mates in two: 21 Nxf7+ Rxf7 22 Qg8, mate.

White mates with 25 Bxf6+ Rg7 26 Qxg7, mate. Note that 25 Qxf6+ doesn’t lead to mate, e.g., 25...Kg8 26 Qh8+ Kf7 27 Qxh7+ Ke8, although White is up three pawns after 28 Qg8+ Ke7 29 Qxa8.

White can win with Black’s Queen with any Knight move, but best are 24 Ng6+, 24 Nc6+, 24 Nf3+, or 24 Nd3+, e.g., 24 Ng6+ Kd5 25 Qxe7, attacking Black’s Rf8 and threatening 26 Qc5, mate.

White threatens both the Queen and 22 Qg5, mate. Black resigned here. After 21...Qxe7 22 Qxe7 White is up a Queen for a Rook and Bishop.


White is up two pawns.


White has a Queen and pawn for a Rook and Knight.


White mates in two with 20 Qxg5+


White's threat is 26 Qg5+ and 27 Rh6, mate, which Black can neither stop nor delay.


Both 21...Kh6 and 21...Kh8 lose to 22 Nxf7, mate, although after 21...Kh6 White can also play 22 Qg5, mate.


White has a Queen, Bishop, and pawn for two Rooks (14 points to 10). Play might continue 24...Rae8 25 Bd3 Re6 26 Qg5+ Kh8 27 Qh5 h6 28 g5 Kg7 29 gxh6+, when 29...Rxh6 drops the exchange to 30 Qg5+ Rg6 31 Bxg6 fxg6.

White mates with 26 Qxh6+ Kg8 27 Qh8, mate.


White is down the exchange for a pawn, but now wins with 22 Rg1+ Kf8 23 Qh8, mate.


White has several ways to mate in two: a) 25 Rfxg4+ Kf6 26 Qh4, mate or b) 25 Qxg4+ and now: b1) 25...Kf6 26 Qg5+Qh4, mate or b2) 25...Khf7/Kh8 26 Qh4, mate.

White mates in three: 23 Qg8+ Rxg8 24 Rxg8 Rxg8 25 fxg8=Q+, mate.


White is up a pawn. The game continued 24 Ke2 Qg7 (24...Bg7 prevents immediate loss) 25 Rg1 (1-0), when 25...Qxg7 loses to 26 Qf7+ Kh8 27 Qh7, mate.


White has a Knight and pawn for a Rook and threatens 26 Qh7, mate, when 25...Qf5 26 Bxf5 exf5 nets White a Queen and three pawns for a Rook.

White is down the exchange for a pawn but can win Black’s Rook with 24 Qxa8, when White is up a piece and a pawn and will also win the exchange on d6.

**CHAPTER 22. THE SEQUENCE 1 R×g7+ K×g7 2 Rg1+.**

27 Qf6+ Kf8 28 Rxh1 with 29 Rh8, mate; c) 27 Qg5+ Kf8 28 Bf6 is mate.

30 Bh6 is mate.


White wins with 25 Qxh6+ Nh7 26 Qxh7/Qg7, mate.

White is up a Queen and Bishop for two Rooks. Note that 21...Nxg2 drops the Knight to 22 Qg3+.

646. Nikolenko-Ivanov, Russia Cup, Moscow, Russia, 1999. B19.

White is up a Queen and Knight for two Rooks.


White wins with 26 Qe5+ Nf6 27 Qxh6, mate.


White is up a Queen and Knight. The game continued 24...h5 25 Bxc6 bxc6 26 Qx5 Rad8+ 27 Kc1 Rd5 (1-0).


White threatens both 22 Qg7 and 22 Qh5, mate (1-0), e.g., 21...Rg8/f6 22 Qh5, mate.


White wins with 28 Qh6, mate.


White wins with 28 Qc4, mate.


White mates in two with 26 Qg8+ Kh6 27 Qh8, mate.


White wins with 22 Qg4 with Qg7, mate.


White has a Queen and pawn for a Rook and Bishop.


White has a Queen and pawn for two Rooks. Now 22 Ng6 doesn't threaten the Rf8 since White's Bd3 is under attack, but better is 22 Qg6+, e.g., 22...Ke7 23 Qg7+ (1-0) Ke8 24 Ng6 (now Ng6 comes with the threat of 25 Qxf8+) Rf7 25 Qg8+, winning Black's Rook, or 22...Kd8 23 Qd6+ Ke8 24 Be2 Rh8 25 Qxd5 (White's threat is 26 Qf7+ Kd8 27 Qf6+, winning the Rh8), with two possibilities: a) 24...Rh7 covers f7, but loses to 26 Qg8+ or b) 24...Nd7 covers f6, but loses to 26 Qe6+ Kd8 27 Nf7+ Kc7 28 Qd6, mate.


White wins with 24 Qe2+ Kf4 25 Rg4/Qe3, mate.


White moves with 29 Nb5, mate.


22 Ng6+ wins Black's Queen.


White wins with either 21 Qf7, threatening both 22 Qg8/Qg7, mate, or 21 Qe8+ Bf8 22 Qf7, threatening 23 Qg8/Rg8, mate, e.g., 22...Qg6 23 Qxd8+ Qg8 24 Qxg8/Rxg8, mate.


White wins with 23 Rg7 Rxg7 24 Qxg7, mate.


White can win Black’s Queen with 23 Qg7+ Kxg7 24 Qxg1, when White is up a Queen for a Rook.


White wins with 25 Qg1+ Ng4 26 Qxg4+ with Qg7, mate to follow.


White has a Queen for a Rook and Bishop and now wins Black’s Ra8 with 30 Qh8+ Ke7 31 Qxa8.


White wins with 26 Qg6+ Kf4 27 Qg4, mate.


White has a Queen for a Rook and Bishop, but now wins more material with 29 Qxd7, winning a piece and skewering Black’s Bishops.

CHAPTER 23. THE SEQUENCE 1

Rg7+ Kxg7 2

MISCELLANEOUS.


23 Qxh7 is mate. Giving check with the Rook (23 Rg1+) loses to 23...Bg6, when White is down a Rook for a pawn.


White wins Black’s Queen with 23 Qg3+ (1-0) Kh7 24 exd7.


White is up a Queen for a Rook.

674. Euwe-Colle, Match, Game 1, Amsterdam, Netherlands, 1928. E32.

White is up a Queen for a Rook and Knight.


White is up a pawn.


White is up a Queen for a Rook.


White is up a Queen for a Rook.


White wins Black’s Queen with 22 Ng6+.
White mates with 21 Qf6+ Kh5 22 g4/Bd1, mate.


White wins with 23 Qxf7+ Kh8 24 Qg7/Ng6, mate.


White wins with 24 Qh5, threatening 25 Qxh6, mate, when 24...Kxh5 drops the Queen to 25 Nxe6+, winning a Queen for a Rook and pawn.


White has a Queen and Bishop for a Rook and pawn.


White has a Queen and pawn for two Rooks and still threatens 25 Qh6 and 26 Qg7, mate, e.g., 24...Nd8 25 Qg5+ Kh8 26 Qg7, mate or 24...Bf5 25 Qh6 with 26 Qg7, mate.


White is up a Queen for a Rook.


White mates in two with 20 Qxf6+ Kh5 21 Bf3, mate.


White mates in two with 23 Qh6+ Kg8 24 Bf6 and 25 Qg7/Qh6, mate.


27...Kf8 loses to 28 Bh6, mate, while 27...Kh8 drops the Queen to 28 Bxe5+ Bf6 29 Bxf6+ Qxf6 30 Qxf6+, when White has a Queen and three pawns for a Rook and Knight.


White can get a perpetual check with 28 Qe6+ Kh8 29 Qf6+ Kg8 30 Qe6+, but it's more complex than Black now has h7 available, for example, 30...Kh7 31 Qxf5+ Kxh6 32 Qf6+ Kh7 (32...Kh5 drops the Queen at least to 33 Nh4+ Kg8 34 f3+ Kh3 35 Nh5) 33 Qf7+ Kh8 (33...Kh6 34 Qf6+) 34 Qf6+ Kg8 35 Qg6+ Kf8 36 Qf6+ Ke8 37 Qe6+ Kf8 (37...Ne7 38 Qb6 gives White a Queen and two pawns for two Rooks) 38 Qf6+, etc.


White mates in two with 18Bg7+ Nxg7 19 Qxg7, mate.


White has a Queen and pawn for a Rook and Bishop, but can now win Black's Nc7 with 27 Qe5+ Kg6 28 Qxc7.

CHAPTER 24. THE SEQUENCE 1 Bxh6 gxh6 2 Qxh6.


White is up two pawns. The final moves of the game were 17...f6 18 Re4 Qg7 (1-0).


White is up two pawns.

White is up a pawn. The count on g6 is 2-2, but 1-0 on h6. The game continued 14...e5 (14...Kg7 is better) 15 Qh5 e4 16 Qxh6 Rg6 17 Qh8+ Kf7 18 Rh7+ (1-0).


White wins with 15 Nh5 (1-0), threatening 16 Qg7, mate, and if 15...Nxh5 then 16 Qh7 is mate.


White wins with 20 Qxh6+, e.g., 20...Nh7 21 Qg7, mate, or 20...Kg8 21 Qg7, mate.


White threatens both 20 Qh8 and

White can win Black's Queen with 21 Nxf7+ Rxf7 22 Qxa5.

White is up a piece. Play might continue a) 21 Qh5 Rf6 (21...Kg7 allows 22 Qg6+, with mate next move) 22 Ng4, etc, or b) 21 Nxg5

White is up a piece and a pawn. The final moves were 20...Rd8 21 Qxe8 (1-0).


White has a Queen and two pawns for a Rook and two pieces (12 points to 11) and will win a third pawn with 18...Kh8 19 bxc3.


White wins with 20 Rg3, when Black can't stop Rxf5, winning Black's Queen.


White wins with 16 Ne7+ (1-0) Kh7 17 Qg7, mate.


White is a piece. Black gives up most of White's advantage 22...Kf7 23 Qg6+ Ke7 24 Nfx8 Rxf8, when White is up the exchange and two pawns.

Qxe5 22 Nxe6+ (22 Nf3+ 22...Qg7 gives up most of White's advantage) 22...Kf7 23 Qg6+ Ke7 24 Nfx8 Rxf8, when White is up the exchange and two pawns.

White's strongest move is 23 Rg3+ Kh7 24 Qxf8 with mate next move.

White wins with 20 Rh5 (1-0), threatening both 21 Qh8 and 21 Qh7, mate, e.g., 20...Bf6 21 Qh7, mate, or 20...Re8 21 Qh8, mate.

White wins after either 20...Kf8 21 Rf3+ Ke7 22 Qg7/Rf7, mate, or b) 20...Kh8 21 Qxh6+ Kg8 22 Rg3+ Kf7 23 Qg7, mate.

White mates with 17 Qg7+ Ke8 18 Qxg8, mate.

White wins with 21 Ng5+ Kg8 22 Qg6+ Kf8 23 Qf7, mate.

White can create a mating net that wins Black's Queen with 20 Nf6+ Qxf6 21 Qxf6, when White has a Queen and two pawns for two pieces.

White mates with 17 Qg7+ Ke8 18 Qxg8, mate.
White's threat is 23 Rxh7 Rxh7 24 Qxh7, mate. The only way that Black can prevent mate is by giving up his Queen, e.g., 22...Qxh6 23 Qxf6, when White has a Queen and two pawns for two pieces.


White mates with 21 Nxg5, threatening 22 Qh7+ Kh8 23 Qxh7, mate, and if 21...Nxg5 then 22 Rgx5+ Qg7 23 Qxg7 is mate.


White's threat is 19 Qxh7 Qxh7 20 Rxh7, mate. Black can't do anything to meet this threat, e.g., 17...Be6 18 Bxe6 or 17...Rf7 18 gxf7, when in both cases the threat is still on.

Chapter 25. The Sequence 1 Bh6+ Qxh6 2 Qg6+ Kh8 3 Qh6+.


White has four pawns for his piece. Play might continue 21...Nxd5 22 Qxd5 Bf5 23 Qxb3 Qxb3 24 cxb3, etc.


White is up two pawns. After 18...Kg8 White can has several ways to continue, e.g., a) 19 Qg5+ Kh7 (19...Kh7 20 Ne4) 20 Qf6+ Kg8 21 Ng5 (1-0; White's threat is 22 Qg6+ Kh8 23 Qh7, mate) or b) 19 Ne4 (White's threat is 20 Nf6, mate) Be7 (this blocks the Black Queen's access to f7, allowing White to win the exchange) 20 Qg6+ Kh8 21 Bxf7 (White's threat is 22 Qh6, mate) Rxh7 22 Qxf7, when White is up the exchange and three pawns.


White wins Black's Queen with 23 Nxf6+ Qxf6 24 Qxf6.


White wins with 18 Rxh6+ Rh7 19 Qxh7, mate.


White mates in all variations, e.g., a) 18...Bxg5 19 hXg5, mate; b) 18...Rf7 19 Nx7, mate, or c) 18...Nf6 19 exf6 with 20 Qxh7, mate.


White wins with 19 Rh3, threaten-
ing 20 Rg3+, although Black can avoid mate by giving up his Queen with 19…Bxh4+ (19…Bg5 loses to 20 hxg5 and 21 Qh8, mate) 20 Rxh4 Qxh4+ 21 Qxh4, when White is up a Queen and pawn for a Rook.


White wins with either a) 22 Qg6+ Kh8 23 Rh5, mate or b) 22 Rh5 with 23 Qh8.


White can win Black's Queen with 18 Qxh6+ Nh7 19 Nxd8 Raxd8, when White is up a Queen and three pawns for a Rook and Bishop.


White has three pawns for the piece.


White wins with 22 Qxf6+ Kg8 23 Qg6+ Kh8 24 Qxh7/Rxh7, mate.


White can win Black's Queen with either 18 Ng5 or 18 Nf6, when Black has to give up his Queen to stop 19 Qh7, mate, but White can also win with 18 Re3 Nd5 19 Rh3, threatening 20 Qh8, mate.


White wins with 19 Qh7+ (1-0) Kxh7 20 Ng5+ Kh8 21 Nh7, mate.


White has a Queen and three pawns for a Rook and Knight.


White wins with 20 Ng5, mate (1-0).


White wins with 25 Qg6+ Kh8 26 Rxg5, threatening both 27 Qg7 and 27 Qh6, mate.


White has two pawns for the piece and now can win two more pawns plus the exchange with 23 Nxe6 dxe6 24 Qh6+ Kg8 25 Bxe6+ Rf7 26 Qg6+ Kh8 27 Bxf7, when White is up a Rook and four pawns for two pieces and threatens to bring in his Rook with 28 Rae1.


White wins with 21 Qh7+ Kf8 22 Qxf7, mate.


White is up two pawns.


White wins with 20 Qg6+ 1-0 Kh8 21 Nf7+ when Black has to give up his Queen to stop the mate with 21…Oxf7 22 Qx7, when White still threatens 23 Qg8, mate.
27 Qf6 is mate.

White wins with 27 Rd4, when Black can’t stop 28 Rxh4, mating.


22 Qg7 is mate, but 22 Rgx4 also wins.


White wins with 20 Qg6, when Black can’t prevent 21 Qh6 Nh7 22 Qxh7, mate.

White can win with either a) 23 Re1 (1-0) Qf4 24 Re5 Bg4 25 Rg5, threatening both 26 Qg7 and 26 Qh6, mate, or b) 23 Qf6+ Kh7 24 Bg6+, e.g., b1) 24...Kg8 25 Qf7+ Kh8 26 Qh7, mate or b2) 24...Kh6 25 Bf5+ Kh5 26 g4, mate.

CHAPTER 26. WHITE PLAYS 1 Nh6+.


White wins Black’s Queen with 17 Nxf7+ and 18 Nxd8.


White mates in two with 19 Bxf6+ Bg7 20 Qxg7, mate.


White wins Black’s Queen with 18 Nxf7+ Kg8 19 Nxd8.


White is up the exchange and a pawn.


White wins Black’s Queen with a discovered check – 20 Nh6+ (1-0) Bxh6 21 Qxd7, when White is up a Queen for two pieces.


White is up the exchange and a pawn.


White wins Black’s Queen with 20 Nxe6+.

White is up the exchange and a pawn.

White wins with 16 Qg3+ Bg7 17 Qxg7, mate.


White wins with 19 Nxf7, mate.


White wins with 22 Bxh6, mate.


White wins with 17 Qd8+, mating.


White wins with either 22 Qxh6+ Nh7 23 Qxh7/Qxf8, mate, or 22 Rxe6+ Nh7 23 Qxe6/Rxe6, mate.

White is up a Queen and pawn for a Rook, with a won game, e.g., a) 21...Kh8 22 Qh6+ Kg8 23 0-0-0 Ne5 24 Rg1+ Ng6 25 Rxe6, mate or b) 21...Kh7 22 0-0-0 (intending either 23 Rg1, 23 Rd3-h3, or 23 Qh4+ with 24 Rg1, mate) and now: b1) 22...Ne5 23 Rg1 Ng6 24 Bx7 Rx7 25 Qxe6+ Kh8 26 Qxf7 with 27 Qg7/Qh5, mate or b2) 22...Rg8 23 Qh5+ Kg7 24 Rg1+ Kf6 (24...Kf8 25 Qxh7, mate) 25 Qf5+ Kf7 26 Qxf7+ Kg8, mate.

White is up the exchange and a pawn.


White wins with 20 Qg4+ Bg7 21 Qxh7/Rxh7, mate.

770. Eisele-Kraenzle, Bundesliga Nxd8+ Bxe6 24 Nxe6, when White
threw the Queen to 23 Nd6+; b) 22...Qe8 drops the Queen to 23 Nd6+; c) 22...Qc7 allows a smog- thered mate with 23 Nh6+ Kh8 24 Qg8+ Nhx8 25 Nf7, mate; d) 22...Bc8 drops another piece to 23 Nxd8+ Bx6 24 Nxe6, when White is up a Rook, Bishop, and pawn.

White wins with 20 Qg4+ Bg7 21 Qxh7, mate.


White wins with 21 Qxf6+ gxf6 22 Bh6, mate.


19...Qh6 drops the Queen to wither 20 Bxh6 or 20 Nxh6 (although White can also mate in two with 20 Ng5+ Kh8 21 Rxf8, mate), while 19...Kg8 loses to 20 Qh8, mate.


White wins with 19 Re3, when Black can't stop 20 Qg3+.


White wins with 22 Bf6, when Black can't stop 23 Qxg7, mate.


White has several ways to win,
e.g., a) 18 Bxc7 gx6 19 Nxg8 Kxg8, when White is up a Rook and a Bishop; b) 18 Nxg7+ Qxg7 19 Qxf7, when White is up a Queen, Bishop, and pawn; or c) 18 Qxf7, which leads to mate after 18...Qd8 19 Rad1 Qf8 20 Qxg8+ Qxg8 21 Ng7+ Qf7 22 Rd8+ Qg8 23 Rxg8, mate.


White mates in two with 20 Nh6+ Kh8 21 Qh7, mate.


White wins with 23 Qg4+ Bg7 24 Qxg7, mate.


White wins with 20 Qxh5+ Nhx5 (20...Nh7 21 Qxh7 is mate) 21 Rxh8, mate.


White wins with 22 Qg6+ Kh8 23 Qxh7/Rxh7, mate.


White wins with 21 Qh7+ Kh8 22 Qh8, mate.

The easiest way to win is with 19 Qh6+ Kg6 20 Rf6+, winning Black's Queen with mate to follow, e.g., 20...Kg5 21 Qxh6+ Kg4 22 Be2, mate, although 19 Rf7+ also wins, e.g., 19...Kg6 and now: a) 20 Qg8+ Kh5 21 Be2+ Kh4 22 Qg3, mate or b) 20 Rf5+ Kg7 21 Qf8+ Kg6 22 Qf7/Qf6, mate.


White wins with either 27 Qxe6+ Kd8 28 Qxe8, mate, or 27 Rxe6+ Kd7 28 Qxe8, mate.


White wins with 27 Qh3+ Bh4 28 Qxh4, mate.


White mates in two with 24 Qxf7+ Bg7 25 Qxg7, mate.


White wins with 24 Rxh4, threatening 25 Rht4, mate.


White wins with 26 Qxh5+ Kxh5 27 Bf7, mate.


White wins with 25 Qxh7/Rxh7, mate.


White wins with 26 Qxe6+ Kf8 27 Qxe8, mate.

25 Qg6 is mate.


White wins with 28 Qh6+ Kg8 29 Qxg8+, mate.

28 Qf4 is mate.


White wins with 30 Bxf6+, winning Black's Queen.
Be5+ Qg7 28 Qxg7, mate.

C54.

Cup Open, Mumbai, India, 2008.

21 Qxh7, mate, or 20...Kh8 15 Qxh7, mate (1-0), e.g., 20...gxf6

In all cases White wins with 20 Qxh7, mate (1-0).


White wins with 19 Bxf6, mate.


White's threat is 15 Qxh7, mate, which Black can delay with 15...Bxf2 and 15...g5, but can't prevent (1-0).


White wins with 21 Qg7, mate.


White threatens both 18 Nxg8 and 18 fx7. Taking on f6 with either 17...fxe6 or 17...Qxf6 loses to 18 Qh7, mate, while 17...g6 and 17...hxg5 prevent mate on h7, but drop the Queen to 18 fx7.


White wins with 19 Qxh7, mate, e.g., 18...Bxf6 19 Qxh7, mate (1-0).

803. Okhotnik-Rubino, Gap Open,
White wins with 19 Qxh7, mate.


White wins with 19 Qh6 Qxf6 20 Qxf6.


White wins with 21 Qh6 and 22 Qg7, mate.


15...Be7 16 Qg4+ Kf8 17 Qg7 is mate, or b) 15...Re7 16 Qg4+ Bg7 17 Qxg7, mate.


White wins with 19 Qf5 with 15 Qxh7, mate.

19 exf6 Qxf6 doesn't accomplish anything, but White wins with 19 Qf5 with 20 Qxh7, mate.


White wins with 16 Qg4+ Kh8 17 Qg7, mate.


White wins with 19 Qh6 and 20 Qg7, mate.


White wins with 15 Bg7+ Kxg7 16 Qh7, mate.


White wins with 18 Qg5, when Black can't stop 18 Qh6-Qg7, mate (1-0).

White wins with 18 Bxf5 threatening 19 Qg7, mate, e.g., 18..Rd8 19 Qg7+ Kx8 20 Qh8+ (checking on h8 is better than checking on g8 because it keeps White's e-pawn defended after 21 Bxd8) 20...Kd7 21 Bxd8 (this is better than 21 Rfd1+ Kc6 22 Bxd8 Bd7, when White's Bd8 is pinned to the Qh8) Qc6 22 Rfd1+, when Black has to interpose his Queen to stop the mate.


White wins with 18 Qg5, when Black can't stop 18 Qh6-Qg7, mate (1-0).


White wins with 18 Qh6 with 19 Qg7, mate.


White wins with 18 Bxf5 with 21 Qh7, mate.


White wins with 18 Bxf5 threatening 19 Qg7, mate, e.g., 18..Rd8 19 Qg7+ Ke8 20 Qh8+ (checking on h8 is better than checking on g8 because it keeps White's e-pawn defended after 21 Bxd8) 20...Kd7 21 Bxd8 (this is better than 21 Rfd1+ Kc6 22 Bxd8 Bd7, when White's Bd8 is pinned to the Qh8) Qc6 22 Rfd1+, when Black has to interpose his Queen to stop the mate.


White wins with 18 Qe4, threatening 19 Qh7, mate, and if 18...Rg6 then 19 fxe7 wins Black's Queen.

822. Skjoldborg-Drabek, Prague,

White wins with 19 Rd5 exd5 20 Qg3+ with mate on g7.


19 Qh5 wins, e.g., 19...h6 20 Qxh6+ Kg8 21 Qh7, mate.


White can win Black’s Queen with 17 Be4, when Black has to play 17...Qxe4 18 Nxe4 (1-0), since moving the Queen off the b1-h7 diagonal loses to 18 Qxh7, mate.


17...Kxf6 loses to 18 Qg5, mate, while 17...Kf8 loses to 18 Qxf5 and Qxh7, mate.


White has a Queen and pawn for a Rook and Bishop.


18...Kg8 loses to 19 Qg4+ Kh7 20 Qg7, mate, while 18...Kh7 loses to 19 Qxh6+ Kg8 20 Qg7, mate.


White wins with 20 Qxh6 with either 21 Qg7/Qh8, mate.


White wins with 20 Qxh6 with either 21 Qg7/Qh8, mate.


White has a Queen for a Rook and Knight.


White wins with 23 Be6 with 24 Qh8, mate.


White wins with 23 Bf6 with 24 Qg7, mate.


White wins with 22 gx7 + Kxf7 23 Qg7, mate.


White wins with 22 Qg6+, e.g., 22...Kf8 23 Qxf7, mate or 22...Kg8 23 Bx7 with 24 Qh6, mate.


White wins with 20 Qh6 and 21 Qg7, mate.


White wins with 22 Qxf7+, e.g., 22...Kxf7 23 Qxg7, mate, or 22...Kf8, when White has several good moves: a) 23 Kxe8=Q+ Kxe8 24 Rxg7 with 25 Qh8, mate; b) 23 Qxg7+ Ke7 24 f8=Q+ Kd8 25 Qd6+ Kc8 26 Qg7, mate; or c) 23 Rxg7 Red8 24 Rh7+ Ke7 25 f8=Q, mate.

**CHAPTER 28. WHITE PLAYS 1 RxN(f6).**

White's threat is 16 Qh7, mate, which Black can't stop.


White wins with 20 Qxh7+ Kf8 21 Qh8, mate.


White wins with 17 Qh7, mate.


White wins with 22 Bxg7, e.g., 22...Kxg7 23 Qh7, mate.

841. Blackmar-Farrar, France, 1826. D00.

White wins with 25 Qg4+ Kh8 26 Qg7, mate.


White has a Queen and Bishop for two Rooks (13 points to 10) and threatens to win more material with 21 Bc4 and 22 Bxe6+.


White wins with 21 Qxf5 (1-0)Bg7 22 Qxh7, mate. 21 Qh5 can be met by 21...f5 22 Bxf5 f6, when Black's Qc7 is defending the h-pawn.


White wins with 23 Qf5 (1-0) followed by Qh7, mate.


White wins with 21 Qxf7, mate.


White wins with 21 Qxh7, mate. (1-0), while 14...Kf8 loses to 15 Qxh7.

White wins with 19 Qf5 with 20 Qxh7, mate (1-0).


White wins with 19 Qxh6+ Kg8 20 Qg7, mate.


White wins with 23 Qh5 22 Qgxh7, mate.


White wins with 20 Bxd6+, e.g., 20...Qxd6 21 Qxh7, mate. In the actual game, Black's Rooks were on b8 and f8, when White won with 17 Rx6 Bxf6 18 Qh7, mate.


White wins with 17 Qh7, mate.


White wins with 19 Qxh6+ Kg8 20 Qg7, mate.


White wins with 20 Bxd6+, e.g., 20...Qxd6 21 Qxh7, mate. In the actual game, Black's Rooks were on b8 and f8, when White won with 17 Rx6 Bxf6 18 Qh7, mate.


20 Nh5 wins as Black can’t stop both 21 Qg7 and 21 Nf6, mate.


White wins with 20 Qd2, threatening 21 Qh6, mate.


White wins with 23 Nxf6+ Kg7 24 Nxd7 Nxd7, when White is up a Queen and Bishop for a Rook.


17...Kh8 loses to 18 Nxf7, while 17...Kf8 loses to 18 Nd7+ (1-0) with 19 Nxb6.

White mates with 26 Qh6 and 27 Qg7, mate.


White is up a piece.

858. Stoczek-Duebon, Passau, Germany, 1999. E76.

White wins with 23 Qh6+ Kg8 25 Qh7/Qxg7, mate.


White mates in two with 22 Qh6+ Kg8 23 Qg7, mate.


White can win Black’s Queen with 21 Nge6+ Bxe6 22 Qxc7, when White has a Queen and three pawns for a Rook and Bishop and has multiple threats – a) 23 Rf1 b) 23 d5 Bxd5 24 Nd7+ and c) 23 Nxe6+ Rxe6 24 d5. The game continued 22...Re7 23 Nxe6+ Rxe6 24 d5 (1-0).


White mates with either 26 Rg7, mate or by moving the Bishop anywhere except g5.


21...Kg8 loses to 22 Qf7+ Kh8 23 Qh7, while 21...Kh6 loses to 22 Bf5+ Kh5 23 g4, mate or 23 Qg6+ Kh4 24 Qg4, mate.


White mates with 26 Rg7, mate or by moving the Bishop anywhere except g5.

White is up a piece.


White wins Black’s Queen with 19 Nc5, e.g., 19...Qe8 20 Nxf6+ with 21 Nxe8.


White is up a piece and two pawns and now wins with 44 Qf7+ Kh8 45 Qg8, mate.


White’s threat is 24 Qh7, mate (1-0) and after 23...Qf6 24 Rxf6 exf6 White wins with 25 Qxg7, mate.


White can win Black’s Queen with 22 Qe5+ Kc4 23 Qxa5, when White is up a Queen and pawn for a Rook.


White wins with 23 Be5 Ne6 24 Qh8, mate.


White wins in four: 27 Bh7+ Kh8 28 Bg6+ Kg8 29 Qh7+ Kf8 30 Qxg7, mate.

APPENDIX 1. INDEX OF ECO CODES
A00-A99:
A00: 69, 268,
357, 359, 839
A01: 12
A03: 190
A04: 60, 75, 76
A07: 762
A08: 355, 685,
830
A09: 478, 524,
547, 558
A10: 409, 585,
586, 587, 588
A12: 202
A13: 51, 778
A18: 234, 761
A20: 766
A28: 655
A30: 768, 801
A31: 53, 764
A34: 394, 771
A36: 61, 154
A40: 535, 559,
777
A41: 58
A43: 146, 386
A45: 186, 204,
353, 543, 568,
599
A46: 104, 115,
128, 434, 702,
746
A47: 222
A50: 484, 516
A52: 374, 809,
823
A53: 237
A54: 380
A67: 350
A71: 33
A80: 248, 639,
654
A85: 369
B00-B99:
B00: 93, 468,
503, 550, 569,
743

B01: 45, 124,
137, 150, 252,
661
B02: 85, 163,
748, 814, 880
B03: 141, 329,
332, 356, 437,
486, 526, 603,
754
B04: 334
B06: 7, 46, 52,
74, 233, 274,
352, 458
B07: 11, 180,
253, 263, 269,
325, 340, 684,
770, 861, 864
B08: 189, 227
B09: 37, 129,
166, 172, 225,
266, 312, 313,
318, 323, 324,
326, 328, 341,
344, 354, 358,
454, 873
B10: 109, 178,
289, 698, 758
B12: 10, 29, 34
B13: 387, 410,
806
B14: 131, 132,
294
B15: 36, 156,
212, 455, 464,
473, 510, 601,
842
B17: 118, 153,
219, 242, 335,
339, 347, 626,
631, 650, 690,
711, 844
B18: 81, 737
B19: 123, 175,
646, 697, 742,
765
B20: 240, 866
B21: 540, 562,
819
B22: 79, 92,
114, 139, 182,
196, 285, 300,
304, 310, 376,

401, 548, 572,
592, 597, 630,
656, 740
B23: 158, 162,
201, 320, 321,
360, 451, 753,
831, 837, 840
B25: 5, 223
B27: 149
B28: 609
B29: 371
B30: 28, 315,
797
B31: 57, 116
B32: 616, 668,
703, 716
B33: 390, 433,
790
B35: 8, 148,
868
B40: 467, 474,
508, 517, 832,
862
B42: 80, 206,
215, 402, 612,
739, 756, 875
B43: 200, 213,
786, 792, 869
B44: 624
B45: 686, 722
B47: 224, 290,
316, 683, 871
B48: 191, 419
B49: 878
B50: 44, 82,
159, 235, 282,
653, 708, 833
B52: 710
B53: 86, 649,
799, 800
B56: 730
B57: 214, 760
B59: 663
B63: 666
B64: 632
B66: 638
B70: 193
B71: 845
B72: 444, 859
B74: 867
B75: 448
B77: 199

B78: 184, 453,
462
B79: 459, 461
B80: 264, 442,
607, 629, 669,
672
B81: 271, 276
B82: 278, 330,
634, 798
B83: 181, 203
B84: 270, 391
B85: 188, 195,
420, 613, 846,
856
B86: 604, 623,
733
B87: 147, 151
B88: 675
B89: 198, 280,
615, 644, 652,
808
B90: 241, 429,
443, 658, 692,
783, 857
B92: 847
B93: 393, 870,
879
B95: 250
B96: 822
B97: 681
B98: 811
B99: 605
C00-C99:
C00: 125, 142,
488, 515, 529,
538, 556, 571,
582, 584, 593,
660, 665, 815
C01: 65, 70,
302, 372, 427,
551, 565, 671,
735, 738, 751,
781, 853
C02: 317, 544,
554, 560, 561
C03: 403
C04: 470, 520,
532, 583, 598,
633, 749

C05: 39, 228,
297, 311, 336,
337, 338, 469,
471, 476, 494,
504, 507, 511,
528, 594, 600
C06: 232, 611,
664, 667
C07: 140
C08: 457, 804
C09: 43, 699,
772
C10: 62, 96,
97, 99, 100,
101, 117, 122,
239, 314, 365,
399, 400, 405,
406, 412, 414,
416, 422, 423,
426, 440, 460,
545, 557, 627,
701, 705, 707,
712, 776
C11: 267, 305,
483, 490, 500,
518, 591, 621,
648, 670, 679,
717, 802, 826
C13: 319, 641
C15: 216, 346,
536, 537, 573,
580, 610, 647,
838, 860, 876
C16: 687, 691,
836
C17: 272, 430,
533, 539, 541,
542, 546, 549,
563, 567, 570,
576, 577, 581,
617, 706, 820,
828
C18: 450, 552,
555, 566, 574,
620, 694
C19: 530, 531,
553, 575, 578,
579
C22: 126
C23: 20, 211,
849
C24: 9, 724

C26: 696, 774,
843
C29: 127, 133,
625, 745, 752,
794
C30: 160, 164,
345, 348, 662,
779
C31: 54, 292
C33: 35, 68,
408, 622, 865,
872
C34: 55, 851
C35: 41, 205,
217
C36: 249, 855,
863
C40: 848
C41: 17, 64,
152, 445, 642,
713, 785, 787,
834
C42: 1, 40, 71,
121, 281, 291,
296, 298, 367,
418, 421, 677,
680, 877
C43: 30, 238,
258
C44: 15, 42,
73, 157, 165,
260
C45: 66, 226,
810, 812, 813,
816, 835
C46: 13, 277
C47: 704, 784
C49: 755
C50: 485, 527,
775, 818, 829
C53: 493, 498,
741
C54: 14, 16,
56, 67, 368,
693, 728, 747,
795, 852
C55: 138, 673,
676, 700, 729,
744, 803
C56: 825
C58: 759

C60: 18, 25,
262
C61: 6
C64: 48, 637,
773, 854
C65: 827
C67: 173, 192,
678
C68: 208
C71: 244, 333
C74: 256
C77: 396
C79: 261
C84: 23, 31,
257, 259, 438,
727, 763, 817,
824
C86: 788
C88: 791
C92: 303
C94: 72
C96: 295
D00-D99:
D00: 3, 161,
187, 245, 362,
392, 441, 463,
719, 789, 821,
841, 874
D02: 185, 307,
322, 327, 375,
383, 435, 446,
589, 590, 595,
596, 628, 651,
731, 732, 793
D03: 94, 398,
640
D04: 91
D05: 63, 145,
308, 309, 364,
407, 709
D06: 487, 491,
506, 522, 796
D07: 645
D11: 105, 432
D15: 608
D16: 479, 519,
682
D17: 275
D19: 688


APPENDIX 1. INDEX OF ECO CODES

D20: 49, 77, 134, 481, 482, 502, 525, 736, 805
D21: 349
D24: 106, 534, 564, 807
D26: 84, 87, 288, 489, 499, 618
D27: 24, 113, 243, 397
D28: 98, 111, 144
D29: 417
D30: 385, 411, 413
D31: 767
D35: 236, 378, 379
D36: 246, 643, 659
D37: 107, 108, 120, 229, 331, 436, 636
D40: 415
D41: 47
D42: 78, 90, 119, 209, 210, 247, 283, 286, 384, 718
D43: 32, 361, 366
D45: 21, 22, 95, 102, 112, 130, 155, 169, 176, 183, 251, 363, 373, 377, 381, 439, 480, 501, 689, 726, 750
D46: 2, 424, 431, 606, 635, 715, 721, 723
D47: 425
D48: 299
D50: 382
D52: 143, 614
D53: 59, 171, 388, 780
D55: 50, 220, 293, 452
D60: 88, 395
D61: 170, 197, 265, 370, 725

E00-E99:

E08: 83
E11: 231, 351
E12: 89, 103, 221, 273, 404, 466, 513, 757
E14: 284, 301, 472, 514, 619, 695, 714, 769
E15: 27, 720
E17: 342
E18: 287
E20: 428, 850
E21: 492, 496, 497, 512
E22: 78, 90, 119, 209, 210, 247, 283, 286, 384, 718
E40: 734
E41: 475, 523
E42: 26
E46: 255
E47: 194, 207
E50: 495, 509
E51: 389
E52: 465, 521
E54: 136, 254
E57: 110, 167
E73: 449
E76: 343, 858
E77: 38
E84: 230, 447
E91: 279
E92: 4
E94: 177
CHESS VISUALIZATION COURSE